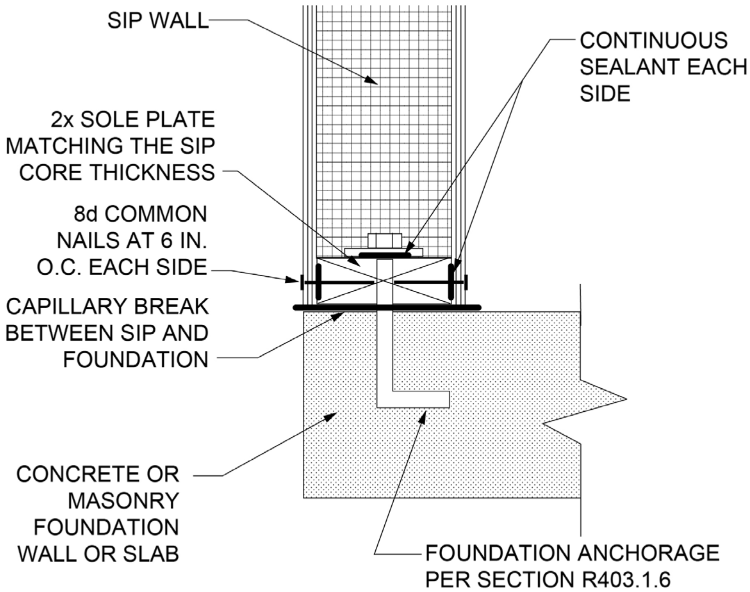
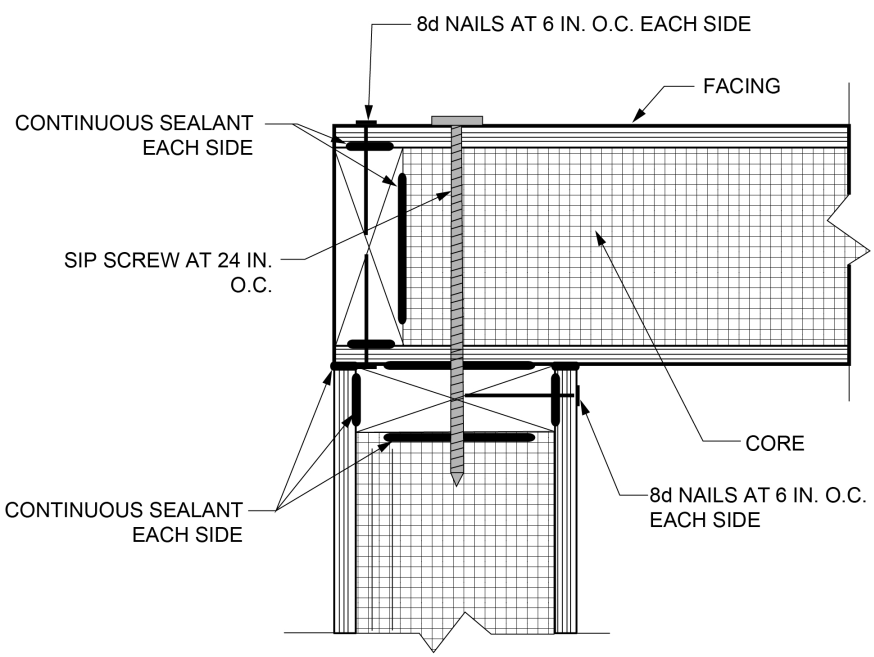


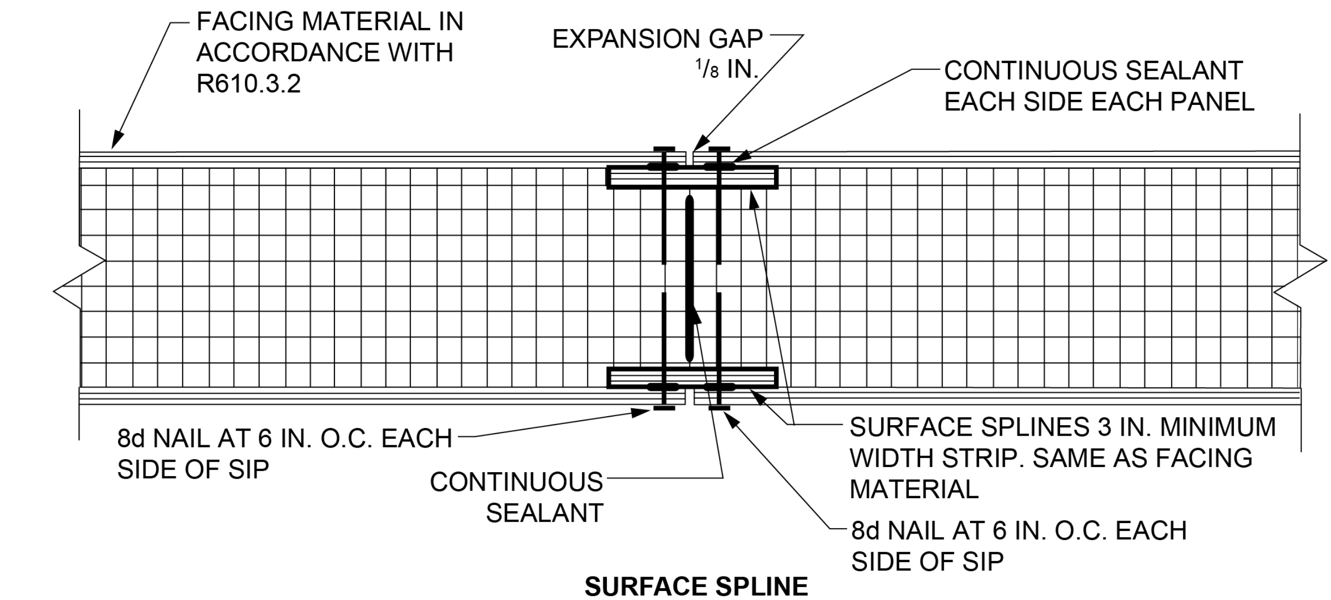
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

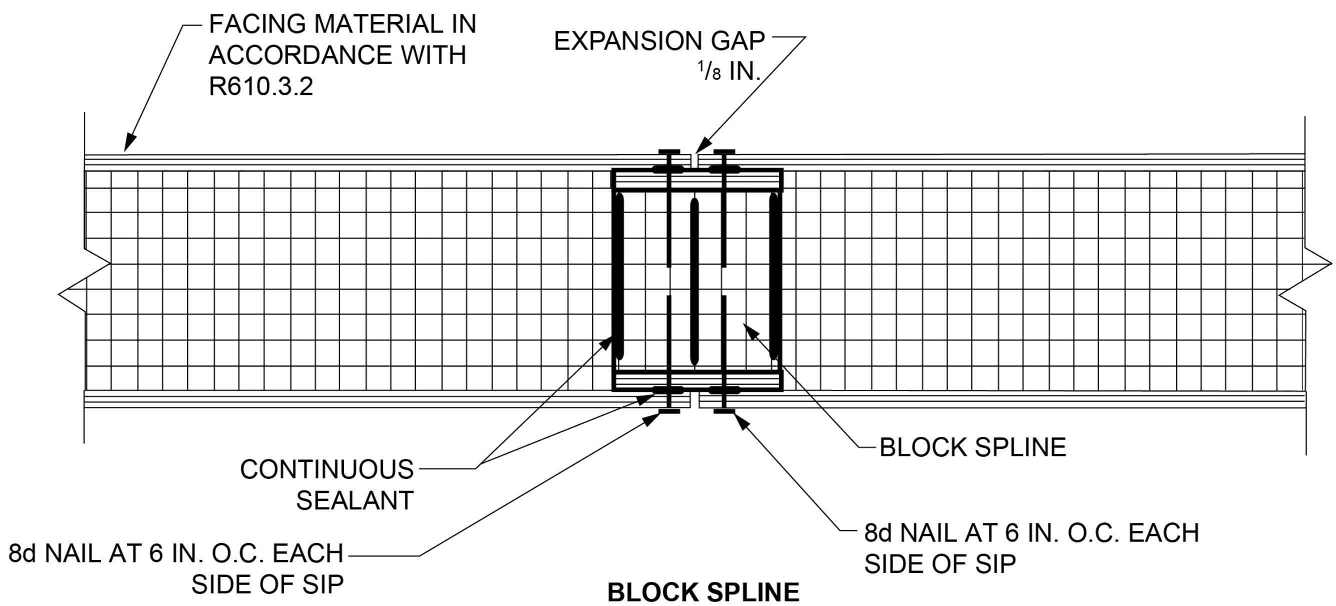
FIGURE R610.5.2
SIP WALL TO CONCRETE SLAB FOR FOUNDATION WALL ATTACHMENT



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R610.5.4
SIP CORNER FRAMING DETAIL





For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R610.8
TYPICAL SIP WALL PANEL-TO-PANEL CONNECTION DETAILS

TABLE R610.8
MAXIMUM SPANS FOR 11 7/8-INCH OR DEEPER SIP HEADERS (feet)[a, c, d]

LOAD CONDITION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)	BUILDING[b] width (feet)				
		24	28	32	36	40
Supporting roof only	20	4	4	4	4	2
	30	4	4	4	2	2
	50	2	2	2	2	2
	70	2	2	2	DR	DR
Supporting roof and one-story	20	2	2	DR	DR	DR
	30	2	2	DR	DR	DR
	50	2	DR	DR	DR	DR
	70	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
a. Design assumptions:
Maximum deflection criterion: L/240.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum ceiling load: 5 psf.
Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf
Maximum second-floor live load: 30 psf.
Maximum second-floor dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum second-floor dead load from walls: 10 psf.
Maximum first floor dead load: 10 psf.
Wind loads based on Table R301.2.1(1).
Strength axis of facing material applied horizontally.
b. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.
c. The table provides for roof slopes between 3:12 and 12:12.
d. The maximum roof overhang is 24 inches (610 mm).

CHAPTER 7
WALL COVERING

SECTION R701 GENERAL

R701.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the interior and exterior wall covering for buildings.

R701.2 Installation. Products sensitive to adverse weather shall not be installed until adequate weather protection for the installation is provided. Exterior sheathing shall be dry before applying exterior cover.

SECTION R702 INTERIOR COVERING

R702.1 General. Interior coverings or wall finishes shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and Tables R702.1(1), R702.1(2), R702.1(3) and R702.3.5. Interior masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section R703.8.1 for support and Section R703.8.4 for anchorage, except an airspace is not required. Interior finishes and materials shall conform to the flame spread and smoke-development requirements of Section R302.9.

R702.2 Interior plaster.

R702.2.1 Gypsum plaster. Gypsum plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C5, C22, C28, C35, C59, C61, C587, C631, C847, C933, C1032 and C1047, and shall be installed or applied in compliance with ASTM C841, C842 and C843. Gypsum lath or gypsum base for veneer plaster shall conform to ASTM C1396 and shall be installed in compliance with ASTM C844. Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this section, except that veneer plaster shall be applied in one coat not to exceed $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.76 mm) thickness, provided the total thickness is in accordance with Table R702.1(1).

R702.2.2 Cement plaster. Cement plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C91 (Type M, S or N), C150 (Types I, II and III), C595 [Types IP, I (PM), IS and I (SM)], C847, C897, C933, C1032, C1047 and C1328, and shall be installed or applied in compliance with ASTM C926 and C1063. Gypsum lath shall conform to ASTM C1396. Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this section.

R702.2.2.1 Application. Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for not less than 24 hours prior to application of the next coat.

Exception: Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C926.

R702.2.2.2 Curing. The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. For three-coat

TABLE R702.1(1)
THICKNESS OF PLASTER

PLASTER BASE	FINISHED THICKNESS OF PLASTER FROM FACE OF LATH, MASONRY, CONCRETE (inches)	
	Gypsum Plaster	Cement Plaster
Expanded metal lath	$^{5}/_{8}$, minimum[a]	$^{5}/_{8}$, minimum[a]
Wire lath	$^{5}/_{8}$, minimum[a]	$^{3}/_{4}$, minimum (interior)[b]
		$^{7}/_{8}$, minimum (exterior)[b]
Gypsum lath[g]	$^{1}/_{2}$, minimum	$^{3}/_{4}$, minimum (interior)[b]
Masonry walls[c]	$^{1}/_{2}$, minimum	$^{1}/_{2}$, minimum
Monolithic concrete walls[c, d]	$^{5}/_{8}$, maximum	$^{7}/_{8}$, maximum
Monolithic concrete ceilings[c, d]	$^{3}/_{8}$, maximum[e]	$^{1}/_{2}$, maximum
Gypsum veneer base[f, g]	$^{1}/_{16}$, minimum	$^{3}/_{4}$, minimum (interior)[b]
Gypsum sheathing[g]	—	$^{3}/_{4}$, minimum (interior)[b]
		$^{7}/_{8}$, minimum (exterior)[b]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where measured from back plane of expanded metal lath, exclusive of ribs, or self-furring lath, plaster thickness shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ inch minimum.
b. Where measured from face of support or backing.
c. Because masonry and concrete surfaces vary in plane, thickness of plaster need not be uniform.
d. Where applied over a liquid bonding agent, finish coat shall be permitted to be applied directly to concrete surface.
e. Approved acoustical plaster shall be permitted to be applied directly to concrete or over base coat plaster, beyond the maximum plaster thickness shown.
f. Attachment shall be in accordance with Table R702.3.5.
g. Where gypsum board is used as a base for cement plaster, a water-resistive barrier complying with Section R703.2 shall be provided.

TABLE R702.1(2)
GYPSUM PLASTER PROPORTIONS[a]

NUMBER	COAT	PLASTER BASE OR LATH	MAXIMUM VOLUME AGGREGATE PER 100 POUNDS NEAT PLASTER[b] (cubic feet)	
			Damp Loose Sand[a]	Perlite or Vermiculite[c]
Two-coat work	Base coat	Gypsum lath	2.5	2
	Base coat	Masonry	3	3
Three-coat work	First coat	Lath	2[d]	2
	Second coat	Lath	3[d]	2[e]
	First and second coats	Masonry	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Wood-fibered gypsum plaster shall be mixed in the proportions of 100 pounds of gypsum to not more than 1 cubic foot of sand where applied on masonry or concrete.

b. Where determining the amount of aggregate in set plaster, a tolerance of 10 percent shall be allowed.

c. Combinations of sand and lightweight aggregate shall be permitted to be used, provided the volume and weight relationship of the combined aggregate to gypsum plaster is maintained.

d. If used for both first and second coats, the volume of aggregate shall be permitted to be 2.5 cubic feet.

e. Where plaster is 1 inch or more in total thickness, the proportions for the second coat may be increased to 3 cubic feet.

TABLE R702.1(3)
CEMENT PLASTER PROPORTIONS, PARTS BY VOLUME

COAT	CEMENT PLASTER TYPE	CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS				VOLUME OF AGGREGATE PER SUM OF SEPARATE VOLUMES OF CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS[b]
		Portland Cement Type I, II or III; Blended Hydraulic Cement Type IP, I (S < 70), IL, or IT (S < 70); or Hydraulic Cement Type GU, HE, MS, HS or MH	Plastic Cement	Masonry Cement Type M, S or N	Lime	
First	Portland or blended	1	—	—	$^3/_4$–$1^1/_2$[a]	$2^1/_2$–4
	Masonry	—	—	1	—	$2^1/_2$–4
	Plastic	—	1	—	—	$2^1/_2$–4
Second	Portland or blended	1	—	—	$^3/_4$–$1^1/_2$	3–5
	Masonry	—	—	1	—	3–5
	Plastic	—	1	—	—	3–5
Finish	Portland or blended	1	—	—	$1^1/_2$–2	$1^1/_2$–3
	Masonry	—	—	1	—	$1^1/_2$–3
	Plastic	—	1	—	—	$1^1/_2$–3

a. Lime by volume of 0 to $^3/_4$ shall be used where the plaster will be placed over low-absorption surfaces such as dense clay tile or brick.

b. The same or greater sand proportion shall be used in the second coat than used in the first coat.

cement plaster, the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 24 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the second coat.

R702.2.3 Support. Support spacing for gypsum or metal lath on walls or ceilings shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) for $^3/_8$-inch-thick (9.5 mm) or 24 inches (610 mm) for $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) plain gypsum lath. Gypsum lath shall be installed at right angles to support framing with end joints in adjacent courses staggered by not less than one framing space.

R702.3 Gypsum board and gypsum panel products.

R702.3.1 Materials. Gypsum board and gypsum panel product materials and accessories shall conform to ASTM C22, C475, C514, C1002, C1047, C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396, C1658 or C1766 and shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section. Adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM C557.

R702.3.1.1 Adhesives. Expandable foam adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM D6464. Other adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM C557. Supports and fasteners used to attach gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall comply with Table R702.3.5 or other *approved* method.

R702.3.2 Wood framing. Wood framing supporting gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension except that wood furring strips not less than 1-inch by 2-inch (25 mm by 51 mm) nominal dimension shall be permitted to be used over solid backing or framing spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

R702.3.3 Cold-formed steel framing. Deleted.

R702.3.4 Insulating concrete form walls. Foam plastics for insulating concrete form walls constructed in accordance with Sections R404.1.2 and R608 on the interior of *habitable spaces* shall be protected in accordance with Section R316.4. Use of adhesives in conjunction with mechanical fasteners is permitted. Adhesives used for interior and exterior finishes shall be compatible with the insulating form materials.

R702.3.5 Application. Supports and fasteners used to attach gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall comply with Table R702.3.5. Gypsum sheathing shall be attached to exterior walls in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be applied at right angles or parallel to framing members. All edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Interior gypsum board shall not be installed where it is directly exposed to the weather or to water.

R702.3.5.1 Screw fastening. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to wood framing shall be Type W or Type S in accordance with ASTM C1002 and shall penetrate the wood not less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm). Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be attached to cold-formed steel framing with minimum No. 6 screws. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to cold-formed steel framing less than 0.033 inch (1 mm) thick shall be Type S in accordance with ASTM C1002 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513 and shall penetrate the steel not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to cold-formed steel framing 0.033 inch to 0.112 inch (1 mm to 3 mm) thick shall be in accordance with ASTM C954 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm).

R702.3.6 Horizontal gypsum board diaphragm ceilings. Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be permitted on wood joists to create a horizontal *diaphragm* in accordance with Table R702.3.6. Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of board and panels shall not occur on the same joist. The maximum allowable *diaphragm* proportions shall be $1^1/_2$:1 between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted. Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall not be used in *diaphragm* ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction. Perimeter edges shall be blocked using wood members not less than 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) nominal dimension. Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

R702.3.7 Water-resistant gypsum backing board. Gypsum board used as the base or backer for adhesive application of ceramic tile or other required nonabsorbent finish material shall conform to ASTM C1178, C1278 or C1396. Use of water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be permitted on ceilings. Use of water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be permitted on ceilings where framing spacing does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) on center for $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) thick or 16 inches (406 mm) for $^5/_8$-inch (16 mm) thick gypsum board. Water-resistant gypsum board shall not be installed over a Class I or II vapor retarder in a shower or tub compartment. Cut or exposed edges, including those at wall intersections, shall be sealed as recommended by the manufacturer.

R702.3.7.1 Limitations. Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used where there will be direct exposure to water, or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

R702.4 Ceramic tile.

R702.4.1 General. Ceramic tile surfaces shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.1, A108.4, A108.5, A108.6, A108.11, A118.1, A118.3, A136.1 and A137.1.

R702.4.2 Backer boards. Materials used as backers for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall panels in shower areas shall be of materials listed in Table R702.4.2, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

TABLE R702.4.2
BACKER BOARD MATERIALS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178
Fiber-reinforced gypsum panels	ASTM C1278
Nonasbestos fiber-cement backer board	ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C
Fiber mat-reinforced cementitious backer units	ASTM C1325

R702.5 Other finishes. Wood veneer paneling and hardboard paneling shall be placed on wood or cold-formed steel framing spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Wood veneer and hard board paneling less than $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall not have less than a $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm) gypsum board or gypsum panel product backer. Wood veneer paneling not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall conform to ANSI/HPVA HP-1. Hardboard paneling shall conform to CPA/ANSI A135.5.

TABLE R702.3.5
MINIMUM THICKNESS AND APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS

THICKNESS OF GYPSUM BOARD OR GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS (inches)	APPLICATION	ORIENTATION OF GYPSUM BOARD OR GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS TO FRAMING	MAXIMUM SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches o.c.)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF FASTENERS (inches)		SIZE OF NAILS FOR APPLICATION TO WOOD FRAMING[c]
				Nails[a]	Screws[b]	
Application without adhesive						
$\frac{3}{8}$	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	16	7	12	13 gage, $1\frac{1}{4}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1\frac{1}{4}''$ long, ring shank; or 4d cooler nail, 0.080″ diameter, $1\frac{3}{8}''$ long, $\frac{7}{32}''$ head.
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
$\frac{1}{2}$	Ceiling	Either direction	16	7	12	13 gage, $1\frac{3}{8}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1\frac{1}{4}''$ long, ring shank; 5d cooler nail, 0.086″ diameter, $1\frac{5}{8}''$ long, $\frac{15}{64}''$ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.086″ diameter, 1 $\frac{5}{8}''$ long, $\frac{9}{32}''$ head.
	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	24	7	12	
	Wall	Either direction	24	8	12	
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
$\frac{5}{8}$	Ceiling	Either direction	16	7	12	13 gage, $1\frac{5}{8}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1\frac{3}{8}''$ long, ring shank; 6d cooler nail, 0.092″ diameter, $1\frac{7}{8}''$ long, $\frac{1}{4}''$ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.0915″ diameter, $1\frac{7}{8}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head.
	Ceiling	Perpendicular	24	7	12	
	Type X at garage ceiling beneath habit-able rooms	Perpendicular	24	6	6	$1\frac{7}{8}''$ long 0.099″ diameter galvanized nails or equivalent drywall screws. Screws shall comply with Section R702.3.5.1.
	Wall	Either direction	24	8	12	13 gage, $1\frac{5}{8}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1\frac{3}{8}''$ long, ring shank; 6d cooler nail, 0.092″ diameter, $1\frac{7}{8}''$ long, $\frac{1}{4}''$ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.0915″ diameter, $1\frac{7}{8}''$ long, $\frac{19}{64}''$ head.
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
Application with adhesive						
$\frac{3}{8}$	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	16	16	16	Same as above for $\frac{3}{8}''$ gypsum board and gypsum panel products.
	Wall	Either direction	16	16	24	
$\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{5}{8}$	Ceiling	Either direction	16	16	16	Same as above for $\frac{1}{2}''$ and $\frac{5}{8}''$ gypsum board and gypsum panel products, respectively.
	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	24	12	16	
	Wall	Either direction	24	16	24	
Two $\frac{3}{8}$ layers	Ceiling	Perpendicular	16	16	16	Base ply nailed as above for $\frac{1}{2}''$ gypsum board and gypsum panel products; face ply installed with adhesive.
	Wall	Either direction	24	24	24	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For application without adhesive, a pair of nails spaced not less than 2 inches apart or more than $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches apart shall be permitted to be used with the pair of nails spaced 12 inches on center.

b. Screws shall be in accordance with Section R702.3.5.1. Screws for attaching gypsum board or gypsum panel products to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than $\frac{7}{16}$ inch.

c. Deleted.

d. Three-eighths-inch-thick single-ply gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall not be used on a ceiling where a water-based textured finish is to be applied, or where it will be required to support insulation above a ceiling. On ceiling applications to receive a water-based texture material, either hand or spray applied, the gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall be applied perpendicular to framing. Where applying a water-based texture material, the minimum gypsum board thickness shall be increased from $\frac{3}{8}$ inch to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch for 16-inch on center framing, and from $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to $\frac{5}{8}$ inch for 24-inch on center framing or $\frac{1}{2}$-inch sag-resistant gypsum ceiling board shall be used.

TABLE R702.3.6
SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAMED GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES

MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (min.) (inch)	SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (max.) (inch)	SHEAR VALUE[a, b] (plf of ceiling)	MINIMUM FASTENER SIZE[c, d]
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	$^1/_2$	16 o.c.	90	5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^5/_8$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	$^1/_2$	24 o.c.	70	5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^5/_8$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.488 kg/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term loading caused by wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Deleted.

c. $1^1/_4$-inch, No. 6 Type S or W screws shall be permitted to be substituted for the listed nails.

d. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not less than $^3/_8$ inch from the edges and ends of the gypsum board.

R702.6 Wood shakes and shingles. Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB *Grading Rules for Wood Shakes and Shingles* and shall be permitted to be installed directly to the studs with maximum 24 inches (610 mm) on-center spacing.

R702.6.1 Attachment. Nails, staples or glue are permitted for attaching shakes or shingles to the wall, and attachment of the shakes or shingles directly to the surface shall be permitted provided the fasteners are appropriate for the type of wall surface material. Where nails or staples are used, two fasteners shall be provided and shall be placed so that they are covered by the course above.

R702.6.2 Furring strips. Where furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 2 inches or 1 inch by 3 inches (25 mm by 51 mm or 25 mm by 76 mm), spaced a distance on center equal to the desired exposure, and shall be attached to the wall by nailing through other wall material into the studs.

R702.7 Vapor retarders. Vapor retarder materials shall be classified in accordance with Table R702.7(1). A vapor retarder shall be provided on the interior side of frame walls of the class indicated in Table R702.7(2), including compliance with Table R702.7(3) or R702.7(4) where applicable. An *approved* design using accepted engineering practice for hygrothermal analysis shall be permitted as an alternative. The climate zone shall be determined in accordance with Section N1101.7.

Exceptions:

1. *Basement walls*.
2. Below-grade portion of any wall.
3. Construction where accumulation, condensation or freezing of moisture will not damage the materials.
4. A vapor retarder shall not be required in Climate Zones 1, 2 and 3.

R702.7.1 Spray foam plastic insulation for moisture control with Class II and III vapor retarders. For purposes of compliance with Tables R702.7(3) and R702.7(4), spray foam with a maximum permeance of 1.5 perms at the installed thickness applied to the interior side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, *insulating sheathing* or gypsum shall be deemed to meet the continuous insulation moisture control requirement in accordance with one of the following conditions:

1. The spray foam *R*-value is equal to or greater than the specified continuous insulation *R*-value.
2. The combined *R*-value of the spray foam and continuous insulation is equal to or greater than the specified continuous insulation *R*-value.

SECTION R703
EXTERIOR COVERING

R703.1 General. Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing as described in Section R703.4.

Exception: Log walls designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

R703.1.1 Water resistance. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistant barrier behind the exterior cladding as required by Section R703.2 and a means of draining to the exterior water that penetrates the exterior cladding.

Exceptions:

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapter 6 and flashed in accordance with Section R703.4 or R703.8.

TABLE R702.7(1)
VAPOR RETARDER MATERIALS AND CLASSES

CLASS	ACCEPTABLE MATERIALS
I	Sheet polyethylene, nonperforated aluminum foil or other approved materials with a perm rating less than or equal to 0.1.
II	Kraft-faced fiberglass batts, vapor retarder paint or other approved materials applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for a perm rating greater than 0.1 and less than or equal to 1.0.
III	Latex paint, enamel paint or other approved materials applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for a perm rating greater than 1.0 and less than or equal to 10.0.

TABLE R702.7(2)
VAPOR RETARDER OPTIONS

CLIMATE ZONE	VAPOR RETARDER CLASS		
	CLASS I[a]	CLASS II[a]	CLASS III
3, 4 (except Marine 4)	Not Permitted	Permitted[c]	Permitted
Marine 4, 5	Permitted[b]	Permitted[c]	See Table R702.7(3)

a. Class I and II vapor retarders with vapor permeance greater than 1 perm when measured by ASTM E96 water method (Procedure B) shall be allowed on the interior side of any frame wall in all climate zones.
b. Use of a Class I interior vapor retarder in frame walls with a Class I vapor retarder on the exterior side shall require an approved design.
c. Where a Class II vapor retarder is used in combination with foam plastic insulating sheathing installed as continuous insulation on the exterior side of frame walls, the continuous insulation shall comply with Table R702.7(4) and the Class II vapor retarder shall have a vapor permeance greater than 1 perm when measured by ASTM E96 water method (Procedure B).

TABLE R702.7(3)
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS

CLIMATE ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a, b]
5	Vented cladding over wood structural panels.
	Vented cladding over fiberboard.
	Vented cladding over gypsum.
	Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 5 over 2 × 4 wall.
	Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 7.5 over 2 × 6 wall.

For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Vented cladding shall include vinyl, polypropylene, or horizontal aluminum siding, brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in Table R703.8.4(1), and other approved vented claddings.
b. The requirements in this table apply only to insulation used to control moisture in order to permit the use of Class III vapor retarders. The insulation materials used to satisfy this option also contribute to but do not supersede the thermal envelope requirements of Chapter 11.

TABLE R702.7(4)
CONTINUOUS INSULATION WITH CLASS II VAPOR RETARDER

CLIMATE ZONE	CLASS II VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a]
3	Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 2.
4, 5	Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 3 over 2 × 4 wall. Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 5 over 2 × 6 wall.

a. The requirements in this table apply only to insulation used to control moisture in order to permit the use of Class II vapor retarders. The insulation materials used to satisfy this option also contribute to but do not supersede the thermal envelope requirements of Chapter 11.

2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections R703.2 and R703.4, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated to resist wind-driven rain through testing of the exterior wall envelope, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:

   2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. All tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.

   2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.

   2.3. Exterior wall assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (299 Pa).

   2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to the minimum test exposure for a minimum of 2 hours.

The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings penetration or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

R703.1.2 Wind resistance. Wall coverings, backing materials and their attachments shall be capable of resisting wind loads in accordance with Tables R301.2.1(1) and R301.2.1(2). Wind-pressure resistance of the siding, soffit and backing materials shall be determined by ASTM E330 or other applicable standard test methods. Where wind-pressure resistance is determined by design analysis, data from *approved* design standards and analysis conforming to generally accepted engineering practice shall be used to evaluate the siding, soffit and backing material and its fastening. All applicable failure modes including bending rupture of siding, fastener withdrawal and fastener head pull-through shall be considered in the testing or design analysis. Where the wall covering, soffit and backing material resist wind load as an assembly, use of the design capacity of the assembly shall be permitted.

R703.2 Water-resistive barrier. A minimum one layer of *water-resistive barrier* shall be applied over studs or sheathing of all exterior walls with flashing as indicated in Section R703.4, in such a manner as to provide a continuous water-resistive barrier behind the exterior wall veneer. The water-resistive barrier material shall be continuous to the top of walls and terminated at penetrations and building appendages in a manner to meet the requirements of the exterior wall envelope as described in Section R703.1. Water-resistive barrier materials shall comply with one of the following:

1. No. 15 felt complying with ASTM D226, Type 1.
2. ASTM E2556, Type 1 or 2.
3. ASTM E331 in accordance with Section R703.1.1.
4. Other *approved* materials in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

No. 15 asphalt felt and *water-resistive barriers* complying with ASTM E2556 shall be applied horizontally, with the upper layer lapped over the lower layer not less than 2 inches (51 mm), and where joints occur, shall be lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

R703.3 Wall covering nominal thickness and attachments. The nominal thickness and attachment of exterior wall coverings shall be in accordance with Table R703.3(1), the wall covering material requirements of this section, and the wall covering manufacturer's installation instructions. Cladding attachment over foam sheathing shall comply with the additional requirements and limitations of Sections R703.15 and R703.17. Nominal material thicknesses in Table R703.3(1) are based on a maximum stud spacing of 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Where specified by the siding manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report or other documentation, attachment to studs with greater spacing is permitted. Fasteners for exterior wall coverings attached to wood framing shall be in accordance with Section R703.3.3 and Table R703.3(1).

R703.3.1 Soffit installation. Soffits shall comply with Section R704.

R703.3.2 Wind limitations. Deleted.

R703.3.3 Fasteners. Exterior wall coverings and roof overhang soffits shall be securely fastened with aluminum, galvanized, stainless steel or rust-preventative coated nails or staples in accordance with Table R703.3(1) or with other *approved* corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the wall covering manufacturer's installation instructions. Nails and staples shall comply with ASTM F1667. Nails shall be T-head, modified round head, or round head with smooth or deformed shanks. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) outside diameter and be manufactured of minimum 16-gage wire. Where fiberboard, gypsum, or foam plastic sheathing backing is used, nails or staples shall be driven into the studs. Where wood or wood structural panel sheathing is used, fasteners shall be driven into studs unless otherwise permitted to be driven into sheathing in accordance with either the siding manufacturer's installation instructions or Table R703.3.3.

R703.3.4 Minimum fastener length and penetration. Fasteners shall have the greater of the minimum length specified in Table R703.3(1) or as required to provide a minimum penetration into framing as follows:

1. Fasteners for horizontal aluminum siding, steel siding, particleboard panel siding, wood structural panel siding in accordance with ANSI/APA-PRP 210, fiber-cement panel siding and fiber-cement lap siding installed over foam plastic sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into framing or shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2. Fasteners for hardboard panel and lap siding shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into framing.

3. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over wood or wood structural panel sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) into sheathing and framing combined. Vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding shall be permitted to be installed with fasteners penetrating into or through wood or wood structural sheathing of minimum thickness as specified by the manufacturer's instructions or test report, with or without penetration into the framing. Where the fastener penetrates fully through the sheathing, the end of the fastener shall extend not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) beyond the opposite face of the sheathing. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over foam plastic sheathing shall be in accordance with Section R703.11.2. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over fiberboard or gypsum sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) into framing.

4. Fasteners for vertical or horizontal wood siding shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into studs, studs and wood sheathing combined, or blocking.

5. Fasteners for siding material installed over foam plastic sheathing shall have sufficient length to accommodate foam plastic sheathing thickness and to penetrate framing or sheathing and framing combined, as specified in Items 1 through 4.

R703.4 Flashing. *Approved* corrosion-resistant flashing shall be applied *shingle-fashion* in a manner to prevent entry of water into the wall cavity or penetration of water to the building structural framing components. Self-adhered membranes used as flashing shall comply with AAMA 711. Fluid-applied membranes used as flashing in exterior walls shall comply with AAMA 714. The flashing shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish. Aluminum flashing shall not be used in contact with cementitious material, except at counter flashing. *Approved* corrosion-resistant flashings shall be installed at the following locations:

1. Exterior window and door openings. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall be installed in accordance with Section R703.4.1.

TABLE R703.3.2
LIMITS FOR ATTACHMENT PER Table R703.3(1)

MAXIMUM MEAN ROOF HEIGHT			
Ultimate Wind Speed (mph 3-second gust)	Exposure		
	B	C	D
95	NL	NL	NL
100	NL	NL	NL
105	NL	NL	NL
110	NL	NL	40′
115	NL	50′	20′
120	NL	30′	DR
130	60′	15′	DR
140	35′	DR	DR

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
NL = Not Limited by Table R703.3.2, DR = Design Required.

2. At the intersection of chimneys or other masonry construction with frame or stucco walls, with projecting lips on both sides under stucco copings.
3. Under and at the ends of masonry, wood or metal copings and sills.
4. Continuously above all projecting wood *trim*.
5. Where exterior porches, decks or stairs attach to a wall or floor assembly of wood-frame construction.
6. At wall and roof intersections.
7. At built-in gutters.

R703.4.1 Flashing installation at exterior window and door openings. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to a *water-resistive barrier* complying with Section 703.2 for subsequent drainage. Air sealing shall be installed around all window and door openings on the interior side of the rough opening gap. Mechanically attached flexible flashings shall comply with AAMA 712. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall be installed in accordance with one or more of the following:

1. The fenestration manufacturer's installation and flashing instructions, or for applications not addressed in the fenestration manufacturer's instructions, in accordance with the flashing manufacturer's instructions. Where flashing instructions or details are not provided, *pan flashing* shall be installed at the sill of exterior window and door openings. *Pan flashing* shall be sealed or sloped in such a manner as to direct water to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to the water-resistive barrier for subsequent drainage. Openings using *pan flashing* shall incorporate flashing or protection at the head and sides.
2. In accordance with the flashing design or method of a *registered design professional*.
3. In accordance with other *approved* methods.

R703.5 Wood, hardboard and wood structural panel siding. Wood, hardboard and wood structural panel siding

TABLE R703.3(1)
SIDING MINIMUM ATTACHMENT AND MINIMUM THICKNESS

SIDING MATERIAL		NOMINAL THICKNESS (inches)	JOINT TREATMENT	TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS					
				Wood or wood structural panel sheathing into stud	Fiberboard sheathing into stud	Gypsum sheathing into stud	Foam plastic sheathing into stud[l]	Direct to studs	Number or spacing of fasteners
Anchored veneer: brick, concrete, masonry or stone (see Section R703.8)		2	Section R703.8	Section R703.8					
Adhered veneer: concrete, stone or masonry (see Section R703.12)		—	Section R703.12	Section R703.12					
Fiber cement siding	Panel siding (see Section R703.10.1)	$^{5}/_{16}$	Section R703.10.1	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	4d common ($1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.099″)	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
	Lap siding (see Section R703.10.2)	$^{5}/_{16}$	Section R703.10.2	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″)	6d common (2″ × 0.113″) or 11 gage roofing nail	Note f
Hardboard panel siding (see Section R703.5)		$^{7}/_{16}$	—	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.[d]
Hardboard lap siding (see Section R703.5)		$^{7}/_{16}$	Note e	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	Same as stud spacing 2 per bearing
Horizontal aluminum[a]	Without insulation	0.019[b]	Lap	Siding nail $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail[h] $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Not allowed	Same as stud spacing
		0.024	Lap	Siding nail $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail[h] $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Not allowed	
	With insulation	0.019	Lap	Siding nail $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail $2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail $2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail[h] $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	Siding nail $1^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.120″	
Insulated vinyl siding[j]		0.035 (vinyl siding layer only)	Lap	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage crown[h, i]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage crown[h]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage crown[h]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head Section R703.11.2	Not allowed	16 inches on center or specified by manufacturer instructions, test report or other sections of this code
Particleboard panels		$^{3}/_{8}$	—	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	Not allowed	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
		$^{1}/_{2}$	—	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	
		$^{5}/_{8}$	—	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	8d box nail ($2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″)	8d box nail ($2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	
Polypropylene siding[k]		Not applicable	Lap	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Not allowed	As specified by the manufacturer instructions, test report or other sections of this code

(continued)

TABLE R703.3(1)—continued
SIDING MINIMUM ATTACHMENT AND MINIMUM THICKNESS

SIDING MATERIAL		NOMINAL THICKNESS (inches)	JOINT TREATMENT	TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS					
				Wood or wood structural panel sheathing into stud	Fiberboard sheathing into stud	Gypsum sheathing into stud	Foam plastic sheathing into stud[l]	Direct to studs	Number or spacing of fasteners
Steel[c]		29 ga.	Lap	Siding nail ($1^{3}/_{4}$″ × 0.113″) Staple–$1^{3}/_{4}$	Siding nail ($2^{3}/_{4}$″ × 0.113″) Staple–$2^{1}/_{2}$	Siding nail ($2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″) Staple–$2^{1}/_{4}$	Siding nail ($1^{3}/_{4}$″ × 0.113″) Staple–$1^{3}/_{4}$	Not allowed	Same as stud spacing
Vinyl siding (see Section R703.11)		0.035	Lap	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $^{3}/_{8}$- to $^{1}/_{2}$-inch crown[h, i]	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $^{3}/_{8}$- to $^{1}/_{2}$-inch crown[h]	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $^{3}/_{8}$- to $^{1}/_{2}$-inch crown[h]	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313 head Section R703.11.2	Not allowed	16 inches on center or as specified by the manufacturer instructions or test report
Wood siding (see Section R703.5)	Wood rustic, drop	$^{3}/_{8}$ min.	Lap	6d box or siding nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″ ×0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″ × 0.099″)	8d box or siding nail ($2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″) Staple–2″	Face nailing up to 6″ widths, 1 nail per bearing; 8″ width sand over, 2 nails per bearing
	Shiplap	$^{19}/_{32}$ average	Lap						
	Bevel	$^{7}/_{16}$							
	Butt tip	$^{3}/_{16}$	Lap						
Wood structural panel ANSI/APA PRP-210 siding (exterior grade) (see Section R703.5)		$^{3}/_{8}$ – $^{1}/_{2}$	Note e	2″ × 0.099″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	2″ × 0.099″ siding nail	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
Wood structural panel lap siding (see Section R703.5)		$^{3}/_{8}$ – $^{1}/_{2}$	Note e Note g	2″ × 0.099″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	$2^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″ siding nail	2″ × 0.099″ siding nail	8″ along bottom edge

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Aluminum nails shall be used to attach aluminum siding.

b. Aluminum (0.019 inch) shall be unbacked only where the maximum panel width is 10 inches and the maximum flat area is 8 inches. The tolerance for aluminum siding shall be +0.002 inch of the nominal dimension.

c. Shall be of approved type.

d. Where used to resist shear forces, the spacing must be 4 inches at panel edges and 8 inches on interior supports.

e. Vertical end joints shall occur at studs and shall be covered with a joint cover or shall be caulked.

f. Face nailing: one 6d common nail through the overlapping planks at each stud. Concealed nailing: one 11-gage $1^{1}/_{2}$-inch-long galv. roofing nail through the top edge of each plank at each stud in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

g. Vertical joints, if staggered, shall be permitted to be away from studs if applied over wood structural panel sheathing.

h. Minimum fastener length must be sufficient to penetrate sheathing other nailable substrate and framing a total of a minimum of $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches or in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

i. Where specified by the manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report, fasteners are permitted to penetrate into or fully through nailable sheathing or other nailable substrate of minimum thickness specified by the instructions or test report, without penetrating into framing.

j. Insulated vinyl siding shall comply with ASTM D7793.

k. Polypropylene siding shall comply with ASTM D7254.

l. Cladding attachment over foam sheathing shall comply with the additional requirements and limitations of Sections R703.15, R703.16 and R703.17.

TABLE R703.3.3
OPTIONAL SIDING ATTACHMENT SCHEDULE FOR FASTENERS WHERE NO STUD PENETRATION NECESSARY

APPLICATION	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING OF FASTENERS[b]
Exterior wall covering (weighing 3 psf or less) attachment to wood structural panel sheathing, either direct or over foam sheathing a maximum of 2 inches thick.[a] Note: Does not apply to vertical siding.	Ring shank roofing nail (0.120″ min. dia.)	12″ o.c.
	Ring shank nail (0.148″ min. dia.)	15″ o.c.
	No. 6 screw (0.138″ min. dia.)	12″ o.c.
	No. 8 screw (0.164″ min. dia.)	16″ o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa.

a. Fastener length shall be sufficient to penetrate the back side of the wood structural panel sheathing by at least $^{1}/_{4}$ inch. The wood structural panel sheathing shall be not less than $^{7}/_{16}$ inch in thickness.

b. Spacing of fasteners is per 12 inches of siding width. For other siding widths, multiply "Spacing of Fasteners" above by a factor of 12/s, where "s" is the siding width in inches. Fastener spacing shall never be greater than the manufacturer's minimum recommendations.

shall be installed in accordance with this section and Table R703.3(1). Hardboard siding shall comply with ANSI A135.5.

R703.5.1 Vertical wood siding. Wood siding applied vertically shall be nailed to horizontal nailing strips or blocking set not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

R703.5.2 Panel siding. Three-eighths-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel siding shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center where long dimension is parallel to studs. Wood structural panel siding $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) or thinner shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center. The stud spacing shall not exceed the panel span rating provided by the manufacturer unless the panels are installed with the face grain perpendicular to the studs or over sheathing *approved* for that stud spacing.

Joints in wood, hardboard or wood structural panel siding shall be made as follows unless otherwise *approved*. Vertical joints in panel siding shall occur over framing members, unless wood or wood structural panel sheathing is used, and shall be shiplapped or covered with a batten. Horizontal joints in panel siding shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm) or shall be shiplapped or flashed with Z-flashing and occur over solid blocking, wood or wood structural panel sheathing.

R703.5.3 Horizontal wood siding. Horizontal lap siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Where there are no recommendations the siding shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm), or $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) if rabbeted, and shall have the ends caulked, covered with a batten or sealed and installed over a strip of flashing.

R703.6 Wood shakes and shingles. Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB.

R703.6.1 Application. Wood shakes or shingles shall be applied either single course or double course over nominal $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) wood-based sheathing or to furring strips over $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) nominal nonwood sheathing. A *water-resistive barrier* shall be provided over all sheathing, with horizontal overlaps in the membrane of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and vertical overlaps of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where horizontal furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 3 inches or 1 inch by 4 inches (25 mm by 76 mm or 25 mm by 102 mm) and shall be fastened to the studs with minimum 7d or 8d box nails and shall be spaced a distance on center equal to the actual weather exposure of the shakes or shingles, not to exceed the maximum exposure specified in Table R703.6.1. When installing shakes or shingles over a nonpermeable *water-resistive barrier*, furring strips shall be placed first vertically over the barrier and in addition, horizontal furring strips shall be fastened to the vertical furring strips prior to attaching the shakes or shingles to the horizontal furring strips. The spacing between adjacent shingles to allow for expansion shall be $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) to $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) apart, and between adjacent shakes shall be $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) to $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) apart. The offset spacing between joints in adjacent courses shall be not less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm).

TABLE R703.6.1
MAXIMUM WEATHER EXPOSURE FOR WOOD SHAKES AND SHINGLES ON EXTERIOR WALLS[a, b, c]
(Dimensions are in inches)

LENGTH	EXPOSURE FOR SINGLE COURSE	EXPOSURE FOR DOUBLE COURSE
Shingles[a]		
16	7	12[b]
18	8	14[c]
24	$10^{1}/_{2}$	16[d]
Shakes[a]		
18	8	14
24	$10^{1}/_{2}$	18

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Dimensions given are for No. 1 grade.

b. A maximum 9-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.

c. A maximum 10-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.

d. A maximum 14-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.

R703.6.2 Weather exposure. The maximum weather exposure for shakes and shingles shall not exceed that specified in Table R703.6.1.

R703.6.3 Attachment. Wood shakes or shingles shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. Each shake or shingle shall be held in place by two stainless steel Type 304, Type 316 or hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized corrosion-resistant box nails in accordance with Table R703.6.3(1) or R703.6.3(2). The hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanizing shall be in compliance with ASTM A153, 1.0 ounce per square foot. Alternatively, 16-gage stainless steel Type 304 or Type 316 staples with crown widths $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) minimum, $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) maximum, shall be used and the crown of the staple shall be placed parallel with the butt of the shake or the shingle. In single-course application, the fasteners shall be concealed by the course above and shall be driven approximately 1 inch (25 mm) above the butt line of the succeeding course and $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) from the edge. In double-course applications, the exposed shake or shingle shall be face-nailed with two fasteners, driven approximately 2 inches (51 mm) above the butt line and $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) from each edge. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of saltwater coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated shakes or shingles in accordance with Section R902 or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shakes or shingles in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. The fasteners shall penetrate the sheathing or furring strips by not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (13 mm) and shall not be overdriven. Fasteners for untreated (natural) and treated products shall comply with ASTM F1667.

R703.6.4 Bottom courses. The bottom courses shall be doubled.

> **R703.7 Exterior plaster.** Installation of exterior plaster shall be in compliance with ASTM C926, ASTM C1063 and the provisions of this code.

R703.7.1 Lath. Lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant materials in accordance with ASTM C1063. Expanded metal, welded wire, or woven wire lath shall be attached to wood framing members or furring. Where the exterior plaster is serving as wall bracing in accordance with Table R602.10.4, the lath shall be attached directly to framing. The lath shall be attached with $1^1/_2$-inch-long (38 mm), 11-gage nails having a $^7/_{16}$-inch (11.1 mm) head, or $^7/_8$-inch-long (22.2 mm), 16-gage staples, spaced not more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center along framing members or furring and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center between framing members or furring, or as otherwise *approved*. Additional fastening between wood framing members shall not be prohibited. Lath attachments to cold-formed steel framing or to masonry, stone, or concrete substrates shall be in accordance with ASTM C1063. Where lath is installed directly over foam sheathing, lath connections shall also be in accordance with Section R703.15, R703.16 or R703.17. Where lath is attached to furring installed over foam sheathing, the furring connections shall be in accordance with Section R703.15, R703.16 or R703.17.

Exception: Lath is not required over masonry, cast-in-place concrete, *precast concrete* or stone substrates prepared in accordance with ASTM C1063.

703.7.1.1 Furring. Where provided, furring shall consist of wood furring strips not less than 1 inch by 2 inches (25 mm by 51 mm), minimum $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) metal channels, or self-furring lath, and shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1063. Furring shall be spaced not greater than 24 inches (600 mm) on center and, where installed over wood or cold-formed steel framing, shall be fastened into framing members.

R703.7.2 Plaster. Plastering with cement plaster shall be in accordance with ASTM C926. Cement materials shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. Masonry cement conforming to ASTM C91, Type M, S or N.
2. Portland cement conforming to ASTM C150, Type I, II or III.
3. Blended hydraulic cement conforming to ASTM C595, Type IP, IS (< 70), IL, or IT (S < 70).
4. Hydraulic cement conforming to ASTM C1157, Type GU, HE, MS, HS or MH.
5. Plastic cement conforming to ASTM C1328.

Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath or wire lath and shall be not less than two coats where applied over masonry, concrete, pressure-preservative-treated wood or decay-resistant wood as specified in Section R317.1 or gypsum backing. If the plaster surface is completely covered by veneer or other facing material or is completely concealed, plaster application need be only two coats, provided the total thickness is as set forth in Table R702.1(1).

On wood-frame construction with an on-grade floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied to cover, but not extend below, lath, paper and screed.

The proportion of aggregate to cementitious materials shall be as set forth in Table R702.1(3).

R703.7.2.1 Weep screeds. A minimum 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed or plastic weep screed, with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm), shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with ASTM C926. The weep screed shall be placed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and shall be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The weather-resistant barrier shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

R703.7.3 Water-resistive barriers. Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section R703.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall comply with Section R703.7.3.1 or R703.7.3.2.

R703.7.3.1 Dry climates. In Dry (B) climate zones indicated in Figure N1101.7, *water-resistive barriers* shall comply with one of the following:

1. The *water-resistive barrier* shall be two layers of 10-minute Grade D paper or have a water resistance equal to or greater than two layers of a *water-resistive barrier* complying with ASTM E2556, Type I. The individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plane. Flashing installed in accordance with Section R703.4 and intended to drain to the *water-resistive barrier* shall be directed between the layers.
2. The *water-resistive barrier* shall be 60-minute Grade D paper or have a water resistance equal to or greater than one layer of a water-resistive barrier complying with ASTM E2556, Type II. The *water-resistive barrier* shall be separated from the stucco by a layer of foam plastic *insulating sheathing* or other non-water-absorbing layer, or a designed drainage space.

R703.7.3.2 Moist or marine climates. In the Moist (A) or Marine (C) climate zones indicated in Figure N1101.7, *water-resistive barriers* shall comply with one of the following:

1. In addition to complying with Section R703.7.3.1, a space or drainage material not less than $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in depth shall be added to the exterior side of the *water-resistive barrier*.
2. In addition to complying with Section R703.7.3.1, Item 2, drainage on the exterior of the *water-resistive barrier* shall have a drainage efficiency of not less than 90 percent, as

TABLE R703.6.3(1)
SINGLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS

PRODUCT TYPE	NAIL TYPE, MINIMUM LENGTH AND SHANK DIAMETER (inches)
R & R and sanded shingles	
16″ and 18″ shingles	3d box 1 $^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.076
24″ shingles	4d box 1$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.076
Grooved shingles	
16″ and 18″ shingles	3d box 1$^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.076
24″ shingles	4d box 1$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.076
Split and sawn shakes	
18″ straight-split shakes	5d box 1$^{3}/_{4}$ × 0.080
18″ and 24″ handsplit shakes	6d box 2 × 0.099
24″ tapersplit shakes	5d box 1$^{3}/_{4}$ × 0.080
18″ and 24″ tapersawn shakes	6d box 2 × 0.099

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE R703.6.3(2)
DOUBLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS

PRODUCT TYPE	NAIL TYPE, MINIMUM LENGTH AND SHANK DIAMETER (inches)
R & R and sanded shingles	
16″, 8″ and 24″ shingles	5d box 1$^{3}/_{4}$ × 0.08 or 5d casing nails 1$^{3}/_{4}$ × 0.080
Grooved shingles	
16″, 18″ and 24″shingles	5d box 1$^{3}/_{4}$ × 0.080
Split and sawn shakes	
18″ straight-split shakes	7d box 2$^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.099 or 8d box 2$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.113
18″ and 24″ handsplit shakes	7d box 2$^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.099 or 8d box 2$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.113
24″ tapersplit shakes	7d box 2$^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.099 or 8d box 2$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.113
18″ and 24″ tapersawn shakes	7d box 2$^{1}/_{4}$ × 0.099 or 8d box 2$^{1}/_{2}$ × 0.113

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

measured in accordance with ASTM E2273 or Annex A2 of ASTM E2925.

R703.7.4 Application. Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for at least 48 hours prior to application of the next coat.

Exception: Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C926.

R703.7.5 Curing. The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the first coat. For three-coat cement plaster, the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the second coat.

R703.8 Anchored stone and masonry veneer, general. Anchored stone and masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Table R703.3(1) and Figures R703.8(1) and R703.8(2). These veneers installed over a backing of wood shall be limited to the first *story above grade plane* and shall not exceed 5 inches (127 mm) in thickness. See Section R602.10 for wall bracing requirements for masonry veneer for wood-framed construction.

Exceptions:

1. Exterior stone or masonry veneer, as specified in Table R703.8(1), with a backing of wood or steel framing shall be permitted to the height specified in Table R703.8(1) above a noncombustible foundation.
2. Deleted.

TABLE R703.8(2)
STONE OR MASONRY VENEER LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DETACHED DWELLINGS, SEIDMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES D_0, D_1 AND D_2
DELETED

R703.8.1 Interior veneer support. Veneers used as interior wall finishes shall be permitted to be supported on wood floors that are designed to support the loads imposed.

R703.8.2 Exterior veneer support. Exterior masonry veneers having an installed weight of 40 pounds per square foot (195 kg/m^2) or less shall be permitted to be supported on wood construction. Where masonry veneer supported by wood construction adjoins masonry veneer supported by the foundation, there shall be a movement joint between the veneer supported by the wood construction and the veneer supported by the foundation. The wood construction supporting the masonry veneer shall be designed to limit the deflection to $^1/_{600}$ of the span for the supporting members. The design of the wood construction shall consider the weight of the veneer and any other loads.

R703.8.2.1 Support by steel angle. A minimum 6-inch by 4-inch by $^5/_{16}$-inch (152 mm by 102 mm by 8 mm) steel angle, with the long leg placed vertically, shall be anchored to double 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) wood studs at a maximum on-center spacing of 16 inches (406 mm). Anchorage of the steel angle at every double stud spacing shall be a minimum of two $^7/_{16}$-inch-diameter (11 mm) by 4-inch (102 mm) lag screws at every double stud or shall be a minimum of two $^7/_{16}$-inch diameter (11.1 mm) by 4 inches (102 mm) lag screws into solid double blocking with each pair of lag screws spaced at horizontal intervals not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm). The steel angle shall have a minimum clearance to underlying construction of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm). A minimum of two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer in accordance with Figure R703.8.2.1. The maximum height of masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet 8 inches (3861 mm). The airspace separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections R703.8.4 and R703.8.4.2. The method of support for the masonry veneer on steel angle shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R703.8.2.1.

The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3-inch by 3-inch by $^1/_4$-inch (76 mm by 76 mm by 6.4 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as *approved* by the *building official*.

R703.8.2.2 Support by roof construction. A steel angle shall be placed directly on top of the roof construction. The roof supporting construction for the steel angle shall consist of not fewer than three 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) wood members for wood construction. A wood member abutting the vertical wall stud construction shall be anchored with not fewer than three $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) diameter by 5-inch (127 mm) lag screws to every wood stud spacing. Each additional wood roof member shall be anchored by the use of two 10d nails at every wood stud spacing. Not less than two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer wythe in accordance with Figure R703.8.2.2. The maximum height of the masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet 8 inches (3861 mm). The airspace separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections R703.8.4 and R703.8.4.2. The support for the masonry veneer shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R703.8.2.2.

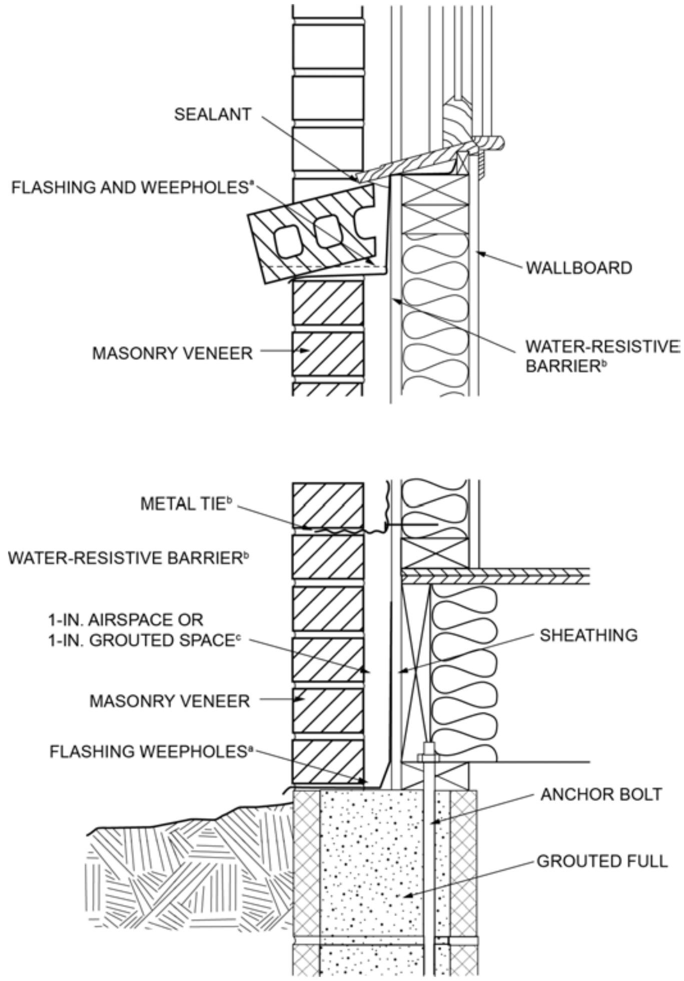
The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3-inch by 3-inch by $^1/_4$-inch (76 mm by 76 mm by 6.4 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as *approved* by the *building official*.

R703.8.3 Lintels. Masonry veneer shall not support any vertical load other than the dead load of the veneer above. Veneer above openings shall be supported on lintels of *noncombustible materials*. The lintels shall have a length of bearing not less than 4 inches (102 mm). Steel lintels shall be shop coated with a rust-inhibitive paint, except for lintels made of corrosion-resistant steel or steel treated with coatings to provide corrosion resistance. Construction of openings shall comply with either Section R703.8.3.1 or 703.8.3.2.

R703.8.3.1 Allowable span. The allowable span shall not exceed the values set forth in Table R703.8.3.1.

R703.8.3.2 Maximum span. The allowable span shall not exceed 18 feet 3 inches (5562 mm) and shall be constructed to comply with Figure R703.8.3.2 and the following:

1. Provide a minimum length of 18 inches (457 mm) of masonry veneer on each side of opening as shown in Figure R703.8.3.2.
2. Provide a minimum 5-inch by $3^1/_2$-inch by $^5/_{16}$-inch (127 mm by 89 mm by 7.9 mm) steel angle above the opening and shore for a minimum of 7 days after installation.
3. Provide double-wire joint reinforcement extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the opening. Lap splices of joint reinforcement not less than 12 inches (305 mm). Comply with one of the following:
   - 3.1. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be $^3/_{16}$-inch (4.8 mm) diameter and shall be placed in the first two bed joints above the opening.
   - 3.2. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be 9 gauge (0.144 inch or 3.66 mm diameter) and shall be placed in the first three bed joints above the opening.
4. Provide the height of masonry veneer above opening, in accordance with Table R703.8.3.2.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Sections R703.4, R703.8.5 and R703.8.6.

b. See Sections R703.2 and R703.8.4.

c. See Table R703.8.4(1) and Section R703.8.4.2.

d. Figures R703.8(1) and R703.8(2) illustrate typical construction details for a masonry veneer wall. For the actual mandatory requirements of this code, see the indicated sections of text. Other details of masonry veneer wall construction shall be permitted provided the requirements of the indicated sections of text are met.

FIGURE R703.8(1)
TYPICAL MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS[d]

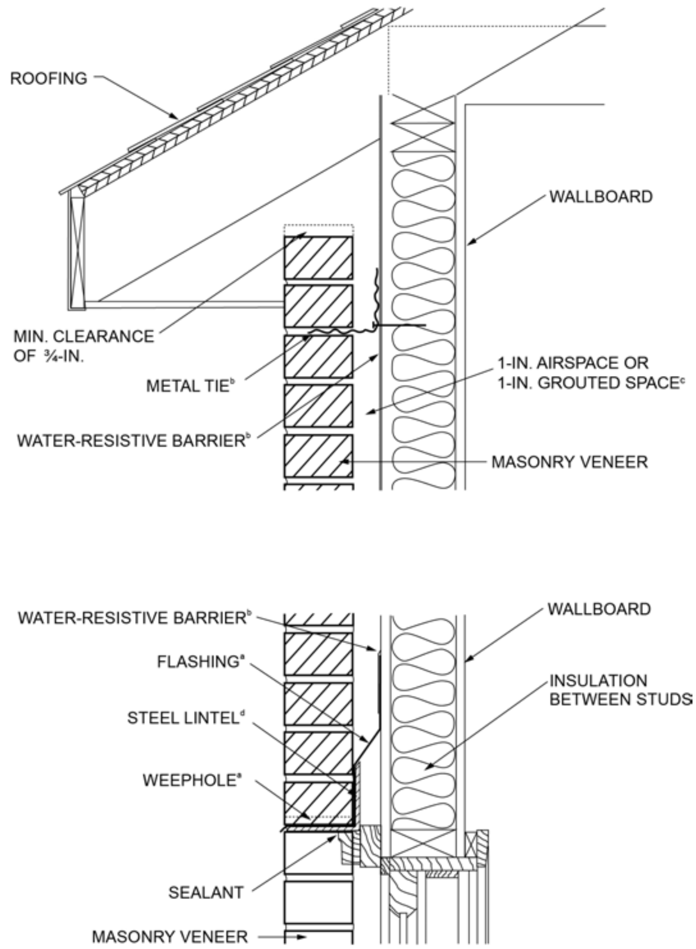
TABLE R703.8.3.2
HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING

MINIMUM HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING (inches)	MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING (feet)
13	< 5
24	5 to < 12
60	12 to height above support allowed by Section R703.8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

R703.8.4 Anchorage. Masonry veneer shall be anchored to the supporting wall studs with corrosion-resistant metal ties embedded in mortar or grout and extending into the veneer a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), with not less than $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) mortar or grout cover to outside face. Masonry veneer shall conform to Table R703.8.4(1). Where the masonry veneer tie attachment is fastened to wood structural panel not less than 7/16 performance category through insulating sheathing not greater than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness, see Table R703.8.4(2). Where Table R703.8.4(2) is used, attachment to the studs behind the sheathing is not required.

R703.8.4.1 Size and spacing. Veneer ties, if strand wire, shall be not less in thickness than No. 9 U.S. gage [(0.148 inch) (4 mm)] wire and shall have a hook embedded in the mortar joint, or if sheet metal, shall be not less than No. 22 U.S. gage by [(0.0299 inch) (0.76 mm)] $^7/_8$ inch (22 mm) corrugated. Each tie shall support not more than 2.67 square feet (0.25 m^2) of wall area and shall be spaced not more than 32 inches



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Sections R703.4, R703.8.5 and R703.8.6.

b. See Sections R703.2 and R703.8.4.

c. See Table R703.8.4(1) and Section R703.8.4.2.

d. See Section R703.8.3.

e. Figures R703.8(1) and R703.8(2) illustrate typical construction details for a masonry veneer wall. For the actual mandatory requirements of this code, see the indicated sections of text. Other details of masonry veneer wall construction shall be permitted provided that the requirements of the indicated sections of text are met.

FIGURE R703.8(2)
TYPICAL MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS[e]

(813 mm) on center horizontally and 24 inches (635 mm) on center vertically.

> **Exception:** In townhouses in Seismic Design Category C or in wind areas of more than 30 pounds per square foot pressure (1.44 kPa), each tie shall support not more than 2 square feet (0.2 m^2) of wall area.

R703.8.4.1.1 Veneer ties around wall openings. Additional metal ties shall be provided around wall openings greater than 16 inches (406 mm) in either dimension. Metal ties around the perimeter of openings shall be spaced not more than 3 feet (9144 mm) on center and placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the wall opening.

R703.8.4.2 Grout fill. As an alternative to the airspace required by Table R703.8.4(1), grout shall be permitted to fill the airspace. Where the airspace is filled with grout, a *water-resistive barrier* is required over studs or sheathing. Where the airspace is filled, replacing the sheathing and *water-resistive barrier* with a wire mesh and *approved water-resistive barrier* or an *approved water-resistive barrier*-backed reinforcement attached directly to the studs is permitted.

R703.8.5 Flashing. Flashing of 6 mil (0.152 mm) poly or other corrosion-resistant material shall be located beneath the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab and at other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels where masonry veneers are designed in accordance with Section R703.8. Top of base flashing shall be

TABLE R703.8(1)
STONE OR MASONRY VENEER LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, WOOD OR STEEL FRAMING, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B AND C

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	NUMBER OF WOOD- OR STEEL-FRAMED STORIES	MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF VENEER ABOVE NONCOMBUSTIBLE FOUNDATION[a] (feet)	MAXIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS OF VENEER (inches)	MAXIMUM WEIGHT OF VENEER (psf)[b]	WOOD- OR STEEL-FRAMED STORY
A or B	Steel: 1 or 2 Wood: 1, 2 or 3	30	5	50	all
C	1	30	5	50	1 only
	2	30	5	50	top
					bottom
	Wood only: 3	30	5	50	top
					middle
					bottom

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa.

a. An additional 8 feet is permitted for gable end walls. See also story height limitations of Section R301.3.

b. Maximum weight is installed weight and includes weight of mortar, grout, lath and other materials used for installation. Where veneer is placed on both faces of a wall, the combined weight shall not exceed that specified in this table.

TABLE R703.8.3.1
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR LINTELS SUPPORTING MASONRY VENEER[a, b, c, d, e]

SIZE OF STEEL ANGLE[a, c, d] (inches)	NO STORY ABOVE	ONE STORY ABOVE	TWO STORIES ABOVE	NO. OF $^1/_2$-INCH OR EQUIVALENT REINFORCING BARS IN REINFORCED LINTEL[b, d]
$3 \times 3 \times {}^1/_4$	6′-0″	4′-6″	3′-0″	1
$4 \times 3 \times {}^1/_4$	8′-0″	6′-0″	4′-6″	1
$5 \times 3^1/_2 \times {}^5/_{16}$	10′-0″	8′-0″	6′-0″	2
$6 \times 3^1/_2 \times {}^5/_{16}$	14′-0″	9′-6″	7′-0″	2
$2\text{-}6 \times 3^1/_2 \times {}^5/_{16}$	20′-0″	12′-0″	9′-6″	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

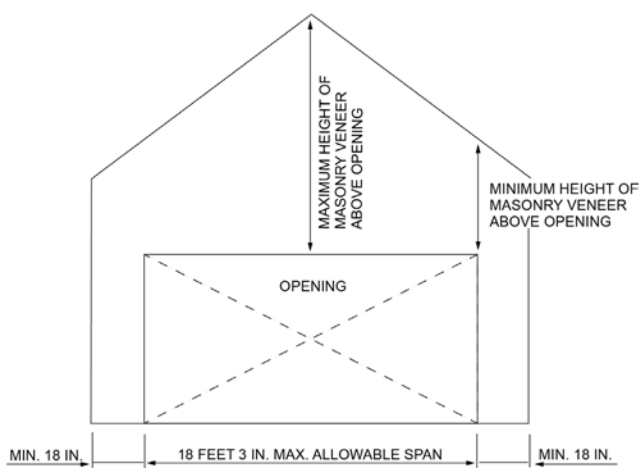
a. Long leg of the angle shall be placed in a vertical position.

b. Depth of reinforced lintels shall be not less than 8 inches and all cells of hollow masonry lintels shall be grouted solid. Reinforcing bars shall extend not less than 8 inches into the support.

c. Steel members indicated are adequate typical examples; other steel members meeting structural design requirements shall be permitted to be used.

d. Either steel angle or reinforced lintel shall span opening.

e. Span over 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be shored until cured.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R703.8.3.2
MASONRY VENEER OPENING

installed with a minimum 2-inch (51 mm) lap behind building paper or water repellant sheathing. See Section R703.4 for additional requirements.

R703.8.6 Weepholes. Weepholes shall be provided in the outside wythe of masonry walls at a maximum spacing of 48 inches (1219 mm) on center. Weepholes shall be not less than $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in diameter. Weepholes shall be located immediately above the flashing.

R703.9 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS)/EIFS with drainage. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) shall comply with this chapter and Section R703.9.1. EIFS with drainage shall comply with this chapter and Section R703.9.2.

R703.9.1 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS). EIFS shall comply with the following:

Non-drainable EIFS shall not be permitted.

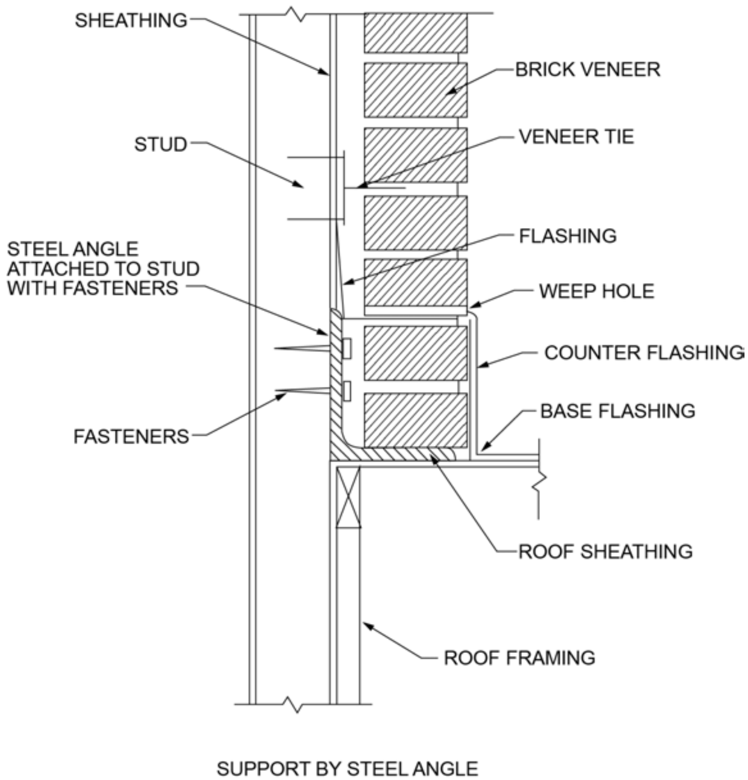


FIGURE R703.8.2.1
EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY STEEL ANGLES

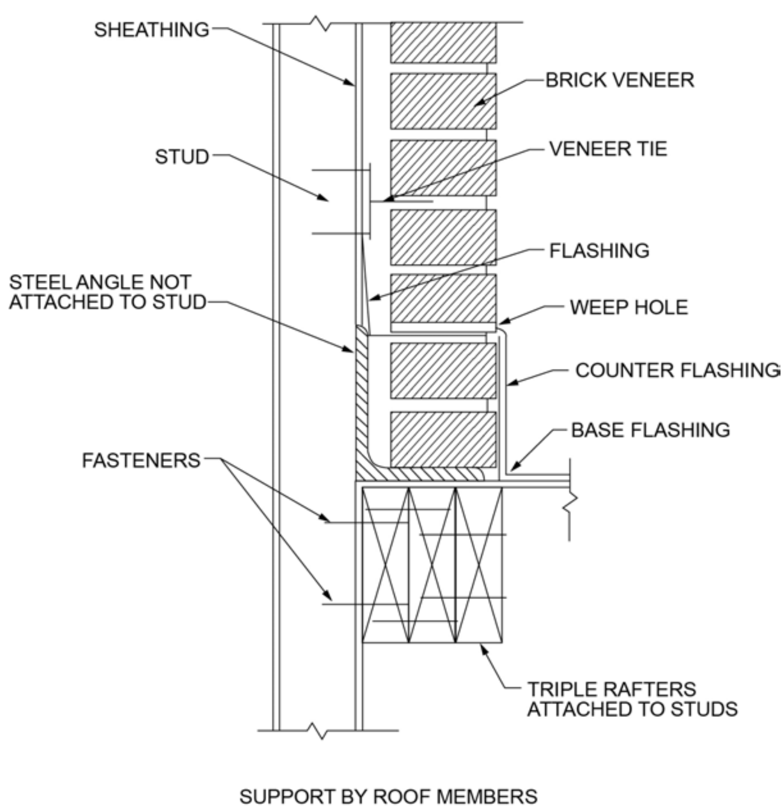


FIGURE R703.8.2.2
EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY ROOF MEMBERS

R703.9.2 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) with drainage. EIFS with drainage shall comply with the following:

1. ASTM E2568.
2. EIFS with drainage shall be required over all wall assemblies with the exception of substrates of concrete or masonry wall assemblies.
3. EIFS with drainage shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.
4. The *water-resistive barrier* shall comply with Section R703.2 or ASTM E2570.
5. The *water-resistive barrier* shall be applied between the EIFS and the wall sheathing.
6. Flashing of EIFS with drainage shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section R703.4.
7. EIFS with drainage shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. EIFS with drainage shall terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the finished ground level.
9. Decorative *trim* shall not be face-nailed through the EIFS with drainage.

R703.10 Fiber cement siding.

R703.10.1 Panel siding. Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2. Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be protected with caulking, or with battens or flashing, or be vertical or horizontal shiplap, or otherwise designed to comply with Section R703.1. Panel siding shall be installed with fasteners in accordance with Table R703.3(1) or the approved manufacturer's instructions.

R703.10.2 Lap siding. Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches (305 mm) shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2. Lap siding shall be lapped a minimum of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends protected with caulking, covered with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing, or shall be designed to comply with Section R703.1. Lap siding courses shall be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed, in accordance with Table R703.3(1) or approved manufacturer's instructions.

R703.11 Vinyl siding. Vinyl siding shall be certified and *labeled* as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D3679 by an *approved* quality control agency.

R703.11.1 Installation. Vinyl siding, soffit and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

R703.11.1.1 Fasteners. Deleted.

R703.11.1.2 Penetration depth. Deleted.

R703.11.1.3 Spacing. Deleted.

R703.11.2 Installation over foam plastic sheathing. Where vinyl siding or *insulated vinyl siding* is installed over foam plastic sheathing, the vinyl siding shall comply with Section R703.11.

Exceptions:

1. Where the foam plastic sheathing is applied directly over *wood structural panels*, fiberboard, gypsum sheathing or other *approved* backing capable of independently resisting the design wind pressure, the vinyl siding shall be

TABLE R703.8.4(1)
TIE ATTACHMENT AND AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

BACKING AND TIE	MINIMUM TIE	MINIMUM TIE FASTENER[a]	AIRSPACE[b]	
Wood stud backing with corrugated sheet metal	22 U.S. gage (0.0299 in.) × $^7/_8$ in. wide	8d common nail[c] ($2^1/_2$ in. × 0.131 in.)	Nominal 1 in. between sheathing and veneer	
Wood stud backing with adjustable metal strand wire	W1.7 (No. 9 U.S. gage; 0.148 in. dia.) with hook embedded in mortar joint[d]	8d common nail[c] ($2^1/_2$ in. × 0.131 in.)	Minimum nominal 1 in. between sheathing and veneer	Maximum $4^5/_8$ in. between backing and veneer
Wood stud backing with adjustable metal strand wire	W2.8 (0.187 in. dia.) with hook embedded in mortar joint[e, f]	8d common nail[c] ($2^1/_2$ in. × 0.131 in.)	Greater than $4^5/_8$ in. between backing and veneer	Maximum $6^5/_8$ in. between backing and veneer

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. All fasteners shall have rust-inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.
b. An airspace that provides drainage shall be permitted to contain mortar from construction.
c. Deleted.
d. Adjustable tie pintles shall include not fewer than 1 pintle leg of wire size W2.8 (MW18) with a maximum offset of $1^1/_4$ inches.
e. Adjustable tie pintles shall include not fewer than 2 pintle legs with a maximum offset of $1^1/_4$ inches. Distance between inside face of brick and end of pintle shall be a maximum of 2 inches.
f. Adjustable tie backing attachment components shall consist of one of the following: eyes with minimum wire W2.8 (MW18), barrel with minimum $^1/_4$-inch outside diameter, or plate with minimum thickness of 0.074 inch and minimum width of $1^1/_4$ inches.

TABLE R703.8.4(2)
REQUIRED BRICK TIE SPACING FOR DIRECT APPLICATION TOWOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING[a, b, c]

FASTENER TYPE[d]	SIZE (DIA. OR SCREW #)	REQUIRED BRICK-TIE SPACING (VERTICAL-TIE SPACING/HORIZONTAL-TIE SPACING) (inches/inches)											
		110 mph V_{ult}			115 mph V_{ult}			130 mph V_{ult}			140 mph V_{ult}		
		Zone 5, Exposure B	Zone 5, Exposure C	Zone 5, Exposure D	Zone 5, Exposure B	Zone 5, Exposure C	Zone 5, Exposure D	Zone 5, Exposure B	Zone 5, Exposure C	Zone 5, Exposure D	Zone 5, Exposure B	Zone 5, Exposure C	Zone 5, Exposure D
Ring Shank Nails	0.091	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12	—	12/12	—	—
	0.148	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12
Screws	#6	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12
	#8	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12
	#10	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12
	#14	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on attachment of brick ties directly to wood structural panel sheathing only. Additional attachment of the brick tie to lumber framing is not required. The brick ties shall be permitted to be placed over any insulating sheathing, not to exceed 2 inches in thickness. Wood structural panel sheathing shall be a minimum 7/16 performance category. The table is based on a building height of 30 feet or less.

b. Wood structural panels shall have a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with NDS.

c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

d. Fasteners shall be sized such that the tip of the fastener passes completely through the wood structural panel sheathing by not less than $^1/_4$ inch.

installed in accordance with Sections R703.3.3 and R703.11.1.

2. Deleted.
3. Deleted.

TABLE R703.11.2
REQUIRED MINIMUM WIND LOAD DESIGN PRESSURE RATING FOR VINYL SIDING INSTALLED OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING ALONE
DELETED

R703.12 Adhered masonry veneer installation. Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section R703.7.3 and the requirements in Sections 12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402. Adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section R703.7.1, Article 3.3C of TMS 602 or the manufacturer's instructions.

R703.12.1 Clearances. On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed:

1. Minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth;
2. Minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas; or
3. Minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

R703.12.2 Flashing at foundation. A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26-gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section R703.4.

R703.12.3 Water-resistive barrier. A *water-resistive barrier* shall be installed as required by Section R703.2 and shall comply with the requirements of Section R703.7.3. The *water-resistive barrier* shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing provided in accordance with Section R703.12.2.

R703.13 Insulated vinyl siding. *Insulated vinyl siding* shall be certified and *labeled* as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7793 by an *approved* quality control agency.

R703.13.1 Insulated vinyl siding and accessories. *Insulated vinyl siding* and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R703.14 Polypropylene siding. *Polypropylene siding* shall be certified and *labeled* as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7254, and those of Section R703.14.2 or Section R703.14.3, by an *approved* quality control agency.

R703.14.1 Polypropylene siding and accessories. *Polypropylene siding* and accessories shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

R703.14.1.1 Installation. *Polypropylene siding* shall be installed over and attached to wood structural panel sheathing with minimum thickness of $^7/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm), or other substrate, composed of wood or wood-based material and fasteners having equivalent withdrawal resistance.

R703.14.1.2 Fastener requirements. Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer's instructions, nails shall be corrosion resistant, with a minimum 0.120-inch (3 mm) shank and minimum 0.313-inch (8 mm) head diameter. Nails shall be a minimum of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) long or as necessary to penetrate sheathing or substrate not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). Where the nail fully penetrates the sheathing or *nailable substrate*, the end of the fastener shall extend not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) beyond the opposite face of the sheathing or substrate. Staples are not permitted.

R703.14.2 Fire separation. *Polypropylene siding* shall not be installed on walls with a *fire separation distance* of less than 5 feet (1524 mm) and walls closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to a building on another lot.

Exception: Walls perpendicular to the line used to determine the *fire separation distance*.

R703.14.3 Flame spread index. The certification of the flame spread index shall be accompanied by a test report stating that all portions of the test specimen ahead of the flame front remained in position during the test in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

R703.15 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to wood framing. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section R703, the cladding manufacturer's approved instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an *approved* design. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Section R703.15.1, Section R703.15.2, or an *approved* design for support of cladding weight.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided *approved* installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section R703.9.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section R703.8.

R703.15.1 Direct attachment. Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table R703.15.1.

R703.15.2 Furred cladding attachment. Where wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table R703.15.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section R317.1 or *naturally durable wood* and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance Section R317.3.

R703.16 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing. Deleted.

R703.17 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to masonry or concrete wall construction. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 703.3 and the cladding manufacturer's instructions or an *approved* design. Foam sheathing shall be attached to masonry or concrete construction in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's installation instructions or an *approved* design. Furring and furring attachments through foam sheathing into concrete or masonry substrate shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Section R301, including support of cladding weight as applicable. Fasteners used to attach cladding or furring through foam sheathing to masonry or concrete substrates shall be *approved* for application into masonry or concrete material and shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer's instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing and connection to a masonry or concrete substrate, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section R703.9.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section R703.8.

SECTION R704
SOFFITS

R704.1 General wind limitations. Where the design wind pressure is 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa) or less, soffits shall comply with Section R704.2. Where the design wind pressure exceeds 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa), soffits shall comply with Section R704.3. The design wind pressure on soffits shall be determined using the component and cladding loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1) for walls using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) and adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2).

R704.2 Soffit installation where the design wind pressure is 30 psf or less. Where the design wind pressure is 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa) or less, soffit installation shall comply with Section R704.2.1, R704.2.2, R704.2.3 or R704.2.4. Soffit materials not addressed in Sections R704.2.1 through R704.2.4 shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R704.2.1 Vinyl soffit panels. Vinyl soffit panels shall be installed using fasteners specified by the manufacturer and shall be fastened at both ends to a supporting component such as a nailing strip, fascia or subfascia component in accordance with Figure R704.2.1(1). Where the unsupported span of soffit panels is greater than 16 inches (406 mm), intermediate nailing strips shall be provided in accordance with Figure R704.2.1(2). Vinyl soffit panels shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fascia covers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R704.2.2 Fiber-cement soffit panels. Fiber-cement soffit panels shall be a minimum of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness and shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II, or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2. Panel joints shall occur over framing or over wood structural panel sheathing. Soffit panels shall be installed with spans and fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R704.2.3 Hardboard soffit panels. Hardboard soffit panels shall be not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch (11.11 mm) in thickness and shall be fastened to framing or nailing strips with $2^1/_2$-inch by 0.113-inch (64 mm by 2.9 mm) siding nails spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) on center at panel edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at intermediate supports.

R704.2.4 Wood structural panel soffit. The minimum nominal thickness for wood structural panel soffits shall be $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) and shall be fastened to framing or nailing strips with 2-inch by 0.099-inch (51 mm by 2.5 mm) nails. Fasteners shall be spaced not less than 6 inches (152 mm) on center at panel edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at intermediate supports.

R704.3 Soffit installation where the design wind pressure exceeds 30 psf. Where the design wind pressure is greater than 30 psf, soffit installation shall comply with Section R704.3.1, R704.3.2, R704.3.3 or R704.3.4. Soffit materials not addressed in Sections R704.3.1 through R704.3.4 shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R704.3.1 Vinyl soffit panels. Vinyl soffit panels and their attachments shall be capable of resisting wind loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1) for walls using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.929 m^2) and adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2). Vinyl soffit panels shall be installed using fasteners specified by the manufacturer and shall be fastened at both ends to a supporting component such as a nailing strip, fascia or subfascia component in accordance with Figure R704.2.1(1). Where the unsupported span of soffit panels is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), intermediate nailing strips shall be provided in accordance with Figure R704.2.1(2). Vinyl soffit panels shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fascia covers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R704.3.2 Fiber-cement soffit panels. Fiber-cement soffit panels shall comply with Section R704.2.2 and shall be capable of resisting wind loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1) for walls using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.929 m^2) and adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2).

R704.3.3 Hardboard soffit panels. Hardboard soffit panels shall comply with the manufacturer's installation instructions and shall be capable of resisting wind loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1) for walls using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.929 m^2) and adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2).

TABLE R703.15.1
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT[a]

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING[b]	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE[c]	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING[d] (inches)									
			16″ o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing					24″ o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing				
			Cladding Weight:					Cladding Weight:				
			3 psf	11 psf	15 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	15 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Wood framing (minimum $1^1/_4$-inch penetration)	0.113″ diameter nail	6	2.00	1.45	1.00	0.75	DR	2.00	0.85	0.55	DR	DR
		8	2.00	1.00	0.65	DR	DR	2.00	0.55	DR	DR	DR
		12	2.00	0.55	DR	DR	DR	1.85	DR	DR	DR	DR
	0.120″ diamete rnail	6	3.00	1.70	1.15	0.90	0.55	3.00	1.05	0.65	0.50	DR
		8	3.00	1.20	0.80	0.60	DR	3.00	0.70	DR	DR	DR
		12	3.00	0.70	DR	DR	DR	2.15	DR	DR	DR	DR
	0.131″ diameter nail	6	4.00	2.15	1.50	1.20	0.75	4.00	1.35	0.90	0.70	DR
		8	4.00	1.55	1.05	0.80	DR	4.00	0.90	0.55	DR	DR
		12	4.00	0.90	0.55	DR	DR	2.70	0.50	DR	DR	DR
	0.162″ diameter nail	6	4.00	3.55	2.50	2.05	1.40	4.00	2.25	1.55	1.25	0.80
		8	4.00	2.55	1.80	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	1.10	0.85	0.50
		12	4.00	1.60	1.10	0.85	0.50	4.00	0.95	0.60	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.

a. Wood framing shall be Spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with AWC NDS.
b. The thickness of wood structural panels complying with the specific gravity requirement of Note a shall be permitted to be included in satisfying the minimum penetration into framing. For cladding connections to wood structural panels, refer to Table R703.3.3. For brick veneer tie connections to wood structural panels, refer to Table R703.8.4(2).
c. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.
d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

R704.3.4 Wood structural panel soffit. Wood structural panel soffits shall be capable of resisting wind loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1) for walls using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.929 m^2) and adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2). Alternatively, wood structural panel soffits shall be installed in accordance with Table R704.3.4.

TABLE R703.15.2
FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT[a, b]

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (inches)[c]	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING[e] (inches)									
					16″ o.c. Furring[f]					24″ o.c. Furring[f]				
					Siding Weight:					Siding Weight:				
					3 psf	11 psf	15 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	15 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Minimum 1× wood furring[d]	Minimum 2× wood stud	0.131″ diameter nail	$1^1/_4$	8	4.00	2.45	1.75	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	1.10	0.85	DR
				12	4.00	1.60	1.10	0.85	DR	4.00	0.95	0.55	DR	DR
				16	4.00	1.10	0.70	DR	DR	3.05	0.60	DR	DR	DR
		0.162″ diameter nail	$1^1/_4$	8	4.00	4.00	3.05	2.45	1.60	4.00	2.75	1.85	1.45	0.85
				12	4.00	2.75	1.85	1.45	0.85	4.00	1.65	1.05	0.75	DR
				16	4.00	1.90	1.25	0.95	DR	4.00	1.05	0.60	DR	DR
		No.10 wood screw	1	12	4.00	2.30	1.60	1.20	0.70	4.00	1.40	0.85	0.60	DR
				16	4.00	1.65	1.05	0.75	DR	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	DR
				24	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR	DR
		$^1/_4$″ lag screw	$1^1/_2$	12	4.00	2.65	1.90	1.50	0.90	4.00	1.65	1.05	0.80	DR
				16	4.00	1.95	1.25	0.95	0.50	4.00	1.10	0.65	DR	DR
				24	4.00	1.10	0.65	DR	DR	3.25	0.50	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.

a. Wood framing and furring shall be Spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with AWC NDS.
b. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.
c. The thickness of wood structural panels complying with the specific gravity requirements of Note a shall be permitted to be included in satisfying the minimum required penetration into framing.
d. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds $^3/_4$ inch and is not more than $1^1/_2$ inches, a minimum 2× wood furring or an approved design shall be used.
e. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.
f. Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

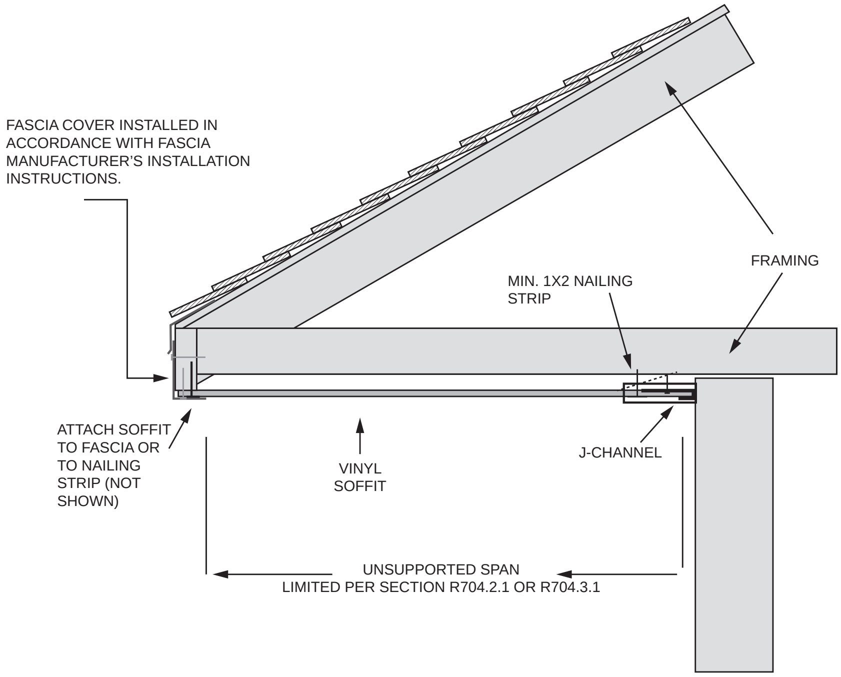


FIGURE R704.2.1(1)
TYPICAL SINGLE-SPAN VINYL SOFFIT PANEL SUPPORT

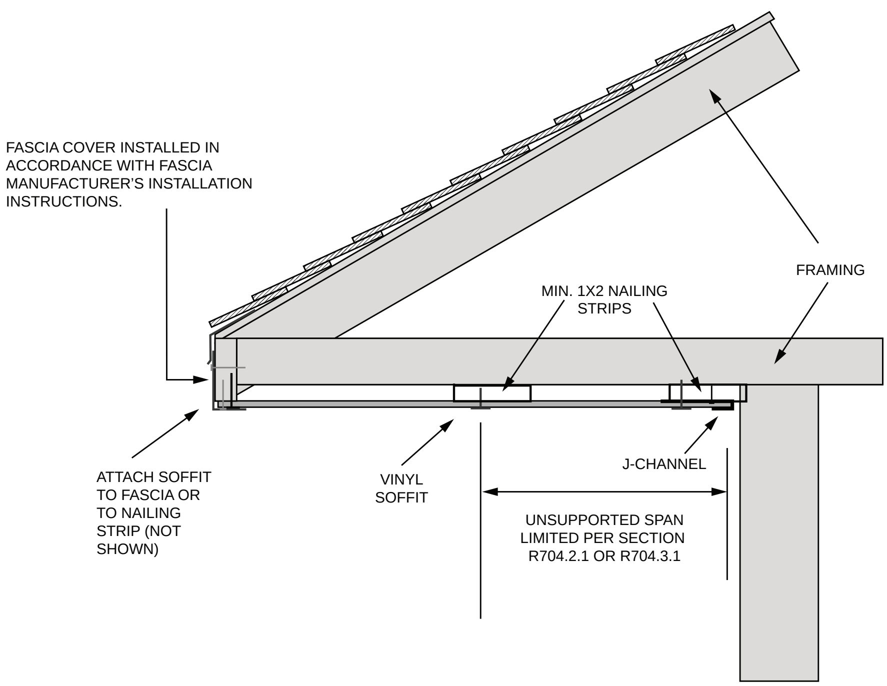


FIGURE R704.2.1(2)
TYPICAL DOUBLE-SPAN VINYL SOFFIT PANEL SUPPORT

TABLE R704.3.4
PRESCRIPTIVE ALTERNATIVE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SOFFIT [b, c, d, e]

MAXIMUM DESIGN PRESSURE (+ or - psf)	MINIMUM PANEL SPAN RATING	MINIMUM PANEL PERFORMANCE CATEGORY	NAIL TYPE AND SIZE	FASTENER[a] SPACING ALONG EDGES AND INTERMEDIATE SUPPORTS	
				Galvanized Steel	Stainless Steel
30	24/0	3/8	6d box (2 × 0.099 × 0.266 head diameter)	6[f]	4
40	24/0	3/8	6d box (2 × 0.099 × 0.266 head diameter)	6	4
50	24/0	3/8	6d box (2 × 0.099 × 0.266 head diameter)	4	4
			8d common ($2^1/_2$ × 0.131 × 0.281 head diameter)	6	6
60	24/0	3/8	6d box (2 × 0.099 × 0.266 head diameter)	4	3
			8d common ($2^1/_2$ × 0.131 × 0.281 head diameter)	6	4
70	24/16	7/16	8d common ($2^1/_2$× 0.131 × 0.281 head diameter)	4	4
			10d box (3 × 0.128 × 0.312 head diameter)	6	4
80	24/16	7/16	8d common ($2^1/_2$ × 0.131 × 0.281 head diameter)	4	4
			10d box (3 × 0.128 × 0.312 head diameter)	6	4
90	32/16	15/32	8d common ($2^1/_2$ × 0.131 × 0.281 head diameter)	4	3
			10d box (3 × 0.128 × 0.312 head diameter)	6	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Fasteners shall comply with Sections R703.3.2 and R703.3.3.
b. Maximum spacing of soffit framing members shall not exceed 24 inches.
c. Wood structural panels shall be of an exterior exposure grade.
d. Wood structural panels shall be installed with strength axis perpendicular to supports with not fewer than two continuous spans.
e. Wood structural panels shall be attached to soffit framing members with specific gravity of at least 0.42. Framing members shall be minimum 2 × 3 nominal with the larger dimension in the cross section aligning with the length of fasteners to provide sufficient embedment depths.
f. Spacing at intermediate supports shall be not greater than 12 inches on center.

CHAPTER 8
ROOF-CEILING CONSTRUCTION

SECTION R801 GENERAL

R801.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the roof-ceiling system for buildings.

R801.2 Requirements. Roof and ceiling construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads imposed in accordance with Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

R801.3 Roof drainage. Deleted.

SECTION R802 WOOD ROOF FRAMING

R802.1 General. Wood and wood-based products used for load-supporting purposes shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

R802.1.1 Sawn lumber. Sawn lumber shall be identified by a grade *mark* of an accredited lumber grading or inspection agency and have design values certified by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

R802.1.1.1 End-jointed lumber. *Approved* end-jointed lumber identified by a grade *mark* conforming to Section R802.1.1 shall be permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required elsewhere in this code to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation "Heat-Resistant Adhesive" or "HRA" included in its grade *mark*.

R802.1.2 Structural glued-laminated timbers. Glued-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI A190.1, ANSI 117 and ASTM D3737.

R802.1.3 Structural log members. Structural log members shall comply with the provisions of ICC 400.

R802.1.4 Structural composite lumber. Structural capacities for *structural composite lumber* shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

R802.1.5 Fire-retardant-treated wood. Fire-retardant-treated wood (FRTW) is any wood product that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, a listed flame spread index of 25 or less. In addition, the ASTM E84 or UL 723 test shall be continued for an additional 20-minute period and the flame front shall not progress more than 10.5 feet (3200 mm) beyond the center line of the burners at any time during the test.

R802.1.5.1 Pressure process. For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (344.7 kPa).

R802.1.5.2 Other means during manufacture. For wood products impregnated with chemicals by other means during manufacture, the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product. The use of paints, coating, stains or other surface treatments is not an *approved* method of protection as required by this section.

R802.1.5.3 Testing. For fire-retardant-treated wood products, the front and back faces of the wood product shall be tested in accordance with and produce the results required in Section R802.1.5.

R802.1.5.3.1 Fire testing of wood structural panels. *Wood structural panels* shall be tested with a ripped or cut longitudinal gap of $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm).

R802.1.5.4 Labeling. In addition to the *labels* required by Section 802.1.1 for sawn lumber and Section 803.2.1 for *wood structural panels*, each piece of *fire-retardant-treated* lumber and *wood structural panel* shall be *labeled*. The *label* shall contain:

1. The identification *mark* of an *approved agency* in accordance with Section 1703.5 of the *International Building Code.*
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread index and *smoke-developed index*.
6. Method of drying after treatment.
7. Conformance to applicable standards in accordance with Sections R802.1.5.5 through R802.1.5.10.
8. For FRTW exposed to weather, or a damp or wet location, the words "No increase in the listed classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test" (ASTM D2898).

R802.1.5.5 Strength adjustments. Design values for untreated lumber and *wood structural panels* as specified in Section R802.1 shall be adjusted for fire-retardant-treated wood. Adjustments to design values shall be based on an *approved* method of investigation that takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

R802.1.5.6 Wood structural panels. The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5516. The test data developed by ASTM D5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for their treatment.

R802.1.5.7 Lumber. For each species of wood treated, the effect of the treatment and the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5664. The test data developed by ASTM D5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

R802.1.5.8 Exposure to weather. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is exposed to weather or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as “Exterior” to indicate there is not an increase in the *listed* flame spread index as defined in Section R802.1.5 when subjected to ASTM D2898.

R802.1.5.9 Interior applications. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall have a moisture content of not over 28 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201 procedures at 92-percent relative humidity. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall be tested in accordance with Section R802.1.5.6 or R802.1.5.7. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood designated as Type A shall be tested in accordance with the provisions of this section.

R802.1.5.10 Moisture content. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be dried to a moisture content of 19 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for *wood structural panels* before use. For wood kiln dried after treatment (KDAT) the kiln temperatures shall not exceed those used in kiln drying the lumber and plywood submitted for the tests described in Section R802.1.5.6 for plywood and R802.1.5.7 for lumber.

R802.1.6 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

R802.1.7 Engineered wood rim board. Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with ANSI/APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

R802.1.8 Prefabricated wood I-joists. Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055.

R802.2 Design and construction. The roof and ceiling assembly shall provide continuous ties across the structure to prevent roof thrust from being applied to the supporting walls. The assembly shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Figures R606.11(1), R606.11(2) and R606.11(3) or in accordance with AWC NDS.

R802.3 Ridge. A ridge board used to connect opposing rafters shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Opposing rafters at the ridge must align within the thickness of the ridge member. Regularly spaced hip and valley rafters need not align. Where ceiling joist or rafter ties do not provide continuous ties across the structure as required by Section R802.5.2, the ridge shall be supported by a wall or ridge beam designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and supported on each end by a wall or column.

R802.4 Rafters. Rafters shall be in accordance with this section. See Figure R802.4.5 for illustration of braced rafter construction.

R802.4.1 Rafter size. Rafters shall be sized based on the rafter spans in Tables R802.4.1(1) through R802.4.1(8). Rafter spans shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter. For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

TABLE R802.4.1(9)
RAFTER SPAN ADJUSTMENT FACTOR

H_C/H_R[a]	RAFTER SPAN ADJUSTMENT FACTOR
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

a. H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls; H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

TABLE R802.4.1(1)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, *L*/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	11-1	17-4	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-10	16-10	21-4	26-0	Note b	10-0	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-fir	SS	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	10 -7	16-8	22-0	Note b	Note b	10-4	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b
	Hem-fir	#2	10-1	15-11	20-8	25-3	Note b	9-8	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern pine	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-8	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern pine	#2	10-4	15-7	19-8	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note b	Note b	10-7	16-8	21-9	Note b	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-3	20-7	25-2	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-7	12-7	16-0	19-6	22-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11	6-7	9-8	12-12	14-11	17-3
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-11	24-4	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-1	16-7	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5	8-5	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	25-7	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern pine	#2	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(1)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-10	15-5	20-4	25-11	Note b	9-10	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-5	14-0	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-10	20-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3	6-0	8-9	11-2	12-7	15-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Hem-fir	#1	9-1	13-10	17-6	21-5	24-10	8-2	12-0	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-fir	#2	8-8	12-11	16-4	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern pine	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-4	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-3	14-3	18-1	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-2	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-1	14-3	18-9	23-11	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-4	7-0	10-4	13-0	15-11	18-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	5-4	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	12-4	15-8	19-2	22-2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3
	Hem-fir	#2	7-11	11-7	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	13-10	17-6	20-10	24-8
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	12-9	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.4.1(2)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-10	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-6	20-5	26-0	Note b	9-10	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	19-0	24-3	Note b	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern pine	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-1	14-4	18-11	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-11	14-1	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-7	12-7	16-0	19-6	22-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Hem-fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-1	16-7	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#2	8-4	13-1	17-3	21-11	25-5	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-2	Note b	8-11	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern pine	#2	8-7	13-5	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(2)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7	Note b	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-10	20-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3	6-0	8-9	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Hem-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	25-9
	Hem-fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-5	24-10	8-2	12-0	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-fir	#2	7-10	12-4	16-3	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-1	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-9	Note b	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-0	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-4	7-0	10-4	13-0	15-11	18-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	5-4	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-10	23-0
	Hem-fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-8	19-2	22-2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3
	Hem-fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	20-10	24-8
	Southern pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.4.1(3)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-0	15-9	20-9	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-9	20-5	24-11	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-8	14-9	18-8	22-9	Note b	9-0	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-6	14-0	17-8	21-7	25-1	8-6	12-6	15-10	19-4	22-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	SS	9-6	14-10	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-10	19-7	24-1	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-3	14-6	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-11	13-0	16-6	20-1	23-4
	Hem-fir	#2	8-10	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern pine	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-4	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-6	14-10	19-0	22-3	Note b	9-0	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern pine	#2	8-7	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-7	18-8	22-9	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-0	17-8	21-7	25-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-9	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-3	12-1	15-4	18-9	21-8	7-5	10-10	13-8	16-9	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-4	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-7	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-9	14-10
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-1	20-10	24-2
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	12-7	15-11	19-6	22-7	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2
	Hem-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-5	1-11	25-11
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	13-0	16-6	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-1	25-7	8-5	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(3)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-7	13-6	17-9	22-1	25-7	8-7	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-7	11-0	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6
	Hem-fir	SS	8-1	12-9	16-9	21-4	24-8	8-1	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Hem-fir	#1	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9	20-7	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5
	Hem-fir	#2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Southern pine	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern pine	#1	8-0	11-10	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-11	12-5	16-5	20-2	23-4	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-8	15-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-7	6-9	8-7	10-5	12-1
	Hem-fir	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-1	22-1	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern pine	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-0	23-7	7-10	11-10	15-0	17-11	21-2
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-4	11-7	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.4.1(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, *L*/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-9	13-9	18-2	22-9	Note b	8-9	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-7	13-6	17-8	21-7	25-1	8-6	12-6	15-10	19-4	22-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	26-0	8-5	13-0	16-6	20-1	23-4
	Hem-fir	#2	8-0	12-7	16-7	21-0	24-4	8-0	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-3	Note b	8-7	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern pine	#2	8-3	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-7	25-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	12-1	15-4	18-9	21-8	7-5	10-10	13-8	16-9	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-4	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-7	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-9	14-10
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-2
	Hem-fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-6	22-7	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2
	Hem-fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	25-11
	Southern pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(4)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, *L*/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-9	12-3	16-1	20-7	25-0	7-9	12-3	16-1	19-9	22-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-6	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-4	11-0	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-9	9-1	12-6	15-3	17-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-1	22-1
	Hem-fir	#1	7-2	11-4	14-7	17-9	20-7	7-0	16-3	13-0	15-11	18-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-10	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Southern pine	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern pine	#1	7-4	11-7	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-2	11-4	14-11	19-0	23-1	7-2	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	22-10	7-3	11-4	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-0	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-8	15-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-7	6-9	8-7	10-5	12-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	6-10	10-9	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#1	6-8	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Hem-fir	#2	6-4	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	17-11	21-2
	Southern pine	#1	6-10	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-11	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.4.1(5)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, *L*/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-5	13-3	17-6	22-4	26-0	8-5	13-3	17-3	21-1	24-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-2	12-0	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-7	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5	7-3	10-7	13-4	16-4	18-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-0	8-9	11-0	13-6	15-7	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-fir	SS	8-0	12-6	16-6	21-1	25-6	8-0	12-6	16-6	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#1	7-10	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#2	7-5	11-1	14-0	17-2	19-11	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern pine	SS	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-11	Note b	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-5	25-3
	Southern pine	#1	8-0	12-3	15-6	18-2	21-7	7-7	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern pine	#2	7-0	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-1	7-10	12-3	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	19-9	22-10	7-8	11-10	14-11	18-3	21-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-3	9-2	11-7	14-2	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-1	22-1	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	23-7	7-6	11-10	15-7	18-6	21-10
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-9	13-8	15-11	19-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(5)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-3	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-3	10-9	13-8	16-8	19-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-8	8-4	10-9	12-11	15-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5
	Hem-fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	17-5	20-2	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Hem-fir	#1	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10	8-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-fir	#2	6-0	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Southern pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-3	21-7	7-1	11-2	14-2	16-11	20-0
	Southern pine	#1	6-6	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-5	16-5	19-1	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6	5-1	7-6	9-5	11-7	13-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1	3-11	5-8	7-3	8-10	10-3
	Hem-fir	SS	6-4	9-11	12-9	15-7	18-0	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-fir	#1	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	8-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Hem-fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern pine	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	16-4	19-3	6-7	10-0	12-8	15-2	17-10
	Southern pine	#1	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-2	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.4.1(6)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-8	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-5	11-7	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-5	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5	7-3	10-7	13-4	16-4	18-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-0	8-9	11-0	13-6	15-7	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4
	Hem-fir	#1	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-4	21-3	7-1	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#2	6-9	10-8	14-0	17-2	19-11	6-9	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3
	Southern pine	#1	7-3	11-5	15-0	18-2	21-7	7-3	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern pine	#2	6-11	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-5	22-5	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-3	21-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-9	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-3	9-2	11-7	14-2	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6
	Hem-fir	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	21-2	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	20-5
	Hem-fir	#1	6-5	10-2	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-5	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	6-2	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	22-0	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	21-10
	Southern pine	#1	6-7	10-4	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-8	19-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(6)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-7	10-4	13-7	17-4	20-11	6-7	10-4	13-7	16-8	19-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-8	8-4	10-7	12-11	15-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5
	Hem-fir	SS	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-1	18-8
	Hem-fir	#1	6-1	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-fir	#2	5-9	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Southern pine	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-11	20-0
	Southern pine	#1	6-2	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-1	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-1	6-1	9-6	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-1	9-7	12-7	16-1	18-8	6-1	9-7	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6	5-1	7-6	9-5	11-7	13-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1	3-11	5-8	7-3	8-10	10-3
	Hem-fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-2	18-0	5-9	9-1	11-9	14-5	15-11
	Hem-fir	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Hem-fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern pine	SS	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-10	19-3	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-2	17-10
	Southern pine	#1	5-9	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-8	8-10	11-8	14-8	17-1	5-8	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

TABLE R802.4.1(7)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum Rafter Spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-7	11-10	15-8	19-9	22-10	7-7	11-10	15-3	18-7	21-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-10	7-1	9-0	11-0	12-9
	Hem-fir	SS	7-2	11-3	14-9	18-10	22-1	7-2	11-3	14-8	18-0	20-10
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-7	9-8	12-3	15-0	17-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-2	9-1	11-5	14-0	16-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Southern pine	SS	7-5	11-8	15-4	19-7	23-7	7-5	11-8	15-4	18-10	22-3
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-9	10-0	12-8	14-10	17-7
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-9	8-7	10-11	12-11	15-3
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-0	11-0	14-6	18-0	20-11	7-0	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-10	10-9	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-4	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-6	6-6	8-3	10-1	11-9	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-6	10-2	13-5	16-6	19-2	6-6	10-1	12-9	15-7	18-0
	Hem-fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1
	Hem-fir	#2	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-10	14-11	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1
	Hem-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
	Southern pine	SS	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-4	20-5	6-9	10-7	13-9	16-4	19-3
	Southern pine	#1	6-2	9-2	11-8	13-8	16-2	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3
	Southern pine	#2	5-3	7-11	10-0	11-11	14-0	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2
	Southern pine	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-2	10-10	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-4	10-0	12-9	15-7	18-1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(7)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum Rafter Spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-6	10-1	12-9	15-7	18-1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-0	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-3	10-8	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-1	9-7	12-4	15-1	17-4	6-1	9-2	11-8	14-2	15-5
	Hem-fir	#1	5-7	8-2	10-3	12-7	14-7	5-3	7-8	9-8	11-10	13-9
	Hem-fir	#2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-9	13-7	4-11	7-2	9-1	11-1	12-10
	Hem-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
	Southern pine	SS	6-4	10-0	13-2	15-10	18-8	6-4	9-10	12-6	14-11	17-7
	Southern pine	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	12-5	14-9	5-4	7-11	10-0	11-9	13-11
	Southern pine	#2	4-10	7-3	9-2	10-10	12-9	4-6	6-10	8-8	10-3	12-1
	Southern pine	#3	3-8	5-6	6-11	8-4	9-11	3-6	5-2	6-6	7-11	9-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-0	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-0	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	3-8	5-4	6-9	8-3	9-7	3-5	5-0	6-4	7-9	9-10
	Hem-fir	SS	5-8	8-8	11-0	13-6	13-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-4	12-4
	Hem-fir	#1	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-fir	#2	4-8	6-9	8-7	10-6	12-2	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-11	11-6
	Hem-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10
	Southern pine	SS	5-11	9-3	11-11	14-2	16-8	5-11	8-10	11-2	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#1	5-0	7-6	9-6	11-1	13-2	4-9	7-1	9-0	10-6	12-5
	Southern pine	#2	4-4	6-5	8-2	9-9	11-5	4-1	6-1	7-9	9-2	10-9
	Southern pine	#3	3-4	4-11	6-2	7-6	8-10	3-1	4-7	5-10	7-1	8-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-6	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	12-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

TABLE R802.4.1(8)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-10	10-9	14-3	18-2	22-1	6-10	10-9	14-3	18-2	21-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-7	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-6	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-10	7-1	9-0	11-0	12-9
	Hem-fir	SS	6-6	10-2	13-5	17-2	20-10	6-6	10-2	13-5	17-2	20-10
	Hem-fir	#1	6-4	10-0	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-4	9-8	12-3	15-0	17-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-1	9-6	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	9-1	11-5	14-0	16-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Southern pine	SS	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-10	21-8	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-10	21-8
	Southern pine	#1	6-6	10-2	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-6	10-0	12-8	14-10	17-7
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-9	8-7	10-11	12-11	15-3
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-4	10-0	13-2	16-9	20-5	6-4	10-0	13-2	16-9	19-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-2	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-2	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-3	9-10	12-11	16-6	19-10	6-3	9-10	12-11	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-0	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-4	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-6	6-6	8-3	10-1	11-9	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1
	Hem-fir	SS	5-11	9-3	12-2	15-7	18-11	5-11	9-3	12-2	15-7	18-0
	Hem-fir	#1	5-9	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1
	Hem-fir	#2	5-6	8-4	10-6	12-10	14-11	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1
	Hem-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
	Southern pine	SS	6-1	9-7	12-8	16-2	19-8	6-1	9-7	12-8	16-2	19-3
	Southern pine	#1	5-11	9-2	11-8	13-8	16-2	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3
	Southern pine	#2	5-3	7-11	10-0	11-11	14-0	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2
	Southern pine	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-2	10-10	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-3	18-1	5-9	9-1	11-11	14-8	17-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9

(continued)

TABLE R802.4.1(8)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	5-10	9-3	12-2	15-6	18-1	5-10	9-3	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-0	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-3	10-8	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-fir	SS	5-6	8-8	11-6	14-8	17-4	5-6	8-8	11-6	14-2	15-5
	Hem-fir	#1	5-5	8-2	10-3	12-7	14-7	5-3	7-8	9-8	11-10	13-9
	Hem-fir	#2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-9	13-7	4-11	7-2	9-1	11-1	12-10
	Hem-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
	Southern pine	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-3	18-6	5-9	9-1	11-11	14-11	17-7
	Southern pine	#1	5-6	8-5	10-8	12-5	14-9	5-4	7-11	10-0	11-9	13-11
	Southern pine	#2	4-10	7-3	9-2	10-10	12-9	4-6	6-10	8-8	10-3	12-1
	Southern pine	#3	3-8	5-6	6-11	8-4	9-11	3-6	5-2	6-6	7-11	9-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-5	8-6	11-3	14-3	16-6	5-5	8-6	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	5-5	8-7	11-3	13-11	16-2	5-5	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	3-8	5-4	6-9	8-3	9-7	3-5	5-0	6-4	7-9	9-0
	Hem-fir	SS	5-2	8-1	10-8	13-6	13-11	5-2	8-1	10-5	12-4	12-4
	Hem-fir	#1	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-fir	#2	4-8	6-9	8-7	10-6	12-2	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-11	11-6
	Hem-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10
	Southern pine	SS	5-4	8-5	11-1	14-2	16-8	5-4	8-5	11-1	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#1	5-0	7-6	9-6	11-1	13-2	4-9	7-1	9-0	10-6	12-5
	Southern pine	#2	4-4	6-5	8-2	9-9	11-5	4-1	6-1	7-9	9-2	10-9
	Southern pine	#3	3-4	4-11	6-2	7-6	8-10	3-1	4-7	5-10	7-1	8-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-0	7-11	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-9	9-10	12-0	12-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table R802.4.1(9).

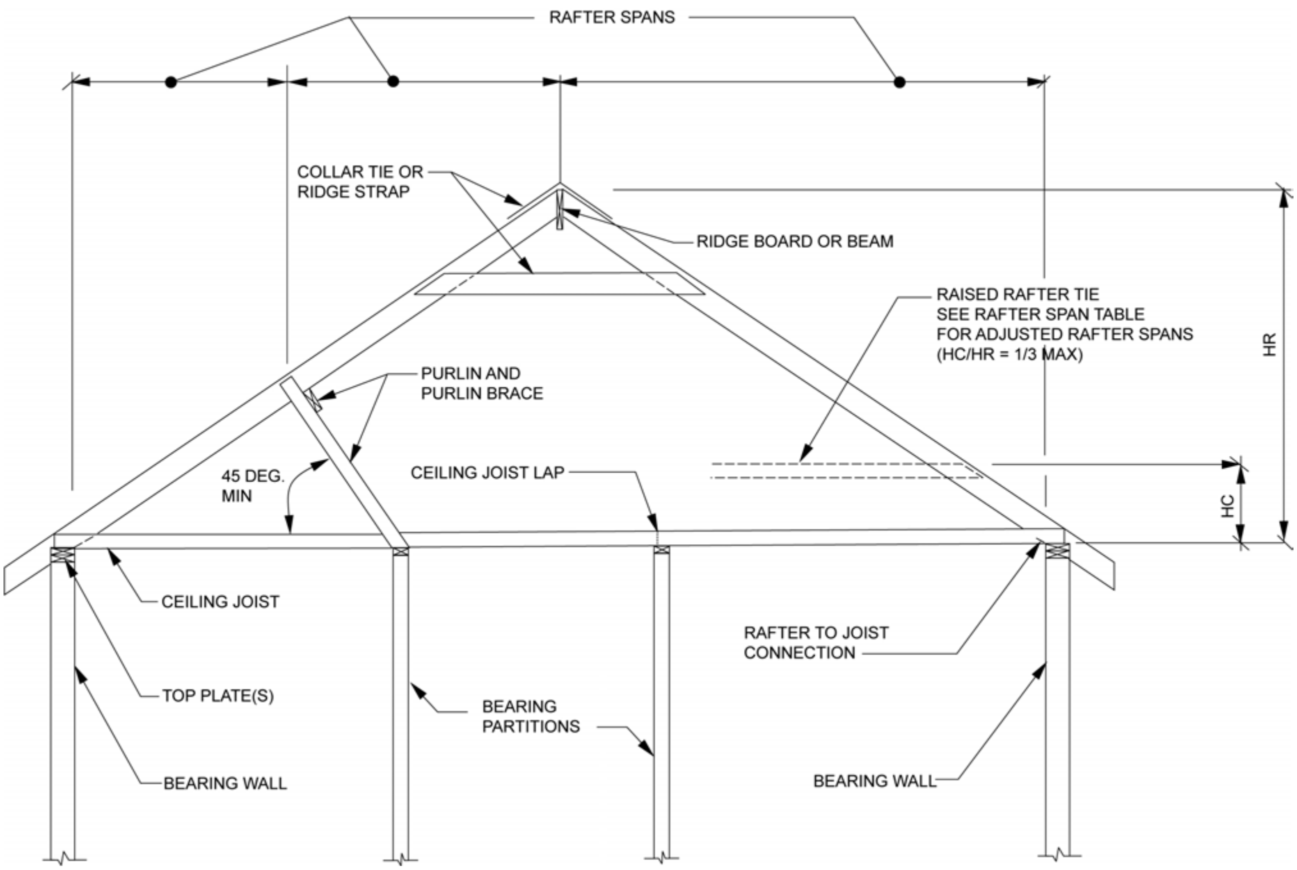
R802.4.2 Framing details. Rafters shall be framed opposite from each other to a ridge board, shall not be offset more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from each other and shall be connected with a collar tie or ridge strap in accordance with Section R802.4.6 or directly opposite from each other to a gusset plate in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Rafters shall be nailed to the top wall plates in accordance with Table R602.3(1) unless the *roof assembly* is required to comply with the uplift requirements of Section R802.11.

R802.4.3 Hips and valleys. Hip and valley rafters shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Hip and valley rafters shall be supported at the ridge by a brace to a bearing partition or be designed to carry and distribute the specific load at that point.

R802.4.4 Rafter supports. Where the roof pitch is less than 3:12 (25-percent slope), structural members that support rafters, such as ridges, hips and valleys, shall be designed as beams, and bearing shall be provided for rafters in accordance with Section R802.6.

R802.4.5 Purlins. Installation of purlins to reduce the span of rafters is permitted as shown in Figure R802.4.5. Purlins shall be sized not less than the required size of the rafters that they support. Purlins shall be continuous and shall be supported by 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) braces installed to bearing walls at a slope not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal. The braces shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center and the unbraced length of braces shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm).

R802.4.6 Collar ties. Where collar ties are used to connect opposing rafters, they shall be located in the upper third of the attic space and fastened in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Collar ties shall be not less than 1 inch by 4 inches (25 mm × 102 mm) nominal, spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. Ridge straps shall be permitted to replace collar ties. Ridge straps shall be not less than $1^1/_4$-inch (32 mm) × 20 gage and shall be nailed to the top edge of each rafter with not fewer than three 10d common (3″ × 0.148″) nails with the closest nail not closer than $2^3/_8$ inches (60.3 mm) from the end of the rafter.



For SI: 1 degree = 0.018 rad.
H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of rafter support walls.
H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

FIGURE R802.4.5
BRACED RAFTER CONSTRUCTION

R802.5 Ceiling joists. Ceiling joists shall be continuous across the structure or securely joined where they meet over interior partitions in accordance with Section R802.5.2.1. Ceiling joists shall be fastened to the top plate in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

R802.5.1 Ceiling joist size. Ceiling joists shall be sized based on the joist spans in Tables R802.5.1(1) and R802.5.1(2). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

R802.5.2 Ceiling joist and rafter connections. Where ceiling joists run parallel to rafters and are located in the bottom third of the rafter height, they shall be installed in accordance with Figure R802.4.5 and fastened to rafters in accordance with Table R802.5.2(1). Where the ceiling joists are installed above the bottom third of the rafter height, the ridge shall be designed as a beam in accordance with Section R802.3. Where ceiling joists do not run parallel to rafters, rafters shall be tied across the structure with a rafter tie in accordance with Section R802.5.2.2, or the ridge shall be designed as a beam in accordance with Section R802.3.

TABLE R802.5.1(1)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	13-2	20-8	Note a	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	12-8	19-11	Note a	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	11-1	16-3	20-7	25-2
	Hem-fir	SS	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	11-7	18-2	24-0	Note a
	Hem-fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
	Southern pine	SS	12-11	20-3	Note a	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Southern pine	#3	10-1	14-11	18-9	22-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-11	18-9	24-8	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	11-6	18-1	23-10	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	9-7	14-1	17-10	21-9
	Hem-fir	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	10-6	16-6	21-9	Note a
	Hem-fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Southern pine	SS	11-9	18-5	24-3	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	11-3	17-8	23-10	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	10-9	16-11	21-7	25-7
	Southern pine	#3	8-9	12-11	16-3	19-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3

(continued)

TABLE R802.5.1(1)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, *L*/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-3	17-8	23-3	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-7	16-8	21-4	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Hem-fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	9-11	15-7	20-6	25-3
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Southern -pine	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	10-7	16-8	22-0	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	10-2	15-7	19-8	23-5
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-10	24-3
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.5.1(2)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, *L*/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-10	24-3
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-11	13-0	16-6	20-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-10	9-11	12-7	15-5
	Hem-fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8
	Hem-fir	#1	8-9	13-7	17-2	21-0
	Hem-fir	#2	8-4	12-8	16-0	19-7
	Hem-fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Southern pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7
	Southern pine	#1	8-11	14-0	17-9	20-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-0	12-0	15-3	18-1
	Southern pine	#3	6-2	9-2	11-6	14-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0

(continued)

TABLE R802.5.1(2)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3
	Hem-fir	#1	8-3	12-4	15-8	19-2
	Hem-fir	#2	7-10	11-7	14-8	17-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Southern pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1
	Southern pine	#1	8-5	12-9	16-2	18-11
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-6
	Hem-fir	#1	7-7	11-1	14-0	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	7-1	10-4	13-1	16-0
	Hem-fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6
	Southern pine	#1	7-8	11-5	14-6	16-11
	Southern pine	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	14-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-1	7-5	9-5	11-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE R802.5.2(2)
HEEL JOINT CONNECTION ADJUSTMENT FACTORS

H_C/H_R [a, b]	HEEL JOINT CONNECTION ADJUSTMENT FACTOR
1/3	1.5
1/4	1.33
1/5	1.25
1/6	1.2
1/10 or less	1.11

a. H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically from the top of the rafter support walls to the bottom of the ceiling joists or rafter ties; H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically from the top of the rafter support walls to the bottom of the roof ridge.
b. Where H_C/H_R exceeds 1/3, connections shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

R802.5.2.1 Ceiling joists lapped. Ends of ceiling joists shall be lapped not less than 3 inches (76 mm) or butted over bearing partitions or beams and toenailed to the bearing member. Where ceiling joists are used to provide the continuous tie across the building, lapped joists shall be nailed together in accordance with Table R802.5.2(1) and butted joists shall be tied together with a connection of equivalent capacity. Laps in joists that do not provide the continuous tie across the building shall be permitted to be nailed in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

R802.5.2.2 Rafter ties. Wood rafter ties shall be not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm × 102 mm) installed in accordance with Table R802.5.2(1) at a

TABLE R802.5.2(1)
RAFTER/CEILING JOIST HEEL JOINT CONNECTIONS[g]

RAFTER SLOPE	RAFTER SPACING (inches)	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)											
		20[e]			30			50			70		
		Roof span (feet)											
		12	24	36	12	24	36	12	24	36	12	24	36
		Required number of 16d common nails per heel joint splices [a, b,c, d, f]											
3:12	12	3	5	8	3	6	9	5	9	13	6	12	17
	16	4	7	10	4	8	12	6	12	17	8	15	23
	19.2	4	8	12	5	10	14	7	14	21	9	18	27
	24	5	10	15	6	12	18	9	17	26	12	23	34
4:12	12	3	4	6	3	5	7	4	7	10	5	9	13
	16	3	5	8	3	6	9	5	9	13	6	12	17
	19.2	3	6	9	4	7	11	6	11	16	7	14	21
	24	4	8	11	5	9	13	7	13	19	9	17	26
5:12	12	3	3	5	3	4	6	3	6	8	4	7	11
	16	3	4	6	3	5	7	4	7	11	5	9	14
	19.2	3	5	7	3	6	9	5	9	13	6	11	17
	24	3	6	9	4	7	11	6	11	16	7	14	21
7:12	12	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	4	6	3	5	8
	16	3	3	5	3	4	5	3	5	8	4	7	10
	19.2	3	4	5	3	4	6	3	6	9	4	8	12
	24	3	5	7	3	5	8	4	8	11	5	10	15
9:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	4	6
	16	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	4	6	3	5	8
	19.2	3	3	4	3	4	5	3	5	7	3	6	9
	24	3	4	5	3	4	6	3	6	9	4	8	12
12:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	5
	16	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	4	6
	19.2	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	4	6	3	5	7
	24	3	3	4	3	3	5	3	5	7	3	6	9

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. 10d common (3″ × 0.148″) nails shall be permitted to be substituted for 16d common ($3^1/_2$″ × 0.162″) nails where the required number of nails is taken as 1.2 times the required number of 16d common nails, rounded up to the next full nail.
b. Heel joint connections are not required where the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.
c. Where intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a load-bearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements shall be permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.
d. Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices.
e. Applies to roof live load of 20 psf or less.
f. Tabulated heel joint connection requirements assume that ceiling joists or rafter ties are located at the bottom of the attic space. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic, heel joint connection requirements shall be increased by the adjustment factors in Table 802.5.2(2).
g. Tabulated requirements are based on 10 psf roof dead load in combination with the specified ground snow load and roof live load.

maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) on center. Other *approved* rafter tie methods shall be permitted.

R802.5.2.3 Blocking. Blocking shall be not less than utility grade lumber.

R802.6 Bearing. The ends of each rafter or ceiling joist shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry or concrete. The bearing on masonry or concrete shall be direct, or a sill plate of 2-inch (51 mm) minimum nominal thickness shall be provided under the rafter or ceiling joist. The sill plate shall provide a minimum nominal bearing area of 48 square inches (30 968 mm^2). Where the roof pitch is greater than or equal to 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), and ceiling joists or rafter ties are connected to rafters to provide a continuous tension tie in accordance with Section R802.5.2, vertical bearing of the top of the rafter against the ridge board shall satisfy this bearing requirement.

R802.6.1 Finished ceiling material. If the finished ceiling material is installed on the ceiling prior to the attachment of the ceiling to the walls, such as in construction at a factory, a compression strip of the same thickness as the finished ceiling material shall be installed directly above the top plate of bearing walls if the compressive strength of the finished ceiling material is less than the loads it will be required to withstand. The compression strip shall cover the entire length of such top plate and shall be not less than one-half the width of the top plate. It shall be of material capable of transmitting the loads transferred through it.

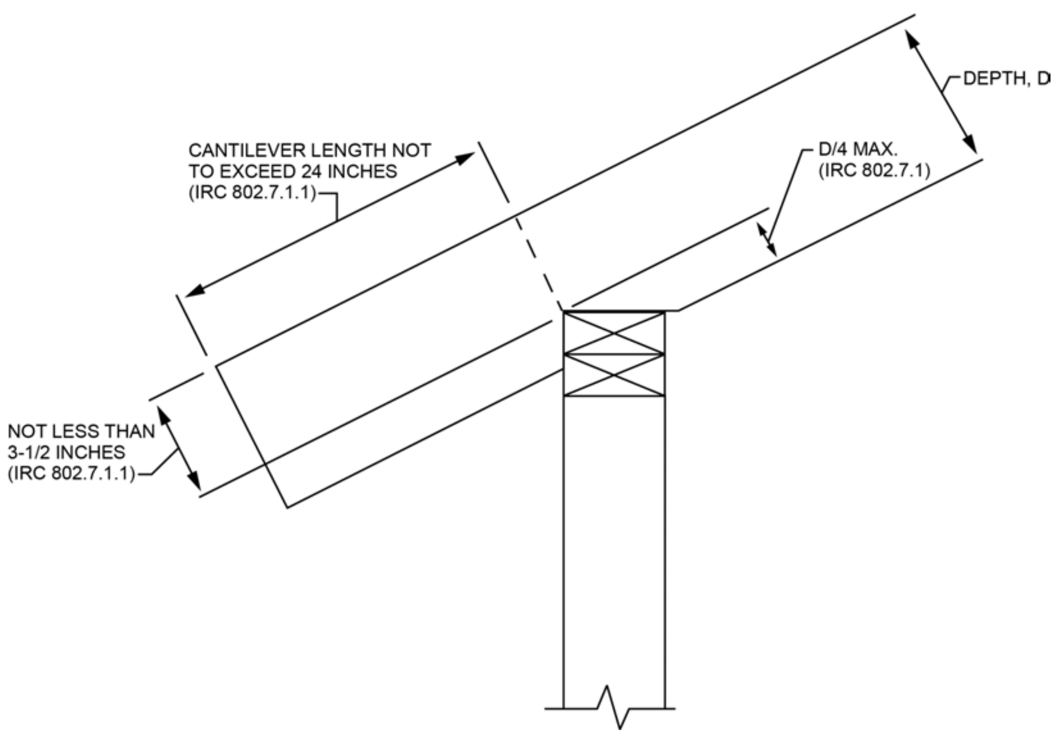
R802.7 Cutting, drilling and notching. Structural roof members shall not be cut, bored or notched in excess of the limitations specified in this section.

R802.7.1 Sawn lumber. Cuts, notches and holes in solid lumber joists, rafters, blocking and beams shall comply with the provisions of Section R502.8.1 except that cantilevered portions of rafters shall be permitted in accordance with Section R802.7.1.1.

R802.7.1.1 Cantilevered portions of rafters. Notches on cantilevered portions of rafters are permitted provided the dimension of the remaining portion of the rafter is not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) and the length of the cantilever does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) in accordance with Figure R802.7.1.1.

R802.7.1.2 Ceiling joist taper cut. Taper cuts at the ends of the ceiling joist shall not exceed one-fourth the depth of the member in accordance with Figure R802.7.1.2.

R802.7.2 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, *structural composite lumber*, structural glue-laminated members, cross-laminated timber members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a *registered design professional*.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R802.7.1.1
RAFTER NOTCH

R802.8 Lateral support. Roof framing members and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 5 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be provided with lateral support at points of bearing to prevent rotation. For roof rafters with ceiling joists attached in accordance with Table R602.3(1), the depth-to-thickness ratio for the total assembly shall be determined using the combined thickness of the rafter plus the attached ceiling joist.

Exception: Roof trusses shall be braced in accordance with Section R802.10.3.

R802.8.1 Bridging. Rafters and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 6 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be supported laterally by solid blocking, diagonal bridging (wood or metal) or a continuous 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) wood strip nailed across the rafters or ceiling joists at intervals not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm).

R802.9 Framing of openings. Openings in roof and ceiling framing shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Where the header joist span does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), the header joist shall be permitted to be a single member the same size as the ceiling joist or rafter. Single trimmer joists shall be permitted to be used to carry a single header joist that is located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the trimmer joist bearing. Where the header joist span exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm), the trimmer joists and the header joist shall be doubled and of sufficient cross section to support the ceiling joists or rafter framing into the header. *Approved* hangers shall be used for the header joist to trimmer joist connections where the header joist span exceeds 6 feet (1829 mm). Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) long shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

R802.10 Wood trusses.

R802.10.1 Truss design drawings. *Truss design drawings*, prepared in conformance to Section R802.10.1, shall be provided to the *building official* and *approved* prior to installation. *Truss design drawings* shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. *Truss design drawings* shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints.
3. Required bearing widths.
4. Design loads as applicable.
   - 4.1. Top chord *live load* (as determined from Section R301.6).
   - 4.2. Top chord dead load.
   - 4.3. Bottom chord *live load*.
   - 4.4. Bottom chord dead load.
   - 4.5. Concentrated loads and their points of application.
   - 4.6. Controlling wind and earthquake loads.

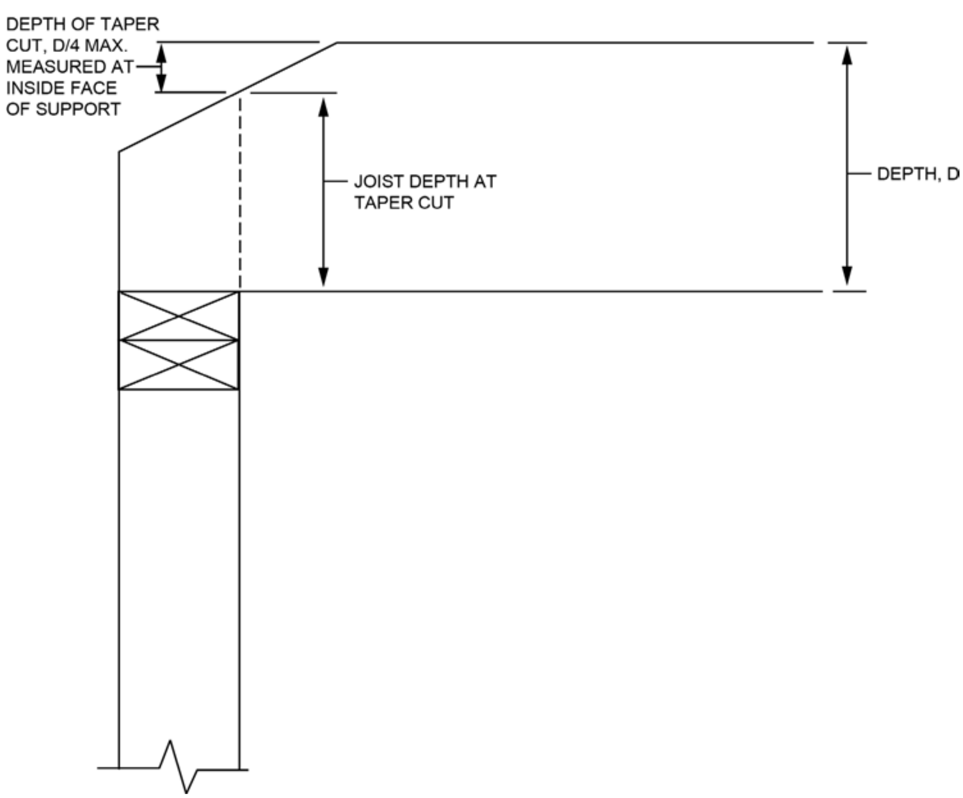


FIGURE R802.7.1.2
CEILING JOIST TAPER CUT

5. Adjustments to lumber and joint connector design values for conditions of use.
6. Each reaction force and direction.
7. Joint connector type and description such as size, thickness or gage and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
8. Lumber size, species and *grade for each member.*
9. Connection requirements for:
   - 9.1. Truss to girder-truss.
   - 9.2. Truss ply to ply.
   - 9.3. Field splices.
10. Calculated deflection ratio or maximum description for live and total load.
11. Maximum axial compression forces in the truss members to enable the building designer to design the size, connections and anchorage of the permanent continuous lateral bracing. Forces shall be shown on the *truss design drawing* or on supplemental documents.
12. Required permanent truss member bracing location.

R802.10.2 Design. Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The design and manufacture of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall comply with ANSI/TPI 1. The *truss design drawings* shall be prepared by a *registered design professional*.

R802.10.2.1 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the design of truss roof framing where snow controls for buildings that are not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than 36 feet (10 973 mm) in width parallel to the joist, rafter or truss span, not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height, and have roof slopes not smaller than 3:12 (25-percent slope) or greater than 12:12 (100-percent slope). Truss roof framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), Exposure B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 psf (3352 Pa). For consistent loading of all truss types, roof snow load is to be computed as: 0.7 p_g.

R802.10.3 Bracing. Trusses shall be braced to prevent rotation and provide lateral stability in accordance with the requirements specified in the *construction documents* for the building and on the individual *truss design drawings*. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with accepted industry practice such as the SBCA *Building Component Safety Information (BCSI) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses*.

R802.10.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the approval of a registered *design professional. Alterations* resulting in the addition of load such as HVAC equipment water heater that exceeds the design load for the truss shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

R802.11 Roof tie uplift resistance. *Roof assemblies* shall have uplift resistance in accordance with Sections R802.11.1 and R802.11.2.

Exceptions: Rafters or trusses shall be permitted to be attached to their supporting wall assemblies in accordance with Table R602.3(1) where either of the following occur:

1. Where the uplift force per rafter or truss does not exceed 200 pounds (90.8 kg) as determined by Table R802.11.
2. Where the basic wind speed does not exceed 115 miles per hour (51.4 m/s), the wind exposure category is B, the roof pitch is 5 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (42-percent slope) or greater, the roof span is 32 feet (9754 mm) or less, and rafters and trusses are spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

R802.11.1 Truss uplift resistance. Trusses shall be attached to supporting wall assemblies by connections capable of resisting uplift forces as specified on the *truss design drawings* for the ultimate design wind speed as determined by Table R301.2(4) and listed in Table R301.2 or as shown on the *construction documents*. Uplift forces shall be permitted to be determined as specified by Table R802.11, if applicable, or as determined by accepted engineering practice.

R802.11.2 Rafter uplift resistance. Individual rafters shall be attached to supporting wall assemblies by connections capable of resisting uplift forces as determined by Table R802.11 or as determined by accepted engineering practice. Connections for beams used in a roof system shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

SECTION R803
ROOF SHEATHING

R803.1 Lumber sheathing. Allowable spans for lumber used as roof sheathing shall conform to Table R803.1. Spaced lumber sheathing for wood shingle and shake roofing shall conform to the requirements of Sections R905.7 and R905.8. Spaced lumber sheathing is not allowed in Seismic Design Category D_2.

TABLE R802.11
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLIFT CONNECTION FORCES FROM WIND (ASD) (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE B									
		Ultimate Design Wind Speed V_{ULT} (mph)									
		110		115		120		130		140	
		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch	
		< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12
12″ o.c.	12	48	43	59	53	70	64	95	88	122	113
	18	59	52	74	66	89	81	122	112	157	146
	24	71	62	89	79	108	98	149	137	192	178
	28	79	69	99	88	121	109	167	153	216	200
	32	86	75	109	97	134	120	185	170	240	222
	36	94	82	120	106	146	132	203	186	264	244
	42	106	92	135	120	166	149	230	211	300	278
	48	118	102	151	134	185	166	258	236	336	311
16″ o.c.	12	64	57	78	70	93	85	126	117	162	150
	18	78	69	98	88	118	108	162	149	209	194
	24	94	82	118	105	144	130	198	182	255	237
	28	105	92	132	117	161	145	222	203	287	266
	32	114	100	145	129	178	160	246	226	319	295
	36	125	109	160	141	194	176	270	247	351	325
	42	141	122	180	160	221	198	306	281	399	370
	48	157	136	201	178	246	221	343	314	447	414
24″ o.c.	12	96	86	118	106	140	128	190	176	244	226
	18	118	104	148	132	178	162	244	224	314	292
	24	142	124	178	158	216	196	298	274	384	356
	28	158	138	198	176	242	218	334	306	432	400
	32	172	150	218	194	268	240	370	340	480	444
	36	188	164	240	212	292	264	406	372	528	488
	42	212	184	270	240	332	298	460	422	600	556
	48	236	204	302	268	370	332	516	472	672	622
		EXPOSURE C									
12″ o.c.	12	95	88	110	102	126	118	161	151	198	186
	18	121	111	141	131	163	151	208	195	257	242
	24	148	136	173	160	200	185	256	239	317	298
	28	166	152	195	179	225	208	289	269	358	335
	32	184	168	216	199	249	231	321	299	398	373
	36	202	185	237	219	274	254	353	329	438	411
	42	229	210	269	248	312	289	402	375	499	468
	48	256	234	302	278	349	323	450	420	560	524
16″ o.c.	12	126	117	146	136	168	157	214	201	263	247
	18	161	148	188	174	217	201	277	259	342	322
	24	197	181	230	213	266	246	340	318	422	396
	28	221	202	259	238	299	277	384	358	476	446
	32	245	223	287	265	331	307	427	398	529	496
	36	269	246	315	291	364	338	469	438	583	547
	42	305	279	358	330	415	384	535	499	664	622
	48	340	311	402	370	464	430	599	559	745	697

(continued)

TABLE R802.11—continued
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLIFT CONNECTION FORCES FROM WIND (ASD) (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE C									
		Ultimate Design Wind Speed V_{ULT} (mph)									
		110		115		120		130		140	
		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch	
		< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12
24″ o.c.	12	190	176	220	204	252	236	322	302	396	372
	18	242	222	282	262	326	302	416	390	514	484
	24	296	272	346	320	400	370	512	478	634	596
	28	332	304	390	358	450	416	578	538	716	670
	32	368	336	432	398	498	462	642	598	796	746
	36	404	370	474	438	548	508	706	658	876	822
	42	458	420	538	496	624	578	804	750	998	936
	48	512	468	604	556	698	646	900	840	1,120	1,048

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2, 1 pound per linear foot = 14.6 N/m.

a. The uplift connection forces are based on a maximum 33-foot mean roof height and Wind Exposure Category B or C. For Exposure D, the uplift connection force shall be selected from the Exposure C portion of the table using the next highest tabulated ultimate design wind speed. The adjustment coefficients in Table R301.2.1(2) shall not be used to multiply the tabulated forces for Exposures C and D or for other mean roof heights.

b. The uplift connection forces include an allowance for roof and ceiling assembly dead load of 15 psf.

c. The tabulated uplift connection forces are limited to a maximum roof overhang of 24 inches.

d. The tabulated uplift connection forces shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.75 for connections not located within 8 feet of building corners.

e. For buildings with hip roofs with 5:12 and greater pitch, the tabulated uplift connection forces shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.70. This reduction shall not be combined with any other reduction in tabulated forces.

f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the uplift connection force shall be permitted to be reduced by 60 pounds per linear foot for each full wall above.

g. Linear interpolation between tabulated roof spans and wind speeds shall be permitted.

h. The tabulated forces for a 12-inch on-center spacing shall be permitted to be used to determine the uplift load in pounds per linear foot.

TABLE R803.1
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF LUMBER ROOF SHEATHING

RAFTER OR BEAM SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM NET THICKNESS (inches)
24	$^5/_8$
48[a]	$1^1/_2$ T & G
60[b]	
72[c]	

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Minimum 270F_b, 340,000*E*.
b. Minimum 420F_b, 660,000*E*.
c. Minimum 600F_b, 1,150,000*E*.

R803.2 Wood structural panel sheathing.

R803.2.1 Identification and grade. *Wood structural panels* shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2, CSA O325 or CSA O437, and shall be identified for grade, bond classification and performance category by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency. *Wood structural panels* shall comply with the grades specified in Table R503.2.1.1(1).

R803.2.1.1 Exposure durability. *Wood structural panels*, when designed to be permanently exposed in outdoor applications, shall be of an exterior exposure durability. *Wood structural panel* roof sheathing exposed to the underside shall be permitted to be of interior type bonded with exterior glue, identified as Exposure 1.

R803.2.1.2 Fire-retardant-treated plywood. The allowable unit stresses for fire-retardant-treated plywood, including fastener values, shall be developed from an *approved* method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated plywood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying process. The fire-retardant-treated plywood shall be graded by an *approved agency*.

R803.2.2 Allowable spans. The maximum allowable spans for *wood structural panel* roof sheathing shall not exceed the values set forth in Table R503.2.1.1(1) or APA E30.

R803.2.3 Installation. *Wood structural panel* used as roof sheathing shall be installed with joints staggered or not staggered in accordance with Table R602.3(1), APA E30 for wood roof framing or with Table R804.3 for cold-formed steel roof framing. Wood structural panel roof sheathing in accordance with Table R503.2.1.1(1) shall not cantilever more than 9 inches (229 mm) beyond the gable endwall unless supported by gable overhang framing.

SECTION R804
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF FRAMING
DELETED

SECTION R805
CEILING FINISHES

R805.1 Ceiling installation. Ceilings shall be installed in accordance with the requirements for interior wall finishes as provided in Sections R702.1 through R702.6.

SECTION R806
ROOF VENTILATION

R806.1 Ventilation required. Enclosed attics and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof rafters shall have cross *ventilation* for each separate space by ventilating openings protected against the entrance of rain or snow. Ventilation openings shall have a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Ventilation openings having a least dimension larger than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, perforated vinyl or similar material with openings having a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Openings in roof framing members shall conform to the requirements of Section R802.7. Required ventilation openings shall open directly to the outside air and shall be protected to prevent the entry of birds, rodents, snakes and other similar creatures.

R806.2 Minimum vent area. The total net free ventilating area shall not be less than $^1/_{150}$ of the area of the space ventilated except that reduction of the total area to $^1/_{300}$ is permitted provided that at least 50 percent and not more than 80 percent of the required ventilating area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the space to be ventilated at least 3 feet (914 mm) above the eave or cornice vents, with the balance of the required ventilation provided by eave or cornice vents. As an alternative, the net free cross-ventilation area may be reduced to $^1/_{300}$ when a Class I or II vapor retarder is installed on the warm-in-winter side of the ceiling.

Exception:

1. Enclosed attic/rafter spaces requiring less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m^2) of ventilation may be vented with continuous soffit ventilation only.
2. Enclosed attic/rafter spaces over unconditioned space may be vented with continuous soffit vent only.

R806.3 Vent and insulation clearance. Where eave or cornice vents are installed, blocking, bridging and insulation shall not block the free flow of air. Not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) space shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing and at the location of the vent.

R806.4 Installation and weather protection. Ventilators shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Installation of ventilators in roof systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section R903. Installation of ventilators in wall systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section R703.1.

R806.5 Unvented attic and unvented enclosed rafter assemblies. Unvented *attics* and unvented enclosed roof framing assemblies created by ceilings that are applied directly to the underside of the roof framing members and structural roof sheathing applied directly to the top of the roof framing members/rafters, shall be permitted where all the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented *attic* space is completely within the *building thermal envelope*.
2. Interior Class I vapor retarders are not installed on the ceiling side (*attic* floor) of the unvented *attic* assembly or on the ceiling side of the unvented enclosed roof framing assembly.
3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, a minimum $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) vented airspace separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.
4. > In Climate Zone 5, any *air-impermeable insulation* shall be a Class II vapor retarder, or shall have a Class II vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.
5. Insulation shall comply with Item 5.3 and either Item 5.1 or 5.2:
   - 5.1. Item 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.3 or 5.1.4 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.
     - 5.1.1. Where only *air-impermeable insulation* is provided, it shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.
     - 5.1.2. Where *air-permeable insulation* is installed directly below the structural sheathing, rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing in accordance with the *R*-values in Table R806.5 for condensation control.
     - 5.1.3. Where both *air-impermeable* and *air-permeable insulation* are provided, the *air-impermeable insulation* shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing in accordance with Item 5.1.1 and shall be in accordance with the *R*-values in Table R806.5 for condensation control. The *air-permeable insulation* shall be installed directly under the *air-impermeable insulation*.
     - 5.1.4. Alternatively, sufficient rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.
   - 5.2. In Climate Zones 1, 2 and 3, air-permeable insulation installed in unvented *attics* shall meet the following requirements:
     - 5.2.1. An approved *vapor diffusion port* shall be installed not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the highest point of the roof, measured vertically from the highest point of the roof to the lower edge of the port.
     - 5.2.2. The port area shall be greater than or equal to 1:600 of the ceiling area. Where there are multiple ports in the attic, the sum of the port areas shall be greater than or equal to the area requirement.
     - 5.2.3. The vapor-permeable membrane in the *vapor diffusion port* shall have a vapor permeance rating of greater than or equal to 20 perms when tested in accordance with Procedure A of ASTM E96.
     - 5.2.4. The *vapor diffusion port* shall serve as an air barrier between the *attic* and the exterior of the building.
     - 5.2.5. The *vapor diffusion port* shall protect the *attic* against the entrance of rain and snow.
     - 5.2.6. Framing members and blocking shall not block the free flow of water vapor to the port. Not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) space shall be provided between any blocking and the roof sheathing. Air-permeable insulation shall be permitted within that space.

5.2.7. The roof slope shall be greater than or equal to 3:12 (vertical/horizontal).

5.2.8. Where only air-permeable insulation is used, it shall be installed directly below the structural roof sheathing, on top of the attic floor, or on top of the ceiling.

5.2.9. *Air-impermeable insulation*, where used in conjunction with air-permeable insulation, shall be directly above or below the structural roof sheathing and is not required to meet the *R*-value in Table R806.5. Where directly below the structural roof sheathing, there shall be no space between the *air-impermeable insulation* and air-permeable insulation.

5.2.10. Where air-permeable insulation is used and is installed directly below the roof structural sheathing, air shall be supplied at a flow rate greater than or equal to 50 CFM (23.6 L/s) per 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of ceiling. The air shall be supplied from ductwork providing supply air to the occupiable space when the conditioning system is operating. Alternatively, the air shall be supplied by a supply fan when the conditioning system is operating.

Exceptions:

1. Where both air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation are used, and the *R*-value in Table 806.5 is met, air supply to the attic is not required.
2. Where only air-permeable insulation is used and is installed on top of the attic floor, or on top of the ceiling, air supply to the attic is not required.

5.3. Where preformed insulation board is used as the air-impermeable insulation layer, it shall be sealed at the perimeter of each individual sheet interior surface to form a continuous layer.

TABLE R806.5
INSULATION FOR CONDENSATION CONTROL

CLIMATE ZONE	MINIMUM RIGID BOARD ON AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION *R*-VALUE[a, b]
3A	R-5
4A	R-15
5	R-20

a. Contributes to but does not supersede the requirements in Section N1102.

b. Alternatively, sufficient continuous insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

SECTION R807
ATTIC ACCESS

R807.1 Attic access. An attic access opening shall be provided to attic areas that exceed 400 square feet (37.16 m^2) and have a vertical height of 60 inches (1524 mm) or greater. The net clear opening shall not be less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located in a hallway or other readily accessible location. A 30-inch (762 mm) minimum unobstructed headroom in the attic space shall be provided at some point above the access opening. See Section M1305.1.2 for access requirements where mechanical equipment is located in attics.

Exceptions:

1. Concealed areas not located over the main structure including porches, areas behind knee walls, dormers, bay windows, etc., are not required to have access.
2. Pull down stair treads, stringers, handrails, and hardware may protrude into the net clear opening.

CHAPTER 9
ROOF ASSEMBLIES

SECTION R901
GENERAL

R901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of *roof assemblies*.

SECTION R902
FIRE CLASSIFICATION

R902.1 Roof covering materials. Roofs shall be covered with materials as set forth in Sections R904 and R905. Class A, B or C roofing shall be installed in *jurisdictions* designated by law as requiring their use or where the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a *lot line*. Class A, B and C roofing required by this section to be *listed* shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.

Exceptions:

1. Class A *roof assemblies* include those with coverings of brick, masonry and exposed concrete *roof deck*.
2. Class A *roof assemblies* include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile, or slate installed on noncombustible decks.
3. Class A *roof assemblies* include minimum 16 ounces per square foot (4.882 kg/m^2) copper sheets installed over combustible decks.
4. Class A *roof assemblies* include slate installed over *underlayment* over combustible decks.

R902.2 Fire-retardant-treated shingles and shakes. Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles shall be treated by impregnation with chemicals by the full-cell vacuum-pressure process, in accordance with AWPA C1. Each bundle shall be marked to identify the manufactured unit and the manufacturer, and shall be *labeled* to identify the classification of the material in accordance with the testing required in Section R902.1, the treating company and the quality control agency.

R902.3 Building-integrated photovoltaic product. *Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) products* installed as the roof covering shall be tested, *listed* and *labeled* for fire classification in accordance with UL 7103. Class A, B or C BIPV products shall be installed where the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a lot line.

R902.4 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems. Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panel systems* installed on or above the roof covering shall be tested, *listed* and identified with a fire classification in accordance with UL 2703. Class A, B or C *photovoltaic panel systems* and modules shall be installed in *jurisdictions* designated by law as requiring their use or where the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a *lot line*.

SECTION R903
WEATHER PROTECTION

R903.1 General. *Roof decks* shall be covered with *approved* roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. *Roof assemblies* shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the *approved* manufacturer's instructions such that the *roof assembly* shall serve to protect the building or structure.

R903.2 Flashing. Flashings shall be installed in a manner that prevents moisture from entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

R903.2.1 Locations. Flashings shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. A flashing shall be installed to divert the water away from where the eave of a sloped roof intersects a vertical sidewall. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

R903.2.2 Crickets and saddles. A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration more than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: *Unit skylights* installed in accordance with Section R308.6 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

R903.3 Coping. Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width not less than the thickness of the parapet wall. Parapet coping shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) minimum down the faces of the parapet.

R903.4 Roof drainage. Unless roofs are sloped to drain over roof edges, roof drains shall be installed at each low point of the roof.

R903.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary emergency overflow roof drains or *scuppers* shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. Overflow drains having the same size as the roof drains shall be installed with the inlet flow line located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof, or overflow *scuppers* having three times the size of the roof drains and having a minimum opening height of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be installed in the adjacent parapet walls with the inlet flow located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof served. The installation and sizing of overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with Sections 1106 and 1108 of the *International Plumbing Code*, as applicable.

Overflow drains shall discharge to an *approved* location and shall not be connected to roof drain lines.

SECTION R904 MATERIALS

R904.1 Scope. The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to the application of roof covering materials specified herein. *Roof assemblies* shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Installation of *roof assemblies* shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section R905.

R904.2 Compatibility of materials. *Roof assemblies* shall be of materials that are compatible with each other and with the building or structure to which the materials are applied.

R904.3 Material specifications and physical characteristics. Roof covering materials shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter.

R904.4 Product identification. Roof covering materials shall be delivered in packages bearing the manufacturer's identifying marks and *approved* testing agency *labels* required. Bulk shipments of materials shall be accompanied by the same information issued in the form of a certificate or on a bill of lading by the manufacturer.

SECTION R905 REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

R905.1 Roof covering application. Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Unless otherwise specified in this section, roof coverings shall be installed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table R301.2.1(1), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2.1(2).

R905.1.1 Underlayment. *Underlayment* for asphalt shingles, clay and concrete tile, *metal roof shingles*, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles, wood shakes, *metal roof panels* and *photovoltaic shingles* shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter. *Underlayment* materials required to comply with ASTM D226, D1970, D4869 and D6757 shall bear a *label* indicating compliance to the standard designation and, if applicable, type classification indicated in Table R905.1.1(1). *Underlayment* shall be applied in accordance with Table R905.1.1(2). *Underlayment* shall be attached in accordance with Table R905.1.1(3).

Exceptions:

1. As an alternative, self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen underlayment bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970 and installed in accordance with both the *underlayment* manufacturer's and roof covering manufacturer's instructions for the deck material, roof ventilation configuration and climate exposure for the roof covering to be installed, shall be permitted.
2. As an alternative, a minimum 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen membrane bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970, installed in accordance with the *manufacturer's installation instructions* for the deck material, shall be applied over all joints in the roof decking. An *approved underlayment* complying with Table R905.1.1(1) for the applicable roof covering for areas where wind design is not required in accordance with Figure R301.2.1.1 shall be applied over the entire roof over the 4-inch-wide (102 mm) membrane strips. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Table R905.1.1(2) using the application requirements for areas where wind design is not required in accordance with Figure R301.2.1.1. Underlayment shall be attached in accordance with Table R905.1.1(3).

R905.1.2 Ice barriers. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or when Table R301.2(1) criteria so designates, an ice barrier shall be installed for asphalt shingles, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles and wood shakes. The ice barrier shall consist of not fewer than two layers of *underlayment* cemented together, or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal *underlayment* and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building. On roofs with slope equal to or greater than 8 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (67-percent slope), the ice barrier shall also be applied not less than 36 inches (914 mm) measured along the roof slope from the eave edge of the building.

Exception: Detached *accessory structures* not containing conditioned floor area.

R905.2 Asphalt shingles. The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.2.1 Sheathing requirements. Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

R905.2.2 Slope. Asphalt shingles shall be used only on roof slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double *underlayment* application is required in accordance with Section R905.1.1.

R905.2.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.2.4 Asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D3462.

R905.2.4.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table R905.2.4.1 for the appropriate ultimate design wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a *label* to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table R905.2.4.1.

Exception: Asphalt shingles not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and *labeled* in accordance with ASTM D3161. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a *label* to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table R905.2.4.1.

R905.2.5 Fasteners. Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (3 mm)] shank with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, complying with ASTM F1667, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) thick, the fasteners shall penetrate through the sheathing.

R905.2.6 Attachment. Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12, 175-percent slope), shingles shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions.

Exception: Asphalt strip shingles shall have a minimum of six fasteners per shingle where the roof is in one of the following categories:

1. The ultimate wind speed in accordance with Table R301.2(4) is 130 miles per hour (58 m/s) or greater and the eave is 20 feet (6096 mm) or higher above grade.

TABLE R905.1.1(1)
UNDERLAYMENT TYPES

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} <130 MPH
Asphalt shingles	R905.2	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757
Clay and concrete tile	R905.3	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D2626 Type I ASTM D6380 Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing
Metal roof shingles	R905.4	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	R905.5	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV
Slate and slate-type shingles	R905.6	ASTM D226 Type I ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV
Wood shingles	R905.7	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV
Wood shakes	R905.8	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV
Metal panels	R905.10	Manufacturer's instructions
Photovoltaic shingles	R905.16	ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

**TABLE R905.1.1(2)
UNDERLAYMENT APPLICATION**

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} <130 MPH
Asphalt shingles	R905.2	For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner: apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner: underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches, Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.
Clay and concrete tile	R905.3	For roof slopes from $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal ($2^1/_2$:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be not fewer than two layers applied as follows: starting at the eave, apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment parallel with the eave. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide strips of underlayment felt, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be not fewer than one layer of underlayment felt applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eaves and lapped 2 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.
Metal roof shingles	R905.4	Apply in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	R905.5	
Slate and slate-type shingles	R905.6	
Wood shingles	R905.7	
Wood shakes	R905.8	
Metal panels	R905.10	
Photovoltaic shingles	R905.16	For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner: apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner: underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.

>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

TABLE R905.1.1(3)
UNDERLAYMENT APPLICATION

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} <130 MPH
Asphalt shingles	R905.2	Fastened sufficiently to hold in place
Clay and concrete tile	R905.3	
Photovoltaic	R905.16	
Metal roof shingles	R905.4	Manufacturer's installation instructions.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	R905.5	
Slate and slate-type shingles	R905.6	
Wood shingles	R905.7	
Wood shakes	R905.8	
Metal panels	R905.10	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

TABLE R905.2.4.1
CLASSIFICATION OF ASPHALT ROOF SHINGLES

MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} FROM Figure R301.2(2) (mph)	MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, V_{ASD} FROM TABLE R301.2.1.3 (mph)	ASTM D7158[a] SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION	ASTM D3161 SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION
110	85	D, G or H	A, D or F
116	90	D, G or H	A, D or F
129	100	G or H	A, D or F
142	110	G or H	F
155	120	G or H	F
168	130	H	F
181	140	H	F
194	150	H	F

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. The standard calculations contained in ASTM D7158 assume Exposure Category B or C and a building height of 60 feet or less. Additional calculations are required for conditions outside of these assumptions.

2. The ultimate wind speed in accordance with Table R301.2(4) is 140 miles per hour (63 m/s) or greater.
3. Special mountain regions in accordance with Table R301.2(5) that meet Items 1 or 2 in this section.

R905.2.7 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.2.8 Flashing. Flashing for asphalt shingles shall comply with this section and the asphalt shingle manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions.

R905.2.8.1 Base and cap flashing. Base and cap flashing shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Base flashing shall be of either corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) thickness or mineral-surfaced roll roofing weighing not less than 77 pounds per 100 square feet (4 kg/m^2). Cap flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) thickness.

R905.2.8.2 Valleys. Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table R905.2.8.2.
2. For open valleys, valley lining of two plies of mineral-surfaced roll roofing, complying with ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380 Class M, shall be permitted. The bottom layer shall be 18 inches (457 mm) and the top layer not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide.
3. For closed valleys (valley covered with shingles), valley lining of one ply of smooth roll roofing complying with ASTM D6380 and not less than 36 inches wide (914 mm) or valley lining as described in Item 1 or 2 shall be permitted. Self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen *underlayment* complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted in lieu of the lining material.

R905.2.8.3 Sidewall flashing. Base flashing against a vertical sidewall shall be continuous at horizontal surfaces or step flashing at sloped surfaces and shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and 4 inches (102 mm) in width and shall direct water away from the vertical sidewall onto the roof or into the gutter. Where siding is provided on the vertical sidewall, the vertical leg of the flashing shall be continuous under the siding. Where anchored masonry veneer is provided on the vertical sidewall, the base flashing shall be provided in accordance with this section and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with Section R703.8.2.2. Where exterior plaster or adhered masonry veneer is provided on the vertical sidewall, the base flashing shall be provided in accordance with this section and Section R703.8.5.

R905.2.8.4 Other flashing. Flashing against a vertical front wall, as well as soil stack, vent pipe and chimney flashing, shall be applied in accordance with the asphalt shingle manufacturer's printed instructions.

R905.2.8.5 Drip edge. Not required unless required by the roof covering manufacturer installation instructions. The drip edge placed around the edge of a roof prior to installing the roofing material shall be designed so that water runs off over the drip edge and falls from a slight projection at the bottom edge of the roof rather than running back under, or along the eaves. Metal, wood or exterior composite materials can be used for the drip edge.

R905.3 Clay and concrete tile. The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.3.1 Deck requirements. Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing.

Exception: Spaced lumber sheathing in accordance with Section R803.1 shall be permitted in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

TABLE R905.2.8.2
VALLEY LINING MATERIAL

MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)	GAGE	WEIGHT (pounds)
Aluminum	0.024	—	—
Cold-rolled copper	0.0216 nominal	—	ASTM B370, 16 oz. per square foot
Galvanized steel	0.0179	26 (zinc coated G90)	—
High-yield copper	0.0162 nominal	—	ASTM B370, 12 oz. per square foot
Lead	—	—	$2^1/_2$
Lead-coated copper	0.0216 nominal	—	ASTM B101, 16 oz. per square foot
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 nominal	—	ASTM B101, 12 oz. per square foot
Painted terne	—	—	20
Stainless steel	—	28	—
Zinc alloy	0.027	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 square foot = 0.93 m^2.

R905.3.2 Deck slope. Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double *underlayment* application is required in accordance with Section R905.3.3.

R905.3.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.3.4 Clay tile. Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1167.

R905.3.5 Concrete tile. Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1492.

R905.3.6 Fasteners. Nails shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11-gage [0.120 inch (3 mm)], $^5/_{16}$-inch (11 mm) head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

R905.3.7 Application. Tile shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. *Underlayment* system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Perimeter tiles shall be fastened with not less than one fastener per tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 pounds per square foot (0.4 kg/m^2) require not less than one fastener per tile regardless of roof slope. Clay and concrete roof tile attachment shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions where applied in areas where the ultimate design wind speed exceeds 130 miles per hour (58 m/s) and on buildings where the roof is located more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) above grade. In areas subject to snow, not less than two fasteners per tile are required. In other areas, clay and concrete roof tiles shall be attached in accordance with Table R905.3.7.

TABLE R905.3.7
CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT

SHEATHING	ROOF SLOPE	NUMBER OF FASTENERS
Solid without battens	All	One per tile
Spaced or solid with battens and slope < 5:12	Fasteners not required	—
Spaced sheathing without battens	5:12 ≤ slope < 12:12	One per tile/ every other row
	12:12 ≤ slope < 24:12	One per tile

R905.3.8 Flashing. At the juncture of roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions and, where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and greater, valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) *underlayment* of one layer of Type I *underlayment* running the full length of the valley, in addition to other required *underlayment*. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, metal valley flashing *underlayment* shall be solid-cemented to the roofing *underlayment* for slopes less than 7 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or be of self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet.

R905.4 Metal roof shingles. The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.4.1 Deck requirements. *Metal roof shingles* shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

R905.4.2 Deck slope. *Metal roof shingles* shall not be installed on roof slopes below 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

R905.4.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.4.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.4.4 Material standards. *Metal roof shingle* roof coverings shall comply with Table R905.10.3(1). The materials used for *metal roof shingle* roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or be made corrosion resistant in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses listed in Table R905.10.3(2).

R905.4.4.1 Wind resistance of metal roof shingles. *Metal roof shingles* applied to a solid or closely fitted deck shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D3161, FM 4474, UL 580 or UL 1897. *Metal roof shingles* tested in accordance with ASTM D3161 shall meet the classification requirements of Table R905.4.4.1 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed and the metal shingle packaging shall bear a *label* to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table R905.2.4.1.

R905.4.5 Application. *Metal roof shingles* shall be secured to the roof in accordance with this chapter and the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.

R905.4.6 Flashing. Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table R905.10.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend not less

TABLE R905.4.4.1
CLASSIFICATION OF STEEP SLOPE METAL ROOF SHINGLES TESTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D3161

MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult}, FROM Table 301.2(4) and Table 301.2(5) (mph)	ASTM D3161 SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION
110	A, D or F
116	A, D or F
129	A, D or F
142	F
155	F
168	F
181	F
194	F

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 1.609 kph.

than 8 inches (203 mm) from the centerline each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) in height at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). The metal valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) *underlayment* directly under it consisting of one layer of *underlayment* running the full length of the valley, in addition to *underlayment* required for *metal roof shingles.* In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, the metal valley flashing *underlayment* shall be solid-cemented to the roofing *underlayment* for roof slopes under 7 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet.

R905.5 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing. The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

R905.5.1 Deck requirements. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

R905.5.2 Deck slope. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

R905.5.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.5.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.5.4 Material standards. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall conform to ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380, Class M.

R905.5.5 Application. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

R905.6 Slate shingles. The installation of slate shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.6.1 Deck requirements. Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

R905.6.2 Deck slope. Slate shingles shall be used only on slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater.

R905.6.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.6.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.6.4 Material standards. Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C406.

R905.6.5 Application. Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table R905.6.5. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate. Slate shingles shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE R905.6.5
SLATE SHINGLE HEADLAP

SLOPE	HEADLAP (inches)
4:12 ≤ slope < 8:12	4
8:12 ≤ slope < 20:12	3
Slope ≥ 20:12	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

R905.6.6 Flashing. Flashing and counterflashing shall be made with sheet metal. Valley flashing shall be not less than 15 inches (381 mm) wide. Valley and flashing metal shall be a minimum uncoated thickness of 0.0179-inch (0.5 mm) zinc coated G90. Chimneys, stucco or brick walls shall have not less than two plies of felt for a cap flashing consisting of a 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of felt set in plastic cement and extending 1 inch (25 mm) above the first felt and a top coating of plastic cement. The felt shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) over the base flashing.

R905.7 Wood shingles. The installation of wood shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.7.1 Deck requirements. Wood shingles shall be installed on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.

R905.7.1.1 Solid sheathing required. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring the application of an ice barrier.

R905.7.2 Deck slope. Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

R905.7.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.7.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.7.4 Material standards. Wood shingles shall be of *naturally durable wood* and comply with the requirements of Table R905.7.4.

TABLE R905.7.4
WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shingles of naturally durable wood	1, 2 or 3	CSSB

R905.7.5 Application. Wood shingles shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between joints in courses, and two joints shall not be in direct alignment in any three adjacent courses. Spacing between shingles shall be not less than $^1/_4$ inch to $^3/_8$ inch (6.4 mm to 9.5 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed those set in Table R905.7.5(1). Fasteners for untreated (naturally durable) wood shingles shall be box nails in accordance with Table R905.7.5(2). Nails shall be stainless steel Type 304 or 316 or hot-dipped galvanized with a coating weight of ASTM A153 Class D (1.0 oz/ft^2). Alternatively, two 16-gage stainless steel Type 304 or 316 staples with crown widths $^7/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) minimum, $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) maximum, shall be used. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of saltwater coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated shingles in accordance with Section R902 or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shingles of naturally durable wood in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners shall have a minimum penetration into the sheathing of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). For sheathing less than $^3/_4$ inch in (19.1 mm) thickness, each fastener shall penetrate through the sheathing. Wood shingles shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shingle, positioned in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fastener packaging shall bear a *label* indicating the appropriate grade material or coating weight.

TABLE R905.7.5(1)
WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches)	
			3:12 pitch to < 4:12	4:12 pitch or steeper
Shingles of naturally durable wood	16	No. 1	$3^3/_4$	5
		No. 2	$3^1/_2$	4
		No. 3	3	$3^1/_2$
	18	No. 1	$4^1/_4$	$5^1/_2$
		No. 2	4	$4^1/_2$
		No. 3	$3^1/_2$	4
	24	No. 1	$5^3/_4$	$7^1/_2$
		No. 2	$5^1/_2$	$6^1/_2$
		No. 3	5	$5^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE R905.7.5(2)
NAIL REQUIREMENTS FOR
WOOD SHAKES AND WOOD SHINGLES

PRODUCT TYPE	NAIL TYPE, MINIMUM LENGTH AND SHANK DIAMETER (inches)
Shakes	
18″ straight-split	5d box $1^3/_4$″ × 0.080
18″ and 24″ handsplit and resawn	6d box 2″ × 0.099
24″ taper-split	5d box $1^3/_4$″ × 0.080
18″ and 24″ tapersawn	6d box 2″ × 0.099
Shingles	
16″ and 18″	3d box $1^1/_4$″ × 0.076
24″	4d box $1^1/_2$″ × 0.076

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

R905.7.6 Valley flashing. Roof flashing shall be not less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inches (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend 10 inches (254 mm) from the centerline each way for roofs having slopes less than 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (100-percent slope), and 7 inches (178 mm) from the centerline each way for slopes of 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (100-percent slope) and greater. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

R905.7.7 Label required. Each bundle of shingles shall be identified by a *label* of an *approved* grading or inspection bureau or agency.

R905.8 Wood shakes. The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.8.1 Deck requirements. Wood shakes shall be used only on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

R905.8.1.1 Solid sheathing required. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring an ice barrier.

R905.8.2 Deck slope. Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

R905.8.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.8.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.8.4 Interlayment. Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I.

R905.8.5 Material standards. Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table R905.8.5.

R905.8.6 Application. Wood shakes shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be $^3/_8$ inch to $^5/_8$ inch (9.5 mm to 15.9 mm) including tapersawn shakes. Weather exposures for wood shakes shall not exceed those set in Table R905.8.6. Fasteners for untreated (naturally durable) wood shakes shall be box nails in accordance with Table R905.7.5(2). Nails shall be stainless steel Type 304, or Type 316 or hot-dipped with a coating weight of ASTM A153 Class D (1.0 oz/ft^2). Alternatively, two 16-gage Type 304 or Type 316 stainless steel staples, with crown widths $^7/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) minimum, $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) maximum, shall be used. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of salt-water coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Wood shakes shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shake positioned in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated (as defined in Section R902) shakes or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shakes of *naturally durable wood* in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners shall have a minimum penetration into the sheathing of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). Where the sheathing is less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) thick, each fastener shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fastener packaging shall bear a *label* indicating the appropriate grade material or coating weight.

R905.8.7 Shake placement. The starter course at the eaves shall be doubled and the bottom layer shall be either 15-inch (381 mm), 18-inch (457 mm) or 24-inch (610 mm) wood shakes or wood shingles. Fifteen-inch (381 mm) or 18-inch (457 mm) wood shakes shall be permitted to be used for the final course at the ridge. Shakes shall be interlaid with 18-inch-wide (457 mm) strips of not less than No. 30 felt shingled between each course in such a manner that felt is not exposed to the weather by positioning the lower edge of each felt strip above the butt end of the shake it covers a distance equal to twice the weather exposure.

R905.8.8 Valley flashing. Roof valley flashing shall be not less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inch (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

R905.8.9 Label required. Each bundle of shakes shall be identified by a *label* of an *approved* grading or inspection bureau or agency.

R905.9 Built-up roofs. The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section and the manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions.

TABLE R905.8.5
WOOD SHAKE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shakes of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Tapersawn shakes of naturally durable wood	1 or 2	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Preservative-treated tapersawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA Standard U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.6)	1 or 2	Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services

TABLE R905.8.6
WOOD SHAKE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches) 4:12 pitch or steeper
Shakes of naturally durable wood	18	No. 1	$7^1/_2$
	24	No. 1	10[a]
Preservative-treated tapersawn shakes of Southern Yellow Pine	18	No. 1	$7^1/_2$
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	$5^1/_2$
	24	No. 2	$7^1/_2$
Taper-sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	18	No. 1	$7^1/_2$
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	$5^1/_2$
	24	No. 2	$7^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For 24-inch by $^3/_8$-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is $7^1/_2$ inches.

R905.9.1 Slope. Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs, which shall have a design slope of a minimum $^{1}/_{8}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

R905.9.2 Material standards. *Built-up roof covering* materials shall comply with the standards in Table R905.9.2 or UL 55A.

R905.9.3 Application. Built-up roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

R905.10 Metal roof panels. The installation of *metal roof panels* shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.10.1 Deck requirements. *Metal roof panel* roof coverings shall be applied to solid or spaced sheathing, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.

R905.10.2 Slope. Minimum slopes for *metal roof panels* shall comply with the following:

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs without applied lap sealant shall be 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).
2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs with applied lap sealant shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. The minimum slope for standing-seam roof systems shall be $^{1}/_{4}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

R905.10.3 Material standards. Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table R905.10.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table R905.10.3(2).

R905.10.4 Attachment. *Metal roof panels* shall be secured to the supports in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's installation instructions, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.
2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy and 300-series stainless steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.
3. Stainless steel fasteners are acceptable for metal roofs.

R905.10.5 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.11 Modified bitumen roofing. The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section and the manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions.

TABLE R905.9.2
BUILT-UP ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL STANDARD	STANDARD
Acrylic coatings used in roofing	ASTM D6083
Aggregate surfacing	ASTM D1863
Asphalt adhesive used in roofing	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cements used in roofing	ASTM D2822; D3019; D4586
Asphalt-coated glass fiber base sheet	ASTM D4601
Asphalt coatings used in roofing	ASTM D1227; D2823; D2824; D4479
Asphalt glass felt	ASTM D2178
Asphalt primer used in roofing	ASTM D41
Asphalt-saturated and asphalt-coated organic felt base sheet	ASTM D2626
Asphalt-saturated organic felt (perforated)	ASTM D2626
Asphalt used in roofing	ASTM D312
Coal-tar cements used in roofing	ASTM D4022; D5643
Coal-tar primer used in roofing, dampproofing and waterproofing	ASTM D43
Coal-tar saturated organic felt	ASTM D227
Coal-tar used in roofing	ASTM D450, Type I or II
Glass mat, coal tar	ASTM D4990
Glass mat, venting type	ASTM D4897
Mineral-surfaced inorganic cap sheet	ASTM D3909
Thermoplastic fabrics used in roofing	ASTM D5665; D5726

R905.11.1 Slope. Modified bitumen roofing shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

R905.11.2 Material standards. Modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the standards in Table R905.11.2.

R905.11.2.1 Base sheet. A base sheet that complies with the requirements of Section 1507.11.2 of the *International Building Code*, ASTM D1970 or ASTM D4601 shall be permitted to be used with a modified bitumen cap sheet.

R905.11.3 Application. Modified bitumen roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

R905.12 Thermoset single-ply roofing. The installation of thermoset single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.12.1 Slope. Thermoset *single-ply membrane* roofs shall have a design slope of not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

R905.12.2 Material standards. Thermoset single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4637 or ASTM D5019.

R905.12.3 Application. Thermoset single-ply roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE R905.10.3(1)
METAL ROOF COVERING STANDARDS

ROOF COVERING TYPE	STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS
Aluminum	ASTM B209, 0.024 minimum thickness for roll-formed panels and 0.019-inch minimum thickness for press-formed shingles.
Cold-rolled copper	ASTM B370 minimum 16 oz/sq ft and 12 oz/sq ft high-yield copper for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz/sq ft for preformed metal shingle systems.
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G90 Zinc coated
Hard lead	2 lb/sq ft
Lead-coated copper	ASTM B101
Soft lead	3 lb/sq ft
Stainless steel	ASTM A240, 300 Series alloys
Steel	ASTM A924
Terne (tin) and terne-coated stainless	Terne coating of 40 lb per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
Zinc	0.027 inch minimum thickness: 99.995% electrolytic high-grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08–0.20%), titanium (0.07%–0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%).

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 4.214 kg/m^2, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

TABLE R905.10.3(2)
MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE

55% aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
5% aluminum alloy-coated steel	ASTM A875 GF60
Aluminum-coated steel	ASTM A463 T2 65
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G-90
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755[a]

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A792, ASTM A875, ASTM A463 or ASTM A653.

TABLE R905.11.2
MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Asphalt adhesive	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cement	ASTM D3019
Asphalt coating	ASTM D1227; D2824
Asphalt primer	ASTM D41
Modified bitumen roof membrane	ASTM D6162; D6163; D6164; D6222; D6223; D6298

R905.13 Thermoplastic single-ply roofing. The installation of thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.13.1 Slope. Thermoplastic *single-ply membrane* roofs shall have a design slope of not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

R905.13.2 Material standards. Thermoplastic single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4434, D6754 or D6878.

R905.13.3 Application. Thermoplastic single-ply roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

R905.14 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing. The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.14.1 Slope. Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

R905.14.2 Material standards. Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with ASTM C1029, Type III or IV or ASTM D7425.

R905.14.3 Application. Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Table R905.14.3 shall be applied not less than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

TABLE R905.14.3
PROTECTIVE COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Moisture-cured polyurethane coating	ASTM D6947
Silicone coating	ASTM D6694

R905.14.4 Foam plastics. Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Section R316.

R905.15 Liquid-applied roofing. The installation of liquid-applied roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R905.15.1 Slope. Liquid-applied roofing shall have a design slope of not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

R905.15.2 Material standards. Liquid-applied roofing shall comply with ASTM C836, C957, D1227, D3468, D6083, D6694 or D6947.

R905.15.3 Application. Liquid-applied roofing shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R905.16 Photovoltaic shingles. The installation of *photovoltaic shingles* shall comply with the provisions of this section, Section R324 and NFPA 70.

R905.16.1 Deck requirements. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall be applied to a solid or closely-fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

R905.16.2 Deck slope. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall be used only on roof slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or greater.

R905.16.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section R905.1.1.

R905.16.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.16.4 Material standards. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 7103 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2.

R905.16.5 Attachment. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

R905.16.6 Wind resistance. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall comply with the classification requirements of Table R905.16.6 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed.

R905.17 Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) roof panels applied directly to the roof deck. The installation of *BIPV roof panels* shall comply with the provisions of this section, Section R324 and NFPA 70.

R905.17.1 Deck requirements. *BIPV roof panels* shall be applied to a solid or closely-fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

R905.17.2 Deck slope. *BIPV roof panels* shall be used only on roof slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater.

R905.17.3 Underlayment. *Underlayment* shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

R905.17.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, an ice barrier shall comply with Section R905.1.2.

R905.17.4 Ice barrier. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, as designated in Table R301.2, an ice barrier

TABLE R905.16.6
CLASSIFICATION OF PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES

MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult}, FROM FIGURE R301.2(2) (mph)	MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, V_{ASD}, FROM TABLE R301.2.1.3 (mph)	UL 7103 SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION
110	85	A, D or F
116	90	A, D or F
129	100	A, D or F

For SI:1 mile per hour = 1.609 kph.

<

that consists of not less than two layers of *underlayment* cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal *underlayment* and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached *accessory structures* that do not contain conditioned floor area.

R905.17.5 Material standards. *BIPV roof panels* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 7103 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2.

R905.17.6 Attachment. *BIPV roof panels* shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION R906
ROOF INSULATION

R906.1 General. Where above-deck thermal insulation is installed, such insulation shall be covered with an *approved* roof covering and shall comply with NFPA 276 or UL 1256.

R906.2 Material standards. Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table R906.2.

TABLE R906.2
MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION

Cellular glass board	ASTM C552
Composite boards	ASTM C1289, Type III, IV, V or VI
Expanded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Extruded polystyrene board	ASTM C578
Fiber-reinforced gypsum board	ASTM C1278
Glass-faced gypsum board	ASTM C1177
Mineral wool board	ASTM C726
Perlite board	ASTM C728
Polyisocyanurate board	ASTM C1289, Type I or II
Wood fiberboard	ASTM C208

SECTION R907
ROOFTOP-MOUNTED PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS

R907.1 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems. Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panel systems* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section R324 and NFPA 70.

SECTION R908
REROOFING

R908.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 9.

Exceptions:

1. *Reroofing* shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section R905 for roofs that provide *positive roof drainage*.
2. For roofs that provide positive drainage, recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not require the secondary (emergency overflow) drains or *scuppers* of Section R903.4.1 to be added to an existing roof.

R908.2 Structural and construction loads. The structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the roof covering system.

R908.3 Roof replacement. *Roof replacement* shall include the removal of existing layers of roof coverings down to the *roof deck*. and replacement of up to 15 percent of the total existing roof deck. Replacement of up to 15 percent of the total roof deck shall not be considered structural work.

Exception: Where the existing *roof assembly* includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the *roof deck*, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section R905.

R908.3.1 Roof recover. The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions
2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs where applied in accordance with Section R908.4.
4. The application of a new protective *roof coating* over an existing protective *roof coating*, *metal roof panel*, *metal roof shingle*, mineral surfaced roll roofing, built-up roof, modified bitumen roofing, thermoset and thermoplastic single-ply roofing and spray polyurethane foam roofing system shall be permitted without tear-off of existing roof coverings.

R908.3.1.1 Roof recover not allowed. A *roof recover* shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

R908.4 Roof recovering. Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other *approved* materials securely fastened in place.

R908.5 Reinstallation of materials. Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Any existing flashings, edgings, outlets, vents or similar devices that are a part of the assembly shall be replaced where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Aggregate surfacing materials shall not be reinstalled.

R908.6 Flashings. Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

CHAPTER 10

CHIMNEYS AND FIREPLACES

SECTION R1001
MASONRY FIREPLACES

R1001.1 General. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with this section and the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 and 4.

R1001.2 Footings and foundations. Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or *solid masonry* not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural, undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished *grade*.

R1001.2.1 Ash dump cleanout. Cleanout openings located within foundation walls below fireboxes, where provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed except when in use. Cleanouts shall be located to allow *access* so that ash removal will not create a hazard to *combustible materials*.

R1001.3 Seismic reinforcing. Deleted.

R1001.4 Seismic anchorage. Deleted.

R1001.5 Firebox walls. Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units, *hollow masonry units* grouted solid, stone or concrete. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or other *approved* lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of *solid masonry*, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall not be greater than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Where a lining is not provided, the total minimum thickness of back and side walls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of *solid masonry*. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or C1261 and shall be laid with medium- duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

R1001.5.1 Steel fireplace units. Installation of steel fireplace units with *solid masonry* to form a masonry fireplace is permitted where installed either in accordance with the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) thick, and an air-circulating chamber that is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with *solid masonry* to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of *solid masonry* or concrete. Circulating air ducts used with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

R1001.6 Firebox dimensions. The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a depth of not less than 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) deep. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

Exception: Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, that the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel and is not less than one-twentieth the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

R1001.7 Lintel and throat. Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of *noncombustible material*. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the lintel.

R1001.7.1 Damper. Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or the chimney venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace.

R1001.8 Smoke chamber. Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units, *hollow masonry units* grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of *solid masonry*. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than $^5/_8$ inch (16 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of *solid masonry*, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

R1001.8.1 Smoke chamber dimensions. The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall not be greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from vertical where prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or where the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. Where the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

TABLE R1001.1
SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS FOR MASONRY FIREPLACES AND CHIMNEYS

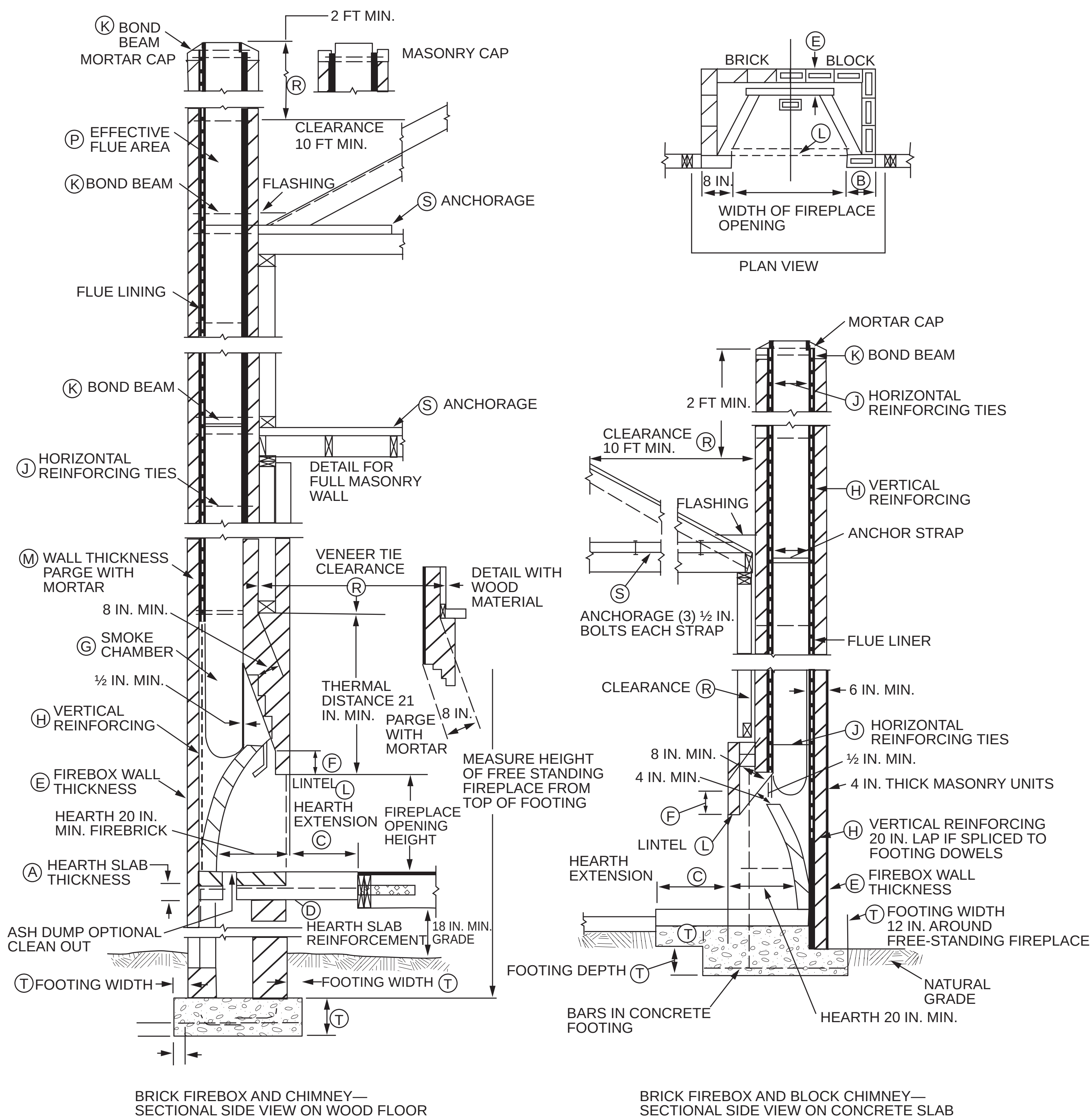
ITEM	LETTER[a]	REQUIREMENTS
Hearth slab thickness	A	4 inches
Hearth extension (each side of opening)	B	8-inch fireplace opening < 6 square feet. 12-inch fireplace opening ≥ 6 square feet.
Hearth extension (front of opening)	C	16-inch fireplace opening < 6 square feet. 20-inch fireplace opening ≥ 6 square feet.
Hearth slab reinforcing	D	Reinforced to carry its own weight and all imposed loads.
Thickness of wall of firebox	E	10-inch solid brick or 8 inches where a firebrick lining is used. Joints in firebrick $^1/_4$-inch maximum.
Distance from top of opening to throat	F	8 inches
Smoke chamber wall thickness Unlined walls	G	6 inches 8 inches
Chimney Vertical reinforcing[b]	H	Four No. 4 full-length bars for chimney up to 40 inches wide. Add two No. 4 bars for each additional 40 inches or fraction of width or each additional flue.
Horizontal reinforcing	J	$^1/_4$-inch ties at 18 inches and two ties at each bend in vertical steel.
Bond beams	K	No specified requirements.
Fireplace lintel	L	Noncombustible material.
Chimney walls with flue lining	M	Solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4-inch nominal thickness.
Distances between adjacent flues	—	See Section R1003.13.
Effective flue area (based on area of fireplace opening)	P	See Section R1003.15.
Clearances Combustible material Mantel and trim Above roof	R	 See Sections R1001.11 and R1003.18. See Section R1001.11, Exception 4. 3 feet at roofline and 2 feet at 10 feet.
Anchorage[b] Strap Number Embedment into chimney Fasten to Bolts	S	 $^3/_{16}$-inch × 1-inch Two 12 inches hooked around outer bar with 6-inch extension. 4 joists Three $^1/_2$-inch diameter.
Footing Thickness Width	T	 12 inches min. 12 inches each side of fireplace wall.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

Note: This table provides a summary of major requirements for the construction of masonry chimneys and fireplaces. Letter references are to Figure R1001.1, which shows examples of typical construction. This table does not cover all requirements, nor does it cover all aspects of the indicated requirements. For the actual mandatory requirements of the code, see the indicated section of text.

a. The letters refer to Figure R1001.1.

b. Not required in Seismic Design Category A, B or C.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R1001.1
FIREPLACE AND CHIMNEY DETAILS

R1001.9 Hearth and hearth extension. Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by *noncombustible materials*, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. *Combustible material* shall not remain against the underside of hearths and hearth extensions after construction.

R1001.9.1 Hearth thickness. The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

R1001.9.2 Hearth extension thickness. The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

Exception: Where the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-thick (10 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other *approved noncombustible material* is permitted.

R1001.10 Hearth extension dimensions. Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet (0.6 m^2) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening.

R1001.11 Fireplace clearance. Wood beams, joists, studs and other *combustible material* shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section R1001.12.

Exceptions:

1. Masonry fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have *combustible material* in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry fireplaces are part of masonry or concrete walls, *combustible materials* shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
3. Exposed combustible *trim* and the edges of sheathing materials such as wood siding, flooring and gypsum board shall be permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension in accordance with Figure R1001.11, provided such combustible *trim* or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
4. Exposed combustible mantels or *trim* is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening providing such *combustible materials* are not placed within 6 inches (152 mm) of a fireplace opening. *Combustible material* within 12 inches (306 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such an opening.

R1001.12 Fireplace fireblocking. Fireplace fireblocking shall comply with the provisions of Section R602.8.

R1001.13 Fireplace accessories. *Listed* and *labeled* fireplace accessories shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Fireplace accessories shall comply with UL 907.

SECTION R1002
MASONRY HEATERS

R1002.1 Definition. A *masonry heater* is a heating *appliance* constructed of concrete or *solid masonry*, hereinafter referred to as masonry, that is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid-fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes flow in a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and that delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

R1002.2 Installation. *Masonry heaters* shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. *Masonry heaters* shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.
2. *Masonry heaters* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1482 or CEN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

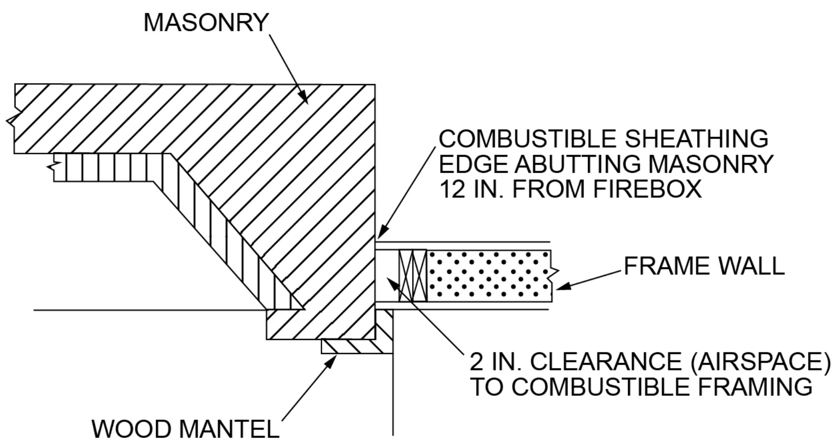
R1002.3 Footings and foundation. The firebox floor of a *masonry heater* shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of *noncombustible material* and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section R1003.2.

R1002.4 Seismic reinforcing. Deleted.

R1002.5 Masonry heater clearance. *Combustible materials* shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) of the outside surface of a *masonry heater* in accordance with NFPA 211 Section 8-7 (clearances for solid-fuel-burning *appliances*), and the required space between the heater and *combustible material* shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

Exceptions:

1. Where the *masonry heater* wall is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick of *solid masonry* and the wall of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5 inches (127 mm) thick of *solid masonry*, *combustible materials* shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a *masonry heater*. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R1001.11
CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES

gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.

2. *Masonry heaters listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1482 or CEN 15250 shall be installed in accordance with the listing specifications and the manufacturer's written instructions.

SECTION R1003
MASONRY CHIMNEYS

R1003.1 Definition. A *masonry chimney* is a chimney constructed of *solid masonry* units, *hollow masonry units* grouted solid, stone or concrete, hereinafter referred to as masonry. *Masonry chimneys* shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this chapter.

R1003.2 Footings and foundations. Footings for *masonry chimneys* shall be constructed of concrete or *solid masonry* not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished *grade*.

R1003.3 Seismic reinforcing. Masonry or concrete chimneys shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this chapter. In Seismic Design Category A, B or C, reinforcement and seismic anchorage are not required.

R1003.3.1 Vertical reinforcing. Deleted.

R1003.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing. Deleted.

R1003.4 Seismic anchorage. Deleted.

R1003.5 Corbeling. *Masonry chimneys* shall not be corbeled more than one-half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second *story* of a two-story *dwelling*, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls shall be permitted to be equal to the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

R1003.6 Changes in dimension. The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

R1003.7 Offsets. Where a *masonry chimney* is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an *approved* manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section R1003.5.

R1003.8 Additional load. Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Construction of *masonry chimneys* as part of the masonry walls or reinforced concrete walls of the building shall be permitted.

R1003.9 Termination. Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

R1003.9.1 Chimney caps. *Masonry chimneys* shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283. The concrete, metal or stone cap shall be sloped to shed water.

R1003.9.2 Spark arrestors. Where a spark arrestor is installed on a *masonry chimney*, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.
2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.
3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm).
4. The spark arrestor shall be located with *access* for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

R1003.9.3 Rain caps. Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a *masonry chimney*, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

R1003.10 Wall thickness. *Masonry chimney* walls shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units or *hollow masonry units* grouted solid with not less than a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness.

R1003.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys. Where masonry is used to veneer a frame chimney, through-flashing and weep holes shall be installed as required by Section R703.

R1003.11 Flue lining (material). *Masonry chimneys* shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of *appliance* connected, in accordance with the terms of the *appliance* listing and manufacturer's instructions.

R1003.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general). Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.
2. *Listed* and *labeled* chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units *listed* for installation within *masonry chimneys.*
4. Other *approved* materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

R1003.11.2 Flue linings for specific appliances. Flue linings other than these covered in Section R1003.11.1, intended for use with specific types of *appliances*, shall comply with Sections R1003.11.3 through R1003.11.6.

R1003.11.3 Gas appliances. Flue lining systems for gas *appliances* shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

R1003.11.4 Pellet fuel-burning appliances. Flue lining and vent systems for use in *masonry chimneys* with pellet fuel-burning *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section R1003.11.1.
2. Pellet vents *listed* for installation within *masonry chimneys* (see Section R1003.11.6 for marking).

R1003.11.5 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent. Flue lining and vent systems for use in *masonry chimneys* with oil-fired *appliances approved* for use with Type L vent shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section R1003.11.1.
2. *Listed* chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section R1003.11.6 for marking).

R1003.11.6 Notice of usage. Where a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section R1003.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a *label* attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The *label* shall include the following message or equivalent language:

THIS CHIMNEY FLUE IS FOR USE ONLY WITH [TYPE OR CATEGORY OF APPLIANCE] APPLIANCES THAT BURN [TYPE OF FUEL]. DO NOT CONNECT OTHER TYPES OF APPLIANCES.

R1003.12 Clay flue lining (installation). Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a slope not greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty water insoluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 (Type M and S) with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue liners shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

R1003.12.1 Listed materials. *Listed* materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and manufacturer's instructions.

R1003.12.2 Space around lining. The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a *masonry chimney* shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*.

Exception: This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

R1003.13 Multiple flues. Where two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

Exception: Where venting only one *appliance*, two flues shall be permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

R1003.14 Flue area (appliance). Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than that of the area of the connector from the *appliance* [see Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2)]. The sizing of a chimney flue to which multiple *appliance* venting systems are connected shall be in accordance with Section M1805.3.

TABLE R1003.14(1)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES[a]

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
$10^3/_4$	90
12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.
a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.

TABLE R1003.14(2)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5 × 8.5	23
4.5 × 13	34
8 × 8	42
8.5 × 8.5	49
8 × 12	67
8.5 × 13	76
12 × 12	102
8.5 × 18	101
13 × 13	127
12 × 16	131
13 × 18	173
16 × 16	181
16 × 20	222
18 × 18	233
20 × 20	298
20 × 24	335
24 × 24	431

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

R1003.15 Flue area (masonry fireplace). Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section R1003.15.1 or R1003.15.2.

R1003.15.1 Option 1. Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than one-twelfth of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-tenth of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an *aspect ratio* less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-tenth of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an *aspect ratio* of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-eighth of the fireplace opening. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field.

R1003.15.2 Option 2. The minimum net cross-sectional area of the chimney flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure R1003.15.2. A flue size providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.

R1003.16 Inlet. Inlets to *masonry chimneys* shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

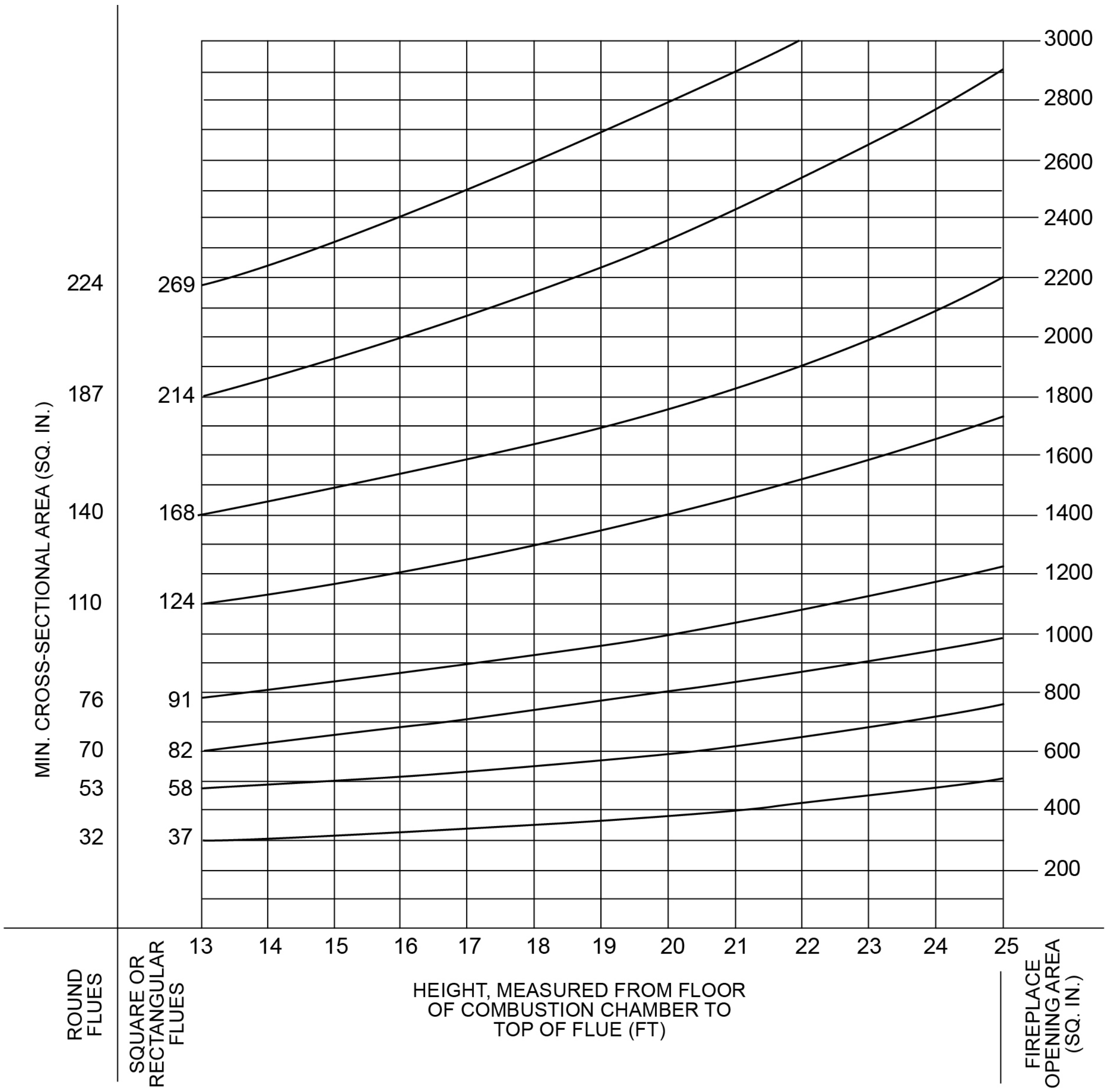
R1003.17 Masonry chimney cleanout openings. Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every *masonry chimney*. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

Exception: Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

R1003.18 Chimney clearances. Any portion of a *masonry chimney* located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fire blocking in accordance with Section R1003.19.

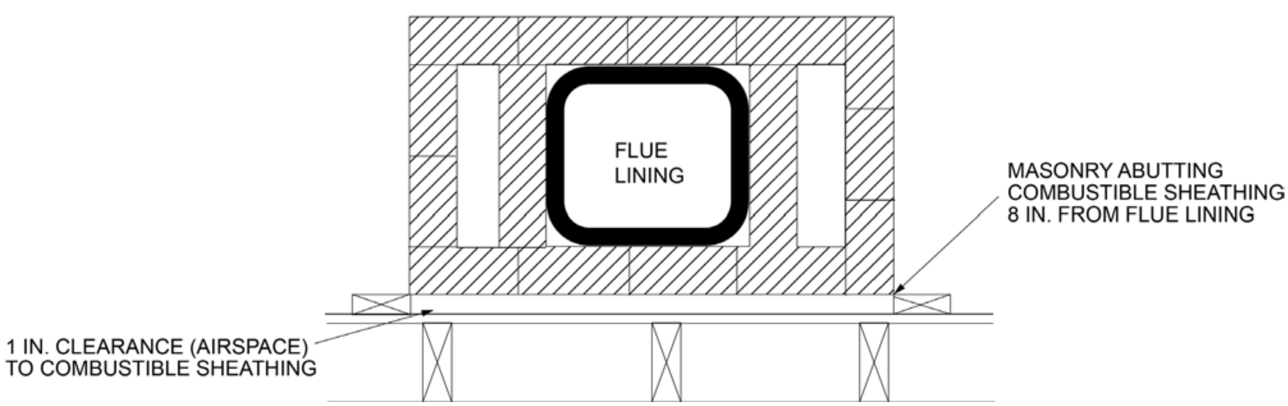
Exceptions:

1. *Masonry chimneys* equipped with a chimney lining system *listed* and *labeled* for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have *combustible material* in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where *masonry chimneys* are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, *combustible materials* shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

FIGURE R1003.15.2
FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R1003.18
CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES

3. Exposed combustible *trim* and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding and flooring, shall be permitted to abut the *masonry chimney* side walls, in accordance with Figure R1003.18, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.

R1003.19 Chimney fireblocking. Spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with *noncombustible material* securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between chimneys and wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between *combustible material* and the chimney.

R1003.20 Chimney crickets. Chimneys shall be provided with crickets where the dimension parallel to the ridgeline is greater than 30 inches (762 mm) and does not intersect the ridgeline. The intersection of the cricket and the chimney shall be flashed and counterflashed in the same manner as normal roof-chimney intersections. Crickets shall be constructed in compliance with Figure R1003.20 and Table R1003.20.

TABLE R1003.20
CRICKET DIMENSIONS

ROOF SLOPE	H
12:12	$^1/_2$ of W
8:12	$^1/_3$ of W
6:12	$^1/_4$ of W
4:12	$^1/_6$ of W
3:12	$^1/_8$ of W

SECTION R1004
FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

R1004.1 General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the *listing*. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

R1004.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of *approved* factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the *listing* of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. *Listed* and *labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

R1004.3 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of chimneys for factory-built fireplaces except where the shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built fireplace system and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

R1004.4 Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

R1004.5 Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

SECTION R1005
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

R1005.1 Listing. *Factory-built chimneys* shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the *manufacturer's installation instructions*.

R1005.2 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of *factory-built chimneys* except where the shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific *factory-built chimney* system and installed in accordance with the *manufacturer's installation instructions*.

R1005.3 Solid-fuel appliances. *Factory-built chimneys* installed in *dwelling units* with solid-fuel-burning *appliances* shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT" and "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

Exception: *Chimneys* for use with open combustion chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

Chimneys for use with open combustion chamber *appliances* installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating Appliance Chimney" or "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

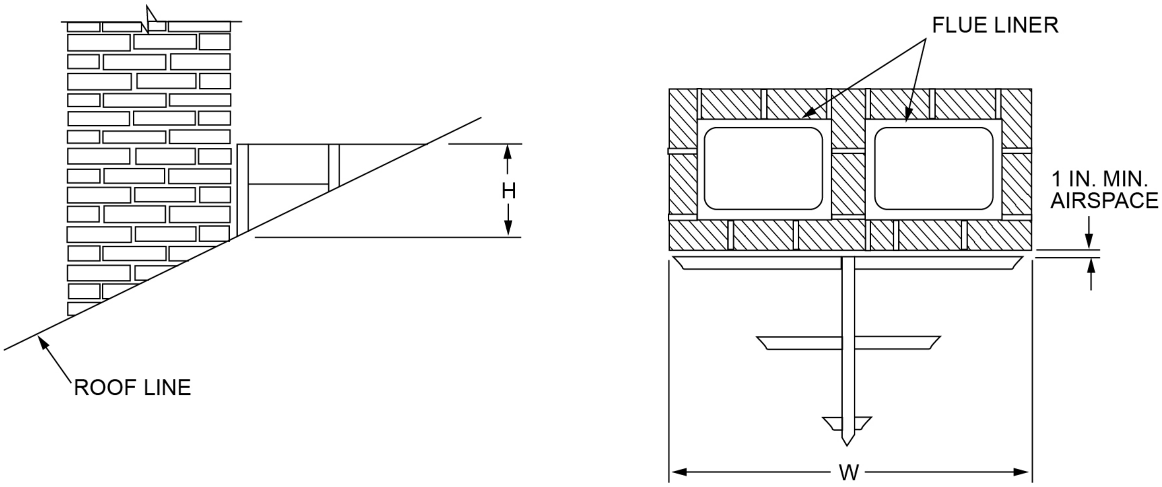
R1005.4 Factory-built fireplaces. *Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

R1005.5 Support. Where *factory-built chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, those members shall be designed to support the additional load.

R1005.6 Medium-heat appliances. *Factory-built chimneys* for medium-heat *appliances* producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the *chimney*, shall comply with UL 959.

R1005.7 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a *factory-built chimney* assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the *chimney* shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the chimney assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

R1005.8 Insulation shield. Where *factory-built chimneys* pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide clearance between the *chimney* and the insulation material. The clearance shall be not less than the clearance to combustibles specified by the chimney *manufacturer's installation instructions*. Where *chimneys* pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R1003.20
CHIMNEY CRICKET

mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* chimney system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION R1006
EXTERIOR AIR SUPPLY

R1006.1 Exterior air. Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this chapter shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

R1006.1.1 Factory-built fireplaces. Exterior *combustion air* ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be a *listed* component of the fireplace and shall be installed in accordance with the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

R1006.1.2 Masonry fireplaces. *Listed combustion air* ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their *listing* and the manufacturer's instructions.

R1006.2 Exterior air intake. The exterior air intake shall be capable of supplying all *combustion air* from the exterior of the *dwelling* or from spaces within the *dwelling* ventilated with outdoor air such as nonmechanically ventilated crawl or attic spaces. The exterior air intake shall not be located within the garage or *basement* of the dwelling. The exterior air intake, for other than *listed* factory-built fireplaces, shall not be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

R1006.3 Clearance. Unlisted *combustion air* ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

R1006.4 Passageway. The *combustion air* passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches (3870 mm^2) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m^2), except that *combustion air* systems for *listed* fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

R1006.5 Outlet. The exterior air outlet shall be located in the back or side of the firebox chamber or shall be located outside of the firebox, at the level of the hearth and not greater than 24 inches (610 mm) from the firebox opening. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

Part IV—Energy Conservation

CHAPTER 11 [RE]

ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION N1101 GENERAL

N1101.1 Scope. This chapter regulates the energy efficiency for the design and construction of buildings regulated by this code.

> **Exception:** In accordance with N.C.G.S. 143-138(b19), no energy conservation code provisions shall apply to detached and attached garages located on the same lot as a dwelling.

Note: *The text of the following Sections N1101.2 through N1105 is extracted from the 2018 edition of the* North Carolina Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions *and has been editorially revised to conform to the scope and application of this code. The section numbers appearing in parenthesis after each section number are the section numbers of the corresponding text in the* North Carolina Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions.

N1101.2 (R101.3) Intent. This chapter shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each *building*. This chapter is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This chapter is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

N1101.3 (R101.5.1) Compliance materials. The *building official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

N1101.4 (R102.1.1) Above code programs. Deleted.

N1101.5 (R103.2) Information on construction documents. Deleted.

> **N1101.5.1 (R103.2.1) Thermal envelope depiction.** Deleted.

N1101.6 (R202) Defined terms. Deleted. See Chapter 2.

N1101.7 (R301.1) Climate zones. Climate zones from Figure N1101.7 or Table N1101.7 shall be used in determining the applicable requirements in Sections N1101 through N1111.

> **N1101.7.1 (R301.2) Warm humid counties.** Warm humid counties are identified in Table N1101.7 by an asterisk.

> **N1101.7.2 (R301.3) International climate zones.** Deleted.

N1101.8 (R301.4) Tropical climate zone. Deleted.

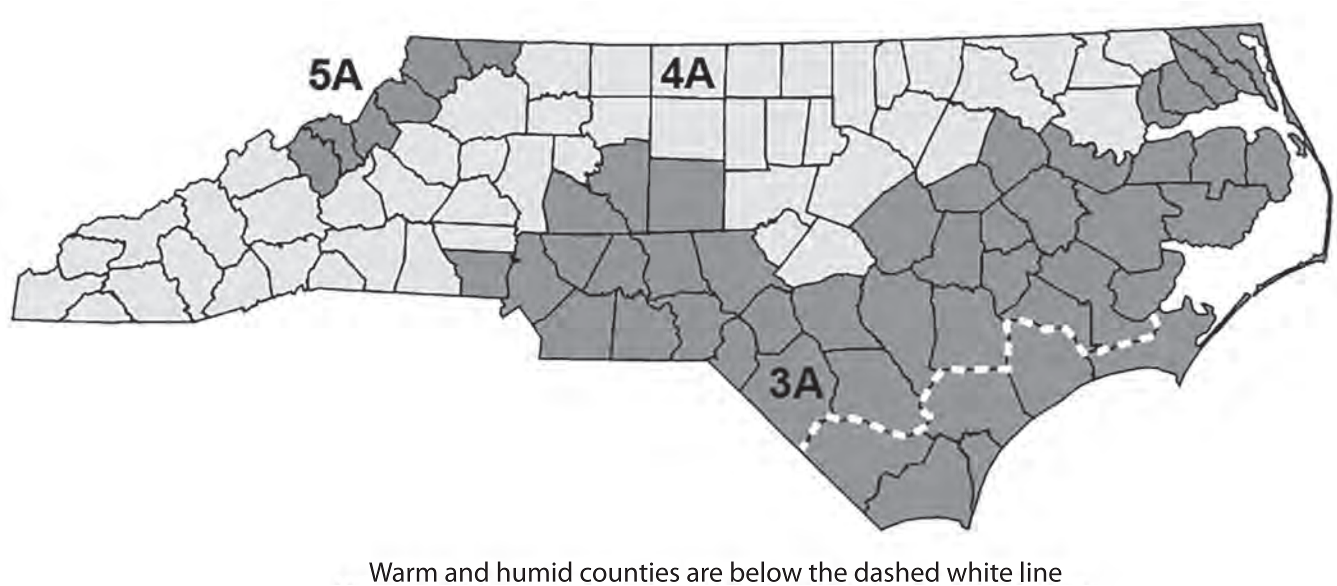


FIGURE N1101.7 (R301.1)
CLIMATE ZONES

TABLE N1101.7 (R301.1)
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

Key: A – Moist.
Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.

BY COUNTY

NORTH CAROLINA

4A Alamance
4A Alexander
5A Alleghany
3A Anson
5A Ashe
5A Avery
3A Beaufort
4A Bertie
3A Bladen
3A Brunswick*
4A Buncombe
4A Burke
3A Cabarrus
4A Caldwell
3A Camden
3A Carteret*
4A Caswell
4A Catawba
4A Chatham
4A Cherokee
3A Chowan
4A Clay
4A Cleveland
3A Columbus*
3A Craven
3A Cumberland
3A Currituck
3A Dare
3A Davidson
4A Davie
3A Duplin
4A Durham
3A Edgecombe
4A Forsyth
4A Franklin
3A Gaston
4A Gates
4A Graham
4A Granville
3A Greene
4A Guilford
4A Halifax
4A Harnett
4A Haywood
4A Henderson
4A Hertford
3A Hoke
3A Hyde
4A Iredell
4A Jackson
3A Johnston
3A Jones
4A Lee
3A Lenoir
4A Lincoln
4A Macon
4A Madison
3A Martin
4A McDowell
3A Mecklenburg
5A Mitchell
3A Montgomery
3A Moore
4A Nash
3A New Hanover*
4A Northampton
3A Onslow*
4A Orange
3A Pamlico
3A Pasquotank
3A Pender*
3A Perquimans
4A Person
3A Pitt
4A Polk
3A Randolph
3A Richmond
3A Robeson
4A Rockingham
3A Rowan
4A Rutherford
3A Sampson
3A Scotland
3A Stanly
4A Stokes
4A Surry
4A Swain
4A Transylvania
3A Tyrrell
3A Union
4A Vance
4A Wake
4A Warren
3A Washington
5A Watauga
3A Wayne
4A Wilkes
3A Wilson
4A Yadkin
5A Yancey

N1101.9 (R302.1) Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

N1101.10 (R303.1) Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

N1101.10.1 (R303.1.1) Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternately, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown or sprayed insulation (fiberglass and cellulose), the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be *listed* on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be labeled on the product's package and shall be *listed* on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

N1101.10.1.1 (R303.1.1.1) Blown or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation (fiberglass or cellulose) shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at least one for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be *listed* on certification provided by the insulation installer.

N1101.10.2 (R303.1.2) Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

N1101.10.3 (R303.1.3) Fenestration product rating. *U*-factors of fenestration products (windows, doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100. *U*-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Tables N1101.10.3(1) or N1101.10.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table N1101.10.3(3).

Exception: When a garage door is a part of the building thermal envelope, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

TABLE N1101.10.3(1) [R303.1.3(1)]
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	SINGLE PANE	DOUBLE PANE	SKYLIGHT	
			Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE N1101.10.3(2) [R303.1.3(2)]
DEFAULT DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	*U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE N1101.10.3(3) [R303.1.3(3)]
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

N1101.10.4 (R303.1.4) Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the U.S. Federal Trade Commission *R*-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

N1101.10.4.1 (R303.1.4.1) Insulated siding. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

N1101.11 (R303.2) Installation. All materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

N1101.11.1 (R303.2.1) Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawlspace walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have an opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

N1101.12 (R303.3) Maintenance information. Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance.

N1101.13 (R401.2) Compliance. Projects shall comply with one of the following:

1. Sections N1101.14 through N1104.
2. Section N1105 and the provisions of Section N1101.14 labeled "Mandatory."

3. An energy rating index (ERI) approach in Section N1106.
4. REScheck™ keyed to the 2018 IECC shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this code. Envelope requirements may not be traded off against the use of high efficiency heating or cooling equipment. No trade-off calculations are needed for required termite inspection and treatment gaps.

N1101.13.1 (R401.2.1) Tropical zone. Deleted.

N1101.14 (R401.3) Certificate (Mandatory). A permanent certificate shall be posted on or in the electrical distribution panel, in the attic next to the attic insulation card, or inside a kitchen cabinet or other approved location. The certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. The builder, permit holder, or *registered design professional* shall be responsible for completing the certificate. The certificate shall list the predominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceiling/roof, walls, foundation (slab, *basement wall*, crawlspace wall and floor) and ducts outside conditioned spaces; and the *U*-factors for fenestration and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall list the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall indicate whether the building air leakage was visually inspected as required in Section N1102.4.2.1 or provide results of the air leakage testing required in Section N1102.4.2.2. The certificate shall provide results of the duct leakage test required in Section N1103.3.3. Appendix NCE-1 contains a sample certificate.

N1101.15 (R401.4) Additional voluntary criteria for increasing residential energy efficiency. Appendix NCE-4 contains additional voluntary measures for increasing residential energy efficiency beyond code minimums. Implementation of the increased energy efficiency measures is strictly voluntary at the option of the permit holder. The sole purpose of the appendix is to provide guidance for achieving additional residential energy efficiency improvements that have been evaluated to be those that are most cost effective for achieving an additional 10–15-percent improvement in energy efficiency beyond code minimums.

SECTION N1102 (R402) BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

N1102.1 (R402.1) General (Prescriptive). The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Sections N1102.1.1 through N1102.1.5.

Exception: The following low energy buildings, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section N1102.

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h · ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt/ft^2 of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.

N1102.1.1 (R402.1.1) Vapor retarder. Deleted.

N1102.1.2 (R402.1.2) Insulation and fenestration criteria. The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Table N1102.1.2 based on the climate zone specified in Section N1101.7.

N1102.1.3 (R402.1.3) *R*-value computation. Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation, or continuous insulation shall be summed to compute the corresponding component *R*-value. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown insulation. Computed *R*-values shall not include an *R*-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table N1102.1.2, the manufacturer's labeled *R*-value for insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

N1102.1.4 (R402.1.4) *U*-factor alternative. An assembly with a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table N1102.1.4 shall be permitted as an alternative to the *R*-value in Table N1102.1.2.

N1102.1.5 (R402.1.5) Total UA alternative. If the total *building thermal envelope* UA (sum of *U*-factor times assembly area) is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from using the *U*-factors in Table N1102.1.4 (multiplied by the same assembly area as in the proposed building), the building shall be considered in compliance with Table N1102.1.2. The UA calculation shall be done using a method consistent with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. The SHGC requirements shall be met in addition to UA compliance.

N1102.2 (R402.2) Specific insulation requirements (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section N1102.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections N1102.2.1 through N1102.2.15.

N1102.2.1 (R402.2.1) Ceilings with attic spaces. Where Section R1102.1.2 would require R-38 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-30 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-38 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section R1102.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section R1102.1.5.

Exceptions:

1. When insulation is installed in a fully *enclosed attic floor system*, as described in Appendix NCE-2.1, R-30 shall be deemed compliant.
2. In roof edge and other details such as bay windows, dormers, and similar areas where the space is limited, the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.

TABLE N1102.1.2 (R402.1.2)
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b, j]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, k]	CEILING *R*-VALUE[m]	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[i]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c, o] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL *R*-VALUE
3	0.35	0.55	0.30	38 or 30ci	15 or 13 + 2.5[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	5/13[f]	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.55	0.30	38 or 30ci	15 or 13 + 2.5[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	10 /15	10	10/15
5	0.35	0.55	NR	38 or 30ci	19[n] or 13 + 5[h] or 15 + 3[h]	13/17 or 13/12.5 ci	30[g]	10/15	10	10/19

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. R-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. When insulation is installed in a cavity which is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall not be less than the *R*-value specified in the table.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

c. "10/15" means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-15 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall or crawl space wall.

d. R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge *R*-values for heated slabs. For monolithic slabs, insulation shall be applied from the inspection gap downward to the bottom of the footing or a maximum of 24 inches below grade, whichever is less. For floating slabs, insulation shall extend to the bottom of the foundation wall or 24 inches, whichever is less. (See Appendix NCD).

e. Deleted.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure N1101.7 and Table N1101.7.

g. Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.

h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation, so "13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation. If structural sheathing covers 25 percent or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25 percent of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.

i. The second *R*-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

j. In addition to the exemption in Section N1102.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

k. In addition to the exemption in Section N112.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

l. R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the ceiling insulation requirement wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Otherwise R-38 insulation is required where adequate clearance exists or insulation must extend to either the insulation baffle or within 1 inch of the attic roof deck.

m. Table value required except for roof edge where the space is limited by the pitch of the roof; there the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.

n. R -19 fiberglass batts compressed and installed in a nominal 2 × 6 framing cavity is deemed to comply. Fiberglass batts rated R-19 or higher compressed and installed in a 2 × 4 wall is not deemed to comply.

o. Basement wall meeting the minimum mass wall specific heat content requirement may use the mass wall *R*-value as the minimum requirement.

TABLE N1102.1.4 (R402.1.4)
EQUIVALENT *U*-FACTORS[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[d]	SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR	CEILING *U*-FACTOR	FRAME WALL *U*-FACTOR	MASS WALL *U*-FACTOR[b]	FLOOR *U*-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL *U*-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL *U*-FACTOR
3	0.35	0.55	0.030	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.091[c]	0.136
4	0.35	0.55	0.030	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.55	0.030	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.07 in Climate Zone 3, 0.07 in Climate Zone 4 and 0.054 in Climate Zone 5.

c. Basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure N1101.7 (R301.1) and Table 1101.7 (R301.1).

d. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the REScheck "UA Trade-off" compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the *U*-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products actual *U*-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum *U*-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.

N1102.2.2 (R402.2.2) Ceilings without attic spaces. Where Section N1102.1.2 would require R-38 insulation and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly, including cathedral ceilings, bay windows and other similar areas, does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section N1102.1.2 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m^2) of the total insulated ceiling area. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.5.

N1102.2.3 (R402.2.3) Soffit baffle. For air-permeable insulations in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit vents. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material.

N1102.2.4 (R402.2.4) Access hatches and doors. Horizontal access hatches from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to an R-10 minimum value and vertical doors to such spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to R-5. Access shall be provided to all equipment that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation. A wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer is required to be provided when loose-fill insulation is installed, the purpose of which is to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened, and to provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose-fill insulation.

Exceptions:

1. Full size vertical doors that provide access from conditioned to unconditioned spaces shall be permitted to meet the fenestration requirements of Table N1102.1.2 based on the applicable climate zone specified in Section N1101.7.
2. Pull down stair systems shall be weatherstripped and insulated with a minimum R-5 insulation. The insulation shall not interfere with proper operation of the stair. Nonrigid insulation materials are not allowed. Additional insulation systems that enclose the stair system from above are allowed. Exposed foam plastic must meet the provisions of Section R318.

N1102.2.5 (R402.2.5) Mass walls. Mass walls for the purposes of this chapter shall be considered walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form (ICF), masonry cavity, brick (other than brick veneer), earth (adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth) and solid timber/logs, or any other walls meeting the following. Masonry or concrete walls having a mass greater than or equal to 30 pounds per square foot (146 kg/m^2). Solid wood walls having a mass greater than 20 pounds per square foot (98 kg/m^2). Any walls having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ft^2 · °F[266 J/(m^2 · K)].

N1102.2.6 (R402.2.6) Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors. Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall meet the insulation requirements of Table N1102.2.6 or shall meet the *U*-factor requirements of Table N1102.1.4. The calculation of the *U*-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

N1102.2.7 (R402.2.7) Walls with partial structural sheathing. If structural sheathing covers 25 percent or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25 percent of the exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.5.

N1102.2.8 (R402.2.8) Floors. Floor framing-cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking. The distance between tension support wires or other devices that hold the floor insulation in place against the subfloor shall be no more than 18 inches (457 mm). In addition, supports shall be located no further than 6 inches (152 mm) from each end of the insulation.

Exception: An enclosed floor cavity such as garage ceilings, cantilevers or buildings on pilings with an enclosed floor cavity with the insulation fully in contact with the lower air barrier. In this case, the band boards shall be insulated to maintain thermal envelope continuity.

TABLE N1102.2.6 (R402.2.6)
STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION (*R*-VALUE)

WOOD FRAME *R*-VALUE REQUIREMENT	COLD-FORMED STEEL EQUIVALENT *R*-VALUE[a]
Steel Truss Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5
R-38	R-49 or R-38 + 3
R-49	R-38 + 5
Steel Joist Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 R-49 in any framing
R-38	R-49 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 or 2 × 10
Steel-Framed Wall, 16″ on center	
R-13	R-13 + 4.2 or R-19 + 2.1 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 6.1 or R-15 + 5.7 or R-19 + 5.0 or R-21 + 4.7
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-19 + 6.2 or R-21 + 7.5
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.3 or R-25 + 10.9
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7
Steel-Framed Wall, 24″ on center	
R-13	R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 4.9 or R-15 + 4.3 or R-19 + 3.5 or R-21 + 3.1
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9
Steel Joist Floor	
R-13	R-19 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 6 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10
R-19	R-19 + 6 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 12 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10

a. Cavity insulation *R*-value is listed first, followed by continuous insulation *R*-value.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

N1102.2.9 (R402.2.9) Basement walls. Walls associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall meet this requirement unless the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections N1102.1.2 and N1102.2.8. Foam plastic insulation applied to exterior of basement walls shall be provided with termite inspection and treatment gaps in accordance with Appendix NCD.

N1102.2.10 (R402.2.10) Slab-on-grade floors. Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table N1102.1.2. The top edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*. Slab edge insulation shall have a 2-inch (51 mm) termite inspection gap consistent with Appendix NCD of this code.

N1102.2.11 (R402.2.11) Closed crawl space walls. Where the floor above a closed crawl space is not insulated, the exterior crawlspace walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table N1102.1.2.

Wall insulation may be located in any combination of the outside and inside wall surfaces and within the structural cavities or materials of the wall system.

Wall insulation requires that the exterior wall band joist area of the floor frame be insulated. Wall insulation shall begin 3 inches (76 mm) below the top of the masonry foundation wall and shall extend down to 3 inches (76 mm) above the top of the footing or concrete floor, 3 inches (76 mm) above the interior ground surface or 24 inches (610 mm) below the outside finished ground level, whichever is less. (See Appendix NCE-2.2 details.)

Termite inspection, clearance, and wicking gaps are allowed in wall insulation systems. Insulation may be omitted in the gap area without energy penalty. The allowable insulation gap widths are listed in Table N1102.2.11. If gap width exceeds the allowances, one of the following energy compliance options shall be met:

1. Wall insulation is not allowed and the required insulation value shall be provided in the floor system.
2. Compliance shall be demonstrated with energy trade-off methods provided by a North Carolina-specific version of RESCHECK or the UA Alternative method or Section N1105.

N1102.2.12 (R402.2.12) Masonry veneer. Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of the foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

N1102.2.13 (R402.2.13) Sunroom insulation. S*unrooms* enclosing conditioned spaces shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

Exception: For *sunrooms* with *thermal isolation*, and enclosing conditioned spaces, the following exceptions to the insulation *requirements* of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation *R*-values shall be R-19 in Zones 3 and 4 and R-24 in Zone 5.
2. The minimum wall *R*-value shall be R-13 in all *climate zones*. New walls separating a *sunroom* with a *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall meet the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

N1102.2.14 (R402.2.14) Framed cavity walls. The exterior thermal envelope wall insulation shall be installed in contact and continuous alignment with the building envelope air barrier. Insulation shall be free from installation gaps, voids, or compression. For framed walls, the cavity insulation shall be enclosed on all sides with solid rigid material or an air barrier material. Polyethylene shall not be allowed. Rim joists are not required to be enclosed on all sides. Wall insulation shall be enclosed at the following locations when installed on exterior walls prior to being covered by subsequent construction, consistent with Appendix NCE-2.3 of this code:

1. Tubs
2. Showers
3. Stairs
4. Fireplace units (Enclose with rigid material only)

N1102.2.15 (R402.2.15) Attic knee walls. Enclosure of wall cavity insulation also applies to walls that adjoin attic spaces by placing a rigid material or air barrier material on the attic space side of the wall on the attic space side of the

TABLE N1102.2.11
WALL INSULATION ALLOWANCES FOR TERMITE TREATMENT AND INSULATION GAPS

GAP WIDTH (inches)		INSULATION LOCATION	GAP DESCRIPTION
Minimum	Maximum		
2	3	Outside	Above grade inspection between top of insulation and bottom of siding
4	6	Outside	Below grade treatment
3[a]	4[a]	Inside	Wall inspection between top of insulation and bottom of sill
3[a]	4[a]	Inside	Clearance/wicking space between bottom of insulation and top of ground surface, footing, or concrete floor

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. No insulation shall be required on masonry walls of 9 inches in height or less.

wall consistent with Appendix NCE-2.3 of this code. Non-insulating class I vapor retarders, such as polyethylene, shall not be allowed.

N1102.3 (R402.3) Fenestration (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section N1102, fenestration shall comply with Sections N1102.3.1 through N1102.3.5.

N1102.3.1 (R402.3.1) *U*-factor. An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements.

N1102.3.2 (R402.3.2) Glazed fenestration SHGC. An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table R1102.1.2 provided the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. *Dynamic glazing* shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

Exception: *Dynamic glazing* is not required to comply with this section when both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table N1102.1.2.

N1102.3.3 (R402.3.3) Glazed fenestration exemption. Either two glazed fenestration assemblies or up to 24 square feet (2.2 m^2) of glazed fenestration per dwelling unit shall be permitted to be exempt from *U*-factor and SHGC requirements in Section N1102.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.5.

N1102.3.4 (R402.3.4) Opaque door. Opaque doors separating conditioned from unconditioned space shall have a maximum *U*-factor of 0.35.

Exception: One side-hinged opaque door assembly is exempted from the *U*-factor requirement in Section N1102.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.5.

N1102.3.5 (R402.3.5) Sunroom fenestration. S*unrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* shall meet the fenestration requirements of this code.

Exceptions:

1. For *sunrooms* with *thermal isolation* and enclosing *conditioned space* in *Climate Zones* 3 through 5, the maximum fenestration *U*-factor shall be 0.45 and the maximum skylight *U*-factor shall be 0.75. Sunrooms with cooling systems shall have a maximum fenestration SHGC of 0.40 for all glazing.
2. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and, when cooling is provided, a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

New fenestration separating the *sunroom* with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall meet the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

N1102.4 (R402.4) Air leakage control (Mandatory). The *building thermal envelope* shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections N1102.4.1 through N1102.4.6.

N1102.4.1 (R402.4.1) Building thermal envelope. The *building thermal envelope* shall be durably sealed to limit infiltration. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction. For all homes, where present, the following shall be caulked, gasketed, weatherstripped or otherwise sealed with an air barrier material, or solid material consistent with Appendix NCE-2.4 of this code:

1. Blocking and sealing floor/ceiling systems and under knee walls open to unconditioned or exterior space.
2. Capping and sealing shafts or chases, including flue shafts.
3. Capping and sealing soffit or dropped ceiling areas.
4. Sealing HVAC register boots and return boxes to subfloor or drywall.
5. Seal exterior house wrap material joints and seams in accordance with manufacturer's instructions or, if house wrap joints are not sealed, seal exterior sheathing and exposed band joist joints including perimeter joints and edges of these materials.

Exceptions:

1. Spray foam in building thermal envelope wall systems.
2. Wall sheathing joints where wall sheathing is fully glued to framing.

N1102.4.2 Air sealing. Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by compliance with Section N1102.4.2.1 or N1102.4.2.2. Appendix NCE-3 contains optional sample worksheets for visual inspection or testing for the permit holder's use only.

N1102.4.2.1 Visual inspection option. Building envelope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in Section N1102.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section N1102.2.15 and air sealing in Section N1102.4.1 are addressed and when the items listed in Table N1102.4.2, applicable to the method of construction, are certified by the builder, permit holder or *registered design professional* via the certificate in Appendix NCE-1.

N1102.4.2.2 Testing option. Building envelope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in Section N1102.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section N1102.2.15 and air sealing in Section N1102.4.1 are addressed and when tested air leakage is less than or equal to one of the two following performance measurements:

Test Criteria:

1. 0.30 CFM50/Square Foot of Surface Area (SFSA) or

2. Five (5) air changes per hour (ACH50)

When tested with a blower door fan assembly, at a pressure of 33.5 psf (50 Pa). A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the blower door fan assembly has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827. Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utilities, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances. Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI envelope professional* or a *certified HERS rater*.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;
2. Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, including exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;
3. Interior doors shall be open;
4. Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;
5. Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and
6. Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.

The air leakage information, building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section N1101.14.

For Test Criteria 1 in this section, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the blower door test and record the *CFM50*. Calculate the total square feet of surface area for the building thermal envelope (all floors, ceilings, and walls including windows and doors, bounding conditioned space) and record the area. Divide *CFM50* by the total square feet and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to [0.30 CFM50/SFSA] the envelope tightness is acceptable; or

For Test Criteria 2, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50*. Multiply the *CFM50* by 60 minutes to create CFHour50 and record. Then calculate the total conditioned volume of the home and record. Divide the *CFH50* by the total volume and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 5 ACH50 the envelope tightness is acceptable.

TABLE N1102.4.2
AIR BARRIER INSPECTION

COMPONENT	CRITERIA
Ceiling/attic	Sealants or gaskets provide a continuous air barrier system joining the top plate of framed walls with either the ceiling drywall or the top edge of wall drywall to prevent air leakage. Top plate penetrations are sealed. For ceiling finishes that are not air barrier systems such as tongue-and-groove planks, air barrier systems (for example, taped house wrap), shall be used above the finish **Note:** It is acceptable that sealants or gaskets applied as part of the application of the drywall will not be observable by the code official.
Walls	Sill plate is gasketed or sealed to subfloor or slab.
Windows and doors	Space between window and exterior door jambs and framing is sealed.
Floors (including above-garage and cantilevered floors)	Air barrier system is installed at any exposed edge of insulation.
Penetrations	Utility penetrations through the building thermal envelope, including those for plumbing, electrical wiring, ductwork, security and fire alarm wiring, and control wiring, shall be sealed.
Garage separation	Air sealing is provided between the garage and conditioned spaces. An air barrier system shall be installed between the ceiling system above the garage and the ceiling system of interior spaces.
Ceiling penetrations	Ceiling electrical box penetrations and ceiling mechanical box penetrations shall be caulked, gasketed, or sealed at the penetration of the ceiling finish. See Appendix NCE-2.4. **Exception:** Ceiling electrical boxes and ceiling mechanical boxes not penetrating the building thermal envelope.
Recessed lighting	Recessed light fixtures are air tight, IC-rated, and sealed to drywall. **Exception:** Fixtures in conditioned space.

N1102.4.3 (R402.4.3) Fireplaces. Site-built masonry fireplaces shall have flue dampers and comply with Section R1006 for combustion air.

N1102.4.4 (R402.4.4) Fenestration air leakage. Windows, skylights and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of no more than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m^2), and swinging doors no more than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m^2), when tested according to NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory and *listed* and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exception: Field-fabricated windows, skylights and doors.

N1102.4.5 (R402.4.5) Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. Deleted.

N1102.4.6 (R402.4.6) Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. All recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and *labeled* as having an air leakage rate not more than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential. All recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

N1102.5 (R402.5) Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC (Mandatory). The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using trade-offs from Section N1102.1.5 shall be 0.48. Maximum skylight *U*-factors shall be 0.65 in Zones 4 and 5 and 0.60 in Zone 3. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using trade-offs from Section N1105 in Zone 3 shall be 0.50.

Exception: A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

SECTION N1103 (R403) SYSTEMS

N1103.1 (R403.1) Controls (Mandatory). At least one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

N1103.1.1 (R403.1.1) Programmable thermostat. When the primary heating system is a forced air furnace or heat pump, the thermostat controlling the primary heating or cooling system of the dwelling unit shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain *zone* temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall initially be programmed by the manufacturer with a heating temperature set point no higher than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature set point no lower than 78°F (26°C).

N1103.1.2 (R403.1.2) Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory). Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

A heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat shall be provided to prevent supplemental heat operation in response to the thermostat being changed to a warmer setting. The lockout shall be set no lower than 35°F (2°C) and no higher than 40°F (4°C).

Exceptions:

1. In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat, the following time and temperature electric-resistance control may be used. After six minutes of compressor run time in heat mode, supplemental electric heat shall energize only if the leaving air temperature from the indoor coil is below 90°F (32°C). If the indoor coil leaving air temperature exceeds 100°F (38°C), supplemental heat shall automatically de-energize, but allow the compressor to continue to operate until the call is satisfied. No thermostat shall initiate supplemental electric heat at any time. Thermostat controlled emergency heat shall not be limited by outdoor temperature. Electric resistance supplemental heat during defrost shall operate normally without limitation.

2. In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat, a programmable indoor thermostat with the capability to minimize the use of supplementary electrical resistance heat using an automatic temperature ramp up control feature shall be acceptable.

N1103.2 (R403.2) Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback. Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

N1103.3 (R403.3) Ducts. Ducts and air handlers shall be in accordance with Sections N1103.3.1 through N1103.3.4.

N1103.3.1 (R403.3.1) Insulation (Mandatory). Supply and return ducts in unconditioned space and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside semi-conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and semi-conditioned space are not required to be insulated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts.

Residential Spaces Insulation Rule in accordance with North Carolina Session Law 2022-6 Section 20.10(c) and North Carolina Session Law 2022-46 Section 26.(a), expires 3/17/24.

Supply and return air ducts located in ventilated or non- ventilated unconditioned spaces, other than attics, shall be insulated to a minimum R-4.2. Supply and return air ducts located in ventilated or non-ventilated unconditioned attic spaces shall be insulated to a minimum R-6.0.

N1103.3.2 (R403.3.2) Sealing (Mandatory). Ducts, air handlers, filter boxes and building cavities used as ducts shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the *International Mechanical Code* or Section M1601.4.1 of this code, as applicable.

Exceptions:

1. Air-impermeable spray foam products shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.
2. Deleted.

N1103.3.2.1 (R403.3.2.1) Sealed air handler. Deleted.

N1103.3.3 (R403.3.3) Duct leakage (Prescriptive) and duct testing (Mandatory). Duct testing and duct leakage shall be verified by compliance with either Section N1103.3.3.1 or N1103.3.3.2. Duct testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI envelope professional* or a certified *HERS rater*. A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the duct testing fan assembly(s) has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E1554-07.

The duct leakage information, including duct leakage test selected and result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section N1101.14.

For the Test Criteria, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the HVAC system air leakage test and record the CFM25. Calculate the total square feet of conditioned floor area (CFA) served by that system. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 5 CFM25/100SF for the "Total duct leakage" test or less than or equal to 4 CFM25/100SF for the "Duct leakage to the outside" test, then the HVAC system air tightness is acceptable. Appendix NCE-3C contains optional sample worksheets for duct testing for the permit holder's use only.

Exceptions:

1. Duct systems or portions thereof inside the building thermal envelope shall not be required to be leak tested.
2. Installation of a partial system as part of replacement, renovation or addition does not require a duct leakage test.
3. Duct systems (complete) serving areas of 750 square feet or less shall not need to be required to be leak tested.

N1103.3.3.1 Total duct leakage. Total duct leakage shall be less than or equal to 5 CFM (141.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.

During testing:

1. Block, if present, ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.
2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.
3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.
4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight.
5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.
6. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage.

N1103.3.3.2 Duct leakage to the outside. Conduct the test using fan pressurization of distribution system and building at a fixed reference pressure for combined supply and return leak. Duct leakage to the outside shall be less than or equal to 4 CFM (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, relative to the outside, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.

During testing:

1. Block, if present, the ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.
2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.
3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.
4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight or as tight as possible.
5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.
6. Open all interconnecting doors in the building, close dampers for fireplaces and other operable dampers.
7. Set up an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door, following the manufacturer's prescribed procedure.
8. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage used in combination with a blower door. Typical steps are as follows:

a. Depressurize the ductwork system to 25 Pa using the measurement hose in Step 5.

b. Depressurize the house to 25 Pa using an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door.

c. Correct the duct pressure to measure 0 Pa of pressure differential between the house and the ductwork system.

d. Read the CFM of duct leakage using the procedures for the specific equipment being used. (Note that most automatically calculating pressure gauges cannot compute the CFM25 automatically with a duct-to-house difference in pressure of 0 Pa, so the gauge setting should be set to read CFM instead of CFM25).

N1103.3.4 (R403.3.4) Building cavities (Mandatory). Building framing cavities shall not be used as supply ducts or supply plenums.

N1103.4 (R403.4) Mechanical system piping insulation (Mandatory). Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids above 105°F (41°C) or below 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3.

N1103.4.1 (R403.4.1) Protection of piping insulation. Deleted.

N1103.5 (R403.5) Service hot water systems. All circulating service hot water piping shall be insulated to at least R-2. Circulating hot water systems shall include an automatic or readily *accessible* manual switch that can turn off the hot water circulating pump when the system is not in use.

N1103.5.1 (R403.5.1) Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems (Mandatory). Deleted.

N1103.5.2 (R403.5.2) Demand recirculation systems. Deleted.

N1103.5.3 (R403.5.3) Hot water pipe insulation (Prescriptive). Deleted.

N1103.5.4 (R403.5.4) Drain water heat recovery units. Deleted.

N1103.6 (R403.6) Mechanical ventilation (Mandatory). The building shall be provided with ventilation that meets the requirements of Section M1507 of this code or the *International Mechanical Code*, as applicable, or with other approved means of ventilation. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.

N1103.6.1 (R403.6.1) Whole-house mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy. Deleted.

N1103.7 (R403.7) Equipment sizing and efficiency rating (Mandatory). Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New heating and cooling equipment shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the equipment is installed.

N1103.8 (R403.8) Systems serving multiple dwelling units (Mandatory). Building mechanical systems and service water heating systems serving multiple dwelling units shall comply with Sections C403 and C404 of the 2018 North Carolina Energy Code—Commercial Provisions in lieu of Section N1103.

N1103.9 (R403.9) Snow melt system controls (Mandatory). Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

N1103.10 (R403.10) Pools and permanent spa energy consumption (Mandatory). The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be in accordance with Sections N1103.10.1 through N1103.10.3.

N1103.10.1 (R403.10.1) Heaters. All heaters shall be equipped with a readily accessible on-off switch that is mounted outside of the heater to allow shutting off the heater without adjusting the thermostat setting. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with constantly burning pilot lights.

N1103.10.2 (R403.10.2) Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

N1103.10.3 (R403.10.3) Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a Class 1 vapor-retardant cover.

Exception: Pools deriving over 70 percent of the energy from heating from a *site-recovered energy* or *solar energy* source.

N1103.11 (R403.11) Portable spas (Mandatory). Deleted.

N1103.12 (R403.12) Residential pools and permanent residential spas. Residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas that are accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses 3 stories or less in height above grade plane and that are available only to the household and its guests shall be in accordance with APSP-15.

SECTION N1104 (R404)
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS (MANDATORY)

N1104.1 (R404.1) Lighting equipment (Mandatory). Not less than 75 percent of the lamps in permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be high-efficacy lamps or not less than 75 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy lamps.

Exception: Low-voltage lighting.

N1104.1.1 (R404.1.1) Lighting equipment (Mandatory). Fuel gas lighting systems shall not have continuously burning pilot lights.

SECTION N1105 (R405) SIMULATED PERFORMANCE ALTERNATIVE (PERFORMANCE)

N1105.1 (R405.1) Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using simulated energy performance analysis. Such analysis shall include those items identified in Table N1105.5.2(1), as applicable. A *registered design professional* is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws.

N1105.2 (R405.2) Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires that the mandatory provisions identified in Section N1101.13(2) be met.

N1105.3 (R405.3) Performance-based compliance. Compliance based on simulated energy performance requires that a proposed residence (*proposed design)* be shown to have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design.* Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *building official,* such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's *State Energy Price and Expenditure Report. Building officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.

Exception: The energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu (J) or Btu per square foot (J/m^2) of *conditioned floor area* shall be permitted to be substituted for the energy cost. The source energy multiplier for electricity shall be 3.16. The source energy multiplier for fuels other than electricity shall be 1.1.

N1105.4 (R405.4) Documentation. Documentation of the software used for the performance design and the parameters for the building shall be in accordance with Sections N1105.4.1 through N1105.4.3.

N1105.4.1 (R405.4.1) Compliance software tools. Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of the compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *building official.*

N1105.4.2 (R405.4.2) Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the *proposed design* complies with Section N1105.3. A compliance report on the *proposed design* shall be submitted. A compliance report shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. A statement indicating that the *proposed design* complies with Section N1105.3.
3. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as indicated in Table N1105.5.2(1). The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* with user inputs to the compliance software to generate the results.
4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section N1105.3.
5. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.
6. The name and version of the compliance software tool.

N1105.4.3 (R405.4.3) Additional documentation. The *building official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design.*
2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in Table N1105.5.2(1).
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the *proposed design.*

N1105.5 (R405.5) Calculation procedure. Calculations of the performance design shall be in accordance with Sections N1105.5.1 and N1105.5.2.

N1105.5.1 (R405.5.1) General. Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

N1105.5.2 (R405.5.2) Residence specifications. The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table N1105.5.2(1). Table N1105.5.2(1) shall include, by reference, all notes contained in Table N1102.1.2.

N1105.6 (R405.6) Calculation software tools. Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections N1105.6.1 through N1105.6.3.

N1105.6.1 (R405.6.1) Minimum capabilities. Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the *standard reference design* using only the input for the *proposed design.* The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design.*
2. Calculation of whole-building (as a single *zone)* sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *standard reference design* residence in accordance with Section N1103.6.
3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed *building official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table N1105.5.2(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings (*R*-value, *U*-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER, EF are some examples).

TABLE N1105.5.2(1) [R405.5.2(1)]
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass wall if proposed wall is mass; otherwise wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table N1102.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90	As proposed
Basement and crawl space walls	Type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: from Table N1102.1.4, with insulation layer on interior side of walls	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table N1102.1.4	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table N1102.1.4	As proposed
Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with aperture = 1 ft^2 per 300 ft^2 ceiling area	As proposed
Foundations	Type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Foundation wall area above and below grade and soil characteristics: same as proposed	As proposed
Opaque doors	Area: 40 ft^2	As proposed
	Orientation: North	As proposed
	U-factor: same as fenestration from Table N1102.1.4	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Total area[h] = (a) The proposed glazing area, where the proposed glazing area is less than 15 percent of the conditioned floor area (b) 15 percent of the conditioned floor area, where the proposed glazing area is 15 percent or more of the conditioned floor area	As proposed
	Orientation: equally distributed to four cardinal compass orientations (N, E, S & W).	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table N1102.1.4	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table N1102.1.2 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used.	As proposed
	Interior shade fraction: 0.92-(0.21 × SHGC for the standard reference design)	0.92-(0.21 × SHGC as proposed)
	External shading: none	As proposed
Skylights	None	As proposed
Thermally isolated sunrooms	None	As proposed
Air exchange rate	Air leakage rate of 5 air changes per hour in Climate Zones 3 through 5 at a pressure of 0.2 inches w.g (50 Pa). The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and the same as in the proposed design, but no greater than $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where: *CFA* = conditioned floor area N_{br} = number of bedrooms Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.	For residences that are not tested, the same air leakage rate as the standard reference design. For tested residences, the measured air exchange rate[a]. The mechanical ventilation rate[b] shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.

(continued)

TABLE N1105.5.2(1) [R405.5.2(1)]—continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Mechanical ventilation	None, except where mechanical ventilation is specified by the proposed design, in which case: Annual vent fan energy use: kWh/yr = 0.03942 × CFA + 29.565 × (N_{br} +1) where: CFA = conditioned floor area N_{br} = number of bedrooms	As proposed
Internal gains	IGain = 17,900 + 23.8 × CFA + 4104 × N_{br} (Btu/day per dwelling unit)	Same as standard reference design.
Internal mass	An internal mass for furniture and contents of 8 pounds per square foot of floor area.	Same as standard reference design, plus any additional mass specifically designed as a thermal storage element[c] but not integral to the building envelope or structure.
Structural mass	For masonry floor slabs, 80 percent of floor area covered by R-2 carpet and pad, and 20 percent of floor directly exposed to room air.	As proposed
	For masonry basement walls, as proposed, but with insulation required by Table N1102.1.4 located on the interior side of the walls	As proposed
	For other walls, for ceilings, floors, and interior walls, wood frame construction	As proposed
Heating systems[d, e]	As proposed for other than electric heating without a heat pump, where the proposed design utilizes electric heating without a heat pump the standard reference design shall be an air source heat pump meeting the requirements of Section C403 of the IECC-Commercial Provisions. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section N1103.7	As proposed
Cooling systems[d, f]	As proposed Capacity: sized in accordance with Section N1103.7.	As proposed
Service water heating[d, e, f]	As proposed Use: same as proposed design	As proposed gal/day = 30 + (10 × N_{br})
Thermal distribution systems	Duct insulation: From Section N1103.3.1 A thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) of 0.88 shall be applied to both the heating and cooling system efficiencies for all systems other than tested duct systems. For tested duct systems, the leakage rate shall be 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor* area at a pressure of differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa).	As tested or as specified in Table N1105.5.2(2) if not tested. Duct insulation shall be the same as standard reference design.
Thermostat	Type: Manual, cooling temperature setpoint = 75°F; Heating temperature setpoint = 72°F	Same as standard reference

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.93 m^2, 1 British thermal unit = 1055 J, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 gallon (US) = 3.785 L, °C = (°F-32)/1.8, 1 degree = 0.79 rad.

a. Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* party. Hourly calculations as specified in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, or the equivalent shall be used to determine the energy loads resulting from infiltration.

b. The combined air exchange rate for infiltration and mechanical ventilation shall be determined in accordance with Equation 43 of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.24 and the "Whole-house Ventilation" provisions of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.19 for intermittent mechanical ventilation.

c. Thermal storage element shall mean a component not part of the floors, walls or ceilings that is part of a passive solar system, and that provides thermal storage such as enclosed water columns, rock beds, or phase-change containers. A thermal storage element must be in the same room as fenestration that faces within 15 degrees (0.26 rad) of true south, or must be connected to such a room with pipes or ducts that allow the element to be actively charged.

d. For a proposed design with multiple heating, cooling or water heating systems using different fuel types, the applicable standard reference design system capacities and fuel types shall be weighted in accordance with their respective loads as calculated by accepted engineering practice for each equipment and fuel type present.

e. For a proposed design without a proposed heating system, a heating system with the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

f. For a proposed design home without a proposed cooling system, an electric air conditioner with the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and the proposed design.

g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater with the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For the case of a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater with the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.

h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences and townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:

(continued)

TABLE N1105.5.2(1) [R405.5.2(1)]—continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences and townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:

$AF = A_s \times FA \times F$

where:

AF = Total glazing area.

A_s = Standard reference design total glazing area.

FA = (Above-grade thermal boundary gross wall area)/(above-grade boundary wall area + 0.5 × below-grade boundary wall area).

F = (Above-grade thermal boundary wall area)/(above-grade thermal boundary wall area + common wall area) or 0.56, whichever is greater.

and where:

Thermal boundary wall is any wall that separates conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient conditions.

Above-grade thermal boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall component not in contact with soil.

Below-grade boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall in soil contact.

Common wall area is the area of walls shared with an adjoining dwelling unit.

L and *CFA* are in the same units.

TABLE N1105.5.2(2) [R405.5.2(2)]
DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES FOR PROPOSED DESIGNS[a]

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND CONDITION	FORCED AIR SYSTEMS	HYDRONIC SYSTEMS[b]
Distribution system components located in unconditioned space	—	0.95
Untested distribution systems entirely located in conditioned space[c]	0.88	1
“Ductless” systems[d]	1	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093m^2, 1 pound per square inch = 6895 Pa, 1 inch water gauge = 1250 Pa.

a. Default values given by this table are for untested distribution systems, which must still meet minimum requirements for duct system insulation.

b. Hydronic systems shall mean those systems that distribute heating and cooling energy directly to individual spaces using liquids pumped through closed-loop piping and that do not depend on ducted, forced airflow to maintain space temperatures.

c. Entire system in conditioned space shall mean that no component of the distribution system, including the air handler unit, is located outside of the conditioned space.

d. Ductless systems shall be allowed to have forced airflow across a coil but shall not have any ducted airflow external to the manufacturer’s air handler enclosure.

N1105.6.2 (R405.6.2) Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable provisions of Section N1105 shall be permitted to be *approved.* Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *building official* shall be permitted to approve tools for a specified application or limited scope.

N1105.6.3 (R405.6.3) Input values. When calculations require input values not specified by Sections N1102, N1103, N1104 and N1105, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

SECTION N1106 (R406) ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE

N1106.1 (R406.1) Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

N1106.2 (R406.2) Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections N1101 through N1104 labeled as “mandatory” be met. The building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient in Table N1106.2.1 or Table N1106.2.2. Minimum standards associated with compliance shall be the ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2014 Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-Rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index. A North Carolina *licensed design professional* or certified *HERS rater* is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws.

Exception: Supply and return ducts in unconditioned space and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside semi-conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and semi-conditioned space are not required to be insulated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts.

N1106.3 (R406.3) Energy rating index. The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be a numerical integer value that is based on a linear scale constructed such that the *ERI reference design* has an Index value of 100 and a *residential building* that uses no net purchased energy has an Index value of 0. Each integer value on the scale shall represent a 1 percent change in the total energy use of the rated design relative to the total energy use of the *ERI reference design*. The ERI shall consider all energy used in the *residential building*.

N1106.3.1 (R406.3.1) ERI reference design. The *ERI reference design* shall be configured such that it meets the

TABLE N1106.2.1
MINIMUM INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS FOR ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE[a]

FENESTRATION VALUES				*R*-VALUES FOR								
Climate Zone	Fenestration *U*-factor[b, j]	Skylight[b] *U*-factor	Glazed Fenestration Shgc[b,k]	Ceiling[m]	Unvented[p] Rafter Assemblies in Attics Containing Ductwork, Air-Impermeable	Unvented[p] Rafter Assemblies in Attics Containing Ductwork, Air-Permeable/ Impermeable	Wood Frame Wall	Mass Wall[i]	Floor	Basement[c,o] wall	Slab[d]	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL
3	0.35	0.65	0.3	30	20	15-10[q]	13	5/10	19	10/13[f]	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.6	0.3	38 or 30ci[l]	20	15-10[q]	15, 13+2.5[h]	5/10	19	10/13	10	10/13
5	0.35	0.6	NR	38 or 30ci[l]	25	15-20[q]	19[n], 13+5[h], or 15+3[h]	13/17	30[g]	10/13	10	10/13

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

c. "10/13" means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall or crawl space wall.

d. For monolithic slabs, insulation shall be applied from the inspection gap downward to the bottom of the footing or a maximum of 18 inches below grade, whichever is less. For floating slabs, insulation shall extend to the bottom of the foundation wall or 24 inches, whichever is less. (See Appendix NCD) R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge *R*-values for heated slabs.

e. Deleted.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure N1101.7 and Table N1101.7.

g. Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.

h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation so "13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation. If structural sheathing covers 25 percent or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25 percent of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.

i. The second *R*-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

j. In addition to the exemption in Section N1102.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

k. In addition to the exemption in Section N1102.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

l. R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the ceiling insulation requirement wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Otherwise, R-38 insulation is required where adequate clearance exists or insulation must extend either to the insulation baffle or within 1 inch of the attic roof deck.

m. Table value required except for roof edge where the space is limited by the pitch of the roof; there the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.

n. R-19 fiberglass batts compressed and installed in a nominal 2 × 6 framing cavity is deemed to comply. Fiberglass batts rated R-19 or higher compressed and installed in a 2 × 4 wall are not deemed to comply.

o. Basement wall meeting the minimum mass wall specific heat content requirement may use the mass wall *R*-value as the minimum requirement.

p. The air-impermeable insulation shall meet the requirements of the definition in Section R202. Air-impermeable insulation shall be installed in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing. For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, the insulation installation shall meet the requirements of Section R806.5 of the North Carolina Residential Code. For residential buildings other than one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, the insulation installation shall meet the installation requirements of 1203.3 of the *North Carolina Building Code*. Exposed rafters shall be covered with R-7 insulation.

q. The value for air-permeable insulation is shown first and that for air-impermeable insulation second. Thus, R-15 + R-10 indicates that the minimum value for air-permeable insulation is R-15, and the minimum value for air-impermeable insulation is R-10. Air-impermeable insulation shall be installed in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the air-impermeable insulation. Exposed rafters shall be covered with R-7 insulation.

TABLE N1106.2.2
EQUIVALENT *U*-FACTORS FOR TABLE N1106.2.1[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION[d]	SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR	CEILING	UNVENTED[e] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-IMPERMEABLE	UNVENTED[e] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-PERMIABLE/ IMPERMEABLE	FRAME WALL	MASS WALL[b]	FLOOR	BASEMENT[d] WALL	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL
3	0.35	0.65	0.0350	0.05	0.043[f]	0.082	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.136
4	0.35	0.60	0.0300	0.05	0.043[f]	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.60	0.0300	0.037	0.034[f]	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.
b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.07 in Climate Zone 3, 0.07 in Climate Zone 4 and 0.054 in Climate Zone 5.
c. A basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid locations, as defined by Figure N1101.7 and Table N1101.7.
d. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the RESCheck "UA Trade-off" compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the *U*-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products' actual *U*-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum *U*-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.
e. The air-impermeable insulation shall meet the requirements of the definition in Section R202. Air-impermeable insulation shall be installed in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing. For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, the insulation installation shall meet the requirements of Section R806.5 of the North Carolina Residential Code. Exposed rafters shall be covered with R-7 insulation.
f. For air-permeable/impermeable applications, Table N1106.2.1 shall be followed for minimum insulation values.

minimum requirements of the 2006 *International Energy Conservation Code* prescriptive requirements.

The proposed *residential building* shall be shown to have an annual total normalized modified load less than or equal to the annual total loads of the *ERI reference design*.

N1106.4 (R406.4) ERI-based compliance. Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the *rated design* be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value listed in Table N1106.4.1 or Table N1106.4.2, as applicable, when compared to the *ERI reference design*.

TABLE N1106.4.1 (R406.4.1)
MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX
(without calculation of on-site renewable energy)

CLIMATE ZONE	JAN. 1, 2019 – DEC. 31, 2022	JAN. 1, 2023 AND FORWARD
3	65	61
4	67	63
5	67	63

TABLE N1106.4.2 (R406.4.2)
MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX
(without calculation of on-site renewable energy)

CLIMATE ZONE	JAN. 1, 2019 – DEC. 31, 2022	JAN. 1, 2023 AND FORWARD
3	51	47
4	54	50
5	55	51

N1106.5 (R406.5) Verification. Verification of compliance with Section N1106 shall be performed by the *registered design professional* or certified *HERS rater* and the compliance documentation shall be provided to the *code official*. The *code official* shall inspect according to the requirements of Section N1106.6.2.

N1106.6 (R406.6) Documentation. Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the residential building shall be in accordance with Sections N1106.6.1 through N1106.6.3.

N1106.6.1 (R406.6.1) Compliance software tools. Compliance software tools for this section shall be in compliance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2014.

N1106.6.2 (R406.6.2) Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the ERI of the *rated design* complies with Sections N1106.3 and N1106.4. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address or other identification of the residential building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *rated design*. The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *ERI reference design* and the *rated design*, and shall document all inputs entered by the user necessary to reproduce the results.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

N1106.6.3 (R406.6.3) Additional documentation. Deleted.

N1106.7 (R406.7) Calculation software tools. Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections N1106.7.1 through N1106.7.3.

N1106.7.1 R(406.7.1) Minimum capabilities. Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the ERI as described in Section N1106.3 and shall be in compliance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301, and the software shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the *ERI reference design* using only the input for the *rated design*.

The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *ERI reference design*.

2. Calculation of whole-building, as a single *zone*, sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *ERI reference design* residence in accordance with Section N1103.7.
3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *rated design* component characteristics determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings.

N1106.7.2 (406.7.2) Specific approval. Deleted.

N1106.7.3 (R406.7.3) Input values. Deleted.

SECTION N1107 (R501) EXISTING BUILDINGS—GENERAL

N1107.1 (R501.1) Scope. The provisions of Sections N1107 through N1111 shall control the *alteration*, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures.

N1107.1.1 (R501.1.1) Additions, alterations, or repairs: General. Additions, alterations, or repairs to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall comply with Section N1108, N1109 or N1110. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

N1107.2 (R501.2) Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

N1107.3 (R501.3) Maintenance. Deleted.

N1107.4 (R501.4) Compliance. *Alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for *alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code*, *North Carolina Existing Building Code* and NFPA 70.

N1107.5 (R501.5) New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs, provided no hazard to life, health or property is created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not permit their use in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

N1107.6 (R501.6) Historic buildings. No provision of this chapter relating to the construction, *repair*, *alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall be mandatory for *historic buildings*.

SECTION N1108 (R502) ADDITIONS

N1108.1 (R502.1) General. Additions to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this chapter as they relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing building or building system to comply with this chapter. Additions shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. An addition shall be deemed to comply with this chapter where the addition alone complies, where the existing building and addition comply with this chapter as a single building, or where the building with the addition uses no more energy than the existing building. Additions shall be in accordance with Section N1108.1.1 or N1108.1.2.

N1108.1.1 (R502.1.1) Prescriptive compliance. Additions shall comply with Sections N1108.1.1.1 through N1108.1.1.4.

N1108.1.1.1 (R502.1.1.1) Building envelope. New building thermal envelope assemblies that are part of the addition shall comply with Sections N1102.1, N1102.2, N1102.3.1 through N1102.3.5, and N1102.4.

N1108.1.1.2 (R502.1.1.2) Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Sections N1103.1, N1103.2, N1103.3, N1103.4 and N1103.6. New heating and cooling appliances shall be sized in accordance with Section N1103.7. Extensions of ducts from an existing system to a new addition shall require that the existing system be evaluated for the new design.

Exception: Installation of an addition to an existing duct system shall not require a duct leakage test.

N1108.1.1.3 (R502.1.1.3) Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section N1103.5.

N1108.1.1.4 (R502.1.1.4) Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section N1104.1.

N1108.1.2 (R502.1.2) Simulated performance alternative for additions. The addition shall comply with Section N1105, as applicable.

SECTION N1109 (R503) ALTERATIONS

N1109.1 (R503.1) General. Alterations to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this chapter as they relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing building or building system to comply with this chapter. Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. Alterations to existing buildings shall comply with Sections N1109.1.1 through N1109.2.

N1109.1.1 (R503.1.1) Building envelope. Building envelope assemblies that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section N1102.1.2 or N1102.1.4, Sections N1102.2.1 through N1102.2.15, N1102.3.1, N1102.3.2, N1102.4.4 and N1102.4.6.

Exception: The following alterations to conditioned spaces need not comply with the requirements for new construction:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation. Roof systems requiring air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required.
3. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
4. Roof recover and roof replacement such that the existing building or structure is no less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the *alteration*.
5. Deleted.
6. Surface applied window film installed on existing single pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain.
7. Converting unconditioned attic space to conditioned attic space for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. Ceilings shall be insulated to a minimum of R-30, walls shall be insulated to the exterior wall requirements in Table N1102.1.2 or Table N1102.1.4 and follow the backing requirements in Sections N1102.2.14 and N1102.2.15.

N1109.1.1.1 (R503.1.1.1) Replacement fenestration. Where an entire existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including frame, sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and SHGC in Table N1102.1.2.

Exception: *Alterations* that replace less than 50 percent of entire fenestration units may be replaced with like or better fenestration units to match existing fenestration assemblies.

N1109.1.2 (R503.1.2) Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Sections N1103.1, N1103.2, N1103.3, N1103.4, N1103.6 and N1103.7.

Exception: An *alteration* involving a partial system replacement to an existing duct system shall not require a duct leakage test.

N1109.1.3 (R503.1.3) Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section N1103.5.

N1109.1.4 (R503.1.4) Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section N1104.1.

Exception: Alterations that replace less than 50 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

N1109.2 (R503.2) Change in space conditioning. In addition to the requirements of Section N1109.1, projects changing unconditioned space to conditioned space and costing more than $10,000 shall require 10 percent of the project cost to be used toward meeting the requirements of this chapter. Project costs for the purpose of this section is the total project cost listed on all permits related to the work required to convert the unconditioned space to conditioned space and excludes the 10 percent added from this section. Under this section, existing building envelope elements that become a part of the building thermal envelope and are not changed are not required to be upgraded. The additional 10 percent of the project cost shall be appropriated for additional energy conservation features of choice that are addressed in this chapter. In addition to the 10-percent project cost, any existing wall, ceiling, or floor cavities that are exposed during construction shall at a minimum be insulated to comply with this chapter or be insulated to fill the cavity, whichever is less. Roof systems requiring air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required. Projects costing less than $10,000 are not subject to the 10-percent project cost addition provision.

SECTION N1110 (R504) REPAIRS

N1110.1 (R504.1) General. *Repair* of the building systems shall not make the building less conforming than it was before the *repair* was undertaken. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter.

N1110.2 (R504.2) Materials. Portions of walls that are part of the building thermal envelope shall be insulated in accordance with this code when the repair requires the removal of either the interior or exterior wall membrane such that the wall cavity is exposed during the repair.

Exception: Wall cavities containing existing insulation material.

N1110.3 (R504.3) Glazing. Repairs requiring the replacement of individual glass panes or sashes shall not require compliance with this code.

SECTION N1111 (R505) CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

N1111.1 (R505.1) General. *Alterations* performed in spaces undergoing a change in occupancy shall comply with the requirements of this code. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.

Part V—Mechanical

CHAPTER 12

MECHANICAL ADMINISTRATION

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1201 GENERAL

M1201.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapters 12 through 24 shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and used to control environmental conditions within buildings. These chapters shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and *appliances* specifically addressed in this code.

M1201.2 Application. In addition to the general administration requirements of Chapter 1, the administrative provisions of this chapter shall also apply to the mechanical requirements of Chapters 13 through 24.

SECTION M1202 EXISTING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

M1202.1 Additions, alterations or repairs. *Additions*, *alterations*, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to the requirements for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. *Additions*, *alterations* or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded. Minor *additions*, *alterations* or repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous, and is *approved*.

M1202.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this code, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

M1202.3 Maintenance. Deleted.

M1202.4 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

CHAPTER 13

GENERAL MECHANICAL SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1301 GENERAL

M1301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the installation of mechanical systems not specifically covered in other chapters applicable to mechanical systems. Installations of mechanical *appliances, equipment* and systems not addressed by this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

M1301.1.1 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, mechanical *appliances, equipment* and systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

M1301.2 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer as required by the listing or standard for the piping or tubing.

M1301.3 Installation of materials. Materials shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

M1301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Deleted.

M1301.5 Third-party testing and certification. Piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section M1301.2. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by an approved third-party testing agency or certified by an approved third-party certification agency.

SECTION M1302 APPROVAL

M1302.1 Listed and labeled. *Appliances* regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

Exceptions:

1. Listing and labeling of *equipment* and appliances used for refrigeration shall be in accordance with Section 1101.2 of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code*.
2. Field erected equipment shall be deemed acceptable, provided it is assembled using listed components and parts, if the design thereof is by a *registered design professional*.

SECTION M1303 LABELING OF APPLIANCES

M1303.1 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to *appliances* on which shall appear, in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, a serial number and the seal or *mark* of the testing agency. A *label* also shall include the following:

1. Electrical *appliances*. Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts and motor phase; and in Btu/h (W) output and required clearances.
2. Absorption units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls, type of fuel, type of refrigerant, cooling capacity in Btu/h (W) and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance* and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort-heating appliances. The electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required clearances from combustibles.
5. Maintenance instructions. Required regular maintenance actions and title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

SECTION M1304 TYPE OF FUEL

M1304.1 Fuel types. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. *Appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the use of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

SECTION M1305
APPLIANCE ACCESS

M1305.1 Appliance access for inspection service, repair and replacement. *Appliances* shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without removing permanent construction, other *appliances*, or any other piping or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space not less than 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*.

M1305.1.1 Furnaces and air handlers. Deleted.

M1305.1.2 Appliances in rooms. *Appliances* installed in a compartment, alcove, *basement* or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided there is a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

M1305.1.3 Appliances in attics and above hard ceilings. *Attics* containing *appliances* shall be provided with an opening and a clear and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring in accordance with Chapter 5 not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present along all sides of the *appliance* where access is required. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the appliance.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* (or disassembled appliance) can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

M1305.1.3.1 Lighting outlet and receptacle. For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to the *North Carolina Electrical Code*, Article 210.63 for receptacles, and Article 210.70(C) for lighting outlet and switch locations.

M1305.1.4 Appliances under floors and exterior grade installations. Underfloor spaces containing *appliances* shall be provided with an unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the *appliance*, but not less than 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade in accordance with Chapter 4. The rough-framed access opening dimensions shall be not less than 22 inches high by 30 inches wide (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to remove the largest component of the *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open, and the *appliance* can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high unobstructed and not less than 6 feet (1929 mm) high for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

M1305.1.4.1 Ground clearance.

M1305.1.4.1.1 Exterior grade installations. Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

M1305.1.4.1.2 Under-floor installation. Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade. See Section M1601.4.8 for ductwork support heights.

M1305.1.4.1.3 Crawl space supports. A support shall be provided at each corner of the unit not less than 8 inches by 8 inches (203.2 mm by 203.2 mm). The unit shall be supported a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above grade. When constructed of brick, the bricks shall be mortared together. All units stacked shall be mortared together. Fabricated units, formed concrete, or other approved materials shall be permitted.

M1305.1.4.1.4 Drainage. Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. For pit requirements, see Section M1305.1.4.2.

M1305.1.4.2 Pit locations. Appliances installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

M1305.1.4.3 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be installed at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. Exposed lamps shall be protected from damage by location or lamp guards.

SECTION M1306 CLEARANCES FROM COMBUSTIBLE CONSTRUCTION

M1306.1 Appliance clearance. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required *clearances* to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such clearances shall be reduced only in accordance with Section M1306. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing, shutters, coverings and drapes. Devices such as doorstops or limits, closers, drapery ties or guards shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

M1306.2 Clearance reduction. The reduction of required clearances to combustible assemblies or combustible materials shall be based on Section M1306.2.1 or Section M1306.2.2.

M1306.2.1 Labeled assemblies. The allowable clearance reduction shall be based on an approved reduced clearance protective assembly that has been tested and bears the label of an approved agency.

M1306.2.2 Reduction table. Reduction of clearances shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions and Table M1306.2. Forms of protection with ventilated air space shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Not less than 1-inch (25 mm) air space shall be provided between the protection and combustible wall surface.
2. Air circulation shall be provided by having edges of the wall protection open not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
3. If the wall protection is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, air circulation shall be provided by having the bottom and top edges, or the side and top edges not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
4. Wall protection covering two walls in a corner shall be open at the bottom and top edges not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

M1306.2.3 Solid-fuel appliances. Table M1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance required for solid-fuel *appliances* listed for installation with minimum clearances of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. For *appliances listed* for installation with minimum clearances greater than 12 inches (305 mm), Table M1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

M1306.2.4 Masonry chimneys. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table M1306.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the clearances required for masonry *chimneys* as specified in Chapter 10 and the *International Building Code*.

M1306.2.5 Chimney connector pass-throughs. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table M1306.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the clearances required for *chimney* connector pass-throughs as specified in Table M1803.3.5 and Figure M1306.1.

M1306.2.6 Masonry fireplaces. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table M1306.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry fireplaces as specified in Chapter 10 and the *International Building Code*.

SECTION M1307 APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

M1307.1 General. Equipment and appliances shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

M1307.2 Anchorage of appliances. Deleted.

M1307.3 Elevation of ignition source. *Appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the *living space* of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable-vapor-ignition resistant.

M1307.3.1 Protection from impact. *Appliances* located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor. *Appliances* located out of the normal path of travel are not required to be protected.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section M1307.3.

M1307.4 Hydrogen generating and refueling operations. *Ventilation* shall be required in accordance with Section M1307.4.1, M1307.4.2 or M1307.4.3 in private garages that contain hydrogen-generating *appliances* or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the *living space* of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

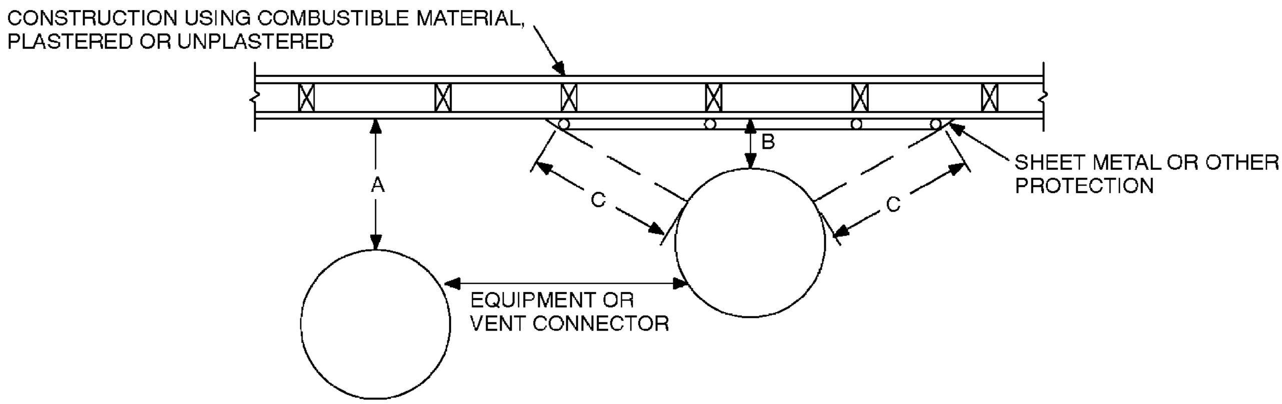
M1307.4.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square

TABLE M1306.2
REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION[a, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l]

TYPE OF PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY[a]	REDUCED CLEARANCE WITH PROTECTION (inches)[b]							
	Horizontal combustible assemblies located above the heat source				Horizontal combustible assemblies located beneath the heat source and all vertical combustible assemblies			
	Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)[a]				Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)			
	36	18	9	6	36	18	9	6
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), mounted on 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batt reinforced with wire on the back, 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	2
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having a 1-inch air-space between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having 1 inch of fiberglass insulation between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
0.5-inch inorganic insulating board, over 1 inch of fiberglass or mineral wool batt, against the combustible assembly	24	12	6	4	18	9	5	3
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, spaced 1 inch off the combustible	—	—	—	—	12	6	6	6
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, against the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	24	12	6	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.019 kg/m^3, °C = [(°F)-32/1.8], 1 Btu/(h × ft^2 × °F/in.) = 0.001442299 (W/cm^2 × °C/cm).

a. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
b. Clearances shall be measured from the surface of the heat producing appliance or equipment to the outer surface of the combustible material or combustible assembly.
c. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. Spacers and ties shall not be used directly opposite appliance or connector.
d. Where all clearance reduction systems use a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described. (See Figures M1306.1 and M1306.2.)
e. There shall be not less than 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated air space.
f. If a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, adequate air circulation shall be permitted to be provided by leaving only the bottom and top edges or only the side and top edges open with not less than a 1-inch air gap.
g. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F.
h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu inch per square foot per hour °F or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.
i. There shall be not less than 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. The clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface shall not be reduced below that allowed in this table.
j. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
l. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid-fuel-burning appliances see Section M1306.2.3.



Note: "A" equals the required clearance with no protection. "B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table M1306.2. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

FIGURE M1306.1
REDUCED CLEARANCE DIAGRAM

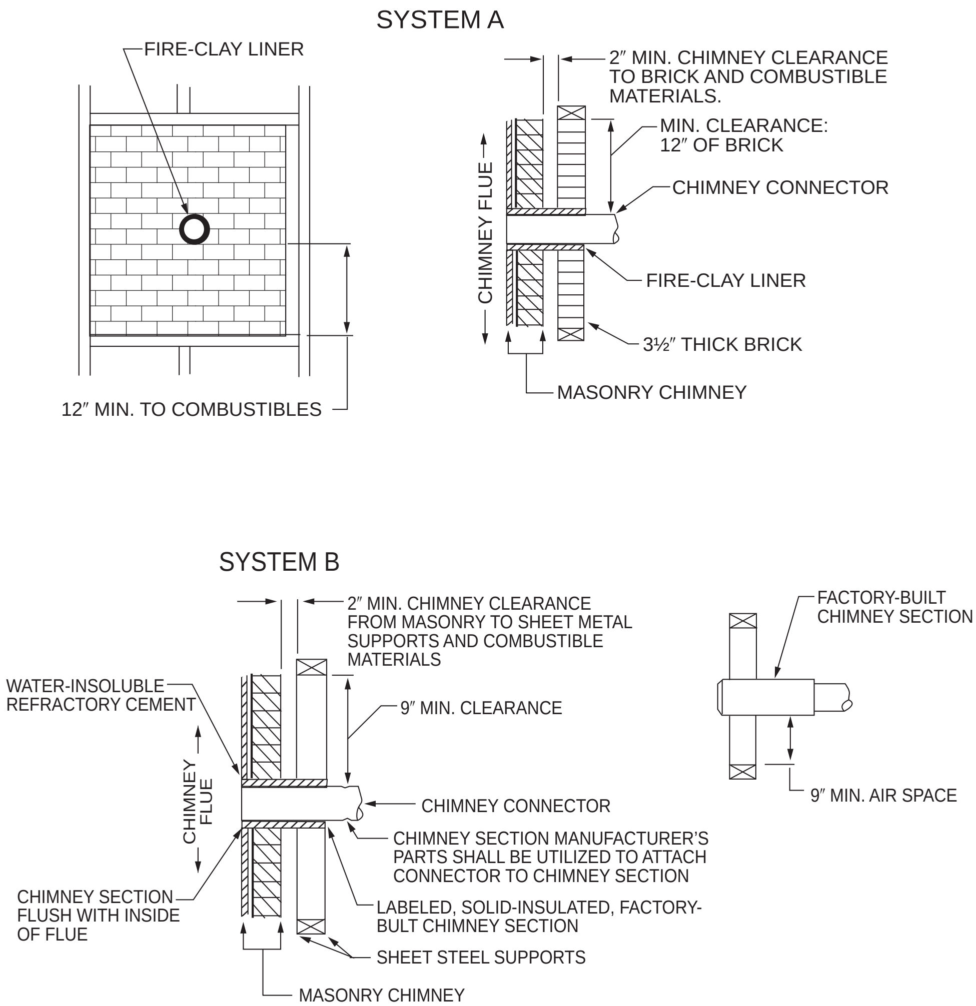


FIGURE M1306.2.5
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

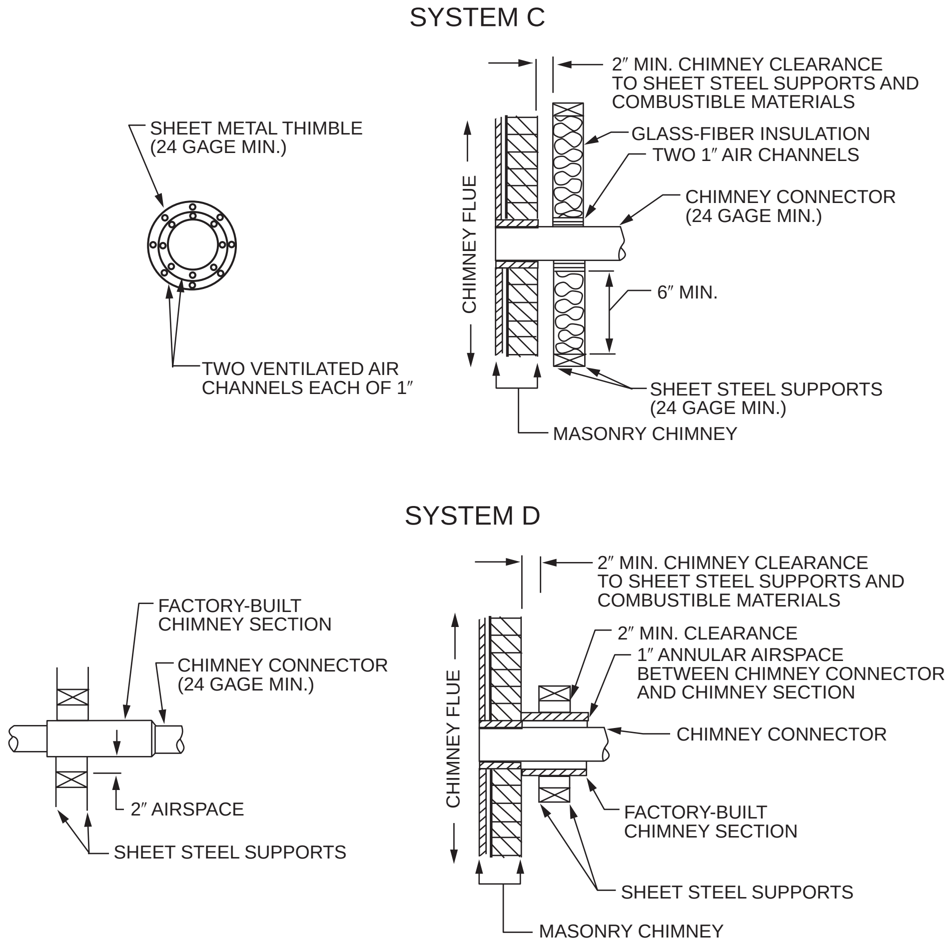


FIGURE M1306.2.5—continued
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections M1307.4.1.1 and M1307.4.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen-generating *appliances* shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (1.9 L/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In those locations, *equipment* and having an *ignition source* shall be located so that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

M1307.4.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be constructed within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be constructed in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1.7 m^2/1000 m^3) of garage volume.

M1307.4.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating free area required by Section M1307.4.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have a 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have a 75-percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

M1307.4.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16 of the *International Mechanical Code*. In these locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located so that the source of ignition is below the mechanical *ventilation* outlet(s).

M1307.4.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections M1307.4.1 and M1307.4.2, the necessary supply of air for *ventilation* and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

M1307.5 Electrical appliances. Electrical *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with Chapters 14, 15, 19, and 20 of this code and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

M1307.6 Plumbing connections. Potable water and drainage system connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with Chapters 29 and 30.

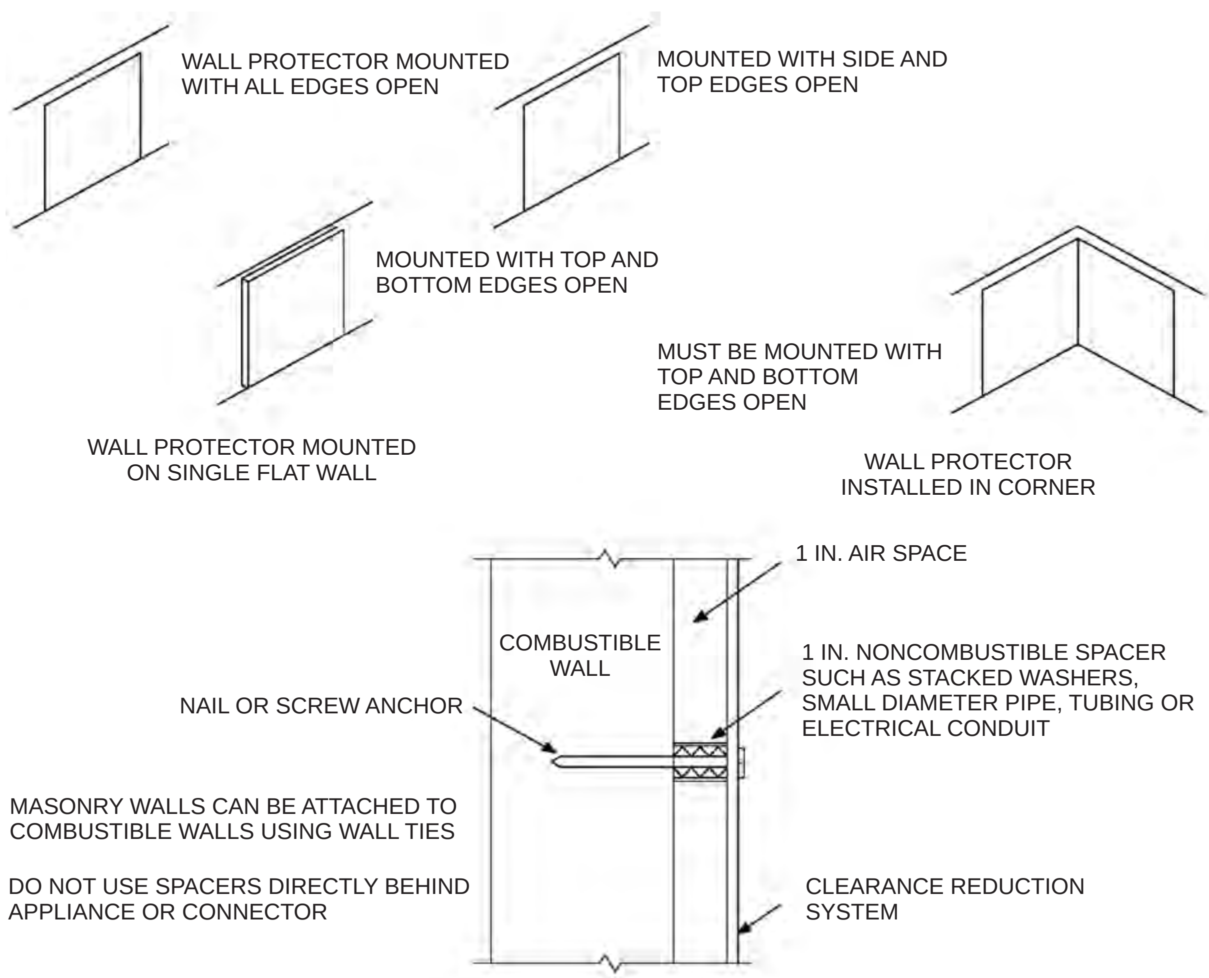
SECTION M1308
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

M1308.1 Drilling and notching. Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections R502.8, R602.6, R602.6.1 and R802.7. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections R505.2.6, R603.2.6 and R804.2.6. In accordance with the provisions of Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.4 and R804.3.3, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R610.7.

M1308.2 Protection against physical damage. Where piping will be concealed within light-frame construction assemblies, the piping shall be protected against penetration by fasteners in accordance with Sections M1308.2.1 through M1308.2.3.

Exception: Cast iron piping and galvanized steel piping shall not be required to be protected.

M1308.2.1 Piping through bored holes or notches. Where *piping* is installed through holes or notches in framing members and is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width of the pipe and



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE M1306.2
WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM

the framing member and that extend 2 inches (51 mm) to each side of the framing member. Where the framing member that the piping passes through is a bottom plate, bottom track, top plate or top track, the shield plates shall cover the framing member and extend 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom framing member(s) and 2 inches (51 mm) below the top framing member(s).

M1308.2.2 Piping in other locations. Where piping is located within a framing member (i.e. steel studs) and is less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping. Where piping is located outside of a framing member and is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the face of the framing member to which the membrane will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping.

M1308.2.3 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage).

M1308.3 Piping Support. Piping systems shall be supported in accordance with Section M2101.9.

CHAPTER 14

HEATING AND COOLING EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.* The section numbers appearing in parentheses after each section number are the section numbers of the corresponding text in the *North Carolina Residential Code* i.e., (R1004.1).

SECTION M1401 GENERAL

M1401.1 Installation. Heating and cooling *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

M1401.2 Access. Heating and cooling *equipment* and appliances shall be located with respect to building construction and other *equipment* and appliances to permit maintenance, servicing and replacement. Clearances shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating and cooling surfaces; replacement of filters, blowers, motors, controls and vent connections; lubrication of moving parts; and adjustments.

Exception: Access shall not be required for ducts, piping, or other components approved for concealment.

M1401.3 Equipment and appliance sizing. Heating and cooling *equipment* and *appliances* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S or other approved sizing methodologies based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies.

Exception: Heating and cooling equipment and appliance sizing shall not be limited to the capacities determined in accordance with Manual S where either of the following conditions applies:

1. The specified equipment or appliance utilizes multi-stage technology or variable refrigerant flow technology and the loads calculated in accordance with the approved heating and cooling calculation methodology are within the range of the manufacturer's published capacities for that equipment or appliance.
2. The specified equipment or appliance manufacturer's published capacities cannot satisfy both the total and sensible heat gains calculated in accordance with the approved heating and cooling calculation methodology and the next larger standard size unit is specified.

For permitting, inspections, certificate of compliance or certificate of occupancy, verification of *Calculations for HVAC Systems—ACCA Manual D, ACCA Manual J, ACCA Manual S* calculation submittals and review shall not be required.

M1401.4 Exterior installations. *Equipment* and *appliances* installed outdoors shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation. Supports and foundations shall prevent excessive vibration, settlement or movement of the *equipment*. Supports and foundations shall be in accordance with Section M1305.1.4.1.

M1401.5 Flood hazard. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, heating and cooling *equipment* and *appliances* shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

SECTION M1402 CENTRAL FURNACES

M1402.1 General. Oil-fired central furnaces shall conform to ANSI/UL 727. Electric furnaces shall conform to UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40. Solid fuel furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 391.

M1402.2 Clearances. Clearances shall be provided in accordance with the *listing* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

M1402.3 Combustion air. *Combustion air* shall be supplied in accordance with Chapter 17. *Combustion air* openings shall be unobstructed for a distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in front of the openings.

M1402.4 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

M1402.5 Circulating air ducts for forced-air warm-air furnaces. Circulating air for fuel-burning, forced-air-type, warm-air furnaces shall be conducted into the blower housing from outside the furnace enclosure by continuous air-tight ducts.

M1402.6 Outdoor and return air openings. Outdoor intake openings shall be located in accordance with Section M1602.1. Return air openings shall be located in accordance with Section M1602.2.

M1402.7 Outdoor opening protection. Outdoor air intake openings shall be protected in accordance with Section R303.6.

M1402.8 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. When a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5-inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is listed and labeled for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from heat exchangers unless listed and labeled for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted provided the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

SECTION M1403
HEAT PUMP EQUIPMENT

M1403.1 Heat pumps. Electric heat pumps shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

SECTION M1404
REFRIGERATION COOLING EQUIPMENT

M1404.1 Compliance. Refrigeration cooling *equipment* shall comply with Section M1411.

SECTION M1405
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

M1405.1 General. Electric baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. Electric baseboard heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1042.

SECTION M1406
RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

M1406.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code* and shall be listed for the application.

M1406.2 Clearances. Clearances for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall comply with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

M1406.3 Installation of radiant panels. Radiant panels installed on wood framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel manufacturer's instructions.
3. Unless *listed* and *labeled* for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

M1406.4 Installation in concrete or masonry. Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Radiant heating panels or radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless protected from expansion and contraction.

M1406.5 Finish surfaces. Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels or systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that nails or other fastenings do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

SECTION M1407
DUCT HEATERS

M1407.1 General. Electric duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. Electric duct heaters shall comply with UL 1996.

M1407.2 Installation. Electric duct heaters shall be installed so that they will not create a fire hazard. Class 1 ducts, duct coverings and linings shall be interrupted at each heater to provide the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Such interruptions are not required for duct heaters *listed* and *labeled* for zero clearance to combustible materials. Insulation installed in the immediate area of each heater shall be classified for the maximum temperature produced on the duct surface.

M1407.3 Installation with heat pumps and air conditioners. Duct heaters located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a heat pump or air conditioner shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such installations. The heat pump or air conditioner shall additionally be *listed* and *labeled* for such duct heater installations.

M1407.4 Access. Duct heaters shall be accessible for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.

M1407.5 Fan interlock. The fan circuit shall be provided with an interlock to prevent heater operation when the fan is not operating.

SECTION M1408
VENTED FLOOR FURNACES

M1408.1 General. Oil-fired vented floor furnaces shall comply with UL 729 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

M1408.2 Clearances. Vented floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

M1408.3 Location. Location of floor furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Floor registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from a wall.
2. Wall registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the adjoining wall at inside corners.
3. The furnace register shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from doors in any position, draperies or similar combustible objects.

4. The furnace register shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) below any projecting combustible materials.
5. The floor furnace burner assembly shall not project into an occupied under-floor area.
6. The floor furnace shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
7. The floor furnace shall not be installed where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the grille opening.

M1408.4 Access. An opening in the foundation not less than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm), or a trap door not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided for access to a floor furnace. The opening and passageway shall be large enough to allow replacement of any part of the *equipment*.

M1408.5 Installation. Floor furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Thermostats controlling floor furnaces shall be located in the room in which the register of the floor furnace is located.
2. Floor furnaces shall be supported independently of the furnace floor register.
3. Floor furnaces shall be installed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the ground. The minimum clearance shall be 2 inches (51 mm), where the lower 6 inches (152 mm) of the furnace is sealed to prevent water entry.
4. Where excavation is required for a floor furnace installation, the excavation shall extend 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the control side of the floor furnace and 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the remaining sides. Excavations shall slope outward from the perimeter of the base of the excavation to the surrounding *grade* at an angle not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal.
5. Floor furnaces shall not be supported from the ground.

SECTION M1409 VENTED WALL FURNACES

M1409.1 General. Oil-fired vented wall furnaces shall comply with UL 730 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

M1409.2 Location. The location of vented wall furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Vented wall furnaces shall be located where they will not cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.
2. Vented wall furnaces shall not be located where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the furnace air inlet or outlet measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

M1409.3 Installation. Vented wall furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Required wall thicknesses shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Ducts shall not be attached to a wall furnace. Casing extensions or boots shall be installed only where listed as part of a *listed* and *labeled appliance*.
3. A manual shut off valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

M1409.4 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces; removal of burners; replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts; and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION M1410 VENTED ROOM HEATERS

M1410.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1509 for pellet-fuel burning, UL 896 for oil-fired or UL 1482 for solid fuel-fired and installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

M1410.2 Floor mounting. Room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors or *approved* assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials that extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the *appliance* on all sides.

Exceptions:

1. *Listed* room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors, assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials or floor protectors *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1618. The materials and dimensions shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.
2. Room heaters *listed* for installation on combustible floors without floor protection shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

M1410.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. Listed and labeled hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

SECTION M1411 HEATING AND COOLING EQUIPMENT

M1411.1 Approved refrigerants. Refrigerants used in direct refrigerating systems shall conform to the applicable provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE 34.

M1411.2 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. See Section M1402.8.

M1411.3 Condensate disposal. Condensate from cooling coils, condensing furnaces and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Where pumps are used, they shall be installed with a factory-equipped auxiliary high-level switch that shall shut off equipment served upon activation of the auxiliary high-level switch. Where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the pump, the pump shall also be located in the auxiliary drain pan or in a separate drain pan equipped with a separate drain line or water-level detection device. Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas where it would cause a nuisance.

M1411.3.1 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section M1411.3, a secondary drain or auxiliary drain pan shall be required for each cooling or evaporator coil where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* drain pan or stoppage in the condensate drain piping. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Drain piping shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) nominal pipe size. One of the following methods shall be used:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of 1.5 inches (38 mm), shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236-inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 Gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).
   a. Appliances with primary condensate pans above appliance components. Cooling coils mounted above the air handler or furnace shall have a secondary drain piped to auxiliary pan under the air handler to avoid condensate migrating through appliance components before reaching the auxiliary drain pan.
2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan installed with the *equipment*. This overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. This pan shall be equipped with a water level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The pan shall be equipped with a fitting to allow for drainage. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be installed that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line, upstream of the primary drain line trap, the overflow drain line or the *equipment*-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

Exception: Fuel-fired appliances that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

M1411.3.1.1 Water-level monitoring devices. On down-flow units and other coils that do not have secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the equipment served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices shall not be installed in the drain line.

M1411.3.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be ABS, cast iron, copper, cross-linked polyethylene, CPVC, galvanized steel, PE-RT, polyethylene, polypropylene or PVC pipe or tubing. Components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 30. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) nominal diameter from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with an *approved* method.

Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of primary condensate drain piping if condensate dripping off the pipe could cause damage to any building component.

M1411.3.3 Drain line maintenance. Condensate drain lines shall be configured to permit the clearing of blockages and performance of maintenance without requiring the drain line to be cut.

M1411.3.4 Appliances, equipment and insulation in pans. Where *appliances*, *equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, those portions of the *appliances, equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the flood level rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

M1411.3.5 Traps. Condensate drains shall be trapped as required by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

M1411.3.5.1 Ductless mini-split system traps. Ductless mini-split equipment that produces condensate shall be provided with an inline check valve located in the drain line, or a trap.

M1411.4 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the appliance or equipment served such that when the pump fails, the appliance or equipment will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1411.5 Auxiliary drain pan. Category IV condensing *appliances* shall have an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the condensate drainage system. These pans shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section M1411.3.

Exception: Fuel-fired *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

M1411.6 Insulation of refrigerant piping. Piping and fittings for refrigerant vapor (suction) lines shall be insulated with insulation having a thermal resistivity of not less than R-3 and having external surface permeance not exceeding 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(s $\cdot$ m^2 $\cdot$ Pa)] when tested in accordance with ASTM E96. Insulation shall be protected in accordance with Section N1103.3.1.

M1411.7 Location and protection of refrigerant piping. Deleted.

M1411.8 Locking access port caps. Deleted.

SECTION M1412 ABSORPTION COOLING EQUIPMENT

DELETED

SECTION M1413 EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

DELETED

SECTION M1414 FIREPLACE STOVES

M1414.1 General. Fireplace stoves shall be *listed*, *labeled* and installed in accordance with the terms of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737. Fireplace inserts intended for installation in fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the requirements of UL 1482 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1414.2 Connection to fireplace. The connection of solid fuel appliances to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections M1803.4 and M1805.3.1.

M1414.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the *listing* of the fireplace stove. The supporting structure for a hearth extension for a fireplace stove shall be at the same level as the supporting structure for the fireplace unit. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area.

SECTION M1415 MASONRY HEATERS

M1415.1 General. Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with Section R1002.

SECTION M1416 FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

M1416.1 (R1004.1) General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the *listing*. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

M1416.2 (R1004.2) Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of *approved* factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the *listing* of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. Listed and labeled hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

M1416.3 (R1004.3) Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of chimneys for factory-built fireplace systems and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1416.4 (R1004.4) Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

M1416.5 (R1004.5) Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

CHAPTER 15

EXHAUST SYSTEMS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1501
GENERAL

M1501.1 Outdoor discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged to the outdoors in accordance with Section M1506.3. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic, soffit, ridge vent or crawl space. Exhaust shall not be directed onto walkways, balconies, decks, breezeways, covered walkways and similar horizontal projections.

Exceptions:

1. Whole-house *ventilation*-type *attic* fans that discharge into the *attic* space of *dwelling units* having private *attics* shall be permitted.
2. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or *natural ventilation* is otherwise provided in accordance with Sections M1507 or R303.1, listed and labeled domestic ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

SECTION M1502
CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

M1502.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1502.1.1 Makeup air. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) shall be provided in the closet enclosure or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

M1502.2 Independent exhaust systems. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture to the outdoors.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

M1502.3 Duct termination. Exhaust ducts shall terminate on the outside of the building. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. If the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into buildings. Exhaust duct terminations shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination or weather cap outlet. An exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

Exception: Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross-sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm^2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.

M1502.4 Dryer exhaust ducts. Dryer exhaust ducts shall conform to the requirements of Sections M1502.4.1 through M1502.4.7.

M1502.4.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and be constructed of metal having a minimum thickness of 0.0157 inches (0.3950 mm) (No. 28 gage for steel, No. 26 gage for aluminimum). With the exception of the transition duct, flexible ducts are prohibited. The duct shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

M1502.4.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at intervals not to exceed 4 feet (3658 mm) and shall be secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Exhaust duct joints shall be sealed in accordance with Section M1601.4.1 and shall be mechanically fastened. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct. Ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section M1601.4.1.

a. Nonmetallic mechanical fasteners (tie-straps) shall be listed to UL 181B.

b. Metal band duct clamps are not required to be listed.

M1502.4.3 Transition duct. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust *duct system* shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction and must remain entirely within the room where the appliance is located.

M1502.4.4 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall conform to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1502.4.5 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections M1502.4.5.1 through M1502.4.5.3.

M1502.4.5.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table M1502.4.5.1. The maximum length of the exhaust duct does not include the transition duct.

M1502.4.5.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The size and maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer at the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table M1502.4.5.1 shall be used.

M1502.4.5.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator.

M1502.4.6 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

1. Labels shall be permanently stenciled, laminated, or commercially available plastic or metal tags.
2. Labels shall state, at a minimum (fill in the blank):

   Caution: Equivalent length _____ ft. Any installed dryer must be equipped with an exhaust system that meets or exceeds this equivalent length requirement.
3. Labels can be attached to wall or vent receptor.

M1502.4.7 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust *duct system* shall be installed.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

M1502.5 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062-inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

SECTION M1503
RANGE HOODS

M1503.1 General. Range hoods shall discharge to the outdoors through a duct. The duct serving the hood shall have a smooth interior surface, shall be air tight, shall be equipped with a back-draft damper and shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Ducts serving range hoods shall not terminate in an attic or crawl space or areas inside the building.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and where mechanical or natural *ventilation* is otherwise provided, *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

M1503.2 Duct material. Ducts serving range hoods shall be constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel or copper.

Exception: Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking *appliances* equipped with down-draft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:

1. The duct is installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.
2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed is completely backfilled with sand or gravel.
3. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.
4. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade *outside of the building.*
5. The PVC ducts are solvent cemented.

M1503.3 Kitchen exhaust rates. Deleted.

TABLE M1502.4.5.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4 inch radius mitered 45 degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4 inch radius mitered 90 degree elbow	5 feet
6 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow	1 foot
6 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow	1 foot
8 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches
10 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow	9 inches
10 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

M1503.4 Makeup air required. Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m^3/s) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m^3/s). Such makeup air systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. Dampers shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without removing permanent construction or any other ducts not connected to the damper being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced.

Exception: Where all appliances in the house are direct-vent, power-vent, unvented, or electric, makeup air shall be provided where exhaust fans are capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m^3/s). Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m^3/s) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m^3/s).

M1503.4.1 Location. Kitchen exhaust makeup air shall be discharged into the same room in which the exhaust system is located or into rooms or *duct systems* that communicate through one or more permanent openings with the room in which such exhaust system is located. Such permanent openings shall have a net cross-sectional area not less than the required area of the makeup air supply openings.

SECTION M1504 INSTALLATION OF MICROWAVE OVENS

M1504.1 Installation of a microwave oven over a cooking appliance. The installation of a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* or microwave oven over a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* shall conform to the terms of the upper *appliance's listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions. The microwave oven shall conform to UL 923.

SECTION M1505 OVERHEAD EXHAUST HOODS

M1505.1 General. Domestic open-top broiler units shall have a metal exhaust hood, having a minimum thickness of 0.0157-inch (0.3950 mm) (No. 28 gage) with $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) clearance between the hood and the underside of combustible material or cabinets. A clearance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) shall be maintained between the cooking surface and the combustible material or cabinet. The hood shall be not less than the width of the broiler unit, extend over the entire unit, discharge to the outdoors and be equipped with a backdraft damper or other means to control infiltration/exfiltration when not in operation. Broiler units incorporating an integral exhaust system, and *listed* and *labeled* for use without an exhaust hood, need not have an exhaust hood.

SECTION M1506 EXHAUST DUCTS AND EXHAUST OPENINGS

M1506.1 Duct construction. Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, construction shall comply with Chapter 16.

M1506.2 Duct length. Exhaust duct length shall comply with the manufacturer's design criteria, standard duct airflow design methods, or where the flow rate of the installed ventilating equipment is verified by the installer or approved third party using a flow hood, flow grid or other airflow measuring device.

M1506.3 Exhaust openings. Air exhaust openings shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from operable and nonoperable openings into the building and 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intakes except where the opening is located 3 feet (914 mm) above the air intake. Openings shall comply with Sections R303.5.2 and R303.6.

SECTION M1507 MECHANICAL VENTILATION

M1507.1 General. Where local exhaust or whole-house mechanical ventilation is required, the equipment shall be designed in accordance with this section. Refer to Section R303.1 for natural ventilation.

M1507.2 Recirculation of air. Exhaust air from bathrooms and toilet rooms shall not be recirculated within a residence or to another *dwelling unit* and shall be exhausted directly to the outdoors. Exhaust air from bathrooms and toilet rooms shall not discharge into an *attic*, crawl space or other areas inside the building.

M1507.3 Whole-house mechanical ventilation system. Whole-house mechanical ventilation systems shall be designed in accordance with Sections M1507.3.1 through M1507.3.3.

M1507.3.1 System design. The whole-house ventilation system shall consist of one or more supply or exhaust fans, or a combination of such, and associated ducts and controls. Local exhaust or supply fans are permitted to serve as such a system. Outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler shall be considered as providing supply ventilation.

M1507.3.2 System controls. The whole-house mechanical ventilation system shall be provided with controls that enable manual override.

M1507.3.3 Mechanical ventilation rate. The whole-house mechanical ventilation system shall provide outdoor air at a continuous rate of not less than that determined in accordance with Table M1507.3.3(1).

Exception: The whole-house mechanical ventilation system is permitted to operate intermittently where the system has controls that enable operation for not less than 25-percent of each 4-hour segment and the ventilation rate prescribed in Table M1507.3.3(1) is multiplied by the factor determined in accordance with Table M1507.3.3(2).

M1507.4 Local exhaust rates. *Local exhaust* systems shall be designed to have the capacity to exhaust the minimum air flow rate determined in accordance with Table M1507.4.

TABLE M1507.3.3(1)
CONTINUOUS WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM AIRFLOW RATE REQUIREMENTS

DWELLING UNIT FLOOR AREA (square feet)	NUMBER OF BEDROOMS				
	0 – 1	2 – 3	4 – 5	6 – 7	> 7
	Airflow in CFM				
< 1,500	30	45	60	75	90
1,501 – 3,000	45	60	75	90	105
3,001 – 4,500	60	75	90	105	120
4,501 – 6,000	75	90	105	120	135
6,001 – 7,500	90	105	120	135	150
> 7,500	105	120	135	150	165

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

TABLE M1507.3.3(2)
INTERMITTENT WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION RATE FACTORS[a, b]

RUN-TIME PERCENTAGE IN EACH 4-HOUR SEGMENT	25%	33%	50%	66%	75%	100%
Factor[a]	4	3	2	1.5	1.3	1.0

a. For ventilation system run time values between those given, the factors are permitted to be determined by interpolation.
b. Extrapolation beyond the table is prohibited.

TABLE M1507.4
MINIMUM REQUIRED LOCAL EXHAUST RATES FOR ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS

AREA TO BE EXHAUSTED	EXHAUST RATES
Kitchens	100 cfm intermittent or 25 cfm continuous
Bathrooms-Toilet Rooms	Mechanical exhaust capacity of 50 cfm intermittent or 20 cfm continuous

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

SECTION M1508 SUBSLAB SOIL EXHAUST SYSTEMS

M1508.1 General. Where a subslab soil exhaust system is provided, the system shall conform to the requirements of this section.

M1508.2 Materials. Subslab soil exhaust system duct material shall be air duct material *listed* and *labeled* to the requirements of UL 181 for Class 0 air ducts, or any of the following piping materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* as building sanitary drainage and vent pipe: cast iron; galvanized steel; brass or copper pipe; copper tube of a weight not less than that of copper drainage tube, Type DWV; and plastic piping.

M1508.3 Grade. Exhaust system ducts shall not be trapped and shall have a minimum slope of one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

M1508.4 Termination. Subslab soil exhaust system ducts shall extend through the roof and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any operable openings or air intake.

M1508.5 Identification. Subslab soil exhaust ducts shall be permanently identified within each floor level by means of a tag, stencil or other *approved* marking.

CHAPTER 16

DUCT SYSTEMS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1601
DUCT CONSTRUCTION

M1601.1 Duct design. *Duct systems* serving heating, cooling and *ventilation equipment* shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section and ACCA Manual D, the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions or other *approved* methods.

M1601.1.1 Above-ground duct systems. Above-ground *duct systems* shall conform to the following:

1. *Equipment* connected to *duct systems* shall be designed to limit discharge air temperature to not greater than 250°F (121°C).
2. Factory-made ducts shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 181 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Fibrous glass duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*.
4. Field-fabricated and shop-fabricated metal and flexible duct constructions shall conform to the SMACNA HVAC *Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* except as allowed by Table M1601.1.1. Galvanized steel shall conform to ASTM A653.
5. The use of gypsum products to construct return air ducts or plenums is permitted, provided that the air temperature does not exceed 125°F (52°C) and exposed surfaces are not subject to condensation.
6. *Duct systems* shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of not greater than 200.
7. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be used as air plenums shall comply with the following conditions:
   - 7.1. These cavities or spaces shall not be used as a plenum for supply air.
   - 7.2. These cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
   - 7.3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.
   - 7.4. Stud wall cavities and joist-space plenums shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by tight-fitting fireblocking in accordance with Section R602.8.
   - 7.5. Stud wall cavities in the outside walls of building envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air plenums.

M1601.1.2 Underground duct systems. Underground *duct systems* shall be constructed of *approved* concrete, clay, metal or plastic. The maximum duct temperature for plastic ducts shall not be greater than 150°F (66°C). Metal ducts shall be protected from corrosion in an *approved* manner or shall be completely encased in concrete not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick. Nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Plastic pipe and fitting materials shall conform to cell classification 12454-B of ASTM D1248 or ASTM D1784 and external loading properties of ASTM D2412. Ducts shall slope to an accessible point for drainage. Where encased in concrete, ducts shall be sealed and secured prior to any concrete being poured. Metallic ducts having an *approved* protective coating and nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1601.2 Flexible connections. Flexible connectors installed between mechanical *equipment* and metal ducts shall be fabricated from *approved* materials and shall not exceed 10 inches (254 mm) in length.

M1601.3 Duct insulation materials. Duct insulation materials shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not higher than 25, and a smoke-developed index not over 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231.

   Exception: Spray application of polyurethane foam to the exterior of ducts in *attics* and crawl spaces shall be permitted subject to all of the following:

   1. The flame spread index is not greater than 25 and the smoke-developed index is not greater than 450 at the specified installed thickness.
   2. The foam plastic is protected in accordance with the ignition barrier requirements of Sections R316.5.3 and R316.5.4.
   3. The foam plastic complies with the requirements of Section R316.

2. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be listed and labeled.

TABLE M1601.1.1
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS

DUCT SIZE	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)	EQUIVALENT GAGE (galvanized)	ALUMINUM MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches) [gage]
Round Ducts and Enclosed Rectangular Ducts			
14 inches or less	0.013	30	0.0159 [26]
Over 14 inches	0.016	28	0.0201 [24]
Exposed Rectangular Ducts			
14 inches or less	0.016	28	0.0201 [24]
Over 14 inches	0.019	26	0.0253 [22]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

3. External reflective duct insulation shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the product *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indices. The installed thickness of the external duct insulation shall include the enclosed air space(s). The product *R*-value for external reflective duct insulation shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1668.
4. External duct insulation and factory-insulated flexible ducts shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not longer than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indexes of the composite materials. Spray polyurethane foam manufacturers shall provide the same product information and properties, at the nominal installed thickness, to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. Nonreflective duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested C-values at 75°F (24°C) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:
   4.1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
   4.2. For ductwrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25-percent compression) of nominal thickness.
   4.3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, The installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
   4.4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch measured in accordance with recognized industry standards shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. In addition, the total *R*-value for the nominal application thickness shall be provided.

M1601.4 Installation. Duct installation shall comply with Sections M1601.4.1 through M1601.4.10.

M1601.4.1 Joints, seams and connections. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA HVAC *Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* and NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. Joints, longitudinal and transverse seams, and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants or tapes. Tapes and mastics used to seal fibrous glass ductwork shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 181A and shall be marked “181A-P” for pressure-sensitive tape, “181 A-M” for mastic or “181 A-H” for heat-sensitive tape.

Tapes and mastics used to seal metallic and flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked “181 B-FX” for pressure-sensitive tape or “181 BM” for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system equipment shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked 181B-C. Crimp joints for round metallic ducts shall have a contact lap of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and shall be mechanically fastened by means of not less than three sheet-metal screws or rivets equally spaced around the joint. Unlisted duct tape is not permitted as a sealant on any metal ducts.

Closure systems used to seal all ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers’ instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Spray polyurethane foam shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.
2. Where a duct connection is made that is partially inaccessible, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion of the joint so as to prevent a hinge effect.
3. Deleted.
4. Continuously welded joints and seams in ducts.

5. Ducts exposed within the conditioned space that the ducts serve shall not be required to be sealed.

M1601.4.2 Duct lap. Crimp joints for round and oval metal ducts shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

M1601.4.3 Plastic duct joints. Joints between plastic ducts and plastic fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

M1601.4.4 Support. Factory-made ducts listed in accordance with UL 181 shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Field- and shop-fabricated fibrous glass ducts shall be supported in accordance with the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or the NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. Field- and shop-fabricated metal and flexible ducts shall be supported in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC *Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* or in accordance with Section M1601.4.4.1.

All equipment shall be supported independently of the duct system except when the duct is used as a support base. When used as a support base, the duct shall be of sufficient strength and designed to support the weight of the unit. Listed bases shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

M1601.4.4.1 Metal duct minimal support. Metal ducts shall be securely supported. Where hung or suspended, metal straps a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in width and equivalent to or heavier gage than the duct being supported shall be used. Straps, when used, shall be at maximum 64-inch (1626 mm) intervals and shall be securely attached to the building structure. Straps shall be attached to the duct at a minimum of two points with screws or rivets.

M1601.4.5 Fireblocking. Duct installations shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section R602.8.

M1601.4.6 Duct insulation. Duct insulation shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. A vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(s · m^2 · Pa)] in accordance with ASTM E96, or aluminum foil with a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm), shall be installed on the exterior of insulation on cooling supply ducts that pass through unconditioned spaces conducive to condensation except where the insulation is spray polyurethane foam with a maximum water vapor permeance of 3 perm per inch [1722 ng/(s · m^2 · Pa)] at the installed thickness.
2. Exterior *duct systems* shall be protected against the elements.
3. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a fireblocked wall or floor.

Replacement or addition of cooling equipment to existing ductwork located in an attic shall require the ductwork to be insulated. Replacement of heating or the addition of cooling equipment in a crawl space or conditioned basements shall not require the existing ductwork to be insulated. Unconditioned basement ductwork shall require insulation with the addition of cooling equipment.

M1601.4.7 Factory-made air ducts. Factory-made air ducts shall not be installed in or on the ground, in tile or metal pipe, or within masonry or concrete.

M1601.4.8 Duct separation. Ducts shall be installed with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) separation from earth except where they meet the requirements of Section M1601.1.2.

M1601.4.9 Ducts located in garages. Ducts in garages shall comply with the requirements of Section R302.5.2.

M1601.4.10 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, *duct systems* shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

M1601.5 Under-floor plenums. Under-floor plenums shall be prohibited in new structures. Modification or repairs to under-floor plenums in existing structures shall conform to the requirements of this section.

M1601.5.1 General. The space shall be cleaned of loose combustible materials and scrap, and shall be tightly enclosed. The ground surface of the space shall be covered with a moisture barrier having a minimum thickness of 4 mils (0.1 mm). Plumbing waste cleanouts shall not be located within the space.

Exception: Plumbing waste cleanouts shall be permitted to be located in unvented crawl spaces that receive *conditioned air* in accordance with Section R409.

M1601.5.2 Materials. The under-floor space, including the sidewall insulation, shall be formed by materials having flame spread index values not greater than 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

M1601.5.3 Furnace connections. A duct shall extend from the furnace supply outlet to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the combustible framing. This duct shall comply with the provisions of Section M1601.1. A noncombustible receptacle shall be installed below any floor opening into the plenum in accordance with the following requirements:

1. The receptacle shall be securely suspended from the floor members and shall be not more than 18 inches (457 mm) below the floor opening.
2. The area of the receptacle shall extend 3 inches (76 mm) beyond the opening on all sides.
3. The perimeter of the receptacle shall have a vertical lip not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height at the open sides.

M1601.5.4 Access. Access to an under-floor plenum shall be provided through an opening in the floor with minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

M1601.5.5 Furnace controls. The furnace shall be equipped with an automatic control that will start the air-circulating fan when the air in the furnace bonnet reaches a temperature not higher than 150°F (66°C). The furnace shall additionally be equipped with an *approved* automatic control that limits the outlet air temperature to 200°F (93°C).

M1601.6 Independent garage HVAC systems. Furnaces and air-handling systems that supply air to living spaces shall not supply air to or return air from a garage.

SECTION M1602
RETURN AIR

M1602.1 Outdoor air openings. Outdoor intake openings shall be located in accordance with Section R303.5.1. Opening protection shall be in accordance with Section R303.6

M1602.2 Return air openings. Return air openings for heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. Openings shall not be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured in any direction from an open combustion chamber or draft hood of another appliance located in the same room or space.
2. The amount of return air taken from any room or space shall be not greater than the flow rate of supply air delivered to such room or space.
3. Return and transfer openings shall be sized in accordance with the appliance or equipment manufacturers' installation instructions, Manual D or the design of the registered design professional.
4. Return air shall not be taken from a closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, mechanical room, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

   Exceptions:

   1. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited where such return air openings serve the kitchen only, and are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the cooking appliances.
   2. Dedicated forced-air systems serving only the garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.
   3. Deleted.
5. Taking return air from an unconditioned crawl space shall not be accomplished through a direct connection to the return side of a forced-air furnace. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.
6. Return air from one dwelling unit shall not be discharged into another dwelling unit.

M1602.3 Return-air intake (nonengineered systems). If only one central return-air grille is installed, it shall be of a size sufficient to return a volume of air compatible with the CFM requirements and the temperature rise limitations specified by the equipment manufacturer. The face velocity of return air grilles shall not exceed 450 feet per minute (fpm) (2.3 m/s). At least one separate return shall be installed on each level of a multilevel structure. For split-level and split-foyer structures, one return may serve more than one level if located within the split area and the total area of the levels does not exceed 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2). Return-air grilles shall not be located in bathrooms. The return air from one residential living unit shall not be mixed with the return air from other living units.

In dwellings with 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) or less of conditioned area, a central return is permitted. When the dwelling contains more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) of conditioned area, additional returns shall be provided. Each return shall serve not more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) of area and shall be located in the area it serves. Return air may travel through the living space to the return-air intake if there are no restrictions, such as solid doors, to the air movement. Undercut doors are allowed. When panned joists are used for return air, the structural integrity shall be maintained. Air capacity for joists 16 inches (406 mm) on center shall be a maximum of 375 cubic feet per minute (0.177 m^3/s) for 8-inch (203 mm) joists and 525 cubic feet per minute (0.248 m^3/s) for 10-inch (254 mm) joists. Wiring located in spaces used for return-air ducts shall comply with the *North Carolina Electrical Code.*

CHAPTER 17
COMBUSTION AIR

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1701 GENERAL

M1701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

M1701.2 Opening location. In flood hazard areas as established in Table R301.2, *combustion air* openings shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section R322.2.1 or R322.3.

M1701.3 Dampered openings. Where combustion air openings are provided with volume dampers, the dampers shall be interlocked with the firing cycle of the appliances served, so as to prevent operation of any appliance that draws combustion air from the room or space when any of the dampers are closed. Manual dampers shall not be installed in combustion air ducts.

CHAPTER 18

CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1801 GENERAL

M1801.1 Venting required. Fuel-burning *appliances* shall be vented to the outdoors in accordance with their *listing* and *label* and manufacturer's installation instructions except *appliances* listed and *labeled* for unvented use. Venting systems shall consist of *approved* chimneys or vents, or venting assemblies that are integral parts of *labeled appliances*. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 24.

M1801.2 Draft requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the *appliance* in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall be constructed and installed to develop a positive flow to convey combustion products to the outside atmosphere.

M1801.3 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing chimney or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing chimney or vent during the process of a new installation, the chimney or vent shall comply with Sections M1801.3.1 through M1801.3.4.

M1801.3.1 Size. The chimney or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the chimney or vent and to provide the *appliance*, or *appliances* served, with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry chimneys, the resizing shall be done in accordance with NFPA 31.

M1801.3.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, chimney inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of combustion products, including gases, moisture and creosote.

M1801.3.3 Cleanout. Masonry chimneys shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section R1003.17.

M1801.3.4 Clearances. Chimneys and vents shall have airspace clearance to combustibles in accordance with this code and the chimney or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system tested and *listed* for installation in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall not be required to have a clearance between combustible materials and exterior surfaces of the masonry chimney. Noncombustible firestopping shall be provided in accordance with this code.

M1801.4 Space around lining. The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

M1801.5 Mechanical draft systems. A mechanical draft system shall be used only with *appliances listed* and *labeled* for such use. Provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of fuel to the *equipment* when the draft system is not operating. Forced draft systems and portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed to prevent leakage of flue gases into a building.

M1801.6 Direct-vent appliances. Direct-vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1801.7 Support. Venting systems shall be adequately supported for the weight of the material used.

M1801.8 Duct penetrations. Chimneys, vents and vent connectors shall not extend into or through supply and return air ducts or plenums.

M1801.9 Fireblocking. Vent and chimney installations shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section R602.8.

M1801.10 Unused openings. Unused openings in any venting system shall be closed or capped.

M1801.11 Multiple-appliance venting systems. Two or more *listed* and *labeled appliances* connected to a common natural draft venting system shall comply with the following requirements:

1. *Appliances* that are connected to common venting systems shall be located on the same floor of the *dwelling*.

   Exception: Engineered systems as provided for in Section G2427.

2. Inlets to common venting systems shall be offset such that no portion of an inlet is opposite another inlet.
3. Connectors serving *appliances* operating under a natural draft shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive pressure.

M1801.12 Multiple solid fuel prohibited. A solid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace shall not connect to a chimney passageway venting another *appliance*.

SECTION M1802
VENT COMPONENTS

M1802.1 Draft hoods. Draft hoods shall be located in the same room or space as the *combustion air* openings for the *appliances*.

M1802.2 Vent dampers. Vent dampers shall comply with Sections M1802.2.1 and M1802.2.2.

M1802.2.1 Manually operated. Manually operated dampers shall not be installed except in connectors or chimneys serving solid fuel-burning *appliances*.

M1802.2.2 Automatically operated. Automatically operated dampers shall conform to UL 17 and be installed in accordance with the terms of their *listing* and *label*. The installation shall prevent firing of the burner when the damper is not opened to a safe position.

M1802.3 Draft regulators. Draft regulators shall be provided for oil-fired *appliances* that must be connected to a chimney. Draft regulators provided for solid fuel-burning *appliances* to reduce draft intensity shall be installed and set in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

M1802.3.1 Location. Where required, draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* so that a difference in pressure will not exist between the air at the regulator and the *combustion air* supply.

SECTION M1803
CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTORS

M1803.1 General. Connectors shall be used to connect fuel-burning *appliances* to a vertical chimney or vent except where the chimney or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*.

M1803.2 Connectors for oil and solid fuel appliances. Connectors for oil and solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be constructed of factory-built chimney material, Type L vent material or single-wall metal pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat and thickness not less than that of galvanized steel as specified in Table M1803.2.

TABLE M1803.2
THICKNESS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE CONNECTORS

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	GALVANIZED SHEET METAL GAGE NUMBER	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Less than 6	26	0.019
6 to 10	24	0.024
Over 10 through 16	22	0.029

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

M1803.3 Installation. Vent and chimney connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and within the space where the *appliance* is located. *Appliances* shall be located as close as practical to the vent or chimney. Connectors shall be as short and straight as possible and installed with a slope of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) rise per foot of run. Connectors shall be securely supported and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws or rivets. Devices that obstruct the flow of flue gases shall not be installed in a connector unless *listed* and *labeled* or *approved* for such installations.

M1803.3.1 Floor, ceiling and wall penetrations. A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through any floor or ceiling. A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through a wall or partition unless the connector is *listed* and *labeled* for wall pass-through, or is routed through a device *listed* and *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the conditions of its *listing* and *label*. Connectors for oil-fired *appliances listed* and *labeled* for Type L vents, passing through walls or partitions shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Type L vent material for oil *appliances* shall be installed with not less than *listed* and *labeled* clearances to combustible material.
2. Single-wall metal pipe shall be *guarded* by a ventilated metal thimble not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector. A minimum 6 inches (152 mm) of clearance shall be maintained between the thimble and combustibles.

M1803.3.2 Length. The horizontal run of an uninsulated connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 75 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector. The horizontal run of a *listed* connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 100 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector.

M1803.3.3 Size. A connector shall not be smaller than the flue collar of the *appliance*.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

M1803.3.4 Clearance. Connectors shall be installed with clearance to combustibles as set forth in Table M1803.3.4 or Table M1803.3.5. Reduced clearances to combustible materials shall be in accordance with Table M1306.2 and Figure M1306.1.

TABLE M1803.3.4
CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS[a]

TYPE OF CONNECTOR	MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches)
Single-wall metal pipe connectors:	
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	18
Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents	9
Type L vent piping connectors:	
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	9
Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents	3[b]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These minimum clearances apply to unlisted single-wall chimney and vent connectors. Reduction of required clearances is permitted as in Table M1306.2.

b. Where listed Type L vent piping is used, the clearance shall be in accordance with the vent listing.

TABLE M1803.3.5
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS AND CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE WALL MATERIALS FOR DOMESTIC HEATING APPLIANCES[a, b, c, d]

System A (12-inch clearance)	A 3.5-inch-thick brick wall shall be framed into the combustible wall. An 0.625-inch-thick fire-clay liner (ASTM C315 or equivalent)[e] shall be firmly cemented in the center of the brick wall maintaining a 12-inch clearance to combustibles. The clay liner shall run from the outer surface of the bricks to the inner surface of the chimney liner.
System B (9-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) the same inside diameter as the connector shall be utilized. Sheet steel supports cut to maintain a 9-inch clearance to combustibles shall be fastened to the wall surface and to the chimney section. Fasteners shall not penetrate the chimney flue liner. The chimney length shall be flush with the masonry chimney liner and sealed to the masonry with water-insoluble refractory cement. Chimney manufacturers' parts shall be utilized to securely fasten the chimney connector to the chimney section.
System C (6-inch clearance)	A steel ventilated thimble having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage) having two 1-inch air channels shall be installed with a steel chimney connector. Steel supports shall be cut to maintain a 6-inch clearance between the thimble and combustibles. The chimney connector and steel supports shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). One side of the support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides. Glass-fiber insulation shall fill the 6-inch space between the thimble and the supports.
System D (2-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) with a diameter 2 inches larger than the chimney connector shall be installed with a steel chimney connector having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (24 gage). Sheet steel supports shall be positioned to maintain a 2-inch clearance to combustibles and to hold the chimney connector to ensure that a 1-inch airspace surrounds the chimney connector through the chimney section. The steel support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides and the chimney section shall be fastened to the supports. Fasteners shall not penetrate the liner of the chimney section.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1.0 Btu • in/ft^2 • h • °F = 0.144 W/m^2 • K.

a. Insulation material that is part of the wall pass-through system shall be noncombustible and shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu × in/ft^2 • h • °F or less.
b. All clearances and thicknesses are minimums.
c. Materials utilized to seal penetrations for the connector shall be noncombustible.
d. Connectors for all systems except System B shall extend through the wall pass-through system to the inner face of the flue liner.
e. ASTM C315.

M1803.3.5 Access. The entire length of a connector shall be accessible for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

M1803.4 Connection to fireplace flue. Connection of *appliances* to chimney flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections M1803.4.1 through M1803.4.4.

M1803.4.1 Closure and accessibility. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for access to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

M1803.4.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. A different *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such an installation. The connection shall be made in conformance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

M1803.4.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry fireplace to convey the flue gases directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct-connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*.

M1803.4.4 Size of flue. The size of the fireplace flue shall be in accordance with Section M1805.3.1.

SECTION M1804
VENTS

M1804.1 Type of vent required. *Appliances* shall be provided with a *listed* and *labeled* venting system as set forth in Table M1804.1.

TABLE M1804.1
VENT SELECTION CHART

VENT TYPES	APPLIANCE TYPES
Type L oil vents	Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents
Pellet vents	Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for use with pellet vents

M1804.1.1 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. Solvent cement joints between ABS pipe and fittings shall be cleaned. Solvent cement joints between CPVC pipe and fittings or PVC pipe and fittings shall be primed. The primer shall be a contrasting color, or an ultraviolet primer may be used.

M1804.2 Termination. Vent termination shall comply with Sections M1804.2.1 through M1804.2.6.

M1804.2.1 Through the roof. Vents passing through a roof shall extend through flashing and terminate in accordance with the manufacturer's installation requirements.

M1804.2.2 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of vents except where the shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific venting system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1804.2.3 Natural draft appliances. Vents for natural draft *appliances* shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected *appliance* outlet, and natural draft gas vents serving wall furnaces shall terminate at an elevation not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the bottom of the furnace.

M1804.2.4 Type L vent. Type L venting systems shall conform to UL 641 and shall terminate with a *listed* and *labeled* cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

M1804.2.5 Direct vent terminations. Vent terminals for direct-vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M1804.2.6 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems shall comply with UL 378 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's instructions and, except for direct-vent *appliances*, Sections M1804.2.6.1 through M1804.2.6.3.

M1804.2.6.1 Horizontal terminations. Vertical terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The vent system shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into the building.
4. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. The bottom of the vent termination shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

M1804.2.6.2 Vertical terminations. Vertical terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. Where the vent termination is located below an adjacent roof structure, the termination point shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from such structure.
4. The vent shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet for the building.
5. A vent cap shall be installed to prevent rain from entering the vent system.
6. The vent termination shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from any portion of the roof structure.

M1804.2.6.3 Mechanical draft systems for manually fired appliances and fireplaces. A mechanical draft system shall be permitted to be used with manually fired appliances and fireplaces where such system complies with all of the following requirements:

1. The mechanical draft device shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 378, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. A device shall be installed that produces visible and audible warning upon failure of the mechanical draft device or loss of electrical power, at any time that the mechanical draft device is turned on. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.
3. A smoke detector shall be installed in the room with the appliance or fireplace. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.

M1804.3 Installation. Type L and pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their *listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's instructions.

M1804.3.1 Size of single-appliance venting systems. An individual vent for a single *appliance* shall have a cross-sectional area equal to or greater than the area of the connector to the *appliance*, but not less than 7 square inches (4515 mm^2) except where the vent is an integral part of a *listed* and *labeled appliance*.

M1804.4 Door swing. Appliance and equipment vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminals. Door stops or closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION M1805
MASONRY AND FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

M1805.1 General. Masonry and factory-built chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with Sections R1003 and R1005, respectively. Flue lining for masonry chimneys shall comply with Section R1003.11.

M1805.2 Masonry chimney connection. A chimney connector shall enter a masonry chimney not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney. Where it is not possible to locate the connector entry at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney flue, a cleanout shall be provided by installing a capped tee in the connector next to the chimney. A connector entering a masonry chimney shall extend through, but not beyond, the wall and shall be flush with the inner face of the liner. Connectors, or thimbles where used, shall be firmly cemented into the masonry.

M1805.3 Size of chimney flues. The effective area of a natural draft chimney flue for one *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the connector to the *appliance*. The area of chimney flues connected to more than one *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

> **Exception:** Chimney flues serving oil-fired *appliances* sized in accordance with NFPA 31.

> **M1805.3.1 Size of chimney flue for solid-fuel appliance.** Except where otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, the cross-sectional area of a flue connected to a solid-fuel-burning *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the flue collar or connector, and not larger than three times the area of the flue collar.

M1805.4 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

CHAPTER 19

SPECIAL APPLIANCES, EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M1901 RANGES AND OVENS

M1901.1 Clearances. Freestanding or built-in ranges shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) to unprotected combustible material. Reduced clearances are permitted in accordance with the *listing* and *labeling* of the range hoods or *appliances*. The installation of a listed and labeled cooking appliance or microwave oven over a listed and labeled cooking appliance shall be in accordance with Section M1504.1. The clearances for a domestic open-top broiler unit shall be in accordance with Section M1505.1.

M1901.2 Cooking appliances. Cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* for household use and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The installation shall not interfere with *combustion air* or access for operation and servicing. Electric cooking appliances shall comply with UL 1026 or UL 858. Solid-fuel-fired fireplace stoves shall comply with UL 737.

M1901.3 Installation of microwave oven over a cooking appliance. The installation of a *listed* and *labeled* cooking appliance or microwave oven over a *listed* and *labeled* cooking appliance shall conform to the terms of the upper appliance's *listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION M1902 SAUNA HEATERS

M1902.1 Locations and protection. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by persons with a guard of material having a low thermal conductivity, such as wood. The guard shall not have a substantial effect on the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

M1902.2 Installation. Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Sauna heaters shall comply with UL 875.

M1902.3 Combustion air. *Combustion air* and venting for a nondirect vent-type heater shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 17 and 18, respectively.

M1902.4 Controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to not greater than 194°F (90°C). Where the thermostat is not an integral part of the heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling.

M1902.5 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided as required by the manufacturer.

SECTION M1903 STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANTS

M1903.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power plants having a power output not exceeding 1,000 kW, shall comply with ANSI/CSA America FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 853.

SECTION M1904 GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

M1904.1 Installation. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Sections M1307.4 and M1903.1 and the *International Fuel Gas Code*, the *International Fire Code* and the *International Building Code*.

CHAPTER 20

BOILERS AND WATER HEATERS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M2001 BOILERS

M2001.1 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. The manufacturer's rating data, the nameplate and operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have their controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. Solid and liquid fuel-burning boilers shall be provided with *combustion air* as required by Chapter 17.

M2001.1.1 Standards. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 834. Solid fuel-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2523. Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code,* Section I or IV. Controls and safety devices for boilers with fuel input ratings of 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3 663 388 watts) or less shall meet the requirements of ASME CSD-1. Gas-fired boilers shall conform to the requirements listed in Chapter 24.

M2001.2 Clearance. Boilers shall be installed in accordance with their *listing* and *label*.

M2001.3 Valves. Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.

Exception: Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.

M2001.4 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas established in Table R301.2, boilers, water heaters and their control systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

SECTION M2002 OPERATING AND SAFETY CONTROLS

M2002.1 Safety controls. Electrical and mechanical operating and safety controls for boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

M2002.2 Hot water boiler gauges. Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

M2002.3 Steam boiler gauges. Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal water level.

M2002.4 Pressure-relief valve. Boilers shall be equipped with pressure-relief valves with minimum rated capacities for the *equipment* served. Pressure-relief valves shall be set at the maximum rating of the boiler. Discharge shall be piped to drains by gravity to within 18 inches (457 mm) of the floor or to an open receptor.

M2002.5 Boiler low-water cutoff. Steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water cutoff control.

Exception: A low-water cutoff is not required for coil-type and water-tube type boilers that require forced circulation of water through the boiler and that are protected with a flow sensing control.

M2002.6 Operation. Low-water cutoff controls and flow sensing controls required by Section M2002.5 shall automatically stop the combustion operation of the appliance when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer or when the water circulation flow is less than that required for safe operation of the appliance, respectively.

SECTION M2003 EXPANSION TANKS

M2003.1 General. Hot water boilers shall be provided with expansion tanks. Nonpressurized expansion tanks shall be securely fastened to the structure or boiler and supported to carry twice the weight of the tank filled with water. Provisions shall be made for draining nonpressurized tanks without emptying the system.

M2003.1.1 Pressurized expansion tanks. Pressurized expansion tanks shall be consistent with the volume and capacity of the system. Tanks shall be capable of withstanding a hydrostatic test pressure of two and one-half times the allowable working pressure of the system.

M2003.2 Minimum capacity. The minimum capacity of expansion tanks shall be determined from Table M2003.2.

**TABLE M2003.2
EXPANSION TANK MINIMUM CAPACITY[a]
FOR FORCED HOT-WATER SYSTEMS**

SYSTEM VOLUME[b] (gallons)	PRESSURIZED DIAPHRAGM TYPE	NONPRESSURIZED TYPE
10	1.0	1.5
20	1.5	3.0
30	2.5	4.5
40	3.0	6.0
50	4.0	7.5
60	5.0	9.0
70	6.0	10.5
80	6.5	12.0
90	7.5	13.5
100	8.0	15.0

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Based on average water temperature of 195°F (91°C), fill pressure of 12 psig and a maximum operating pressure of 30 psig.

b. System volume includes volume of water in boiler, convectors and piping, not including the expansion tank.

SECTION M2004
WATER HEATERS USED FOR SPACE HEATING

M2004.1 General. Water heaters used to supply both potable hot water and hot water for space heating shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Chapter 24, Chapter 28 and the manufacturer's instructions. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Plumbing Code*.

M2004.1.1 Sizing. Water heaters utilized for both potable water heating and space-heating applications shall be sized to prevent the space-heating load from diminishing the required potable water-heating capacity.

M2004.1.2 Temperature limitation. Where a combination potable water-heating and space-heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures higher than 140°F (60°C), a temperature-actuated mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1017 shall be provided to temper the water supplied to the potable hot water distribution system to a temperature of 140°F (60°C) or less.

M2004.2 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable waterheating devices that utilize refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be approved and installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code* and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION M2005
WATER HEATERS

M2005.1 General. Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 28, the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code. Water heaters installed in an attic shall comply with the requirements of Section M1305.1.3. Gas-fired water heaters shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 24. Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174. Oiled-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Thermal solar water heaters shall comply with Chapter 23 and UL 174. Solid fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523.

M2005.2 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired water heaters shall not be installed in a room used as a storage closet. Water heaters located in a room or space accessed only through a bedroom or bathroom shall be installed in accordance with Section G2406.2. Installation of direct-vent water heaters within an enclosure is not required.

M2005.2.1 Water heater access. Access to water heaters that are located in an *attic* or underfloor crawl space is permitted to be through a closet located in a sleeping room or bathroom where *ventilation* of those spaces is in accordance with this code and the requirements of Section G2406.2.

M2005.3 Electric water heaters. Electric water heaters shall also be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

M2005.4 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable water heating devices that use refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be *approved* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION M2006
POOL HEATERS

M2006.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired pool heaters shall comply with UL 726. Electric pool and spa heaters shall comply with UL 1261.

M2006.2 Clearances. The clearances shall not interfere with *combustion air*, draft hood or flue terminal relief, or accessibility for servicing.

M2006.3 Temperature-limiting devices. Pool heaters shall have temperature-relief valves.

M2006.4 Bypass valves. Where an integral bypass system is not provided as a part of the pool heater, a bypass line and valve shall be installed between the inlet and outlet piping for use in adjusting the flow of water through the heater.

CHAPTER 21

HYDRONIC PIPING

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M2101 HYDRONIC PIPING SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

M2101.1 General. Hydronic piping shall conform to Table M2101.1. *Approved* piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pipe and fittings shall be rated for use at the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Used pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be free of foreign materials.

M2101.2 System drain down. Hydronic piping systems shall be installed to permit draining of the system. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 25 through 32 of this code.

Exception: The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

M2101.3 Protection of potable water. The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the provisions listed in Section P2902.

M2101.4 Pipe penetrations. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved.

M2101.5 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with any building material that causes the piping material to degrade or corrode.

M2101.6 Drilling and notching. Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections R502.8, R602.6, R602.6.1 and R802.7. Holes in load bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections R505.2.6, R603.2.6 and R804.2.6. In accordance with the provisions of Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.4 and R804.3.3, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R610.7.

M2101.7 Prohibited tee applications. Fluid in the supply side of a hydronic system shall not enter a tee fitting through the branch opening.

M2101.8 Expansion, contraction and settlement. Piping shall be installed so that piping, connections and *equipment* shall not be subjected to excessive strains or stresses. Provisions shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, shrinkage and structural settlement.

M2101.9 Piping support. Hangers and supports shall be of material of sufficient strength to support the piping, and shall be fabricated from materials compatible with the piping material. Piping shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table M2101.9.

**TABLE M2101.9
HANGER SPACING INTERVALS**

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS	4	10[a]
CPVC ≤ 1-inch pipe or tubing	3	5[a]
CPVC ≥ $1^1/_4$ inches	4	10[a]
Copper or copper alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper alloy tubing	6	10
PB pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PE pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PE-RT ≤ 1 inch	2.67	10[a]
PE-RT ≥ $1^1/_4$ inches	4	10[a]
PEX tubing	2.67	4
PP < 1-inch pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PP > $1^1/_4$ inches	4	10[a]
PVC	4	10[a]
Steel pipe	12	15
Steel tubing	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For sizes 2 inches and smaller, a guide shall be installed midway between required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.

M2101.10 Tests. Hydronic piping systems shall be tested hydrostatically at a pressure of one and one-half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 pounds per square inch (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes and not more than 20 minutes.

M2101.10.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall

TABLE M2101.1
HYDRONIC PIPING MATERIALS

MATERIAL	USE CODE[a]	STANDARD[b]	JOINTS	NOTES
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	1, 5	ASTM D1527; ASTM F2806; ASTM F2969	Solvent cement joints	
Brass pipe	1	ASTM B43	Brazed, welded, threaded, mechanical and flanged fittings	
Brass tubing	1	ASTM B135	Brazed, soldered and mechanical fittings	
Chlorinated poly (vinyl chloride) (CPVC) pipe and tubing	1, 2, 3	ASTM D2846	Solvent cement joints, compression joints and threaded adapters	
Copper pipe	1	ASTM B42, B302	Brazed, soldered and mechanical fittings threaded, welded and flanged	
Copper tubing (type K, L or M)	1, 2	ASTM B75, B88, B251, B306	Brazed, soldered and flared mechanical fittings	Joints embedded in concrete
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	1, 2, 3	ASTM F876, F877	(See PEX fittings)	Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
Cross-linked polyethylene/ aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene-(PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	1, 2	ASTM F1281 or CAN/CSA B137.10	Mechanical, crimp/insert	Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
PEX fittings		ASTM F877 ASTM F1807 ASTM F1960 ASTM F2098 ASTM F2159 ASTM F2735	Copper-crimp/insert fittings, cold expansion fittings, stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
Polybutylene (PB) pipe and tubing	1, 2, 3	ASTM D3309	Heat-fusion, crimp/insert and compression	Joints in concrete shall be heat-fused
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	1, 2, 3	ASTM F1282 CSA B 137.9	Mechanical, crimp/insert	
Polypropylene (PP)	1, 2, 3	ISO 15874 ASTM F2389	Heat-fusion joints, mechanical fittings, threaded adapters, compression joints	
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	1, 2, 3	ASTM F2623 ASTM F2769	Copper crimp/insert fitting stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) fittings	1, 2,3	ASTM F1807 ASTM F2159 ASTM F2735 ASTM F2769 ASTM F2098	Copper crimp/insert fitting stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	
Steel pipe	1, 2	ASTM A53, A106	Brazed, welded, threaded, flanged and mechanical fittings	Joints in concrete shall be welded. Galvanized pipe shall not be welded or brazed.
Steel tubing	1	ASTM A254	Mechanical fittings, welded	

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Use code:
1. Above ground.
2. Embedded in radiant systems.
3. Temperatures below 180°F only.
4. Low temperature (below 130°F) applications only.
5. Temperatures below 160°F only.

b. Standards as listed in Chapter 44.

utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.

3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

M2101.10.2 Pressurizing during installation. Piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

M2101.11 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of hydronic piping.

M2101.12 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

M2101.13 Clearance to combustibles. A pipe in a hydronic piping system in which the exterior temperature exceeds 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) to combustible materials.

M2101.14 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

M2101.15 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the hydronic piping system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. Where a quick-closing valve creates water hammer, an *approved* water-hammer arrestor shall be installed. The arrestor shall be located within a range as specified by the manufacturer of the quick-closing valve.

M2101.16 Steam piping pitch. Steam piping shall be installed to drain to the boiler or the steam trap. Steam systems shall not have drip pockets that reduce the capacity of the steam piping.

M2101.17 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

M2101.17.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

SECTION M2102
JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

M2102.1 Joint preparation and installation. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the hydronic system. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free of burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

Where required by Sections M2102.2 through M2102.12, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, soldered, solvent cemented, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections M2102.1.1 through M2102.1.8.

M2102.1.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

M2102.1.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2102.1.3 Soldered joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

M2102.1.4 Solvent-cemented joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. An *approved* primer shall be applied to CPVC and PVC pipe-joint surfaces. Joints shall be made while the cement is wet. Solvent cement conforming to the following standards shall be applied to all joint surfaces:

1. ASTM D2235 for ABS joints.
2. ASTM F493 for CPVC joints.
3. ASTM D2564 for PVC joints.

CPVC joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2846.

Exception: For CPVC pipe joint connections, a primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe and fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

M2102.1.5 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be *approved* for application on the piping material.

M2102.1.6 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

M2102.1.7 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1476 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2102.1.8 Mechanically formed tee fittings. Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

M2102.1.8.1 Full flow assurance. Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple/depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the outlet is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

M2102.1.8.2 Brazed joints. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section M2102.1.1.

M2102.2 ABS plastic pipe. Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.3 Brass pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.4 Brass tubing. Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.5 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.6 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section M2102.1, flared joints conforming to Section M2102.6.1, push-fit joints conforming to Section M2102.6.2 or press-type joints conforming to Section M2102.6.3.

M2102.6.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

M2102.6.2 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2102.6.3 Press joints. *Press joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2102.7 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.8 Polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall be mechanical joints conforming to Section M2102.1 or heat-fusion joints conforming to Section M2102.8.1.

M2102.8.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D3309.

M2102.9 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections M2102.9.1 and M2102.9.2 Mechanical joints shall conform to Section M2102.1.

M2102.9.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2102.9.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

M2102.10 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.11 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.12 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section M2102.1.

M2102.13 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections M2102.13.1 and M2102.13.2.

M2102.13.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electro-fusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

M2102.13.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2102.14 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections M2102.14.1 and M2102.14.2. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section M2102.1.

M2102.14.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2102.14.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

M2102.15 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-ALPE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/ polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections M2102.15.1 and M2102.15.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section M2102.1.

M2102.15.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2102.15.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

M2102.16 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections M2102.16.1 and M2102.16.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section M2102.1.

M2102.16.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2102.16.2 PEX-AL-PEX-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PEX-AL-PEX pipe.

SECTION M2103
FLOOR HEATING SYSTEMS

M2103.1 Piping materials. Piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be standard-weight steel pipe, copper and copper alloy pipe and tubing, cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe, chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC), polybutylene, cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing, polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) or polypropylene (PP) with a minimum rating of 100 psi at 180°F (690 kPa at 82°C).

M2103.2 Thermal barrier required. Radiant floor heating systems shall have a thermal barrier in accordance with Sections M2103.2.1 through M2103.2.4.

Exception: Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

M2103.2.1 Slab-on-grade installation. Radiant piping used in slab-on-grade applications shall have insulating materials having a minimum *R*-value of 5 installed beneath the piping.

M2103.2.2 Suspended floor installation. In suspended floor applications, insulation shall be installed in the joist bay cavity serving the heating space above and shall consist of materials having a minimum *R*-value of 11.

M2103.2.3 Thermal break required. A thermal break consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials shall be provided at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

M2103.2.4 Thermal barrier material marking. Insulating materials used in thermal barriers shall be installed so that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark *is readily observable upon inspection.*

M2103.3 Piping joints. Deleted.

M2103.4 Testing. Deleted.

SECTION M2104
LOW TEMPERATURE PIPING

M2104.1 Piping materials. Low temperature piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be as indicated in Table M2101.1.

M2104.2 Piping joints. Piping joints, other than those in Section M2103.3, that are embedded shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Polyethylene tubing shall be installed with heat fusion joints.
3. Polypropylene (PP) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2104.3 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections M2104.3.1, M2104.3.2 and M2104.3.3. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2104.3.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2104.3.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

M2104.3.3 PE-RT insert fittings. PE-RT insert fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2104.4 Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections M2104.4.1 and M2104.4.2. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2104.4.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2104.4.2 PE-AL-PE to metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

SECTION M2105 GROUND-SOURCE HEAT-PUMP SYSTEM LOOP PIPING

M2105.1 Plastic ground-source heat-pump loop piping. Plastic piping and tubing material used in water-based ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems shall conform to the standards specified in this section.

M2105.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves, and other materials shall not be used in ground-source heat-pump loop systems.

M2105.3 Material rating. Pipe and tubing shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the ground-source heat-pump loop system. Fittings shall be suitable for the pressure applications and recommended by the manufacturer for installation with the pipe and tubing material installed. Where used underground, materials shall be suitable for burial.

M2105.4 Piping and tubing materials standards. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop pipe and tubing shall conform to the standards listed in Table M2105.4.

M2105.5 Fittings. Ground-source heat-pump pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping materials to be installed, shall conform to the standards listed in Table M2105.5 and, where installed underground, shall be suitable for burial.

M2105.6 Joints and connections. Joints and connections shall be of an approved type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the ground-source loop system. Joints used underground shall be approved for such applications.

M2105.6.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with approved transition fittings.

M2105.7 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed, and shall be free of burrs and obstructions. CPVC, PE and PVC pipe shall be chamfered. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

M2105.8 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections M2105.9 through M2105.11, the preparation and

TABLE M2105.4
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F876; ASTM F877, CSA B137.5
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9; AWWA C 903
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F714; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; CSA 137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769

TABLE M2105.5
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE FITTINGS

PIPE MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; ASTM F1970; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.5
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F2434; ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM F1970, CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2159; F2769; B137.1

installation of mechanical and thermoplastic-welded joints shall comply with Sections M2105.8.1 and M2015.8.2.

M2105.8.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2105.8.2 Thermoplastic-welded joints. Joint surfaces for thermoplastic-welded joints shall be cleaned by an approved procedure. Joints shall be welded in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2105.9 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented in accordance with Section P2906.9.1.2. Threaded joints between fittings and CPVC plastic pipe shall be in accordance with Section M2105.9.1.

M2105.9.1 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. The pipe shall be Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe and shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be approved for application on the piping material.

M2105.10 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections M2105.10.1 and M2105.10.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section M2105.8.1.

M2105.10.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2105.10.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to plastic pipe or tubing.

M2105.11 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground-source heat-pump loop systems shall be heat-fusion joints complying with Section M2105.11.1, electrofusion joints complying with Section M2105.11.2, or stab-type insertion joints complying with Section M2105.11.3.

M2105.11.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, and joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

M2105.11.2 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

M2105.11.3 Stab-type insert fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fittings to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1924.

M2105.12 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections M2105.12.1 and M2105.12.2.

M2105.12.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electrofusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

M2105.12.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2105.13 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections M2105.13.1 and M2105.13.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section M2105.8.1.

M2105.13.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

M2105.13.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe or tubing.

M2105.14 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented in accordance with Section P2906.9.1.4. Threaded joints between fittings and PVC plastic pipe shall be in accordance with Section M2105.9.1.

M2105.15 Shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed in ground-source loop piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections M2105.15.1 through M2105.15.6.

M2105.15.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section M2001.3.

M2105.15.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the building supply and return of a central utility system.

M2105.15.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

M2105.15.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

M2105.15.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical equipment and appliances. This requirement does not apply to components of ground-source loop systems such as pumps, air separators, metering devices, and similar equipment.

M2105.15.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

M2105.16 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section M2002.

M2105.17 Installation. Piping, valves, fittings, and connections shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

M2105.18 Protection of potable water. Where ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems have a connection to a potable water supply, the potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with Section P2902.

M2105.19 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors and ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section P2606.1.

M2105.20 Clearance from combustibles. A pipe in a ground-source heat pump piping system having an exterior surface temperature exceeding 250°F (121°C) shall have a clearance of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) from combustible materials.

M2105.21 Contact with building material. A ground-source heat-pump ground-loop piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping or fitting material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

M2105.22 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

M2105.22.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

M2105.23 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section M2101.9.

M2105.24 Velocities. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems shall be designed so that the flow velocities do not exceed the maximum flow velocity recommended by the pipe and fittings manufacturer. Flow velocities shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer.

M2105.25 Labeling and marking. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop system piping shall be marked with tape, metal tags or other methods where it enters a building. The marking shall state the following words: "GROUND-SOURCE HEAT-PUMP LOOP SYSTEM." The marking shall indicate if antifreeze is used in the system and shall indicate the chemicals by name and concentration.

M2105.26 Chemical compatibility. Antifreeze and other materials used in the system shall be chemically compatible with the pipe, tubing, fittings and mechanical systems.

M2105.27 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

M2105.28 Testing. Before connection header trenches are backfilled, the assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (689 kPa) for 15 minutes without observed leaks. Flow and pressure loss testing shall be performed and the actual flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to the calculated design values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop values differ from calculated design values by more than 10 percent, the cause shall be identified and corrective action taken.

M2105.29 Embedded piping. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

SECTION M2106
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

M2106.1 General. Baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Convectors shall be supported independently of the hydronic piping.

CHAPTER 22

FUEL OIL PIPING AND STORAGE SYSTEMS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M2201
OIL TANKS

M2201.1 Materials. Supply tanks shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall conform to UL 58 for underground tanks, UL 142 for above-ground tanks, and UL 80 for indoor tanks.

M2201.2 Above-ground tanks. The maximum amount of fuel oil stored above ground or inside of a building shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The supply tank shall be supported on rigid noncombustible supports to prevent settling or shifting.

Exception: The storage of fuel oil, used for space or water heating, above ground or inside buildings in quantities exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) shall comply with NFPA 31.

M2201.2.1 Tanks within buildings. Supply tanks for use inside of buildings shall be of such size and shape to permit installation and removal from *dwellings* as whole units. Supply tanks larger than 10 gallons (38 L) shall be placed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any fire or flame either within or external to any fuel-burning *appliance*.

M2201.2.2 Outside above-ground tanks. Tanks installed outside above ground shall be a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) from an adjoining property line. Such tanks shall be suitably protected from the weather and from physical damage.

M2201.3 Underground tanks. Excavations for underground tanks shall not undermine the foundations of existing structures. The clearance from the tank to the nearest wall of a *basement*, pit or property line shall be not less than 1 foot (305 mm). Tanks shall be set on and surrounded with noncorrosive inert materials such as clean earth, sand or gravel well tamped in place. Tanks shall be covered with not less than 1 foot (305 mm) of earth. Corrosion protection shall be provided in accordance with Section M2203.7.

M2201.4 Multiple tanks. Cross connection of two supply tanks shall be permitted in accordance with Section M2203.6.

M2201.5 Oil gauges. Inside tanks shall be provided with a device to indicate when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level. Glass gauges or a gauge subject to breakage that could result in the escape of oil from the tank shall not be used. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

M2201.6 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, tanks shall be installed in accordance with Section R322.2.4 or R322.3.10.

M2201.7 Tanks abandoned or removed. Exterior above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with Section 5704.2.13 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION M2202
OIL PIPING, FITTING AND CONNECTIONS

M2202.1 General. Piping materials shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

M2202.2 Rated for system. All materials shall be rated for the operating temperatures and pressures of the system, and shall be compatible with the type of liquid.

M2202.3 Pipe standards. Fuel oil pipe shall comply with one of the standards listed in Table M2202.3.

**TABLE M2202.3
FUEL OIL PIPING**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B280
Labeled pipe	(See Section 1302.4)
Nonmetallic pipe	ASTM D2996
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254; ASTM A539

M2202.4 Nonmetallic pipe. Nonmetallic pipe shall be listed and labeled as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids. Nonmetallic pipe shall be installed only outside, underground.

M2202.5 Fittings and valves. Fittings and valves shall be approved for the piping systems, and shall be compatible with, or shall be of the same material as, the pipe or tubing.

M2202.6 Bending of pipe. Pipe shall be approved for bending. Pipe bends shall be made with approved equipment. The bend shall not exceed the structural limitations of the pipe.

M2202.7 Pumps. Pumps that are not part of an appliance shall be of a positive-displacement type. The pump shall automatically shut off the supply when not in operation. Pumps shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 343.

M2202.8 Flexible connectors and hoses. Flexible connectors and hoses shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 536.

M2202.9 Approval. Joints and connections shall be approved and of a type approved for fuel-oil piping systems. Threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with suitable lubricant or pipe compound. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point of less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used in oil lines. Cast-iron fittings shall not be used. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure required by test.

M2202.9.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with approved adapter fittings. Joints between different metallic piping materials shall be made with approved dielectric fittings or brass converter fittings.

M2202.10 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered and be free from all burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

M2202.11 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections M2202.12 through M2202.18, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections M2202.11.1 through M2202.11.4.

M2202.11.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joints shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

M2202.11.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Press connect joints shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table M2202.3.

M2202.11.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

M2202.11.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. The joint shall be welded with an approved filler metal.

M2202.12 Brass pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints complying with Section M2202.11.

M2202.13 Brass tubing. Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed or mechanical joints complying with Section M2202.11.

M2202.14 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints complying with Section M2202.11.

M2202.15 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed or mechanical joints complying with Section M2202.11 or flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

M2202.16 Nonmetallic pipe. Joints between nonmetallic pipe or fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the *labeled* pipe and fittings.

M2202.17 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be threaded or welded joints complying with Section M2202.11 or mechanical joints complying with Section M2202.17.1.

M2202.17.1 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Mechanical joints shall be installed outside, underground, unless otherwise *approved*.

M2202.18 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints complying with Section M2202.11.

M2202.19 Piping protection. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion, contraction, jarring and vibration. Piping other than tubing, connected to underground tanks, except straight fill lines and test wells, shall be provided with flexible connectors, or otherwise arranged to permit the tanks to settle without impairing the tightness of the piping connections.

SECTION M2203 INSTALLATION

M2203.1 General. Piping shall be installed in a manner to avoid placing stresses on the piping, and to accommodate expansion and contraction of the piping system.

M2203.2 Supply piping. The fuel oil system shall be sized for the maximum capacity of fuel oil required. The minimum size of a supply line shall be $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) outside diameter tubing. The minimum size of a return line shall be $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^5/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing shall have 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) nominal and 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) minimum wall thickness.

M2203.2.1 Supply piping installation. Supply piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Fuel oil shall be supplied by a transfer pump or automatic pump or by other *approved* means.

Exception: This section shall not apply to inside or above-ground fuel oil tanks.

M2203.2.2 Return piping. Return piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Valves shall not be installed on return piping.

M2203.2.3 System pressure. The system shall be designed for the maximum pressure required by the fuel-oil-burning *appliance*. Air or other gases shall not be used to pressurize tanks.

M2203.2.4 Testing required. Fuel oil piping shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 31.

M2203.2.4.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

M2203.3 Fill piping. Fill piping shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. Fill openings shall be equipped with a tight metal cover.

M2203.4 Vent piping. Vent piping shall be not smaller than $1^1/_4$-inch (32 mm) pipe. Vent piping shall be laid to drain toward the tank without sags or traps in which the liquid can collect. Vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks. The lower end of a vent pipe shall enter the tank through the top and shall extend into the tank not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

M2203.5 Vent termination. Liquid fuel vent pipes shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) measured vertically or horizontally from any building opening. Outer ends of vent pipes shall terminate in a weatherproof vent cap or fitting or be provided with a weatherproof hood. Vent caps shall have a minimum free open area equal to the cross-sectional area of the vent pipe and shall not employ screens finer than No. 4 mesh. Vent pipes shall terminate sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed with snow or ice. Vent pipes from tanks containing heaters shall be extended to a location where oil vapors discharging from the vent will be readily diffused. If the static head with a vent pipe filled with oil exceeds 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa), the tank shall be designed for the maximum static head that will be imposed.

M2203.6 Cross connection of tanks. Cross connection of two supply tanks, not exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) aggregate capacity, with gravity flow from one tank to another, shall be acceptable providing that the two tanks are on the same horizontal plane.

M2203.7 Corrosion protection. Underground tanks and buried piping shall be protected by corrosion-resistant coatings or special alloys or fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

SECTION M2204 OIL PUMPS AND VALVES

M2204.1 Pumps. Oil pumps shall be positive displacement types that automatically shut off the oil supply when stopped. Automatic pumps shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 343 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing.*

M2204.2 Building shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed on the fuel-oil supply line at the entrance to the building. Inside or above-ground tanks are permitted to have valves installed at the tank. The valve shall be capable of stopping the flow of fuel oil to the building or to the appliance served where the valve is installed at a tank inside the building.

M2204.3 Appliance shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed at the connection to each *appliance* where more than one fuel-oil-burning *appliance* is installed.

M2204.4 Pump relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the pump discharge line where a valve is located downstream of the pump and the pump is capable of exceeding the pressure limitations of the fuel oil system.

M2204.5 Fuel-oil heater relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the discharge line of fuel-oil-heating appliances.

M2204.6 Relief valve operation. The relief valve shall discharge fuel oil when the pressure exceeds the limitations of the system. The discharge line shall connect to the fuel oil tank.

SECTION M2205 OIL GAUGING

M2205.1 Level indication. Tanks in which a constant oil level is not maintained by an automatic pump shall be equipped with a method of determining the oil level.

M2205.2 Test wells. Test wells shall not be installed inside buildings. For outside service, test wells shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

M2205.3 Inside tanks. The gauging of inside tanks by means of measuring sticks shall not be permitted. An inside tank provided with fill and vent pipes shall be provided with a device to indicate either visually or audibly at the fill point when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level.

M2205.4 Gauging devices. Gauging devices such as liquid level indicators or signals shall be designed and installed so that oil vapor will not be discharged into a building from the liquid fuel supply system. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

M2205.5 Gauge glass. A tank used in connection with any oil burner shall not be equipped with a glass gauge or any gauge which, when broken, will permit the escape of oil from the tank.

CHAPTER 23

SOLAR THERMAL ENERGY SYSTEMS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION M2301 THERMAL SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS

M2301.1 General. This section provides for the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of *equipment* and systems using thermal solar energy to provide space heating or cooling, hot water heating and swimming pool heating.

M2301.2 Design and installation. The design and installation of thermal solar energy systems shall comply with Sections M2301.2.1 through M2301.2.13.

M2301.2.1 Access. Solar energy collectors, controls, dampers, fans, blowers and pumps shall be accessible for inspection, maintenance, repair and replacement.

M2301.2.2 Collectors and panels. Solar collectors and panels shall comply with Sections M2301.2.2.1 and M2301.2.2.2.

M2301.2.2.1 Roof-mounted collectors. The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof-mounted solar collectors. Roof-mounted solar collectors that serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in Chapter 9 of this code. Where mounted on or above the roof coverings, the collectors and supporting structure shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood equivalent to that required for the roof construction.

M2301.2.2.2 Collector sensors. Collector sensor installation, sensor location and the protection of exposed sensor wires from ultraviolet light shall be in accordance with SRCC 300.

M2301.2.3 Pressure and temperature relief valves and system components. System components containing fluids shall be protected with temperature and pressure relief valves or pressure relief valves. Relief devices shall be installed in sections of the system so that a section cannot be valved off or isolated from a relief device. Direct systems and the potable water portion of indirect systems shall be equipped with a relief valve in accordance with Section P2804. For indirect systems, pressure relief valves in solar loops shall comply with SRCC 300. System components shall have a working pressure rating of not less than the setting of the pressure relief device.

M2301.2.4 Vacuum relief. System components that might be subjected to pressure drops below atmospheric pressure during operation or shutdown shall be protected by a vacuum-relief valve.

M2301.2.5 Piping insulation. Piping shall be insulated in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 11. Exterior insulation shall be protected from ultraviolet degradation. The entire solar loop shall be insulated. Where split-style insulation is used, the seam shall be sealed. Fittings shall be fully insulated.

Exceptions:

1. Those portions of the piping that are used to help prevent the system from overheating shall not be required to be insulated.
2. Those portions of piping that are exposed to solar radiation, made of the same material as the solar collector absorber plate and are covered in the same manner as the solar collector absorber, or that are used to collect additional solar energy, shall not be required to be insulated.
3. Piping in thermal solar systems using unglazed solar collectors to heat a swimming pool shall not be required to be insulated.

M2301.2.6 Protection from freezing. System components shall be protected from damage resulting from freezing of heat-transfer liquids at the winter design temperature provided in Table R301.2. Freeze protection shall be provided by heating, insulation, thermal mass and heat transfer fluids with freeze points lower than the winter design temperature, heat tape or other *approved* methods, or combinations thereof.

Exception: Where the winter design temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).

M2301.2.7 Storage tank sensors. Storage tank sensors shall comply with SRCC 300.

M2301.2.8 Expansion tanks. Expansion tanks in solar energy systems shall be installed in accordance with Section M2003 in solar collector loops that contain pressurized heat transfer fluid. Where expansion tanks are used, the system shall be designed in accordance with SRCC 300 to provide an expansion tank that is sized to withstand the maximum operating pressure of the system.

Exception: Expansion tanks shall not be required in *drain-back systems*.

M2301.2.9 Roof and wall penetrations. Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed in accordance with Chapter 9 of this code to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects.

M2301.2.10 Description and warning labels. Solar thermal systems shall comply with description label and warning label requirements of Section M2301.2.11.2 and SRCC 300.

M2301.2.11 Solar loop. Solar loops shall be in accordance with Sections M2301.2.11.1 and M2301.2.11.2.

M2301.2.11.1 Solar loop isolation. Valves shall be installed to allow the solar collectors to be isolated from the remainder of the system.

M2301.2.11.2 Drain and fill valve labels and caps. Drain and fill valves shall be labeled with a description and warning that identifies the fluid in the solar loop and a warning that the fluid might be discharged at high temperature and pressure. Drain caps shall be installed at drain and fill valves.

M2301.2.12 Maximum temperature limitation. Systems shall be equipped with means to limit the maximum water temperature of the system fluid entering or exchanging heat with any pressurized vessel inside the *dwelling* to 180°F (82°C). This protection is in addition to the required temperature- and pressure-relief valves required by Section M2301.2.3.

M2301.2.13 Thermal storage unit seismic bracing. In Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2 and in townhouses in Seismic Design Category C, thermal storage units shall be anchored in accordance with Section M1307.2.

M2301.3 Labeling. *Labeling* shall comply with Sections M2301.3.1 and M2301.3.2.

M2301.3.1 Collectors and panels. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be listed and labeled in accordance with SRCC 100 or SRCC 600. Collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* to show the manufacturer's name, model number, serial number, collector weight, collector maximum allowable temperatures and pressures, and the type of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the collector or panel. The *label* shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the collector or panel.

M2301.3.2 Thermal storage units. Pressurized thermal storage units shall be *listed* and *labeled* to show the manufacturer's name, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures and pressures, and the type of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the storage unit. The *label* shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the thermal storage unit.

M2301.4 Heat transfer gasses or liquids and heat exchangers. *Essentially toxic transfer fluids*, ethylene glycol, flammable gases and flammable liquids shall not be used as heat transfer fluids. Heat transfer gasses and liquids shall be rated to withstand the system's maximum design temperature under operating conditions without degradation. Heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems shall comply with Section P2902.5.2 and SRCC 300.

Heat transfer fluids shall be in accordance with SRCC 300. The flash point of the heat transfer fluids utilized in solar thermal systems shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum nonoperating or no-flow temperature attained by the fluid in the collector.

M2301.5 Backflow protection. Connections from the potable water supply to solar systems shall comply with Section P2902.5.5.

M2301.6 Filtering. Air provided to occupied spaces that passes through thermal mass storage systems by mechanical means shall be filtered for particulates at the outlet of the thermal mass storage system.

M2301.7 Solar thermal systems for heating potable water. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Sections M2301.7.1, M2301.7.2 and P2902.5.5.

M2301.7.1 Indirect systems. Heat exchangers that are components of indirect solar thermal heating systems shall comply with Section P2902.5.2.

M2301.7.2 Direct systems. Where potable water is directly heated by a solar thermal system, the pipe, fittings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the solar heating system shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 29.

Part VI—Fuel Gas

CHAPTER 24

FUEL GAS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2018 edition of the *North Carolina Fuel Gas Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings*.

SECTION G2401 GENERAL

G2401.1 Application. This chapter covers those fuel gas *piping systems*, fuel-gas *appliances* and related accessories, *venting systems* and *combustion air* configurations most commonly encountered in the construction of one- and two-family dwellings and structures regulated by this *code*.

Coverage of *piping systems* shall extend from the *point of delivery* to the outlet of the *appliance* shutoff *valves* (see definition of *"Point of delivery"*). *Piping systems* requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance. Requirements for gas *appliances* and related accessories shall include installation, combustion and ventilation air and venting and connections to *piping systems*.

The omission from this chapter of any material or method of installation provided for in the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of installation. Fuel-gas *piping systems*, fuel-gas *appliances* and related accessories, *venting systems* and *combustion air* configurations not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be regulated by Chapter 7 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

This chapter shall not apply to the following:

1. Liquified natural gas (LNG) installations.
2. Temporary LP-*gas piping* for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent *piping system*.
3. Except as provided in Section G2412.1.1, gas *piping*, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-gas.
4. Portable LP-gas *appliances* and *equipment* of all types that is not connected to a fixed fuel *piping system*.
5. Portable fuel cell *appliances* that are neither connected to a fixed *piping system* nor interconnected to a power grid.
6. Installation of hydrogen gas, LP-gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.

G2401.2 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

SECTION G2402 GENERAL

G2402.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

G2402.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

G2402.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code* or *International Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those *codes*.

SECTION G2403 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

DELETED

See Chapter 2.

SECTION G2404 GENERAL

G2404.1 Scope. This section shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and *appliances* that comprise parts of the installations regulated by this *code* in accordance with Section G2401.

G2404.2 Other fuels. The requirements for *combustion* and *dilution air* for gas-fired *appliances* shall be governed by Section G2407. The requirements for *combustion* and *dilution air* for *appliances* operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by Chapter 17.

G2404.3 Listed and labeled. *Appliances* regulated by this *code* shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are used unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*. The approval of unlisted *appliances* in accordance with the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* shall be based upon *approved* engineering evaluation.

G2404.4 Vibration isolation. Where means for isolation of vibration of an *appliance* is installed, an *approved* means for support and restraint of that *appliance* shall be provided.

G2404.5 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

G2404.6 Wind resistance. *Appliances* and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with this *code*.

G2404.7 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, the appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section R322 for utilities and attendant equipment.

Exception: The appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section R322 for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to such elevation.

G2404.8 Seismic resistance. When earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with this code, the supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with this code.

G2404.9 Rodentproofing. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entry of rodents.

G2404.9.1 Foundation and exterior wall sealing. Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such opening with cement mortar, concrete masonry, silicone caulking or noncorrosive metal.

G2404.10 Evaporators and cooling coils. Condensate drainage systems shall be provided for *equipment* and appliances containing evaporators and cooling coils in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

G2404.11 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid combustion byproducts of condensing appliances shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Condensate *piping* shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall be not smaller than the drain connection on the *appliance*. Such *piping* shall maintain a minimum slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

G2404.12 Auxiliary drain pan. Category IV condensing *appliances* shall be provided with an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the *condensate* drainage system. Such pan shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section M1411.

Exception: An auxiliary drain pan shall not be required for *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the *condensate* drainage system.

G2404.13 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the *appliance* or *equipment* served such that when the pump fails, the *appliance* or *equipment* will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2405
STRUCTURAL SAFETY

G2405.1 Structural safety. The building shall not be weakened by the installation of any gas *piping*. In the process of installing or repairing any gas *piping*, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises which is required to be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of this code.

G2405.1.1 Cutting, notching and boring in wood members. The cutting, notching and boring of wood members shall comply with Sections G2405.1.1.1 through G2405.1.1.3.

G2405.1.1.1 Joist notching and boring. Notching at the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top and bottom of the joist and their diameters shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member. Notches in the top or bottom of the joist shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span.

G2405.1.1.2 Stud cutting and notching. In exterior walls and bearing partitions, any wood stud is permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of its width. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonload-bearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

G2405.1.1.3 Bored holes. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 40 percent of the stud depth. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in nonbearing partitions. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in any wall where each stud is doubled, provided that not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. The edge of the bored hole shall be not closer than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

G2405.2 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. *Alterations* resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC equipment and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

G2405.3 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such *alterations* are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

G2405.4 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

G2405.5 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing. Flanges and lips of load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the registered design professional. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

G2405.6 Cutting, notching and boring holes in nonstructural cold-formed steel wall framing. Flanges and lips of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and the holes shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.

SECTION G2406
APPLIANCE LOCATION

G2406.1 General. *Appliances* shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing. See Section M1305 for appliance access requirements.

G2406.2 Prohibited locations. *Appliances* shall not be located in sleeping rooms, bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets used for storage or surgical rooms, or in a space that opens only into such rooms or spaces, except where the installation complies with one of the following:

1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
2. *Vented room heaters*, wall *furnaces*, vented decorative *appliances*, vented gas *fireplaces*, vented gas *fireplace* heaters and decorative *appliances* for installation in vented solid fuel-burning *fireplaces* are installed in rooms that meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.
3. A single wall-mounted *unvented room heater* is installed in a bathroom and such *unvented room heater* is equipped as specified in Section G2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 6,000 *Btu*/h (1.76 kW). The bathroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.
4. A single wall-mounted *unvented room heater* is installed in a bedroom and such *unvented room heater* is equipped as specified in Section G2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 10,000 *Btu*/h (2.93 kW). The bedroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.
5. The *appliance* is installed in a room or space that opens only into a bedroom or bathroom, and such room or space is used for no other purpose and is provided with a solid weather-stripped door equipped with an *approved* self-closing device. All *combustion air* shall be taken directly from the outdoors in accordance with Section G2407.6.

G2406.3 Outdoor locations. *Appliances* installed in outdoor locations shall be either listed for outdoor installation or provided with protection from outdoor environmental factors that influence the operability, durability and safety of the *appliance*.

G2406.4 Pit locations. *Appliances* installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry, such concrete or masonry shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse.

G2406.5 Drainage. Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump.

G2406.6 Protection from vehicle impact damage. *Appliances* shall not be installed in a location subject to vehicle impact damage except where protected by an *approved* means. Protection is not required for *appliances* located out of the vehicle's normal travel path.

G2406.7 Indoor locations. Furnaces and boilers installed in closets and alcoves shall be *listed* for such installation.

SECTION G2407
COMBUSTION, VENTILATION AND DILUTION AIR

G2407.1 General. Air for *combustion*, ventilation and dilution of *flue gases* for *appliances* installed in buildings shall be provided by application of one of the methods prescribed in Sections G2407.5 through G2407.9. Where the requirements of Section G2407.5 are not met, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with one of the methods prescribed in Sections G2407.6 through G2407.9. *Direct-vent appliances*, gas *appliances* of other than *natural draft* design, vented gas *appliances* not designated as Category I and *appliances* equipped with power burners, shall be provided with *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

Exception: *Type 1 clothes dryers* that are provided with *makeup air* in accordance with Section G2439.5.

G2407.2 Appliance location. *Appliances* shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air*.

G2407.3 Draft hood/regulator location. Where used, a *draft hood* or a *barometric draft regulator* shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* served to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the *combustion air* supply.

G2407.4 Makeup air provisions. Where exhaust fans, *clothes dryers* and kitchen ventilation systems interfere with the operation of *appliances, makeup air* shall be provided.

G2407.5 Indoor combustion air. The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with Section G2407.5.1 or G2407.5.2, except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 air changes per hour (ACH), Section G2407.5.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all *appliances* located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the *appliances* are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through *combustion air* openings sized and located in accordance with Section G2407.5.3, are considered to be part of the required volume.

G2407.5.1 Standard method. The minimum required volume shall be 50 cubic feet per 1,000 *Btu*/h (4.8 m^3/kW) of the appliance input rating.

G2407.5.2 Known air-infiltration-rate method. Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows:

For *appliances* other than fan-assisted, calculate volume using Equation 24-1.

$$Required\ Volume_{other} \geq \frac{21\text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/h}}\right)$$

(Equation 24-1)

For fan-assisted *appliances*, calculate volume using Equation 24-2.

$$Required\ Volume_{fan} \geq \frac{15\text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

(Equation 24-2)

where:

I_{other} = All *appliances* other than fan assisted (input in *Btu*/h).

I_{fan} = Fan-assisted *appliance* (input in *Btu*/h).

ACH = Air change per hour (percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal).

For purposes of this calculation, an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 *ACH* shall not be used in Equations 24-1 and 24-2.

G2407.5.3 Indoor opening size and location. Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with Sections G2407.5.3.1 and G2407.5.3.2 (see Figure G2407.5.3).

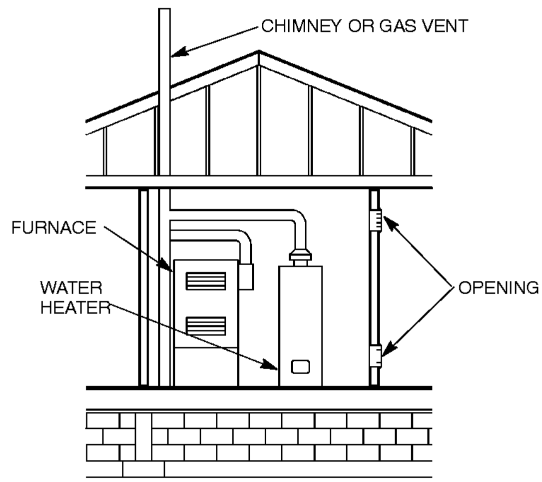


FIGURE G2407.5.3
ALL AIR FROM INSIDE THE BUILDING
(see Section G2407.5.3)

G2407.5.3.1 Combining spaces on the same story. Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 1,000 *Btu*/h (2,200 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all *appliances* in the space, but not less than 100 square inches (0.06 m^2). One opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

G2407.5.3.2 Combining spaces in different stories. The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered as communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or more openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 square inches per 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances*.

G2407.6 Outdoor combustion air. Outdoor *combustion* air shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with Section G2407.6.1 or G2407.6.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

G2407.6.1 Two-permanent-openings method. Two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure, shall be provided. The openings shall communicate directly or by ducts with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors.

Where directly communicating with the outdoors, or where communicating with the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 4,000 *Btu*/h (550 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* in the enclosure [see Figures G2407.6.1(1) and G2407.6.1(2)].

Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of not less than 1 square inch per 2,000 *Btu*/h (1,100 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* in the enclosure [see Figure G2407.6.1(3)].

G2407.6.2 One-permanent-opening method. One permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The *appliance* shall have *clearances* of at least 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 inches (152 mm) from the front of the *appliance*. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors, or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors (see Figure G2407.6.2) and shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 3,000 *Btu*/h (734 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all *appliances* located in the enclosure and not less than the sum of the areas of all *vent connectors* in the space.

G2407.7 Combination indoor and outdoor combustion air. The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor *combustion air* shall be in accordance with Sections G2407.7.1 through G2407.7.3.

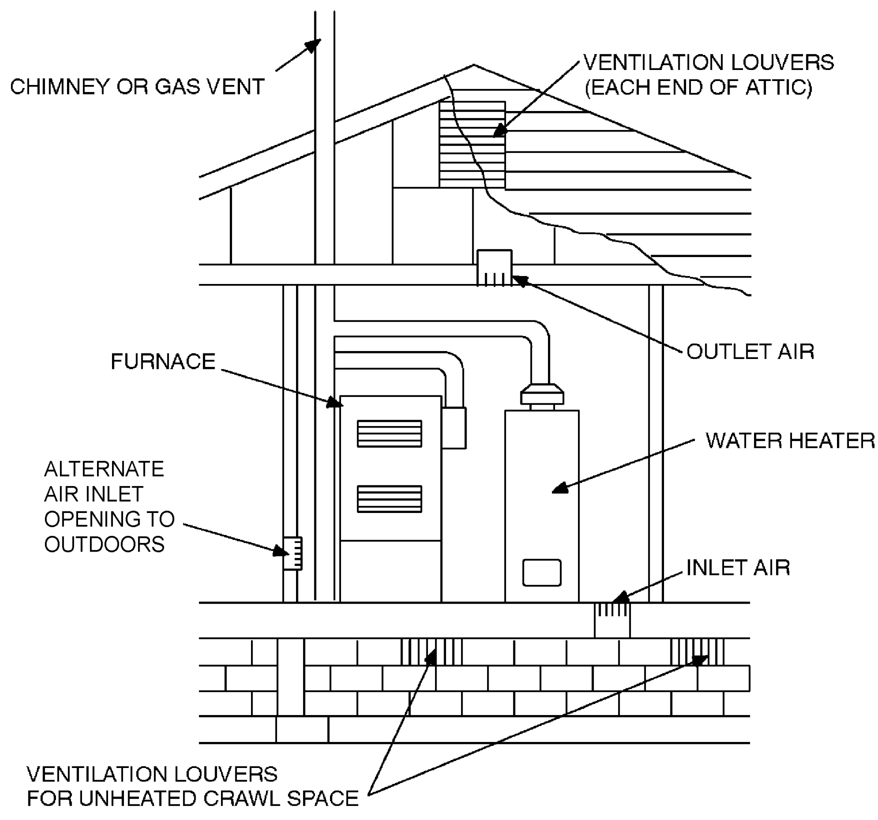
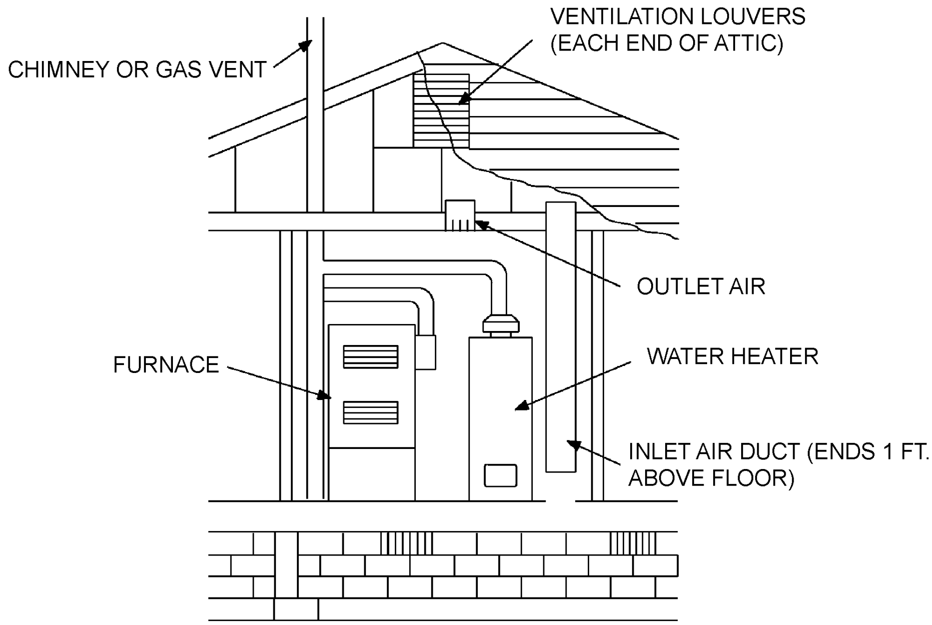


FIGURE G2407.6.1(1)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS—INLET AIR FROM VENTILATED CRAWL SPACE AND OUTLET AIR TO VENTILATED ATTIC
(see Section G2407.6.1)



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE G2407.6.1(2)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS THROUGH VENTILATED ATTIC (see Section G2407.6.1)

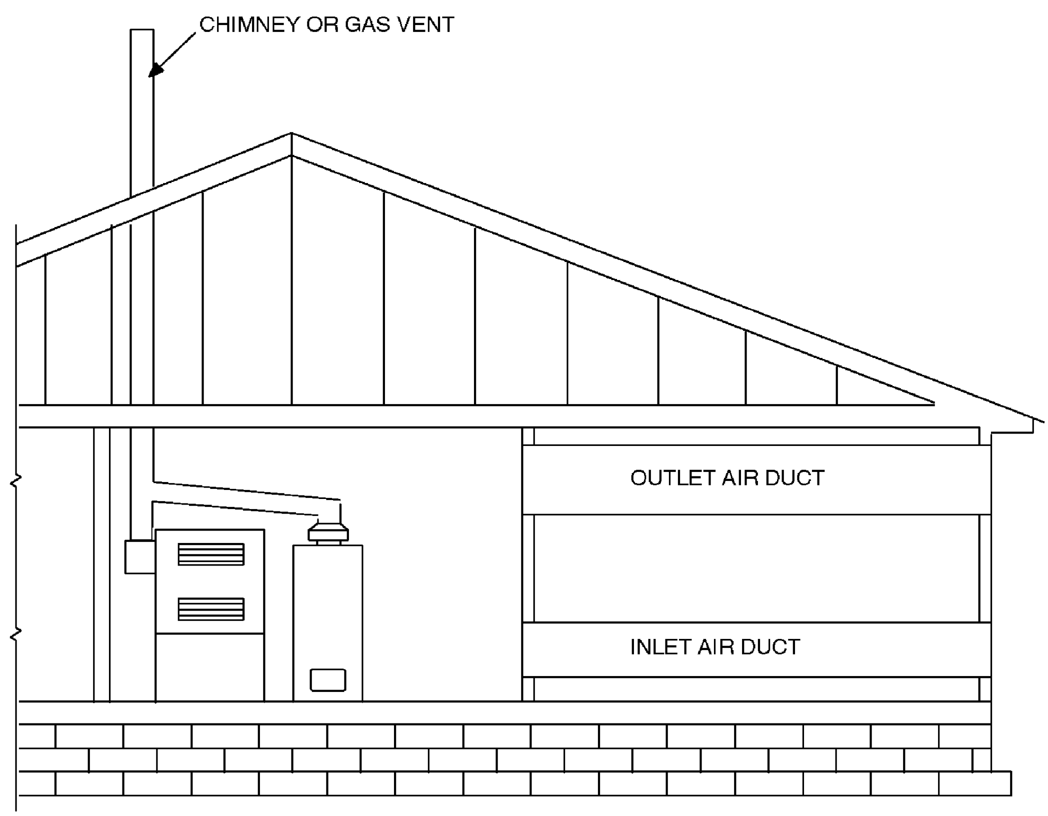


FIGURE G2407.6.1(3)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS (see Section G2407.6.1)

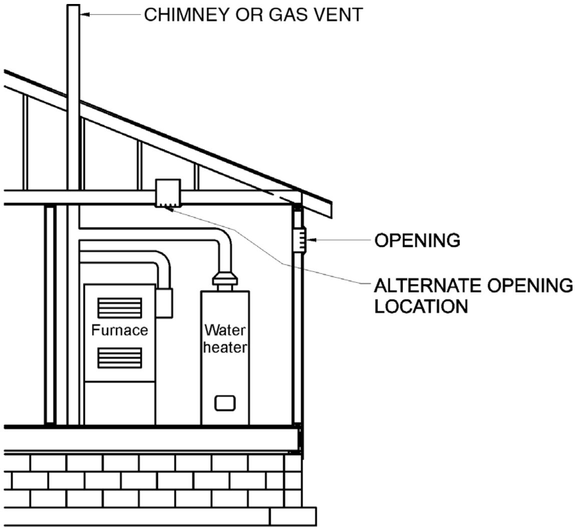


FIGURE G2407.6.2
SINGLE COMBUSTION AIR OPENING,
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS
(see Section G2407.6.2)

G2407.7.1 Indoor openings. Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with Section G2407.5.3.

G2407.7.2 Outdoor opening location. Outdoor opening(s) shall be located in accordance with Section G2407.6.

G2407.7.3 Outdoor opening(s) size. The outdoor opening(s) size shall be calculated in accordance with the following:

1. The ratio of interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.
2. The outdoor size reduction factor shall be one minus the ratio of interior spaces.
3. The minimum size of outdoor opening(s) shall be the full size of outdoor opening(s) calculated in accordance with Section G2407.6, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

G2407.8 Engineered installations. Engineered *combustion air* installations shall provide an adequate supply of *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* and shall be *approved*.

G2407.9 Mechanical combustion air supply. Where all *combustion air* is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the *combustion air* shall be supplied from the outdoors at a rate not less than 0.35 cubic feet per minute per 1,000 *Btu*/h (0.034 m^3/min per kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* located within the space.

G2407.9.1 Makeup air. Where exhaust fans are installed, *makeup air* shall be provided to replace the exhausted air.

G2407.9.2 Appliance interlock. Each of the *appliances* served shall be interlocked with the mechanical air supply system to prevent *main burner* operation when the mechanical air supply system is not in operation.

G2407.9.3 Combined combustion air and ventilation air system. Where *combustion air* is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified *combustion air* rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

G2407.10 Louvers and grilles. The required size of openings for *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver, grille or screen is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. Where the design and free area of louvers and grilles are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Screens shall have a mesh size not smaller than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Nonmotorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position. Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the *appliance* so that they are proven to be in the full open position prior to *main burner* ignition and during *main burner* operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the *main burner* from igniting if the louvers fail to open during *burner* start-up and to shut down the *main burner* if the louvers close during operation.

G2407.11 Combustion air ducts. *Combustion air* ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of galvanized steel complying with Chapter 16 or of a material having equivalent corrosion resistance, strength and rigidity.

   Exception: Within dwellings units, unobstructed stud and joist spaces shall not be prohibited from conveying *combustion air*, provided that not more than one required fireblock is removed.

2. Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space allowing free movement of *combustion air* to the *appliances*.
3. Ducts shall serve a single enclosure.
4. Ducts shall not serve both upper and lower *combustion air* openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower *combustion air* openings shall be maintained to the source of *combustion air*.
5. Ducts shall not be screened where terminating in an attic space.
6. Horizontal upper *combustion air* ducts shall not slope downward toward the source of *combustion air*.
7. The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built *chimney* shall not be used to supply *combustion air*.

   Exception: Direct-vent gas-fired *appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning *fire-*

place where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

8. *Combustion air* intake openings located on the exterior of a building shall have the lowest side of such openings located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) vertically from the adjoining finished ground level.

G2407.12 Protection from fumes and gases. Where corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases, other than products of *combustion*, are present, means for the disposal of such fumes or gases shall be provided. Such fumes or gases include carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine and halogenated hydrocarbons.

In barbershops, beauty shops and other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products, such as aerosol sprays, are routinely used, nondirect vent-type *appliances* shall be located in a mechanical room separated or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for *combustion air* and *dilution air* from the outdoors. *Direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2408 INSTALLATION

G2408.1 General. *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection. Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

Unlisted *appliances approved* in accordance with Section G2404.3 shall be limited to uses recommended by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the provisions of this code and the requirements determined by the *code official*.

G2408.2 Elevation of ignition source. *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in *hazardous locations* and public garages, private garages, repair garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the *living space* of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the *ignition source* is not required for *appliances* that are *listed* as flammable-vapor-ignition resistant.

G2408.2.1 Installation in residential garages. In residential garages where *appliances* are installed in a separate, enclosed space having access only from outside of the garage, such *appliances* shall be permitted to be installed at floor level, provided that the required *combustion air* is taken from the exterior of the garage.

G2408.3 Private garages. *Appliances* located in private garages shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Sections G2408.2 and G2406.6.

G2408.4 Under-floor and exterior grade installations.

G2408.4.1 Exterior grade installations. Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or on approved material that is a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

G2408.4.2 Under-floor installation. Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 m) above the adjoining grade.

G2408.4.3 Crawl space supports. A support shall be provided at each corner of the unit not less than 8 inches by 8 inches (204 mm by 204 mm). The unit shall be supported a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above grade. When constructed of brick, the bricks shall be mortared together. All units stacked shall be mortared together. Fabricated units, formed concrete, or other approved materials shall be permitted.

G2408.4.4 Pit Locations. Appliances installed in pits shall be installed in accordance with Section G2406.4.

G2408.4.5 Drainage. Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. For pit requirements, see Section G2406.4.

G2408.5 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required clearances to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such *clearances* shall be reduced only in accordance with Section G2409. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing. Devices, such as door stops or limits and closers, shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

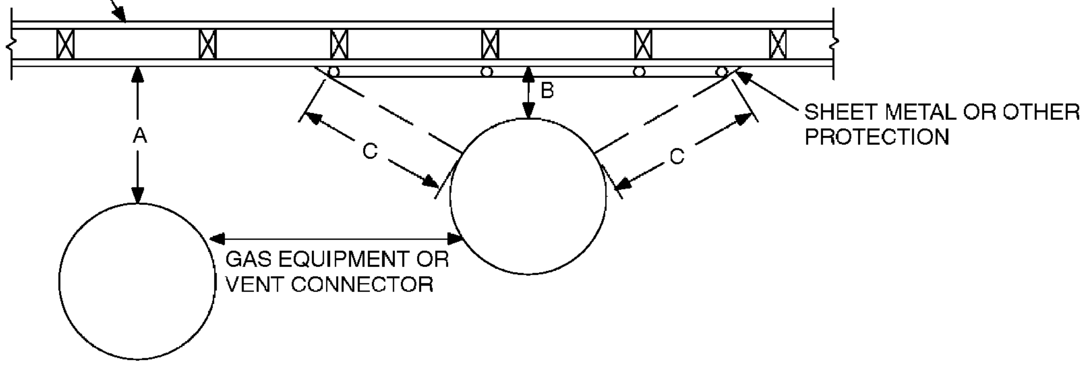
G2408.6 Avoid strain on gas piping. *Appliances* shall be supported and connected to the *piping* so as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

SECTION G2409 CLEARANCE REDUCTION

G2409.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required clearances to *combustible materials*, including gypsum board, and *combustible assemblies* for chimneys, vents, appliances, devices and equipment. Clearance requirements for air-conditioning equipment and central heating boilers and furnaces shall comply with Sections G2409.3 and G2409.4.

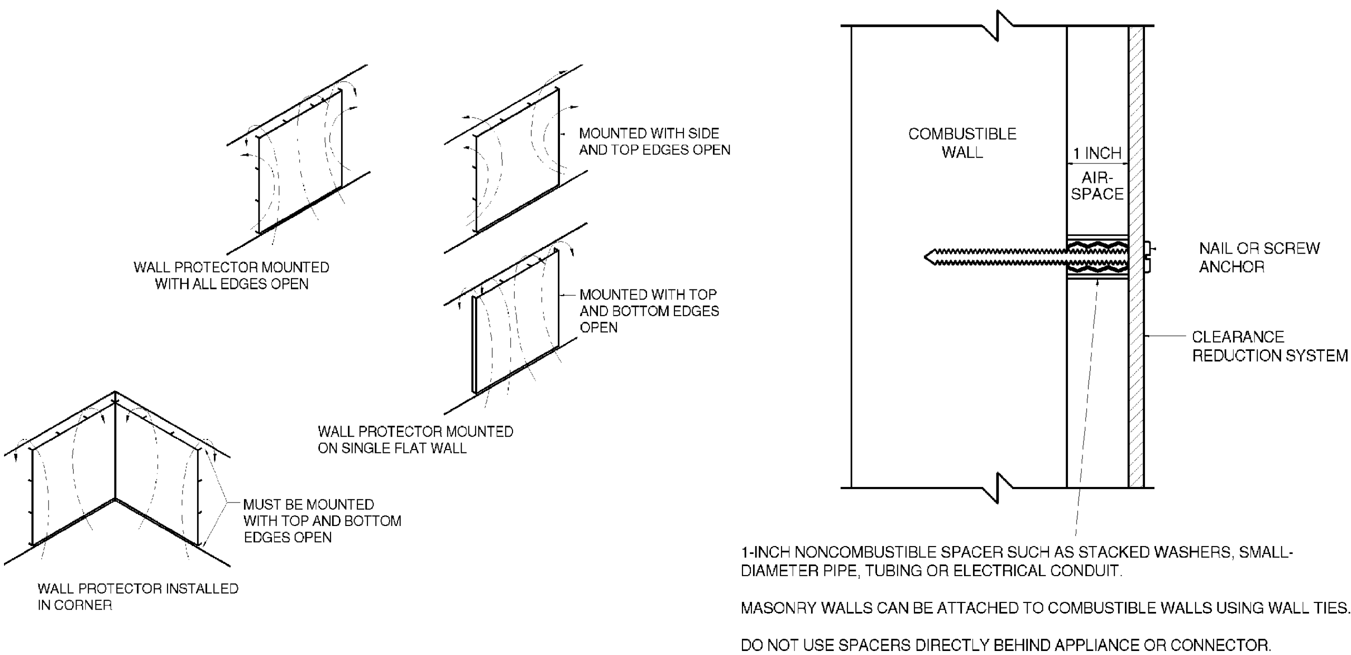
G2409.2 Reduction table. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table G2409.2 or shall utilize a reduced *clearance* protective assembly *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1618. Where required *clearances* are not listed in Table G2409.2, the reduced clearances shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced *clearances* shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled appliances* and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section, except that such *clearances* shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment listing* [see Figures G2409.2(1) through 2409.2(3)].

G2409.3 Clearances for indoor air-conditioning appliances. *Clearance* requirements for indoor air-conditioning *appliances* shall comply with Sections G2409.3.1 through G2409.3.4.



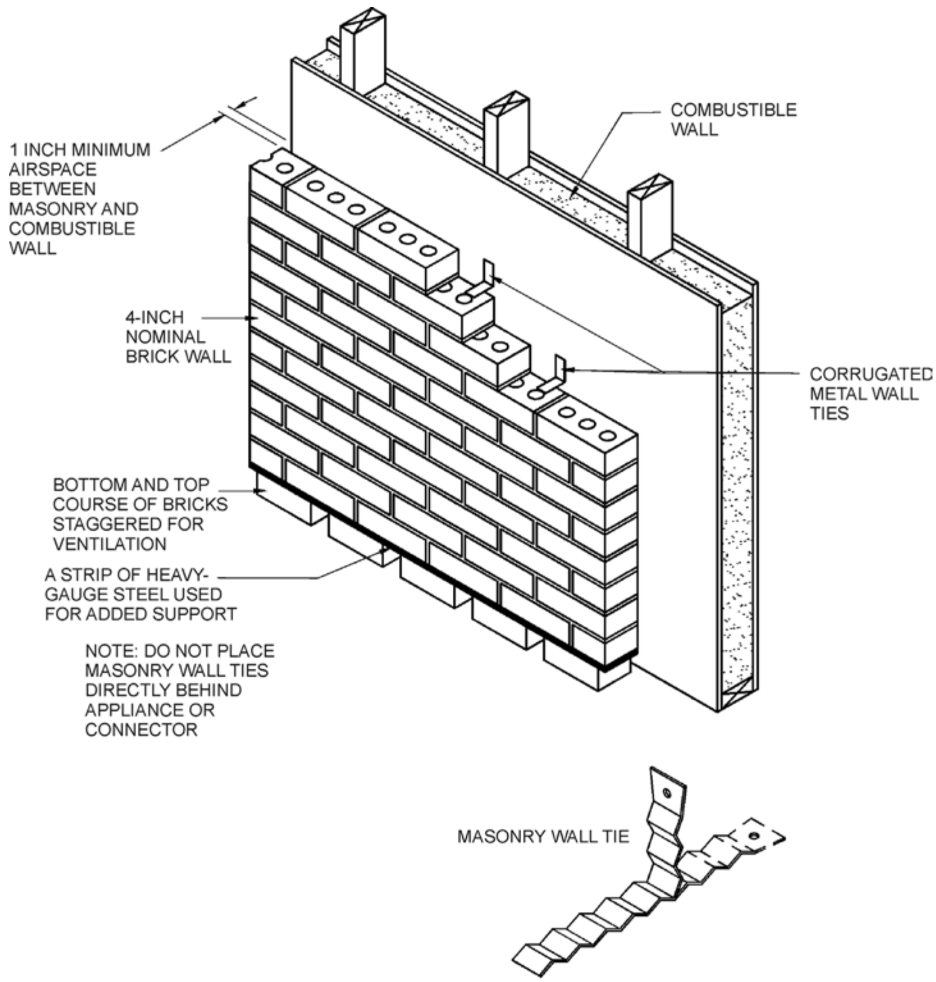
NOTES:
"A" equals the *clearance* without protection.
"B" equals the reduced *clearance* permitted in accordance with Table G2409.2. The protection applied to the construction using *combustible material* shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

FIGURE G2409.2(1)
EXTENT OF PROTECTION NECESSARY TO REDUCE CLEARANCES FROM GAS EQUIPMENT OR VENT CONNECTORS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE G2409.2(2)
WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE G2409.2(3)
MASONRY CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM

G2409.3.1 Appliances clearances. Air-conditioning *appliances* shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2409.3.2 Clearance reduction. Air-conditioning appliances shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to *combustible material,* provided that the *combustible material* or *appliance* is protected as described in Table G2409.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's instructions.

G2409.3.3 Plenum clearances. Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or *noncombustible material* attached to *combustible material,* the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

G2409.3.4 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

G2409.4 Central heating boilers and furnaces. *Clearance* requirements for central-heating boilers and *furnaces* shall comply with Sections G2409.4.1 through G2409.4.5. The *clearance* to these *appliances* shall not interfere with *combustion air*; *draft hood clearance* and relief; and accessibility for servicing.

G2409.4.1 Appliances clearances. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2409.4.2 Clearance reduction. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to *combustible material* provided that the *combustible material* or *appliance* is protected as described in Table G2409.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's instructions.

G2409.4.3 Plenum clearances. Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or *noncombustible* material attached to *combustible material,* the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

G2409.4.4 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

G2409.4.5 Clearance for servicing appliances. Front *clearance* shall be sufficient for servicing the *burner* and the *furnace* or boiler.

TABLE G2409.2[a through k]
REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION

TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION [see Figures G2409.2(1), G2409.2(2), and G2409.2(3)]	WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE IS: (inches)									
	36		18		12		9		6	
	Allowable clearances with specified protection (inches)									
	Use Column 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Column 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe.									
	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2
1. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall without ventilated airspace	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
2. $^1/_2$-inch insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
3. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
4. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall with ventilated airspace	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
5. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
6. $^1/_2$-inch-thick insulation board with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
7. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace over 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
8. 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, ºC = [(ºF - 32)/1.8], 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per ºF = 0.144 W/m^2 · K.

a. Reduction of *clearances* from *combustible materials* shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood *clearance* and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
b. All *clearances* shall be measured from the outer surface of the *combustible material* to the nearest point on the surface of the *appliance*, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the *combustible material*.
c. Spacers and ties shall be of *noncombustible material*. A spacer or tie shall not be used directly opposite an *appliance* or *connector*.
d. For all clearance reduction systems using a ventilated airspace, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described [see Figures G2409.2(2) and G2409.2(3)].
e. There shall be at least 1 inch between *clearance* reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated airspace.
f. Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have an air gap of not less than 1 inch. To provide air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.
g. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a density of not less than 8 pounds per cubic foot and a melting point of not less than 1500ºF.
h. Insulation material used as part of a *clearance* reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per ºF or less.
i. There shall be not less than 1 inch between the *appliance* and the protector. The *clearance* between the *appliance* and the combustible surface shall not be reduced below that allowed in this table.
j. All *clearances* and thicknesses are minimum; larger *clearances* and thicknesses are acceptable.
k. *Listed* single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2410
ELECTRICAL

G2410.1 Grounding. *Gas piping* shall not be used as a grounding electrode.

G2410.2 Connections. Electrical connections between *appliances* and the building wiring, including the grounding of the *appliances*, shall conform to the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

SECTION G2411
ELECTRICAL BONDING

G2411.1 Pipe and tubing other than CSST. Each above-ground portion of a *gas piping system* other than corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. *Gas piping* other than CSST shall be considered to be bonded where it is connected to *appliances* that are connected to the *equipment* grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that *appliance*.

G2411.1.1 CSST. Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) gas *piping* systems and piping systems containing one or more segments of CSST shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system.

Exception: CSST with an arc-resistant jacket tested in accordance with ANSI LC 1, and listed by an *approved* agency for installation without the direct bonding, as prescribed in this section, shall be installed in accordance with Section G2411.1 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2411.1.1.1 Point of connection. The boding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe, pipe fitting or CSST fitting.

G2411.1.1.2 Size and material of jumper. The bonding jumper shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper wire of equivalent.

G2411.1.1.3 Bonding jumper length. The length of the bonding jumper between the connection to a gas piping system and the connection to a grounding electrode system shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). Any additional grounding electrodes used shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, the lightning protection grounding electrode system.

G2411.1.1.4 Bonding connections. Bonding connections shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

G2411.1.1.5 Connection devices. Devices used for making the bonding connections shall be *listed* for the application in accordance with UL 467.

SECTION G2412
GENERAL

G2412.1 Scope. This section shall govern the design, installation, modification and maintenance of *piping systems*. The applicability of this *code* to *piping systems* extends from the *point of delivery* to the connections with the *appliances* and includes the design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance of such *piping systems*.

G2412.1.1 Utility piping systems located within buildings. Utility service *piping* located within buildings shall be installed in accordance with the structural safety and fire protection provisions of this code.

G2412.2 Liquefied petroleum gas storage. The enforcement of the location of undiluted liquefied petroleum gas containers shall be the responsibility of the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services in accordance with Article 5 of Chapter 119 of the *North Carolina General Statutes*.

G2412.3 Modifications to existing systems. In modifying or adding to existing *piping systems*, sizes shall be maintained in accordance with this chapter.

G2412.4 Additional appliances. Where an additional *appliance* is to be served, the existing *piping* shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity for all *appliances* served. If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required or separate *piping* of adequate capacity shall be provided.

G2412.5 Identification. Exposed *piping* shall be identified by a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters. The marking shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm). All piping and tubing systems, greater than 0.5-pounds per square inch (3.45 kPa) service pressure, shall be identified by a yellow label with black letters indicating the piping system pressure. The system shall be marked at the beginning, all ends and at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm) along its exposed length.

Exceptions:

1. Gas lines extending from the undiluted liquefied petroleum gas storage tanks to the building are not required to be labeled.
2. Black steel piping, 0.5-pounds per square inch (3.45 kPa) or less, located at dwelling units shall not be required to be labeled.

G2412.6 Interconnections. Where two or more *meters* are installed on the same premises but supply separate consumers, the *piping systems* shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the *meters*.

G2412.7 Piping meter identification. *Piping* from multiple *meter* installations shall be marked with a permanent identification by the installer so that the *piping system* supplied by each *meter* is readily identifiable.

G2412.8 Minimum sizes. All *pipe* utilized for the installation, extension and *alteration* of any *piping system* shall be sized to supply the full number of outlets for the intended purpose and shall be sized in accordance with Section G2413.

G2412.9 Meter location. When required, a meter shall be provided for the building or residence to be served. The location shall be such that the meter can be read, serviced or changed. The location, space requirements, dimensions and proper clearances shall be acceptable to the local gas company.

G2412.10 Third-party testing and certification. Deleted.

SECTION G2413
PIPE SIZING

G2413.1 General considerations. *Piping systems* shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum *demand* and supply gas to each *appliance* inlet at not less than the minimum supply pressure required by the *appliance*.

G2413.2 Maximum gas demand. The volume of gas to be provided, in cubic feet per hour, (MBtu for undiluted propane) shall be determined directly from the manufacturer's input ratings of the appliances served. Where an input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, *appliance* manufacturer or a qualified agency shall be contacted. The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for pipe sizing, assuming that all appliances could be operating at full capacity simultaneously. Where a diversity of load can be established, pipe sizing shall be permitted to be based on such loads.

G2413.3 Sizing. *Gas piping* shall be sized in accordance with one of the following:

1. *Pipe* sizing tables or sizing equations in accordance with Section G2413.4.
2. The sizing tables included in a *listed piping* system's manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

G2413.4 Sizing tables and equations. Where Tables G2413.4(1) through G2413.4(23) are used to size *piping* or *tubing*, the *pipe* length shall be determined in accordance with Section G2413.4.1, G2413.4.2 or G2413.4.3.

Where Equations 24-3 and 24-4 are used to size *piping* or *tubing*, the *pipe* or *tubing* shall have smooth inside walls and the pipe length shall be determined in accordance with Section G2413.4.1, G2413.4.2 or G2413.4.3.

1. Low-pressure gas equation [Less than $1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch (psi) (10.3 kPa)]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \times L}\right)^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-3)}$$

2. High-pressure gas equation [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \times Y}{C_r \times L}\right]^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-4)}$$

where:

D = Inside diameter of *pipe*, inches (mm).

Q = Input rate *appliance(s)*, cubic feet per hour at 60ºF (16ºC) and 30-inch mercury column.

P_1 = Upstream pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7).

P_2 = Downstream pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7).

L = Equivalent length of *pipe*, feet.

ΔH = *Pressure drop*, inch water column (27.7 inch water column = 1 psi).

TABLE G2413.4
C_r AND Y VALUES FOR NATURAL GAS AND UNDILUTED PROPANE AT STANDARD CONDITIONS

GAS	EQUATION FACTORS	
	C_r	Y
Natural gas	0.6094	0.9992
Undiluted propane	1.2462	0.9910

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 foot = 305 mm,
1-inch water column = 0.249 kPa,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W.

G2413.4.1 Longest length method. The *pipe* size of each section of *gas piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* and the load of the section.

G2413.4.2 Branch length method. *Pipe* shall be sized as follows:

1. *Pipe* size of each section of the longest *pipe* run from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* shall be determined using the longest run of *piping* and the load of the section.
2. The *pipe* size of each section of branch *piping* not previously sized shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* in each branch and the load of the section.

G2413.4.3 Hybrid pressure. The *pipe* size for each section of higher pressure *gas piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote line *pressure regulator*. The *pipe* size from the line *pressure regulator* to each *outlet* shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the *regulator* to the most remote outlet served by the *regulator*.

G2413.5 Allowable pressure drop. The design pressure loss in any *piping system* under maximum probable flow conditions, from the *point of delivery* to the inlet connection of the *appliance*, shall be such that the supply pressure at the *appliance* is greater than or equal to the minimum pressure required by the *appliance*.

G2413.6 Maximum design operating pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for *piping systems* located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (34 kPa gauge) except where one or more of the following conditions are met:

1. The *piping system* is welded.
2. The *piping* is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.
3. The *piping* is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

G2413.6.1 Liquefied petroleum gas systems. LP-gas systems designed to operate below -5ºF (-21ºC) or with butane or a propane-butane mix shall be designed to either accommodate liquid LP-gas or prevent LP-gas vapor from condensing into a liquid.

TABLE G2413.4(1) [402.4(2)]
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PIPE SIZE (inches)													
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**													
10	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100	41,800	67,600	139,000	252,000	399,000
20	118	247	466	957	1,430	2,760	4,400	7,780	15,900	28,700	46,500	95,500	173,000	275,000
30	95	199	374	768	1,150	2,220	3,530	6,250	12,700	23,000	37,300	76,700	139,000	220,000
40	81	170	320	657	985	1,900	3,020	5,350	10,900	19,700	31,900	65,600	119,000	189,000
50	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
60	65	137	257	528	791	1,520	2,430	4,290	8,760	15,800	25,600	52,700	95,700	152,000
70	60	126	237	486	728	1,400	2,230	3,950	8,050	14,600	23,600	48,500	88,100	139,000
80	56	117	220	452	677	1,300	2,080	3,670	7,490	13,600	22,000	45,100	81,900	130,000
90	52	110	207	424	635	1,220	1,950	3,450	7,030	12,700	20,600	42,300	76,900	122,000
100	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
125	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890	10,600	17,200	35,400	64,300	102,000
150	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
175	37	77	144	296	443	854	1,360	2,410	4,910	8,880	14,400	29,500	53,600	84,900
200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560	8,260	13,400	27,500	49,900	79,000
250	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
300	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670	6,630	10,700	22,100	40,100	63,400
350	25	53	99	203	305	587	935	1,650	3,370	6,100	9,880	20,300	36,900	58,400
400	23	49	92	189	283	546	870	1,540	3,140	5,680	9,190	18,900	34,300	54,300
450	22	46	86	177	266	512	816	1,440	2,940	5,330	8,620	17,700	32,200	50,900
500	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
550	20	41	78	159	239	459	732	1,290	2,640	4,780	7,740	15,900	28,900	45,700
600	19	39	74	152	228	438	699	1,240	2,520	4,560	7,380	15,200	27,500	43,600
650	18	38	71	145	218	420	669	1,180	2,410	4,360	7,070	14,500	26,400	41,800
700	17	36	68	140	209	403	643	1,140	2,320	4,190	6,790	14,000	25,300	40,100
750	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
800	16	34	63	130	195	375	598	1,060	2,160	3,900	6,320	13,000	23,600	37,300
850	16	33	61	126	189	363	579	1,020	2,090	3,780	6,110	12,600	22,800	36,100
900	15	32	59	122	183	352	561	992	2,020	3,660	5,930	12,200	22,100	35,000
950	15	31	58	118	178	342	545	963	1,960	3,550	5,760	11,800	21,500	34,000
1,000	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
1,100	14	28	53	109	164	316	503	890	1,810	3,280	5,320	10,900	19,800	31,400
1,200	13	27	51	104	156	301	480	849	1,730	3,130	5,070	10,400	18,900	30,000
1,300	12	26	49	100	150	289	460	813	1,660	3,000	4,860	9,980	18,100	28,700
1,400	12	25	47	96	144	277	442	781	1,590	2,880	4,670	9,590	17,400	27,600
1,500	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
1,600	11	23	44	89	134	258	411	727	1,480	2,680	4,340	8,920	16,200	25,600
1,700	11	22	42	86	130	250	398	703	1,430	2,590	4,200	8,630	15,700	24,800
1,800	10	22	41	84	126	242	386	682	1,390	2,520	4,070	8,370	15,200	24,100
1,900	10	21	40	81	122	235	375	662	1,350	2,440	3,960	8,130	14,800	23,400
2,000	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(2) [402.4(5)]
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	1,510	3,040	5,560	11,400	17,100	32,900	52,500	92,800	189,000
20	1,070	2,150	3,930	8,070	12,100	23,300	37,100	65,600	134,000
30	869	1,760	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
40	753	1,520	2,780	5,710	8,550	16,500	26,300	46,400	94,700
50	673	1,360	2,490	5,110	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
60	615	1,240	2,270	4,660	6,980	13,500	21,400	37,900	77,300
70	569	1,150	2,100	4,320	6,470	12,500	19,900	35,100	71,600
80	532	1,080	1,970	4,040	6,050	11,700	18,600	32,800	67,000
90	502	1,010	1,850	3,810	5,700	11,000	17,500	30,900	63,100
100	462	934	1,710	3,510	5,260	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,200
125	414	836	1,530	3,140	4,700	9,060	14,400	25,500	52,100
150	372	751	1,370	2,820	4,220	8,130	13,000	22,900	46,700
175	344	695	1,270	2,601	3,910	7,530	12,000	21,200	43,300
200	318	642	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,960	11,100	19,600	40,000
250	279	583	1,040	2,140	3,210	6,180	9,850	17,400	35,500
300	253	528	945	1,940	2,910	5,600	8,920	15,800	32,200
350	232	486	869	1,790	2,670	5,150	8,210	14,500	29,600
400	216	452	809	1,660	2,490	4,790	7,640	13,500	27,500
450	203	424	759	1,560	2,330	4,500	7,170	12,700	25,800
500	192	401	717	1,470	2,210	4,250	6,770	12,000	24,400
550	182	381	681	1,400	2,090	4,030	6,430	11,400	23,200
600	174	363	650	1,330	2,000	3,850	6,130	10,800	22,100
650	166	348	622	1,280	1,910	3,680	5,870	10,400	21,200
700	160	334	598	1,230	1,840	3,540	5,640	9,970	20,300
750	154	322	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
800	149	311	556	1,140	1,710	3,290	5,250	9,280	18,900
850	144	301	538	1,100	1,650	3,190	5,080	8,980	18,300
900	139	292	522	1,070	1,600	3,090	4,930	8,710	17,800
950	135	283	507	1,040	1,560	3,000	4,780	8,460	17,200
1,000	132	275	493	1,010	1,520	2,920	4,650	8,220	16,800
1,100	125	262	468	960	1,440	2,770	4,420	7,810	15,900
1,200	119	250	446	917	1,370	2,640	4,220	7,450	15,200
1,300	114	239	427	878	1,320	2,530	4,040	7,140	14,600
1,400	110	230	411	843	1,260	2,430	3,880	6,860	14,000
1,500	106	221	396	812	1,220	2,340	3,740	6,600	13,500
1,600	102	214	382	784	1,180	2,260	3,610	6,380	13,000
1,700	99	207	370	759	1,140	2,190	3,490	6,170	12,600
1,800	96	200	358	736	1,100	2,120	3,390	5,980	12,200
1,900	93	195	348	715	1,070	2,060	3,290	5,810	11,900
2,000	91	189	339	695	1,040	2,010	3,200	5,650	11,500

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(3) [402.4(9)] SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TUBE SIZE (inches)										
Nominal	**K & L**	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
	ACR	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	**—**	**—**
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
20		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
30		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
40		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
50		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
60		10	21	42	74	105	224	403	635	1,320
70		NA	19	39	68	96	206	371	585	1,220
80		NA	18	36	63	90	192	345	544	1,130
90		NA	17	34	59	84	180	324	510	1,060
100		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
125		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
150		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
175		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
200		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
250		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
300		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
350		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
400		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
450		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
500		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
550		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
650		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
700		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
750		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
800		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
850		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
950		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
1,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
1,100		NA	NA	NA	15	22	46	84	132	274
1,200		NA	NA	NA	15	21	44	80	126	262
1,300		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	76	120	251
1,400		NA	NA	NA	13	19	41	73	116	241
1,500		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
1,600		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	68	108	224
1,700		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	66	104	217
1,800		NA	NA	NA	12	17	36	64	101	210
1,900		NA	NA	NA	11	16	35	62	98	204
2,000		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(4) [402.4(12)]
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

		TUBE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**K & L**	**$^{1}/_{4}$**	**$^{3}/_{8}$**	**$^{1}/_{2}$**	**$^{5}/_{8}$**	**$^{3}/_{4}$**	**1**	**$1^{1}/_{4}$**	**$1^{1}/_{2}$**	**2**
	ACR	**$^{3}/_{8}$**	**$^{1}/_{2}$**	**$^{5}/_{8}$**	**$^{3}/_{4}$**	**$^{7}/_{8}$**	**$1^{1}/_{8}$**	**$1^{3}/_{8}$**	**—**	**—**
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10		245	506	1,030	1,800	2,550	5,450	9,820	15,500	32,200
20		169	348	708	1,240	1,760	3,750	6,750	10,600	22,200
30		135	279	568	993	1,410	3,010	5,420	8,550	17,800
40		116	239	486	850	1,210	2,580	4,640	7,310	15,200
50		103	212	431	754	1,070	2,280	4,110	6,480	13,500
60		93	192	391	683	969	2,070	3,730	5,870	12,200
70		86	177	359	628	891	1,900	3,430	5,400	11,300
80		80	164	334	584	829	1,770	3,190	5,030	10,500
90		75	154	314	548	778	1,660	2,990	4,720	9,820
100		71	146	296	518	735	1,570	2,830	4,450	9,280
125		63	129	263	459	651	1,390	2,500	3,950	8,220
150		57	117	238	416	590	1,260	2,270	3,580	7,450
175		52	108	219	383	543	1,160	2,090	3,290	6,850
200		49	100	204	356	505	1,080	1,940	3,060	6,380
250		43	89	181	315	448	956	1,720	2,710	5,650
300		39	80	164	286	406	866	1,560	2,460	5,120
350		36	74	150	263	373	797	1,430	2,260	4,710
400		33	69	140	245	347	741	1,330	2,100	4,380
450		31	65	131	230	326	696	1,250	1,970	4,110
500		30	61	124	217	308	657	1,180	1,870	3,880
550		28	58	118	206	292	624	1,120	1,770	3,690
600		27	55	112	196	279	595	1,070	1,690	3,520
650		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
700		25	51	103	181	256	548	986	1,550	3,240
750		24	49	100	174	247	528	950	1,500	3,120
800		23	47	96	168	239	510	917	1,450	3,010
850		22	46	93	163	231	493	888	1,400	2,920
900		22	44	90	158	224	478	861	1,360	2,830
950		21	43	88	153	217	464	836	1,320	2,740
1,000		20	42	85	149	211	452	813	1,280	2,670
1,100		19	40	81	142	201	429	772	1,220	2,540
1,200		18	38	77	135	192	409	737	1,160	2,420
1,300		18	36	74	129	183	392	705	1,110	2,320
1,400		17	35	71	124	176	376	678	1,070	2,230
1,500		16	34	68	120	170	363	653	1,030	2,140
1,600		16	33	66	116	164	350	630	994	2,070
1,700		15	31	64	112	159	339	610	962	2,000
1,800		15	30	62	108	154	329	592	933	1,940
1,900		14	30	60	105	149	319	575	906	1,890
2,000		14	29	59	102	145	310	559	881	1,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(5) [402.4(15)]
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**													
5	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,037	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
10	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	746	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
15	25	35	66	77	132	157	267	310	524	615	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
20	22	31	58	67	116	137	231	269	456	536	888	1,050	1,850	2,080
25	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	482	793	936	1,660	1,860
30	18	25	47	55	96	112	188	218	374	442	723	856	1,520	1,700
40	15	21	41	47	83	97	162	188	325	386	625	742	1,320	1,470
50	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	292	347	559	665	1,180	1,320
60	12	17	34	38	68	80	131	153	267	318	509	608	1,080	1,200
70	11	16	31	36	63	74	121	141	248	295	471	563	1,000	1,110
80	10	15	29	33	60	69	113	132	232	277	440	527	940	1,040
90	10	14	28	32	57	65	107	125	219	262	415	498	887	983
100	9	13	26	30	54	62	101	118	208	249	393	472	843	933
150	7	10	20	23	42	48	78	91	171	205	320	387	691	762
200	6	9	18	21	38	44	71	82	148	179	277	336	600	661
250	5	8	16	19	34	39	63	74	133	161	247	301	538	591
300	5	7	15	17	32	36	57	67	95	148	226	275	492	540

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(6) [402.4(18)]
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	270	353	587	700	1,100	1,370	2,590	2,990	4,510	5,037	9,600	10,700	18,600	21,600
25	166	220	374	444	709	876	1,620	1,870	2,890	3,258	6,040	6,780	11,900	13,700
30	151	200	342	405	650	801	1,480	1,700	2,640	2,987	5,510	6,200	10,900	12,500
40	129	172	297	351	567	696	1,270	1,470	2,300	2,605	4,760	5,380	9,440	10,900
50	115	154	266	314	510	624	1,140	1,310	2,060	2,343	4,260	4,820	8,470	9,720
75	93	124	218	257	420	512	922	1,070	1,690	1,932	3,470	3,950	6,940	7,940
80	89	120	211	249	407	496	892	1,030	1,640	1,874	3,360	3,820	6,730	7,690
100	79	107	189	222	366	445	795	920	1,470	1,685	3,000	3,420	6,030	6,880
150	64	87	155	182	302	364	646	748	1,210	1,389	2,440	2,800	4,940	5,620
200	55	75	135	157	263	317	557	645	1,050	1,212	2,110	2,430	4,290	4,870
250	49	67	121	141	236	284	497	576	941	1,090	1,890	2,180	3,850	4,360
300	44	61	110	129	217	260	453	525	862	999	1,720	1,990	3,520	3,980
400	38	52	96	111	189	225	390	453	749	871	1,490	1,730	3,060	3,450
500	34	46	86	100	170	202	348	404	552	783	1,330	1,550	2,740	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^3/_4$ psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(7) [402.4(21)]
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE**

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	$^{1}/_{2}$	$^{3}/_{4}$	1	$1^{1}/_{4}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	2
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour					
10	201	403	726	1,260	1,900	3,410
20	138	277	499	865	1,310	2,350
30	111	222	401	695	1,050	1,880
40	95	190	343	594	898	1,610
50	84	169	304	527	796	1,430
60	76	153	276	477	721	1,300
70	70	140	254	439	663	1,190
80	65	131	236	409	617	1,110
90	61	123	221	383	579	1,040
100	58	116	209	362	547	983
125	51	103	185	321	485	871
150	46	93	168	291	439	789
175	43	86	154	268	404	726
200	40	80	144	249	376	675
250	35	71	127	221	333	598
300	32	64	115	200	302	542
350	29	59	106	184	278	499
400	27	55	99	171	258	464
450	26	51	93	160	242	435
500	24	48	88	152	229	411

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(8) [402.4(22)] POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**					
10	1,860	3,720	6,710	11,600	17,600	31,600
20	1,280	2,560	4,610	7,990	12,100	21,700
30	1,030	2,050	3,710	6,420	9,690	17,400
40	878	1,760	3,170	5,490	8,300	14,900
50	778	1,560	2,810	4,870	7,350	13,200
60	705	1,410	2,550	4,410	6,660	12,000
70	649	1,300	2,340	4,060	6,130	11,000
80	603	1,210	2,180	3,780	5,700	10,200
90	566	1,130	2,050	3,540	5,350	9,610
100	535	1,070	1,930	3,350	5,050	9,080
125	474	949	1,710	2,970	4,480	8,050
150	429	860	1,550	2,690	4,060	7,290
175	395	791	1,430	2,470	3,730	6,710
200	368	736	1,330	2,300	3,470	6,240
250	326	652	1,180	2,040	3,080	5,530
300	295	591	1,070	1,850	2,790	5,010
350	272	544	981	1,700	2,570	4,610
400	253	506	913	1,580	2,390	4,290
450	237	475	856	1,480	2,240	4,020
500	224	448	809	1,400	2,120	3,800
550	213	426	768	1,330	2,010	3,610
600	203	406	733	1,270	1,920	3,440
650	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
700	187	374	674	1,170	1,760	3,170
750	180	360	649	1,130	1,700	3,050
800	174	348	627	1,090	1,640	2,950
850	168	336	607	1,050	1,590	2,850
900	163	326	588	1,020	1,540	2,770
950	158	317	572	990	1,500	2,690
1,000	154	308	556	963	1,450	2,610
1,100	146	293	528	915	1,380	2,480
1,200	139	279	504	873	1,320	2,370
1,300	134	267	482	836	1,260	2,270
1,400	128	257	463	803	1,210	2,180
1,500	124	247	446	773	1,170	2,100
1,600	119	239	431	747	1,130	2,030
1,700	115	231	417	723	1,090	1,960
1,800	112	224	404	701	1,060	1,900
1,900	109	218	393	680	1,030	1,850
2,000	106	212	382	662	1,000	1,800

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(9) [402.4(25)] SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**$^1/_2$**	**$^3/_4$**	**1**	**$1^1/_4$**	**$1^1/_2$**	**2**	**$2^1/_2$**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	3,320	6,950	13,100	26,900	40,300	77,600	124,000	219,000	446,000
20	2,280	4,780	9,000	18,500	27,700	53,300	85,000	150,000	306,000
30	1,830	3,840	7,220	14,800	22,200	42,800	68,200	121,000	246,000
40	1,570	3,280	6,180	12,700	19,000	36,600	58,400	103,000	211,000
50	1,390	2,910	5,480	11,300	16,900	32,500	51,700	91,500	187,000
60	1,260	2,640	4,970	10,200	15,300	29,400	46,900	82,900	169,000
70	1,160	2,430	4,570	9,380	14,100	27,100	43,100	76,300	156,000
80	1,080	2,260	4,250	8,730	13,100	25,200	40,100	70,900	145,000
90	1,010	2,120	3,990	8,190	12,300	23,600	37,700	66,600	136,000
100	956	2,000	3,770	7,730	11,600	22,300	35,600	62,900	128,000
125	848	1,770	3,340	6,850	10,300	19,800	31,500	55,700	114,000
150	768	1,610	3,020	6,210	9,300	17,900	28,600	50,500	103,000
175	706	1,480	2,780	5,710	8,560	16,500	26,300	46,500	94,700
200	657	1,370	2,590	5,320	7,960	15,300	24,400	43,200	88,100
250	582	1,220	2,290	4,710	7,060	13,600	21,700	38,300	78,100
300	528	1,100	2,080	4,270	6,400	12,300	19,600	34,700	70,800
350	486	1,020	1,910	3,930	5,880	11,300	18,100	31,900	65,100
400	452	945	1,780	3,650	5,470	10,500	16,800	29,700	60,600
450	424	886	1,670	3,430	5,140	9,890	15,800	27,900	56,800
500	400	837	1,580	3,240	4,850	9,340	14,900	26,300	53,700
550	380	795	1,500	3,070	4,610	8,870	14,100	25,000	51,000
600	363	759	1,430	2,930	4,400	8,460	13,500	23,900	48,600
650	347	726	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,800	46,600
700	334	698	1,310	2,700	4,040	7,790	12,400	21,900	44,800
750	321	672	1,270	2,600	3,900	7,500	12,000	21,100	43,100
800	310	649	1,220	2,510	3,760	7,240	11,500	20,400	41,600
850	300	628	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,010	11,200	19,800	40,300
900	291	609	1,150	2,360	3,530	6,800	10,800	19,200	39,100
950	283	592	1,110	2,290	3,430	6,600	10,500	18,600	37,900
1,000	275	575	1,080	2,230	3,330	6,420	10,200	18,100	36,900
1,100	261	546	1,030	2,110	3,170	6,100	9,720	17,200	35,000
1,200	249	521	982	2,020	3,020	5,820	9,270	16,400	33,400
1,300	239	499	940	1,930	2,890	5,570	8,880	15,700	32,000
1,400	229	480	903	1,850	2,780	5,350	8,530	15,100	30,800
1,500	221	462	870	1,790	2,680	5,160	8,220	14,500	29,600
1,600	213	446	840	1,730	2,590	4,980	7,940	14,000	28,600
1,700	206	432	813	1,670	2,500	4,820	7,680	13,600	27,700
1,800	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,900	194	407	766	1,570	2,360	4,540	7,230	12,800	26,100
2,000	189	395	745	1,530	2,290	4,410	7,030	12,400	25,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(10) [402.4(26)]
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	5,890	12,300	23,200	47,600	71,300	137,000	219,000	387,000	789,000
20	4,050	8,460	15,900	32,700	49,000	94,400	150,000	266,000	543,000
30	3,250	6,790	12,800	26,300	39,400	75,800	121,000	214,000	436,000
40	2,780	5,810	11,000	22,500	33,700	64,900	103,000	183,000	373,000
50	2,460	5,150	9,710	19,900	29,900	57,500	91,600	162,000	330,000
60	2,230	4,670	8,790	18,100	27,100	52,100	83,000	147,000	299,000
70	2,050	4,300	8,090	16,600	24,900	47,900	76,400	135,000	275,000
80	1,910	4,000	7,530	15,500	23,200	44,600	71,100	126,000	256,000
90	1,790	3,750	7,060	14,500	21,700	41,800	66,700	118,000	240,000
100	1,690	3,540	6,670	13,700	20,500	39,500	63,000	111,000	227,000
125	1,500	3,140	5,910	12,100	18,200	35,000	55,800	98,700	201,000
150	1,360	2,840	5,360	11,000	16,500	31,700	50,600	89,400	182,000
175	1,250	2,620	4,930	10,100	15,200	29,200	46,500	82,300	167,800
200	1,160	2,430	4,580	9,410	14,100	27,200	43,300	76,500	156,100
250	1,030	2,160	4,060	8,340	12,500	24,100	38,400	67,800	138,400
300	935	1,950	3,680	7,560	11,300	21,800	34,800	61,500	125,400
350	860	1,800	3,390	6,950	10,400	20,100	32,000	56,500	115,300
400	800	1,670	3,150	6,470	9,690	18,700	29,800	52,600	107,300
450	751	1,570	2,960	6,070	9,090	17,500	27,900	49,400	100,700
500	709	1,480	2,790	5,730	8,590	16,500	26,400	46,600	95,100
550	673	1,410	2,650	5,450	8,160	15,700	25,000	44,300	90,300
600	642	1,340	2,530	5,200	7,780	15,000	23,900	42,200	86,200
650	615	1,290	2,420	4,980	7,450	14,400	22,900	40,500	82,500
700	591	1,240	2,330	4,780	7,160	13,800	22,000	38,900	79,300
750	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,900	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,400
800	550	1,150	2,170	4,450	6,660	12,800	20,500	36,200	73,700
850	532	1,110	2,100	4,300	6,450	12,400	19,800	35,000	71,400
900	516	1,080	2,030	4,170	6,250	12,000	19,200	33,900	69,200
950	501	1,050	1,970	4,050	6,070	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,200
1,000	487	1,020	1,920	3,940	5,900	11,400	18,100	32,000	65,400
1,100	463	968	1,820	3,740	5,610	10,800	17,200	30,400	62,100
1,200	442	923	1,740	3,570	5,350	10,300	16,400	29,000	59,200
1,300	423	884	1,670	3,420	5,120	9,870	15,700	27,800	56,700
1,400	406	849	1,600	3,280	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
1,500	391	818	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,130	14,600	25,700	52,500
1,600	378	790	1,490	3,060	4,580	8,820	14,100	24,800	50,700
1,700	366	765	1,440	2,960	4,430	8,530	13,600	24,000	49,000
1,800	355	741	1,400	2,870	4,300	8,270	13,200	23,300	47,600
1,900	344	720	1,360	2,780	4,170	8,040	12,800	22,600	46,200
2,000	335	700	1,320	2,710	4,060	7,820	12,500	22,000	44,900

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(11) [402.4(27)]
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	2,680	5,590	10,500	21,600	32,400	62,400	99,500	176,000	359,000
20	1,840	3,850	7,240	14,900	22,300	42,900	68,400	121,000	247,000
30	1,480	3,090	5,820	11,900	17,900	34,500	54,900	97,100	198,000
40	1,260	2,640	4,980	10,200	15,300	29,500	47,000	83,100	170,000
50	1,120	2,340	4,410	9,060	13,600	26,100	41,700	73,700	150,000
60	1,010	2,120	4,000	8,210	12,300	23,700	37,700	66,700	136,000
70	934	1,950	3,680	7,550	11,300	21,800	34,700	61,400	125,000
80	869	1,820	3,420	7,020	10,500	20,300	32,300	57,100	116,000
90	815	1,700	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
100	770	1,610	3,030	6,230	9,330	18,000	28,600	50,600	103,000
125	682	1,430	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,500
150	618	1,290	2,440	5,000	7,490	14,400	23,000	40,700	82,900
175	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,890	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,300
200	529	1,110	2,080	4,280	6,410	12,300	19,700	34,800	71,000
250	469	981	1,850	3,790	5,680	10,900	17,400	30,800	62,900
300	425	889	1,670	3,440	5,150	9,920	15,800	27,900	57,000
350	391	817	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,120	14,500	25,700	52,400
400	364	760	1,430	2,940	4,410	8,490	13,500	23,900	48,800
450	341	714	1,340	2,760	4,130	7,960	12,700	22,400	45,800
500	322	674	1,270	2,610	3,910	7,520	12,000	21,200	43,200
550	306	640	1,210	2,480	3,710	7,140	11,400	20,100	41,100
600	292	611	1,150	2,360	3,540	6,820	10,900	19,200	39,200
650	280	585	1,100	2,260	3,390	6,530	10,400	18,400	37,500
700	269	562	1,060	2,170	3,260	6,270	9,990	17,700	36,000
750	259	541	1,020	2,090	3,140	6,040	9,630	17,000	34,700
800	250	523	985	2,020	3,030	5,830	9,300	16,400	33,500
850	242	506	953	1,960	2,930	5,640	9,000	15,900	32,400
900	235	490	924	1,900	2,840	5,470	8,720	15,400	31,500
950	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
1,000	222	463	873	1,790	2,680	5,170	8,240	14,600	29,700
1,100	210	440	829	1,700	2,550	4,910	7,830	13,800	28,200
1,200	201	420	791	1,620	2,430	4,680	7,470	13,200	26,900
1,300	192	402	757	1,550	2,330	4,490	7,150	12,600	25,800
1,400	185	386	727	1,490	2,240	4,310	6,870	12,100	24,800
1,500	178	372	701	1,440	2,160	4,150	6,620	11,700	23,900
1,600	172	359	677	1,390	2,080	4,010	6,390	11,300	23,000
1,700	166	348	655	1,340	2,010	3,880	6,180	10,900	22,300
1,800	161	337	635	1,300	1,950	3,760	6,000	10,600	21,600
1,900	157	327	617	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
2,000	152	318	600	1,230	1,840	3,550	5,660	10,000	20,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(12) [402.4(28)]
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between single- or second-stage (low pressure) regulator and appliance.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	291	608	1,150	2,350	3,520	6,790	10,800	19,100	39,000
20	200	418	787	1,620	2,420	4,660	7,430	13,100	26,800
30	160	336	632	1,300	1,940	3,750	5,970	10,600	21,500
40	137	287	541	1,110	1,660	3,210	5,110	9,030	18,400
50	122	255	480	985	1,480	2,840	4,530	8,000	16,300
60	110	231	434	892	1,340	2,570	4,100	7,250	14,800
80	101	212	400	821	1,230	2,370	3,770	6,670	13,600
100	94	197	372	763	1,140	2,200	3,510	6,210	12,700
125	89	185	349	716	1,070	2,070	3,290	5,820	11,900
150	84	175	330	677	1,010	1,950	3,110	5,500	11,200
175	74	155	292	600	899	1,730	2,760	4,880	9,950
200	67	140	265	543	814	1,570	2,500	4,420	9,010
250	62	129	243	500	749	1,440	2,300	4,060	8,290
300	58	120	227	465	697	1,340	2,140	3,780	7,710
350	51	107	201	412	618	1,190	1,900	3,350	6,840
400	46	97	182	373	560	1,080	1,720	3,040	6,190
450	42	89	167	344	515	991	1,580	2,790	5,700
500	40	83	156	320	479	922	1,470	2,600	5,300
550	37	78	146	300	449	865	1,380	2,440	4,970
600	35	73	138	283	424	817	1,300	2,300	4,700
650	33	70	131	269	403	776	1,240	2,190	4,460
700	32	66	125	257	385	741	1,180	2,090	4,260
750	30	64	120	246	368	709	1,130	2,000	4,080
800	29	61	115	236	354	681	1,090	1,920	3,920
850	28	59	111	227	341	656	1,050	1,850	3,770
900	27	57	107	220	329	634	1,010	1,790	3,640
950	26	55	104	213	319	613	978	1,730	3,530
1,000	25	53	100	206	309	595	948	1,680	3,420
1,100	25	52	97	200	300	578	921	1,630	3,320
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,600	20	42	79	162	243	468	746	1,320	2,690
1,700	19	40	76	156	234	451	719	1,270	2,590
1,800	19	39	74	151	226	436	694	1,230	2,500
1,900	18	38	71	146	219	422	672	1,190	2,420
2,000	18	37	69	142	212	409	652	1,150	2,350

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(13) [402.4(29)]
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		**Sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
TUBE SIZE (inches)										
Nominal	**K & L**	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
	ACR	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	**—**	**—**
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		513	1,060	2,150	3,760	5,330	11,400	20,500	32,300	67,400
20		352	727	1,480	2,580	3,670	7,830	14,100	22,200	46,300
30		283	584	1,190	2,080	2,940	6,290	11,300	17,900	37,200
40		242	500	1,020	1,780	2,520	5,380	9,690	15,300	31,800
50		215	443	901	1,570	2,230	4,770	8,590	13,500	28,200
60		194	401	816	1,430	2,020	4,320	7,780	12,300	25,600
70		179	369	751	1,310	1,860	3,980	7,160	11,300	23,500
80		166	343	699	1,220	1,730	3,700	6,660	10,500	21,900
90		156	322	655	1,150	1,630	3,470	6,250	9,850	20,500
100		147	304	619	1,080	1,540	3,280	5,900	9,310	19,400
125		131	270	549	959	1,360	2,910	5,230	8,250	17,200
150		118	244	497	869	1,230	2,630	4,740	7,470	15,600
175		109	225	457	799	1,130	2,420	4,360	6,880	14,300
200		101	209	426	744	1,060	2,250	4,060	6,400	13,300
250		90	185	377	659	935	2,000	3,600	5,670	11,800
300		81	168	342	597	847	1,810	3,260	5,140	10,700
350		75	155	314	549	779	1,660	3,000	4,730	9,840
400		70	144	292	511	725	1,550	2,790	4,400	9,160
450		65	135	274	480	680	1,450	2,620	4,130	8,590
500		62	127	259	453	643	1,370	2,470	3,900	8,120
550		59	121	246	430	610	1,300	2,350	3,700	7,710
600		56	115	235	410	582	1,240	2,240	3,530	7,350
650		54	111	225	393	558	1,190	2,140	3,380	7,040
700		51	106	216	378	536	1,140	2,060	3,250	6,770
750		50	102	208	364	516	1,100	1,980	3,130	6,520
800		48	99	201	351	498	1,060	1,920	3,020	6,290
850		46	96	195	340	482	1,030	1,850	2,920	6,090
900		45	93	189	330	468	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,910
950		44	90	183	320	454	970	1,750	2,750	5,730
1,000		42	88	178	311	442	944	1,700	2,680	5,580
1,100		40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
1,200		38	79	161	282	400	855	1,540	2,430	5,050
1,300		37	76	155	270	383	819	1,470	2,320	4,840
1,400		35	73	148	260	368	787	1,420	2,230	4,650
1,500		34	70	143	250	355	758	1,360	2,150	4,480
1,600		33	68	138	241	343	732	1,320	2,080	4,330
1,700		32	66	134	234	331	708	1,270	2,010	4,190
1,800		31	64	130	227	321	687	1,240	1,950	4,060
1,900		30	62	126	220	312	667	1,200	1,890	3,940
2,000		29	60	122	214	304	648	1,170	1,840	3,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(14) [402.4(30)]
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		**Sizing between single- or second-stage (low-pressure regulator) and appliance.**								
TUBE SIZE (inches)										
Nominal	**K & L**	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
	ACR	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	**—**	**—**
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		45	93	188	329	467	997	1,800	2,830	5,890
20		31	64	129	226	321	685	1,230	1,950	4,050
30		25	51	104	182	258	550	991	1,560	3,250
40		21	44	89	155	220	471	848	1,340	2,780
50		19	39	79	138	195	417	752	1,180	2,470
60		17	35	71	125	177	378	681	1,070	2,240
70		16	32	66	115	163	348	626	988	2,060
80		15	30	61	107	152	324	583	919	1,910
90		14	28	57	100	142	304	547	862	1,800
100		13	27	54	95	134	287	517	814	1,700
125		11	24	48	84	119	254	458	722	1,500
150		10	21	44	76	108	230	415	654	1,360
175		NA	20	40	70	99	212	382	602	1,250
200		NA	18	37	65	92	197	355	560	1,170
250		NA	16	33	58	82	175	315	496	1,030
300		NA	15	30	52	74	158	285	449	936
350		NA	14	28	48	68	146	262	414	861
400		NA	13	26	45	63	136	244	385	801
450		NA	12	24	42	60	127	229	361	752
500		NA	11	23	40	56	120	216	341	710
550		NA	11	22	38	53	114	205	324	674
600		NA	10	21	36	51	109	196	309	643
650		NA	NA	20	34	49	104	188	296	616
700		NA	NA	19	33	47	100	180	284	592
750		NA	NA	18	32	45	96	174	274	570
800		NA	NA	18	31	44	93	168	264	551
850		NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	256	533
900		NA	NA	17	29	41	87	157	248	517
950		NA	NA	16	28	40	85	153	241	502
1,000		NA	NA	16	27	39	83	149	234	488
1,100		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
1,200		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	212	442
1,300		NA	NA	14	24	34	72	129	203	423
1,400		NA	NA	13	23	32	69	124	195	407
1,500		NA	NA	13	22	31	66	119	188	392
1,600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	115	182	378
1,700		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	112	176	366
1,800		NA	NA	11	20	28	60	108	170	355
1,900		NA	NA	11	19	27	58	105	166	345
2,000		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	102	161	335

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(15) [402.4(31)]
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING**

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		Tube sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.								
		TUBE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10		413	852	1,730	3,030	4,300	9,170	16,500	26,000	54,200
20		284	585	1,190	2,080	2,950	6,310	11,400	17,900	37,300
30		228	470	956	1,670	2,370	5,060	9,120	14,400	29,900
40		195	402	818	1,430	2,030	4,330	7,800	12,300	25,600
50		173	356	725	1,270	1,800	3,840	6,920	10,900	22,700
60		157	323	657	1,150	1,630	3,480	6,270	9,880	20,600
70		144	297	605	1,060	1,500	3,200	5,760	9,090	18,900
80		134	276	562	983	1,390	2,980	5,360	8,450	17,600
90		126	259	528	922	1,310	2,790	5,030	7,930	16,500
100		119	245	498	871	1,240	2,640	4,750	7,490	15,600
125		105	217	442	772	1,100	2,340	4,210	6,640	13,800
150		95	197	400	700	992	2,120	3,820	6,020	12,500
175		88	181	368	644	913	1,950	3,510	5,540	11,500
200		82	168	343	599	849	1,810	3,270	5,150	10,700
250		72	149	304	531	753	1,610	2,900	4,560	9,510
300		66	135	275	481	682	1,460	2,620	4,140	8,610
350		60	124	253	442	628	1,340	2,410	3,800	7,920
400		56	116	235	411	584	1,250	2,250	3,540	7,370
450		53	109	221	386	548	1,170	2,110	3,320	6,920
500		50	103	209	365	517	1,110	1,990	3,140	6,530
550		47	97	198	346	491	1,050	1,890	2,980	6,210
600		45	93	189	330	469	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,920
650		43	89	181	316	449	959	1,730	2,720	5,670
700		41	86	174	304	431	921	1,660	2,620	5,450
750		40	82	168	293	415	888	1,600	2,520	5,250
800		39	80	162	283	401	857	1,540	2,430	5,070
850		37	77	157	274	388	829	1,490	2,350	4,900
900		36	75	152	265	376	804	1,450	2,280	4,750
950		35	72	147	258	366	781	1,410	2,220	4,620
1,000		34	71	143	251	356	760	1,370	2,160	4,490
1,100		32	67	136	238	338	721	1,300	2,050	4,270
1,200		31	64	130	227	322	688	1,240	1,950	4,070
1,300		30	61	124	217	309	659	1,190	1,870	3,900
1,400		28	59	120	209	296	633	1,140	1,800	3,740
1,500		27	57	115	201	286	610	1,100	1,730	3,610
1,600		26	55	111	194	276	589	1,060	1,670	3,480
1,700		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
1,800		25	51	104	182	259	553	1,000	1,570	3,270
1,900		24	50	101	177	251	537	966	1,520	3,170
2,000		23	48	99	172	244	522	940	1,480	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(16) [402.4(32)]
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN SINGLE OR SECOND STAGE (Low Pressure) REGULATOR AND THE APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE.														
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
5	72	99	181	211	355	426	744	863	1,420	1,638	2,830	3,270	5,780	6,550
10	50	69	129	150	254	303	521	605	971	1,179	1,990	2,320	4,110	4,640
15	39	55	104	121	208	248	422	490	775	972	1,620	1,900	3,370	3,790
20	34	49	91	106	183	216	365	425	661	847	1,400	1,650	2,930	3,290
25	30	42	82	94	164	192	325	379	583	762	1,250	1,480	2,630	2,940
30	28	39	74	87	151	177	297	344	528	698	1,140	1,350	2,400	2,680
40	23	33	64	74	131	153	256	297	449	610	988	1,170	2,090	2,330
50	20	30	58	66	118	137	227	265	397	548	884	1,050	1,870	2,080
60	19	26	53	60	107	126	207	241	359	502	805	961	1,710	1,900
70	17	25	49	57	99	117	191	222	330	466	745	890	1,590	1,760
80	15	23	45	52	94	109	178	208	307	438	696	833	1,490	1,650
90	15	22	44	50	90	102	169	197	286	414	656	787	1,400	1,550
100	14	20	41	47	85	98	159	186	270	393	621	746	1,330	1,480
150	11	15	31	36	66	75	123	143	217	324	506	611	1,090	1,210
200	9	14	28	33	60	69	112	129	183	283	438	531	948	1,050
250	8	12	25	30	53	61	99	117	163	254	390	476	850	934
300	8	11	23	26	50	57	90	107	147	234	357	434	777	854

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(17) [402.4(33)]
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN 2 PSI SERVICE AND THE LINE PRESSURE REGULATOR.														
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
10	426	558	927	1,110	1,740	2,170	4,100	4,720	7,130	7,958	15,200	16,800	29,400	34,200
25	262	347	591	701	1,120	1,380	2,560	2,950	4,560	5,147	9,550	10,700	18,800	21,700
30	238	316	540	640	1,030	1,270	2,330	2,690	4,180	4,719	8,710	9,790	17,200	19,800
40	203	271	469	554	896	1,100	2,010	2,320	3,630	4,116	7,530	8,500	14,900	17,200
50	181	243	420	496	806	986	1,790	2,070	3,260	3,702	6,730	7,610	13,400	15,400
75	147	196	344	406	663	809	1,460	1,690	2,680	3,053	5,480	6,230	11,000	12,600
80	140	189	333	393	643	768	1,410	1,630	2,590	2,961	5,300	6,040	10,600	12,200
100	124	169	298	350	578	703	1,260	1,450	2,330	2,662	4,740	5,410	9,530	10,900
150	101	137	245	287	477	575	1,020	1,180	1,910	2,195	3,860	4,430	7,810	8,890
200	86	118	213	248	415	501	880	1,020	1,660	1,915	3,340	3,840	6,780	7,710
250	77	105	191	222	373	448	785	910	1,490	1,722	2,980	3,440	6,080	6,900
300	69	96	173	203	343	411	716	829	1,360	1,578	2,720	3,150	5,560	6,300
400	60	82	151	175	298	355	616	716	1,160	1,376	2,350	2,730	4,830	5,460
500	53	72	135	158	268	319	550	638	1,030	1,237	2,100	2,450	4,330	4,880

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^1/_2$ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(18) [402.4(34)]
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
10	826	1,070	1,710	2,060	3,150	4,000	7,830	8,950	13,100	14,441	28,600	31,200	54,400	63,800
25	509	664	1,090	1,310	2,040	2,550	4,860	5,600	8,400	9,339	18,000	19,900	34,700	40,400
30	461	603	999	1,190	1,870	2,340	4,430	5,100	7,680	8,564	16,400	18,200	31,700	36,900
40	396	520	867	1,030	1,630	2,030	3,820	4,400	6,680	7,469	14,200	15,800	27,600	32,000
50	352	463	777	926	1,460	1,820	3,410	3,930	5,990	6,717	12,700	14,100	24,700	28,600
75	284	376	637	757	1,210	1,490	2,770	3,190	4,920	5,539	10,300	11,600	20,300	23,400
80	275	363	618	731	1,170	1,450	2,680	3,090	4,770	5,372	9,990	11,200	19,600	22,700
100	243	324	553	656	1,050	1,300	2,390	2,760	4,280	4,830	8,930	10,000	17,600	20,300
150	196	262	453	535	866	1,060	1,940	2,240	3,510	3,983	7,270	8,210	14,400	16,600
200	169	226	393	464	755	923	1,680	1,930	3,050	3,474	6,290	7,130	12,500	14,400
250	150	202	352	415	679	828	1,490	1,730	2,740	3,124	5,620	6,390	11,200	12,900
300	136	183	322	379	622	757	1,360	1,570	2,510	2,865	5,120	5,840	10,300	11,700
400	117	158	279	328	542	657	1,170	1,360	2,180	2,498	4,430	5,070	8,920	10,200
500	104	140	251	294	488	589	1,050	1,210	1,950	2,247	3,960	4,540	8,000	9,110

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds1 psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator can vary with the flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with the tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(19) [402.4(35)]
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between integral 2-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low-pressure regulator) and building.**					
	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**					
10	340	680	1,230	2,130	3,210	5,770
20	233	468	844	1,460	2,210	3,970
30	187	375	677	1,170	1,770	3,180
40	160	321	580	1,000	1,520	2,730
50	142	285	514	890	1,340	2,420
60	129	258	466	807	1,220	2,190
70	119	237	428	742	1,120	2,010
80	110	221	398	690	1,040	1,870
90	103	207	374	648	978	1,760
100	98	196	353	612	924	1,660
125	87	173	313	542	819	1,470
150	78	157	284	491	742	1,330
175	72	145	261	452	683	1,230
200	67	135	243	420	635	1,140
250	60	119	215	373	563	1,010
300	54	108	195	338	510	916
350	50	99	179	311	469	843
400	46	92	167	289	436	784
450	43	87	157	271	409	736
500	41	82	148	256	387	695

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(20) [402.4(36)]
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between 2 psig service regulator and line pressure regulator.**					
	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**					
10	3,130	6,260	11,300	19,600	29,500	53,100
20	2,150	4,300	7,760	13,400	20,300	36,500
30	1,730	3,450	6,230	10,800	16,300	29,300
40	1,480	2,960	5,330	9,240	14,000	25,100
50	1,310	2,620	4,730	8,190	12,400	22,200
60	1,190	2,370	4,280	7,420	11,200	20,100
70	1,090	2,180	3,940	6,830	10,300	18,500
80	1,010	2,030	3,670	6,350	9,590	17,200
90	952	1,910	3,440	5,960	9,000	16,200
100	899	1,800	3,250	5,630	8,500	15,300
125	797	1,600	2,880	4,990	7,530	13,500
150	722	1,450	2,610	4,520	6,830	12,300
175	664	1,330	2,400	4,160	6,280	11,300
200	618	1,240	2,230	3,870	5,840	10,500
250	548	1,100	1,980	3,430	5,180	9,300
300	496	994	1,790	3,110	4,690	8,430
350	457	914	1,650	2,860	4,320	7,760
400	425	851	1,530	2,660	4,020	7,220
450	399	798	1,440	2,500	3,770	6,770
500	377	754	1,360	2,360	3,560	6,390
550	358	716	1,290	2,240	3,380	6,070
600	341	683	1,230	2,140	3,220	5,790
650	327	654	1,180	2,040	3,090	5,550
700	314	628	1,130	1,960	2,970	5,330
750	302	605	1,090	1,890	2,860	5,140
800	292	585	1,050	1,830	2,760	4,960
850	283	566	1,020	1,770	2,670	4,800
900	274	549	990	1,710	2,590	4,650
950	266	533	961	1,670	2,520	4,520
1,000	259	518	935	1,620	2,450	4,400
1,100	246	492	888	1,540	2,320	4,170
1,200	234	470	847	1,470	2,220	3,980
1,300	225	450	811	1,410	2,120	3,810
1,400	216	432	779	1,350	2,040	3,660
1,500	208	416	751	1,300	1,960	3,530
1,600	201	402	725	1,260	1,900	3,410
1,700	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
1,800	188	377	680	1,180	1,780	3,200
1,900	183	366	661	1,140	1,730	3,110
2,000	178	356	643	1,110	1,680	3,020

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(21) [402.4(37)]
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING**

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: PE PIPE SIZING BETWEEN INTEGRAL 2-STAGE REGULATOR AT TANK OR SECOND STAGE (low-pressure regulator) AND BUILDING.		
Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (inch)		
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**1**
Designation	**SDR 7**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.445**	**0.927**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**	
10	121	828
20	83	569
30	67	457
40	57	391
50	51	347
60	46	314
70	42	289
80	39	269
90	37	252
100	35	238
125	31	211
150	28	191
175	26	176
200	24	164
225	22	154
250	21	145
275	20	138
300	19	132
350	18	121
400	16	113
450	15	106
500	15	100

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE G2413.4(22) [402.4(38)] POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	10 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between first stage and second stage regulator.**					
PLASTIC TUBING SIZE (inches)						
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9.33**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**					
10	3,836	7,680	13,857	24,007	36,254	65,140
20	2,636	4,239	7,648	16,500	24,917	44,770
30	2,143	4,292	7,744	13,416	20,260	36,402
40	1,835	3,673	6,628	11,482	17,340	31,155
50	1,626	3,256	5,874	10,176	15,368	27,612
60	1,473	2,950	5,322	9,220	13,924	25,019
70	1,355	2,714	4,896	8,483	12,810	23,017
80	1,261	2,525	4,555	7,891	11,918	21,413
90	1,183	2,369	4,274	7,404	11,182	20,091
100	1,117	2,238	4,037	6,994	10,562	18,978
125	990	1,983	3,578	6,199	9,361	16,820
150	897	1,797	3,242	5,616	8,482	15,240
175	826	1,653	2,983	5,467	7,803	14,020
200	678	1,539	2,775	4,807	7,259	13,043
225	721	1,443	2,603	4,510	6,811	12,238
250	681	1,363	2,459	4,260	6,434	11,560
275	646	1,294	2,336	4,046	6,111	10,979
300	617	1,235	2,228	3,860	5,830	10,474
350	567	1,136	2,050	3,551	5,363	9,636
400	528	1,057	1,907	3,304	4,989	8,965
450	495	992	1,789	3,100	4,681	8,411
500	468	937	1,690	2,928	4,422	7,945
600	424	849	1,531	2,653	4,007	7,199
700	390	781	1,409	2,441	3,686	6,623
800	363	726	1,311	2,271	3,429	6,161
900	340	682	1,230	2,131	3,217	5,781
1,000	322	644	1,162	2,012	3,039	5,461
1,500	258	517	933	1,616	2,441	4,385
2,000	221	443	798	1,383	2,089	3,753

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**TABLE G2413.4(23) [402.4(39)]
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING**

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between first stage and second stage regulator.**	
PLASTIC TUBING SIZE (CTS) (inches)		
Nominal OD	**$^1/_2$**	**1**
Designation	**SDR 7**	**SDR 11.5**
Actual ID	**0.445**	**0.927**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**	
10	1,364	9,350
20	938	6,427
30	762	5,225
40	653	4,472
50	578	3,964
60	524	3,591
70	482	3,304
80	448	3,074
90	421	2,884
100	397	2,724
125	352	2,414
150	319	2,188
175	294	2,013
200	273	1,872
225	256	1,757
250	242	1,659
275	230	1,576
300	219	1,503
350	202	1,383
400	188	1,287
450	176	1,207
500	166	1,140
600	151	1,033
700	139	951
800	129	884
900	121	830
1,000	114	784
1,500	92	629
2,000	79	539

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

SECTION G2414
PIPING MATERIALS

G2414.1 General. Materials used for *piping systems* shall comply with the requirements of this chapter or shall be *approved*.

G2414.2 Used materials. *Pipe*, fittings, *valves* or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

G2414.3 Other materials. Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service, and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be *approved* by the *code official*.

G2414.4 Metallic pipe. Metallic *pipe* shall comply with Sections G2414.4.1 and G2414.4.2.

G2414.4.1 Cast iron. Cast-iron *pipe* shall not be used.

G2414.4.2 Steel. Steel and wrought-iron *pipe* shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following standards:

1. ASME B 36.10, 10M.
2. ASTM A53/A53M.
3. ASTM A106.

G2414.5 Metallic tubing. Seamless copper, aluminum alloy and steel *tubing* shall not be used with gases corrosive to such materials.

G2414.5.1 Steel tubing. Steel *tubing* shall comply with ASTM A254.

G2414.5.2 Copper and copper alloy tubing. Copper *tubing* shall comply with Standard Type K or L of ASTM B88 or ASTM B280.

Copper and copper alloy *tubing* shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

G2414.5.3 Corrugated stainless steel tubing. Corrugated stainless steel *tubing* shall be *listed* in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26.

G2414.6 Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings. Polyethylene plastic pipe, tubing and fittings used to supply fuel gas shall conform to ASTM D2513. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D2513."

Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings, other than polyethylene, shall be identified and conform to the 2008 edition of ASTM D2513. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D2513."

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe, tubing and fittings shall not be used to supply fuel gas.

G2414.6.1 Anodeless risers. Plastic pipe, tubing and anodeless risers shall comply with the following:

1. Factory-assembled anodeless risers shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures.
2. Service head adapters and field-assembled anodeless risers incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used, and shall be designed and certified to meet the requirements of Category I of ASTM D2513, and U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user with qualified installation instructions as prescribed by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.283(b).

G2414.6.2 LP-gas systems. The use of plastic pipe, tubing and fittings in undiluted liquefied petroleum gas *piping* systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

G2414.6.3 Regulator vent piping. Plastic pipe and fittings used to connect *regulator* vents to remote vent terminations shall be of PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651. PVC vent *piping* shall not be installed indoors.

G2414.7 Workmanship and defects. *Pipe, tubing* and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed, and chip and scale blown.

Defects in *pipe* or *tubing* or fittings shall not be repaired. Defective *pipe, tubing* or fittings shall be replaced. (See Section G2417.1.2.)

G2414.8 Protective coating. Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic *piping* and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material shall be used. External or internal coatings or linings used on *piping* or components shall not be considered as adding strength. See Section G2415.6 for corrosion protection through an exterior wall, and Section G2415.11 for specific underground installations.

G2414.9 Metallic pipe threads. Metallic *pipe* and fitting threads shall be taper *pipe* threads and shall comply with ASME B 1.20.1.

G2414.9.1 Damaged threads. *Pipe* with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded or otherwise damaged shall not be used. Where a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the *pipe* shall not be used.

G2414.9.2 Number of threads. Field threading of metallic *pipe* shall be in accordance with Table G2414.9.2.

TABLE G2414.9.2
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THREADING METALLIC PIPE

IRON PIPE SIZE (inches)	APPROXIMATE LENGTH OF THREADED PORTION (inches)	APPROXIMATE NO. OF THREADS TO BE CUT
$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	10
$^3/_4$	$^3/_4$	10
1	$^7/_8$	10
$1^1/_4$	1	11
$1^1/_2$	1	11

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

G2414.9.3 Thread joint compounds. Thread joint compounds shall be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the *piping*.

G2414.10 Metallic piping joints and fittings. The type of *piping* joint used shall be suitable for the pressure-temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force caused by the internal pressure and any additional forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or to the weight of the *pipe* and its contents.

G2414.10.1 Pipe joints. Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, or welded, or made with press-connect fittings complying with ANSI LC-4. Where nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorous.

G2414.10.2 Tubing joints. *Tubing* joints shall be made with *approved gas tubing* fittings or be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000ºF (538ºC) or made with press-connect fittings complying with ANSI LC-4. *Brazing alloys* shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorus.

G2414.10.3 Flared joints. *Flared joints* shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous *pipe* and *tubing* where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

G2414.10.4 Metallic fittings. Metallic fittings, shall comply with the following:

1. Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron *pipe* shall be steel, copper alloy, malleable iron or cast iron.
2. Fittings used with copper or copper alloy *pipe* shall be copper or copper alloy.
3. Cast-iron bushings shall be prohibited.
4. Special fittings. Fittings such as couplings, proprietary-type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, and flared, flareless and compression-type *tubing* fittings shall be: used within the fitting manufacturer's pressure-temperature recommendations; used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion and contraction; and shall be *approved*.
5. Where pipe fittings are drilled and tapped in the field, the operation shall be in accordance with all of the following:
   - 5.1. The operation shall be performed on systems having operating pressures of 5 psi (34.5 kPa) or less.
   - 5.2. The operation shall be performed by the gas supplier or the gas supplier's designated representative.
   - 5.3. The drilling and tapping operation shall be performed in accordance with written procedures prepared by the gas supplier.
   - 5.4. The fittings shall be located outdoors.
   - 5.5. The tapped fitting assembly shall be inspected and proven to be free of leakage.

G2414.11 Plastic piping, joints and fittings. Plastic *pipe*, *tubing* and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Such joints shall comply with the following:

1. The joints shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pull-out resistance of the joints will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic *piping* material.
2. Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gas-tight joints at least as strong as the *pipe* or *tubing* being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the *pipe* manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D2513."
3. Where compression-type *mechanical joints* are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic *piping* and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the *pipe* or *tubing* and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.
4. Plastic *piping* joints and fittings for use in *liquefied petroleum gas piping systems* shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

SECTION G2415
PIPING SYSTEM INSTALLATION

G2415.1 Installation of materials. Materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

G2415.2 CSST. CSST piping systems shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their approval, the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

G2415.3 Prohibited locations. *Piping* shall not be installed in or through a ducted supply, return or exhaust, or a clothes chute, *chimney* or gas vent, dumbwaiter or elevator shaft. *Piping* installed downstream of the *point of delivery* shall not extend through any *townhouse unit* other than the unit served by such *piping*.

G2415.4 Piping in solid partitions and walls. *Concealed piping* shall not be located in solid partitions and solid walls, unless installed in a chase or casing.

G2415.5 Fittings in concealed locations. Fittings installed in concealed locations shall be limited to the following types:

1. Threaded elbows, tees and couplings.
2. Brazed fittings.
3. Welded fittings.
4. Fittings *listed* to ANSI LC-1/CSA 6.26 or ANSI LC-4.

G2415.6 Piping through foundation wall. Underground piping, where installed below grade through the outer foundation or basement wall of a building, shall be encased in a protective pipe sleeve, or shall be protected by an approved device or method. The annular space between the gas piping and the sleeve and between the sleeve and the wall shall be sealed.

G2415.7 Protection against physical damage. Where *piping* will be concealed within light-frame construction assemblies, the *piping* shall be protected against penetration by fasteners in accordance with Sections G2415.7.1 through G2415.7.3.

Exception: Black steel *piping* and galvanized steel *piping* shall not be required to be protected.

G2415.7.1 Piping through bored holes or notches. Where *piping* is installed through holes or notches in framing members and the *piping* is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width of the pipe and the framing member and that extend not less than 4 inches (51 mm) to each side of the framing member(s). Where the framing member that the *piping* passes through is a bottom plate, bottom track, top plate or top track, the shield plates shall cover the framing member and extend not less than 4 inches (51 mm) above the bottom framing member(s) and not less than 4 inches (51 mm) below the top framing member(s).

G2415.7.2 Piping installed in other locations. Where the *piping* is located within a framing member (i.e. steel studs) and is less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the *piping* shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the *piping*. Where the *piping* is located outside of a framing member and is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the face of the framing member to which the membrane will be attached, the *piping* shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the *piping*.

2415.7.3 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage).

G2415.8 Piping in solid floors. *Piping* in solid floors shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered in a manner that will allow access to the *piping* with a minimum amount of damage to the building. Where such *piping* is subject to exposure to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the *piping* shall be protected in an *approved* manner. As an alternative to installation in channels, the *piping* shall be installed in a conduit of Schedule 40 steel, wrought iron, PVC or ABS pipe in accordance with Section G2415.8.1 or G2415.8.2.

G2415.8.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the *gas piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor. If the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas *pipe,* the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the *pipe*. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

G2415.8.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

G2415.9 Above-ground piping outdoors. *Piping* installed outdoors shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above ground and where installed across roof surfaces, shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above the roof surface. *Piping* installed above ground, outdoors, and installed across the surface of roofs shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. Where passing through an outside wall, the *piping* shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Where *piping* is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular space between the *piping* and the sleeve shall be sealed.

Ferrous metal exposed in exterior locations shall be protected from corrosion with one coat of exterior paint. Zinc coatings (galvanized) shall be deemed adequate protection for gas piping above ground.

G2415.10 Isolation. Metallic *piping* and metallic *tubing* that conveys *fuel gas* from an LP-gas storage container shall be provided with an *approved* dielectric fitting to electrically isolate the underground portion of the pipe or tube from the above ground portion that enters a building. Such dielectric fitting or dielectric regulator shall be installed above ground outdoors.

G2415.11 Protection against corrosion underground. Metallic pipe or *tubing* exposed to corrosive action, such as soil condition or moisture, shall be protected in an *approved* manner. Zinc coatings (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for *gas piping* underground. Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. *Piping* shall not be laid in contact with cinders.

G2415.11.1 Prohibited use. Uncoated threaded or socket-welded joints shall not be used in *piping* in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.

G2415.11.2 Protective coatings and wrapping. Pipe protective coatings and wrappings shall be *approved* for the application and shall be factory applied.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, field application of coatings and wrappings shall be permitted.

G2415.12 Minimum burial depth. Underground *piping systems* shall be installed a minimum depth of 12 inches (305 mm) below grade, except as provided for in Sections G2415.12.1 and G2415.12.2.

G2415.12.1 Individual outside appliances. Individual lines to outdoor lights, grills or other *appliances* shall be installed not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below finished grade, provided that such installation is *approved* and is installed in locations not susceptible to physical damage.

G2415.12.2 Alternate to burial depth. Metal piping shall be provided with a protective conduit of wrought iron, plastic pipe, or steel pipe, and topped with a 3-inch (76 mm) thick by 6-inch (152 mm) wide concrete barrier. See Section G2415.17 for plastic gas pipe requirements and limitations.

G2415.13 Trenches. The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

G2415.14 Piping underground beneath buildings. *Piping* installed underground beneath buildings is prohibited except where the *piping* is encased in a conduit of wrought iron, plastic pipe, steel pipe or other *approved* conduit material designed to withstand the superimposed loads. The conduit shall be protected from corrosion in accordance with Section G2415.11 and shall be installed in accordance with Section G2415.14.1 or G2415.14.2.

G2415.14.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the *gas piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor. Where the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

G2415.14.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

G2415.15 Outlet closures. Gas *outlets* that do not connect to *appliances* shall be capped gas tight.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled* flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and *listed* and *labeled gas convenience outlets* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2415.16 Location of outlets. The unthreaded portion of *piping outlets* shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) through finished ceilings and walls and where extending through floors, outdoor patios and slabs, shall not be less than 2 inches (51 mm) above them. The *outlet* fitting or *piping* shall be securely supported. *Outlets* shall not be placed behind doors. *Outlets* shall be located in the room or space where the *appliance* is installed.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled* flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and *listed* and *labeled gas convenience outlets* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2415.17 Plastic pipe. The installation of plastic *pipe* shall comply with Sections G2415.17.1 through G2415.17.3.

G2415.17.1 Limitations. Plastic pipe shall be installed outdoors underground only. Plastic pipe shall not be used within or under any building or slab or be operated at pressures greater than 100 psig (689 kPa) for natural gas or 30 psig (207 kPa) for LP-gas.

Exceptions:

1. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate above ground outside of buildings where installed in premanufactured *anodeless risers* or service head adapter risers that are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter within buildings where the plastic pipe is inserted in a *piping* material for *fuel gas* use in buildings.
3. Plastic pipe shall be permitted under outdoor patio, walkway and driveway slabs provided that the burial depth complies with Section G2415.10.

G2415.17.2 Connections. Connections outdoors and underground between metallic and plastic *piping* shall be made only with transition fittings conforming to ASTM D2513 Category I or ASTM F1973.

G2415.17.3 Tracer. A yellow insulated copper tracer wire or other *approved* conductor shall be installed adjacent to underground nonmetallic *piping*. *Access* shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the nonmetallic *piping*. The tracer wire size shall not be less than 18 AWG and the insulation type shall be suitable for direct burial.

G2415.18 Pipe cleaning. The use of a flammable or combustible gas to clean or remove debris from a *piping* system shall be prohibited.

G2415.19 Prohibited devices. A device shall not be placed inside the *piping* or fittings that will reduce the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow of gas.

Exceptions:

1. Approved gas filters.
2. An approved fitting or device where the gas piping system has been sized to accommodate the pressure drop of the fitting or device.

G2415.20 Testing of piping. Before any system of *piping* is put in service or concealed, it shall be tested to ensure that it is gas tight. Testing, inspection and purging of *piping systems* shall comply with Section G2417.

SECTION G2416
PIPING BENDS AND CHANGES IN DIRECTION

G2416.1 General. Changes in direction of pipe shall be permitted to be made by the use of fittings, factory bends or field bends.

G2416.2 Metallic pipe. Metallic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. Bends shall be made only with bending tools and procedures intended for that purpose.
2. All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks or other evidence of mechanical damage.
3. The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.
4. Pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees (1.6 rad).
5. The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than six times the outside diameter of the pipe.

G2416.3 Plastic pipe. Plastic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. The pipe shall not be damaged and the internal diameter of the pipe shall not be effectively reduced.
2. Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.
3. The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.
4. Where the *piping* manufacturer specifies the use of special bending tools or procedures, such tools or procedures shall be used.

SECTION G2417
INSPECTION, TESTING AND PURGING

G2417.1 General. Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all *piping* installations shall be visually inspected and pressure tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code. (See N.C.G.S. 143-139.3 for alternative inspection of liquefied propane gas piping systems for residential structures.)

G2417.1.1 Inspections. Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly or *pressure tests*.

G2417.1.2 Repairs and additions. In the event repairs or additions are made after the *pressure test*, the affected *piping* shall be tested.

Minor repairs and additions are not required to be *pressure tested* provided that the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other *approved* leak-detecting methods.

G2417.1.3 New branches. Where new branches are installed to new *appliances*, only the newly installed branches shall be required to be *pressure tested*. Connections between the new *piping* and the existing *piping* shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other *approved* leak-detecting methods.

G2417.1.4 Section testing. A *piping system* shall be permitted to be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a *valve* in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the *piping system* and test medium in an adjacent section, except where a double block and bleed valve system is installed. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

G2417.1.5 Regulators and valve assemblies. *Regulator* and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the *piping system* in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas or air at the time of fabrication.

G2417.1.6 Pipe clearing. Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material.

G2417.2 Test medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide or an inert gas. Oxygen shall not be used.

G2417.3 Test preparation. *Pipe* joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

Exception: Covered or *concealed pipe* end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this *code*.

G2417.3.1 Expansion joints. Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

G2417.3.2 Appliance and equipment isolation. *Appliances* and *equipment* that are not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the *piping* or isolated by blanks, blind flanges or caps.

G2417.3.3 Appliance and equipment disconnection. Where the *piping system* is connected to *appliances* or *equipment* designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such *appliances* or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping system* by disconnecting them and capping the *outlet(s)*.

G2417.3.4 Valve isolation. Where the *piping system* is connected to *appliances* or *equipment* designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such *appliances* or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping system* by closing the individual *appliance* or *equipment* shutoff valve(s).

G2417.3.5 Testing precautions. Testing of *piping* systems shall be performed in a manner that protects the safety of employees and the public during the test.

G2417.4 Test pressure measurement. Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the *pressure test* period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the *pressure tests* are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.

G2417.4.1 Test pressure. The test pressure to be used shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 10 psig (69 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the *piping* greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

Exception: Fuel piping systems that are being tested with manifolds, regulator or other pressure regulating appliance in place at the time of the test shall be tested no less than $1^1/_2$ times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure.

G2417.4.2 Test duration. The test duration shall be not less than 10 minutes.

G2417.4.2.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

G2417.5 Detection of leaks and defects. The *piping system* shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

G2417.5.1 Detection methods. The leakage shall be located by means of an *approved* gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid or other *approved* leak detection methods.

Matches, candles, open flames or other methods that could provide a source of ignition shall not be used.

G2417.5.2 Corrections. Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the *piping system* shall be repaired or replaced and retested.

G2417.6 Piping system and equipment leakage check. Leakage checking of systems and *equipment* shall be in accordance with Sections G2417.6.1 through G2417.6.4.

G2417.6.1 Test gases. Leak checks using fuel gas shall be permitted in *piping systems* that have been pressure tested in accordance with Section G2417.

G2417.6.2 Before turning gas on. During the process of turning gas on into a system of new *gas piping*, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all *valves* at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

G2417.6.3 Leak check. Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the *piping system* shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

G2417.6.4 Placing appliances and equipment in operation. *Appliance*s and *equipment* shall not be placed in operation until after the *piping* system has been checked for leakage in accordance with Section G2417.6.3, the *piping system* has been purged in accordance with Section G2417.7 and the connections to the *appliances* have been checked for leakage.

G2417.7 Purging. The purging of piping shall be in accordance with Sections G2417.7.1 through 2417.7.3.

G2417.7.1 Piping systems required to be purged outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Sections G2417.7.1.1 through G2417.7.1.4 where the *piping system* meets either of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is greater than 2 psig (13.79 kPa).
2. The piping being purged contains one or more sections of pipe or tubing meeting the size and length criteria of Table G2417.7.1.1.

G2417.7.1.1 Removal from service. Where existing gas piping is opened, the section that is opened shall be isolated from the gas supply and the line pressure vented to the outdoors in accordance with Section G2417.7.1.3. Where gas *piping* meeting the criteria of Table G2417.7.1.1 is removed from service, the residual fuel gas in the *piping* shall be displaced with an inert gas.

TABLE G2417.7.1.1
SIZE AND LENGTH OF PIPING

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)[a]	LENGTH OF PIPING (feet)
$\geq 2^1/_2 < 3$	> 50
≥ 3 < 4	> 30
≥ 4 < 6	> 15
≥ 6 < 8	> 10
≥ 8	Any length

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. CSST EHD size of 62 is equivalent to nominal 2-inch pipe or tubing size.

G2417.7.1.1.1 Piping added to facilitate purging. Any piping added to facilitate purging to the outdoors shall be limited to the piping materials allowed and installed in accordance with Section G2414, or, if constantly attended, the temporary use of flexible hose complying with ANSI/UL 21 standard shall be used in accordance with NFPA 58.

Exception: If the line pressure cannot be vented to the outdoors, the building and all affected spaces shall be evacuated of personnel not involved with purging the gas lines. Quantities of flammable gas shall not exceed 25 percent of the lower explosive limit (1.0-percent fuel/air mixture for natural gas or 0.6-percent fuel/air mixture for LP-gas) as measured by a combustible gas detector, all ignition sources shall be eliminated, and adequate ventilation to prevent accumulation of flammable gases shall be provided.

G2417.7.1.2 Placing in operation. Where gas *piping* containing air and meeting the criteria of Table G2417.7.1.1 is placed in operation, the air in the *piping* shall first be displaced with an inert gas. The inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas in accordance with Section G2417.7.1.3.

G2417.7.1.3 Outdoor discharge of purged gases. The open end of a *piping* system being pressure vented or purged shall discharge directly to an outdoor location. Purging operations shall comply will all of the following requirements:

1. The point of discharge shall be controlled with a shutoff valve.
2. The point of discharge shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from sources of ignition, not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from building openings and not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from mechanical air intake openings.
3. During discharge, the open point of discharge shall be continuously attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator that complies with Section G2417.7.1.4.
4. Purging operations introducing fuel gas shall be stopped when 90 percent fuel gas by volume is detected within the pipe.
5. Persons not involved in the purging operations shall be evacuated from all areas within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the point of discharge.

G2417.7.1.4 Combustible gas indicator. Combustible gas indicators shall be listed and shall be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas indicators shall numerically display a volume scale from zero percent to 100 percent in 1 percent or smaller increments.

G2417.7.2 Piping systems allowed to be purged indoors or outdoors. The purging of *piping systems* shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section G2417.7.2.1 where the *piping system* meets both of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is 2 psig (13.79 kPa) or less.
2. The *piping* being purged is constructed entirely from pipe or tubing not meeting the size and length criteria of Table G2417.7.1.1.

G2417.7.2.1 Purging procedure. The p*iping system* shall be purged in accordance with one or more of the following:

1. The *piping* shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the outdoors.
2. The *piping* shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through an *appliance* burner not located in a combustion chamber. Such burner shall be provided with a continuous source of ignition.
3. The *piping* shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through a burner that has a continuous source of ignition and that is designed for such purpose.
4. The *piping* shall be purged with fuel gas that is discharged to the indoors or outdoors, and the point of discharge shall be monitored with a listed combustible gas detector in accordance with Section G2417.7.2.2. Purging shall be stopped when fuel gas is detected.
5. Deleted.

G2417.7.2.2 Combustible gas detector. Combustible gas detectors shall be listed and shall be calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas detectors shall be capable of indicating the presence of fuel gas.

G2417.7.3 Purging appliances and equipment. After the *piping system* has been placed in operation, *appliances* and *equipment* shall be purged before being placed into operation.

G2417.7.4 Personnel training. Personnel performing purging operation shall be trained according to the hazards associated with purging and shall not rely on odor when monitoring the concentration of combustible gas.

SECTION G2418
PIPING SUPPORT

G2418.1 General. *Piping* shall be provided with support in accordance with Section G2418.2.

G2418.2 Design and installation. *Piping* shall be supported with metal pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, metal bands, metal brackets, metal hangers or building structural components suitable for the size of *piping*, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. *Piping* shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected *appliances* and shall not be supported by other *piping*. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of MSS SP-58 and shall be spaced in accordance with Section G2424. Supports, hangers and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the *piping* between anchors. All parts of the supporting *equipment* shall be designed and installed so that they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported *piping*.

SECTION G2419
DRIPS AND SLOPED PIPING

G2419.1 Slopes. Deleted.

G2419.2 Drips. Deleted.

G2419.3 Location of drips. Deleted.

G2419.4 Sediment trap. Where a sediment trap is not incorporated as part of the appliance, a sediment trap shall be installed downstream of the appliance shutoff valve as close to the inlet of the appliance as practical. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting having a capped nipple of any length installed vertically in the bottommost opening of the tee as illustrated in Figure G2419.4 or other device approved as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating appliances, ranges, clothes dryers, log lighters, gas logs, decorative vented appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, gas fireplaces and outdoor grills need not be so equipped. The sediment trap required by a MP regulator can act as the Section G2419.4 required sediment trap (see Section G2421.2 Item 5), if it is located within 6 feet (nominal) of the appliance.

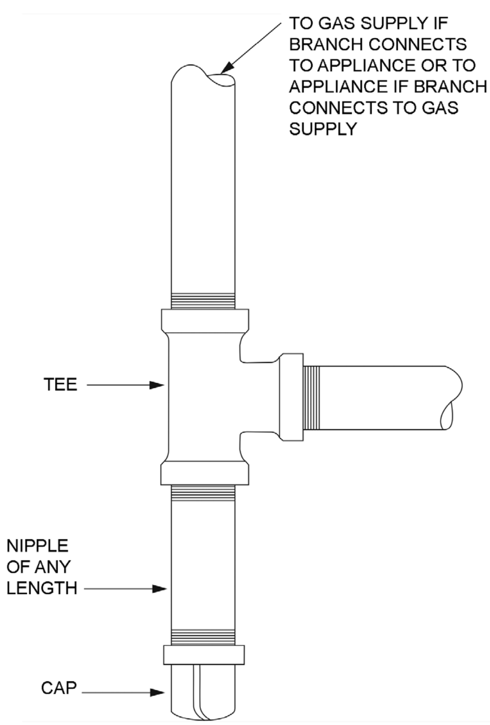


FIGURE G2419.4
METHOD OF INSTALLING A TEE FITTING SEDIMENT TRAP

SECTION G2420
SHUTOFF VALVES

G2420.1 General. *Piping systems* shall be provided with shutoff valves in accordance with this section.

G2420.1.1 Valve approval. Shutoff valves shall be of an *approved* type; shall be constructed of materials compatible with the *piping*; and shall comply with the standard that is applicable for the pressure and application, in accordance with Table G2420.1.1.

G2420.1.2 Prohibited locations. Shutoff valves shall be prohibited in *concealed locations* and *furnace plenums*.

G2420.1.3 Access to shutoff valves. Shutoff *valves* shall be located in places so as to provide access for operation and shall be installed so as to be protected from damage.

G2420.2 Meter valve. Deleted.

G2420.3 Individual buildings. In a common system serving more than one building, shutoff valves shall be installed outdoors at each building.

G2420.4 MP regulator valves. A listed shutoff valve shall be installed immediately ahead of each MP *regulator*.

G2420.5 Appliance shutoff valve. Each *appliance* shall be provided with a shutoff valve in accordance with Section G2420.5.1, G2420.5.2 or G2420.5.3.

G2420.5.1 Located within same room. The shutoff valve shall be located in the same room as the *appliance*. The shutoff valve shall be within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance,* and shall be installed upstream of the union, connector or quick disconnect device it serves. Such shutoff *valves* shall be provided with *access*. *Appliance shutoff valves* located in the firebox of a *fireplace* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

This section shall not prohibit the use or the installation of gas shutoff valves in the firebox of fireplaces serving listed gas appliances.

G2420.5.2 Vented decorative appliances and room heaters. Shutoff valves for vented decorative *appliances*, room heaters and decorative *appliances* for installation in vented fireplaces shall be permitted to be installed in an area remote from the *appliances* where such valves are provided with *ready access*. Such *valves* shall be permanently identified and shall not serve another *appliance*. The *piping* from the shutoff valve to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance* shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections G2412 through G2419.

G2420.5.3 Located at manifold. Deleted.

SECTION G2421
FLOW CONTROLS

G2421.1 Pressure regulators. A line *pressure regulator* shall be installed where the *appliance* is designed to operate at a lower pressure than the supply pressure. *Line gas pres-*

sure regulators shall be *listed* as complying with ANSI Z21.80. *Access* shall be provided to *pressure regulators*. *Pressure regulators* shall be protected from physical damage. *Regulators* installed on the exterior of the building shall be *approved* for outdoor installation.

G2421.2 MP regulators. MP *pressure regulators* shall comply with the following:

1. The MP *regulator* shall be *approved* and shall be suitable for the inlet and outlet gas pressures for the application.
2. The MP *regulator* shall maintain a reduced outlet pressure under lock-up (no-flow) conditions.
3. The capacity of the MP *regulator*, determined by published ratings of its manufacturer, shall be adequate to supply the *appliances* served.
4. The MP *pressure regulator* shall be provided with *access*. Where located indoors, the *regulator* shall be vented to the outdoors or shall be equipped with a leak-limiting device, in either case complying with Section G2421.3.
5. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed between the MP *regulator* and its upstream shutoff valve. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument and to serve as a sediment trap.
6. A means to test pressure shall be installed not less than 10 pipe diameters downstream of the MP regulator outlet. Such fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument.
7. Where connected to rigid *piping*, a union shall be installed within 1 foot (304 mm) of either side of the MP *regulator*.

   Exception: Where other than rigid piping is connected to the MP regulator, the union is not required.

G2421.3 Venting of regulators. *Pressure regulators* that require a vent shall be vented directly to the outdoors. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of insects, water and foreign objects.

a. Regulator vent outlets serving propane piping shall be located 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from openings and operable openings that are below the vent, and 5 feet (1524 mm) in any direction from direct vent appliance intakes and mechanical ventilation intakes or 1 foot (305 mm) below openings and operable openings, and 3 feet (914 mm) below direct vent and mechanical vent intakes.

b. Regulator vent outlets serving natural gas piping shall be located 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from operable openings above the vent, and 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from direct vent appliance intakes and mechanical ventilation air intakes located above the vent, or 1 foot (305 mm) above openings and operable openings, and 3 feet (914 mm) above direct vent and mechanical vent intakes.

Exception: A vent to the outdoors is not required for *regulators* equipped with and *labeled* for utilization with an *approved* vent-limiting device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2421.3.1 Vent piping. Vent *piping* for relief vents and breather vents shall be constructed of materials allowed for *gas piping* in accordance with Section G2414. Vent *piping* shall be not smaller than the vent connection on the pressure regulating device. Vent *piping* serving relief vents and combination relief and breather vents shall be run independently to the outdoors and shall serve only a single device vent. Vent *piping* serving only breather vents is permitted to be connected in a manifold arrangement where sized in accordance with an *approved* design that minimizes backpressure in the event of diaphragm rupture. *Regulator* vent *piping* shall not exceed the length specified in the *regulator* manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2421.4 Excess flow valves. Where automatic *excess flow valves* are installed, they shall be listed for the application and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2421.5 Flashback arrestor check valve. Where fuel gas is used with oxygen in any hot work operation, a listed protective device that serves as a combination flashback arrestor and backflow check valve shall be installed at an *approved* location on both the fuel gas and oxygen supply lines. Where the pressure of the piped fuel gas supply is insufficient to ensure such safe operation, *approved* equipment shall be installed between the gas meter and the appliance that increases pressure to the level required for such safe operation.

TABLE G2420.1.1
MANUAL GAS VALVE STANDARDS

VALVE STANDARDS	APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE APPLICATION UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE	OTHER VALVE APPLICATIONS			
		UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE	UP TO 2 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 5 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 125 psig PRESSURE
ANSI Z21.15	X	—	—	—	—
ASME B16.44	X	X	X[a]	X[b]	—
ASME B16.33	X	X	X	X	X

For SI: 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa.

a. If labeled 2G.

b. If labeled 5G.

G2421.6 Overpressure protection devices.

G2421.6.1 Where required. Where the serving gas supplier delivers gas at a pressure greater than 2 psi for piping systems serving appliances designed to operate at a gas pressure of 14 inches w.c. or less, overpressure protection devices shall be installed. Piping systems serving equipment designed to operate at inlet pressures greater than 14 inches w.c. shall be equipped with overpressure protection devices as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2421.6.2 Pressure limitation requirements. The requirements for pressure limitation shall be in accordance with Sections G2421.6.2.1 through G2421.6.2.5.

G2421.6.2.1 Pressure under 14 inches w.c. Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure of 14 inches w.c. or less are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by Section G2421.6.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance to 2 psi or less upon a failure of the line pressure regulator.

G2421.6.2.2 Pressure over 14 inches w.c. Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure greater than 14 inches w.c. are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by Section G2421.6.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2421.6.2.3 Device capability. Each overpressure protection device installed to meet the requirements of this section shall be capable of limiting the pressure to its connected appliance(s) as required by Section G2421.6.2.1, independently of any other pressure control equipment in the piping system.

G2421.6.2.4 Failure detection. Each gas piping system for which an overpressure protection device is required by Section G2421.6 shall be designed and installed so that a failure of the primary pressure control device(s) is detectable.

G2421.6.2.5 Relief valve. Where a pressure relief valve is used to meet the requirements of Section G2421.6, it shall have a flow capacity such that the pressure in the protected system is maintained at or below the limits specified in Section G2421.6.2.1 under all of the following conditions:

1. The line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection has failed wide open.
2. The gas pressure at the inlet of the line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection is not less than the regulator's normal operating inlet pressure.

G2421.6.3 Devices. Pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting devices shall be one of the following:

1. Pressure relief valve.
2. Monitoring regulator.
3. Series regulator installed upstream from the line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the line regulator to the maximum values specified by Section G2421.6.2.1.
4. Automatic shutoff device installed in series with the line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream *piping* system reaches the maximum values specified by Section G2421.6.2.1. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.

The devices specified in this section shall be installed either as an integral part of the service or line pressure regulator or as separate units. Where separate pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting devices are installed, they shall comply with Sections G2421.6.3.1 through G2421.6.3.6.

G2421.6.3.1 Construction and installation. Pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be constructed of materials so that the operation of the devices will not be impaired by corrosion of external parts by the atmosphere or of internal parts by the gas. Pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be designed and installed so that they can be operated to determine whether the valve is free. The devices shall be designed and installed so that they can be tested to determine the pressure at which they will operate and examined for leakage when in the closed position.

G2421.6.3.2 External control piping. External control *piping* shall be designed and installed so that damage to the control *piping* of one device will not render both the regulator and the overpressure protection device inoperative.

G2421.6.3.3 Setting. Each pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting device shall be set so that the gas pressure supplied to the connected appliances does not exceed the limits specified in Section G2421.6.2.1.

G2421.6.3.4 Unauthorized operation. Where unauthorized operation of any shutoff valve could render a pressure relieving valve or pressure-limiting device inoperative, one of the following shall be accomplished:

1. The valve shall be locked in the open position. Authorized personnel shall be instructed in the importance of leaving the shutoff valve open and of being present while the shutoff valve is closed so that it can be locked in the open position before leaving the premises.
2. Duplicate relief valves shall be installed, each having adequate capacity to protect the system, and the isolating valves and three-way valves shall be arranged so that only one relief valve can be rendered inoperative at a time.

G2421.6.3.5 Vents. The discharge stacks, vents and outlet parts of all pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be located so that gas is safely discharged to the outdoors. Discharge stacks and vents shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects and other foreign material that could cause blockage. The discharge stack or vent line shall be not less than the same size as the outlet of the pressure-relieving device.

G2421.6.3.6 Size of fittings, pipe and openings. The fittings, pipe and openings located between the system to be protected and the pressure-relieving device shall be sized to prevent hammering of the valve and to prevent impairment of relief capacity.

SECTION G2422 APPLIANCE CONNECTIONS

G2422.1 Connecting appliances. *Appliances* shall be connected to the *piping system* by one of the following:

1. Rigid metallic pipe and fittings.
2. Corrugated stainless steel *tubing* (CSST) where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Listed and labeled *appliance connectors* in compliance with ANSI Z21.24 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and located entirely in the same room as the *appliance*.
4. *Listed* and *labeled* quick-disconnect devices used in conjunction with *listed* and *labeled appliance connectors*.
5. *Listed* and *labeled* convenience outlets used in conjunction with *listed* and *labeled appliance connectors*.
6. *Listed* and *labeled* outdoor *appliance connectors* in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
7. *Listed* outdoor gas hose connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.54 used to connect portable outdoor *appliances*. The gas hose connection shall be made only in the outdoor area where the *appliance* is used, and shall be to the gas *piping* supply at an *appliance* shutoff valve, a *listed* quick-disconnect device or *listed* gas convenience outlet.

G2422.1.1 Protection from damage. Connectors and *tubing* shall be installed so as to be protected against physical damage.

G2422.1.2 Connector installation. *Appliance* fuel connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Sections G2422.1.2.1 through G2422.1.2.4.

G2422.1.2.1 Maximum length. Connectors shall have an overall length not to exceed 6 feet (1829 mm). Measurement shall be made along the centerline of the connector. Only one connector shall be used for each *appliance*.

Exception: Rigid metallic *piping* used to connect an *appliance* to the *piping system* shall be permitted to have a total length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) provided that the connecting pipe is sized as part of the *piping system* in accordance with Section G2413 and the location of the *appliance* shutoff valve complies with Section G2420.5.

G2422.1.2.2 Minimum size. Connectors shall have the capacity for the total *demand* of the connected *appliance*.

G2422.1.2.3 Prohibited locations and penetrations. Connectors shall not be concealed within, or extended through, walls, floors, partitions, ceilings or *appliance* housings.

Exceptions:

1. Connectors constructed of materials allowed for *piping systems* in accordance with Section G2414 shall be permitted to pass through walls, floors, partitions and ceilings where installed in accordance with Section G2420.5.2.
2. Rigid steel pipe connectors shall be permitted to extend through openings in *appliance* housings.
3. *Fireplace* inserts that are factory equipped with grommets, sleeves or other means of protection in accordance with the listing of the *appliance*.
4. Semirigid *tubing* and *listed* connectors shall be permitted to extend through an opening in an *appliance* housing, cabinet or casing where the tubing or connector is protected against damage.

G2422.1.2.4 Shutoff valve. A shutoff valve not less than the nominal size of the connector shall be installed ahead of the connector in accordance with Section G2420.5.

G2422.1.3 Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners. Internal combustion engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

G2422.1.4 Unions. A union fitting shall be provided for *appliances* connected by rigid metallic pipe. Such unions shall be accessible and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance*.

G2422.1.5 Movable appliances. Where *appliances* are equipped with casters or are otherwise subject to periodic movement or relocation for purposes such as routine cleaning and maintenance, such *appliances* shall be connected to the supply system *piping* by means of an *appliance connector listed* as complying with ANSI Z21.69 or by means of Item 1 of Section G2422.1. Such flexible connectors shall be installed and protected against physical damage in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2422.2 Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters. Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters shall be connected to the building *piping system* with a connector *listed* for the application complying with ANSI Z21.24/CGA 6.10.

The connector shall be installed as specified by the tube heater manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2423 COMPRESSED NATURAL GAS MOTOR VEHICLE FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES

G2423.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for CNG fuel shall be in accordance with Section 413 of the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

SECTION G2424 PIPING SUPPORT INTERVALS

G2424.1 Interval of support. *Piping* shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table G2424.1. Spacing of supports for CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

> **Exception:** Fuel gas piping from grade-mounted propane tanks, less than 2,000 gallon wc, extending from the tank into the ground, or into the building with less than 4 feet (1219 mm) of pipe shall not require additional support.

TABLE G2424.1 SUPPORT OF PIPING

STEEL PIPE, NOMINAL SIZE OF PIPE (inches)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)	NOMINAL SIZE OF TUBING SMOOTH-WALL (inch O.D.)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)
$^1/_2$	6	$^1/_2$	4
$^3/_4$ or 1	8	$^5/_8$ or $^3/_4$	6
$1^1/_4$ or larger (horizontal)	10	$^7/_8$ or 1 (horizontal)	8
$1^1/_4$ or larger (vertical)	Every floor level	1 or larger (vertical)	Every floor level

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

SECTION G2425 GENERAL

G2425.1 Scope. This section shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built *chimneys*, *chimney* liners, vents and connectors and the utilization of masonry chimneys serving gas-fired *appliances*.

G2425.2 General. Every *appliance* shall discharge the products of combustion to the outdoors, except for *appliances* exempted by Section G2425.8.

G2425.3 Masonry chimneys. *Masonry chimneys* shall be constructed in accordance with Section G2427.5 and Chapter 10.

G2425.4 Minimum size of chimney or vent. *Chimneys* and vents shall be sized in accordance with Sections G2427 and G2428. Examples of methodologies are shown in Appendix AB.

G2425.5 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in *chimneys* and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

G2425.6 Positive pressure. Where an *appliance* equipped with a mechanical forced *draft* system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed for positive pressure applications.

G2425.7 Connection to fireplace. Connection of *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving *fireplaces* shall be in accordance with Sections G2425.7.1 through G2425.7.3.

G2425.7.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for *access* to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

G2425.7.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a *factory-built fireplace* unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2425.7.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a *masonry fireplace* such that the *flue gases* are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

G2425.8 Appliances not required to be vented. The following *appliances* shall not be required to be vented:

1. Ranges.
2. Built-in domestic cooking units *listed* and marked for optional venting.
3. Hot plates and laundry stoves.
4. *Type 1 clothes dryers* (*Type 1 clothes dryers* shall be exhausted in accordance with the requirements of Section G2439).
5. Refrigerators.
6. Counter *appliances*.
7. Room heaters *listed* for unvented use.

Where the *appliances* listed in Items 5 through 7 above are installed so that the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 W/m^3) of volume of the room or space in which such *appliances* are installed, one or more shall be provided with venting *systems* or other *approved* means for conveying the *vent gases* to the outdoor atmosphere so that the aggregate input rating of the remaining *unvented appliances* does not exceed 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 W/m^3). Where the room or space in which the *appliance* is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

G2425.9 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a *masonry chimney* flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the *chimney* flue.

G2425.10 Connections to exhauster. *Appliance* connections to a *chimney* or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be sealed to prevent flue-gas leakage as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

G2425.11 Masonry chimneys. *Masonry chimneys* utilized to vent *appliances* shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the *appliances* being vented and Section G2427.

G2425.12 Residential and low-heat appliances flue lining systems. *Flue lining* systems for use with residential-type and low-heat *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay *flue lining* complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay *flue lining* shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 10.
2. *Listed chimney* lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, *flue gases* and *condensate* at temperatures up to 1,800ºF (982ºC).

G2425.13 Category I appliance flue lining systems. *Flue lining* systems for use with Category I *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. *Flue lining* systems complying with Section G2425.12.
2. *Chimney* lining systems *listed* and *labeled* for use with gas *appliances* with *draft hoods* and other Category I gas *appliances listed* and *labeled* for use with Type B vents.

G2425.14 Category II, III and IV appliance venting systems. The design, sizing and installation of vents for Category II, III and IV *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

G2425.15 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing *chimney* or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing *chimney* or vent during the process of a new installation, the *chimney* or vent shall comply with Sections G2425.15.1 through G2425.15.4.

G2425.15.1 Size. The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required *draft*. For Category I *appliances*, the resizing shall be in accordance with Section G2426.

G2425.15.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or *fireplace*. The *flue liner*, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of *combustion products*, including gases, moisture and creosote.

G2425.15.3 Cleanout. *Masonry chimney* flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest *chimney* inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

G2425.15.4 Clearances. *Chimney*s and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Chapter 10 and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: *Masonry chimneys* without the required air-space *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system *listed* for use in *chimneys* with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than that permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

G2425.15.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 10.

SECTION G2426
VENTS

G2426.1 General. Vents, except as provided in Section G2427.7, shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Type B and BW vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 441. Type L vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641. Vents for Category II and III *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with UL 1738. Plastic vents for Category IV *appliances* shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled* where such vents are as specified by the *appliance* manufacturer and are installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

G2426.2 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect *appliances* to the vertical *chimney* or vent, except where the *chimney* or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*. Vent *connector* size, material, construction and installation shall be in accordance with Section G2427.

G2426.3 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table G2427.4.

G2426.4 Insulation shield. Where type B, BW and L vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall not be less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2426.5 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions and Section G2427.

G2426.6 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

G2426.7 Protection against physical damage. In *concealed locations*, where a vent is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the vent shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575-inch (1.463 mm) (16 gage) shall cover the area of the vent where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

G2426.7.1 Door swing. Appliance and equipment vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminal. Door stops or closures shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION G2427
VENTING OF APPLIANCES

G2427.1 (503.1) General. The venting of appliances shall be in accordance with Sections G2427.2 through G2427.16.

G2427.2 Venting systems required. Except as permitted in Sections G2427.2.1, G2427.2.2 and G2425.8, all *appliances* shall be connected to *venting systems*.

G2427.2.1 Direct-vent appliances. *Listed direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section G2427.8, Item 3.

G2427.2.2 Appliances with integral vents. *Appliances* incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section G2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

G2427.3 Design and construction. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to convey all flue and *vent gases* to the outdoors.

G2427.3.1 Appliance draft requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the *draft* requirements of the *appliance* in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.3.2 Design and construction. *Appliances* required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Sections G2427.4 through G2427.16.

G2427.3.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical *draft* systems shall comply with the following:

1. Mechanical *draft* systems shall be *listed* and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for both the *appliance* and the mechanical *draft* system.
2. *Appliances* requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of mechanical *draft* systems of either forced or induced *draft* design.
3. Forced *draft* systems and all portions of induced *draft* systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or *vent gases* into a building.
4. *Vent connectors* serving *appliances* vented by natural *draft* shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical *draft* systems operating under positive pressure.
5. Where a mechanical *draft* system is employed, provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the *main burners* when the *draft* system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the *appliance* for safe performance.
6. The exit terminals of mechanical *draft* systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above finished ground level where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in Section G2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

G2427.3.4 Air ducts and furnace plenums. *Venting systems* shall not extend into or pass through any fabricated air duct or *furnace plenum*.

G2427.3.5 Above-ceiling air-handling spaces. Where a venting system passes through an above-ceiling air-handling space or other nonducted portion of an air-handling system, the venting system shall conform to one of the following requirements:

1. The venting system shall be a *listed* special gas vent; other venting system serving a Category III or Category IV *appliance*; or other positive pressure vent, with joints sealed in accordance with the *appliance* or vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above-ceiling space.
3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

G2427.4 Type of venting system to be used. The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table G2427.4.

G2427.4.1 Plastic piping. Where plastic piping is used to vent an appliance, the appliance shall be listed for use with such venting materials and the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions shall identify the specific plastic piping material.

G2427.4.1.1 (IFGS) Plastic vent joints. Plastic *pipe* and fittings used to vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions. Where a primer is required, it shall be of a contrasting color or an ultraviolet primer in accordance with Section P2906.9.1.4.

G2427.4.2 Special gas vent. Special gas *vent* shall be *listed* and installed in accordance with the special gas *vent* manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.5 Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys. Masonry, metal and factory-built *chimneys* shall comply with Sections G2427.5.1 through G2427.5.9.

G2427.5.1 Factory-built chimneys. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Factory-built *chimneys* used to vent *appliances* that operate at a positive vent pressure shall be *listed* for such application.

G2427.5.2 Masonry chimneys. Masonry *chimneys* shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211 and shall be lined with *approved* clay *flue lining*, a *listed chimney* lining system or other *approved* material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1,800ºF (982ºC).

Exception: Masonry *chimney* flues serving *listed* gas *appliances* with *draft hoods*, Category I *appliances* and other gas *appliances listed* for use with Type B vents shall be permitted to be lined with a *chimney* lining system specifically *listed* for use only with such *appliances*. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's instructions. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This *chimney* liner is for *appliances* that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

G2427.5.3 Chimney termination. *Chimneys* for residential-type or low-heat *appliances* shall extend not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where they pass through a roof of a building and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). *Chimneys* for medium-heat *appliances* shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm). *Chimneys* shall extend not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.5.4 Size of chimneys. The effective area of a *chimney* venting system serving *listed appliances* with *draft hoods*, Category I *appliances*, and other *appliances listed* for use with Type B vents shall be determined in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section G2428.
2. For sizing an individual *chimney* venting system for a single *appliance* with a *draft hood*, the effective areas of the *vent connector* and *chimney* flue shall be not less than the area of the *appliance flue collar* or *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. For sizing a *chimney* venting system connected to two *appliances* with *draft hoods*, the effective area of the *chimney* flue shall be not less than the area of the larger *draft hood* outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the smallest *draft hood* outlet area.
4. *Chimney venting systems* using mechanical *draft* shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.
5. Other *approved* engineering methods.

G2427.5.5 Inspection of chimneys. Before replacing an existing *appliance* or connecting a vent *connector* to a *chimney*, the *chimney* passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and it shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or *fireplaces*.

G2427.5.5.1 Chimney lining. *Chimneys* shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211.

Exception: Where an existing chimney complies with Sections G2427.5.5 through G2427.5.5.3 and its sizing is in accordance with Section G2427.5.4, its continued use shall be allowed where the *appliance* vented by such *chimney* is replaced by an *appliance* of similar type, input rating and efficiency.

G2427.5.5.2 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be examined to determine if they will remain tightly closed when not in use.

G2427.5.5.3 Unsafe chimneys. Where inspection reveals that an existing *chimney* is not safe for the

TABLE G2427.4
TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM TO BE USED

APPLIANCES	TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM
Listed Category I *appliances* *Listed appliances* equipped with draft hood *Appliances* listed for use with Type B gas vent	Type B gas *vent* (Section G2427.6) *Chimney* (Section G2427.5) Single-wall metal pipe (Section G2427.7) *Listed* chimney lining system for gas venting (Section G2427.5.2) Special gas *vent* listed for these appliances (Section G2427.4.2)
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent (Sections G2427.6, G2436)
Category II *appliances*	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of *listed appliances* (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2)
Category III *appliances*	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of *listed appliances* (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2)
Category IV *appliances*	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of *listed appliances* (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2)
Unlisted *appliances*	Chimney (Section G2427.5)
Decorative *appliances* in vented fireplaces	Chimney
Direct-vent *appliances*	See Section G2427.2.1
Appliances with integral vent	See Section G2427.2.2

intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined or replaced with a vent or *chimney* to conform to NFPA 211 and it shall be suitable for the *appliances* to be vented.

G2427.5.6 Chimneys serving appliances burning other fuels. *Chimneys* serving *appliances* burning other fuels shall comply with Sections G2427.5.6.1 through G2427.5.6.4.

G2427.5.6.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a *chimney* flue serving a separate *appliance* designed to burn solid fuel.

G2427.5.6.2 Liquid fuel-burning appliances. Where one *chimney* flue serves gas *appliances* and liquid fuel-burning appliances, the appliances shall be connected through separate openings or shall be connected through a single opening where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the *chimney*. Where two or more openings are provided into one *chimney* flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the appliances are automatically controlled, they shall be equipped with *safety shutoff devices*.

G2427.5.6.3 Combination gas- and solid fuel-burning appliances. A combination gas- and solid fuel-burning *appliance* shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue where equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the *main burner* in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage. The *chimney* flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

G2427.5.6.4 Combination gas- and oil fuel-burning appliances. A *listed* combination gas- and oil fuel-burning *appliance* shall be permitted to be connected to a single *chimney* flue. The *chimney* flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

G2427.5.7 Support of chimneys. All portions of *chimneys* shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2427.5.8 Cleanouts. Where a *chimney* that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel-burning appliances is used with an *appliance* using *fuel gas*, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is at least 6 inches (152 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest *chimney* inlet opening.

G2427.5.9 Space surrounding lining or vent. The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas *vent* or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry *chimney* flue shall not be used to vent another *appliance*. The insertion of another liner or vent within the *chimney* as provided in this *code* and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions shall not be prohibited.

The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built *chimney* shall not be used to supply *combustion air*. Such space shall not be prohibited from supplying *combustion air* to *direct-vent appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning *fireplace* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.6 Gas vents. Gas vents shall comply with Sections G2427.6.1 through G2427.6.11. (See Section G2403, Definitions.)

G2427.6.1 Installation, general. Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.6.2 Type B-W vent capacity. A Type B-W gas vent shall have a listed capacity not less than that of the *listed vented wall furnace* to which it is connected.

G2427.6.3 Gas vent terminations. A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gas vents that are 12 inches (305 mm) or less in size and located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate above the roof in accordance with Figure G2427.6.3.
2. Gas vents that are over 12 inches (305 mm) in size or are located less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. As provided for direct-vent systems in Section G2427.2.1.
4. As provided for *appliances* with integral vents in Section G2427.2.2.
5. As provided for mechanical *draft* systems in Section G2427.3.3.

G2427.6.3.1 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are *listed* for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.6.4 Minimum height. A Type B or L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* or *flue collar*. A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall *furnace*.

G2427.6.5 Roof terminations. Gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble and terminate with a *listed* cap or *listed* roof assembly.

G2427.6.6 Forced air inlets. Gas vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

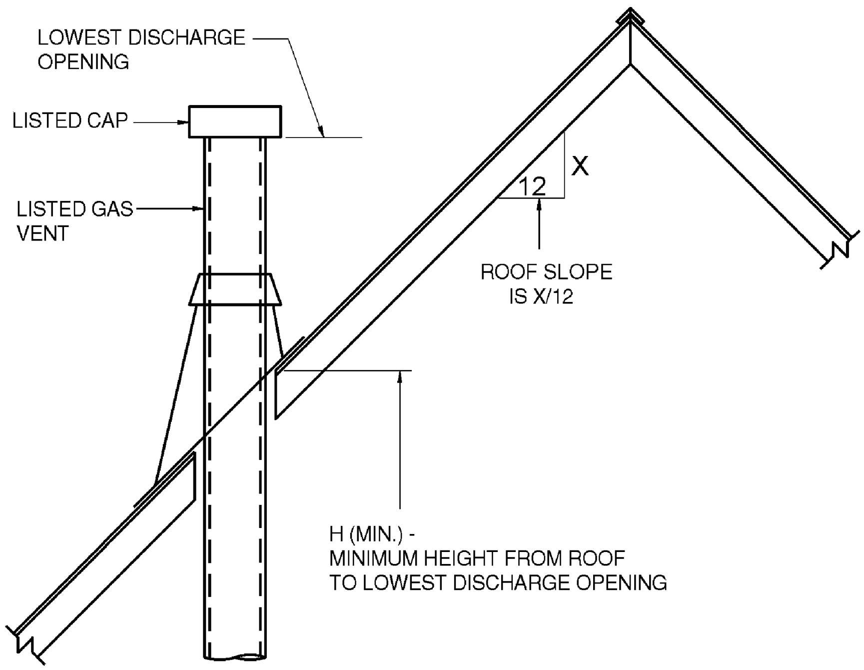
G2427.6.7 Exterior wall penetrations. A gas *vent* extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in Sections G2427.2.1 and G2427.3.3.

G2427.6.8 Size of gas vents. *Venting systems* shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods and the gas vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2427.6.8.1 Category I appliances. The sizing of *natural draft venting systems* serving one or more *listed appliances* equipped with a *draft hood* or *appliances listed* for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section G2428.
2. For sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft-hood-equipped *appliance*, the effective area of the vent *connector* and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the *appliance draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. For sizing a gas vent connected to two *appliances* with *draft hoods*, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger *draft hood* outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the smaller *draft hood* outlet area.
4. *Approved* engineering practices.

G2427.6.8.2 Vent offsets. Type B and L vents sized in accordance with Item 2 or 3 of Section G2427.6.8.1

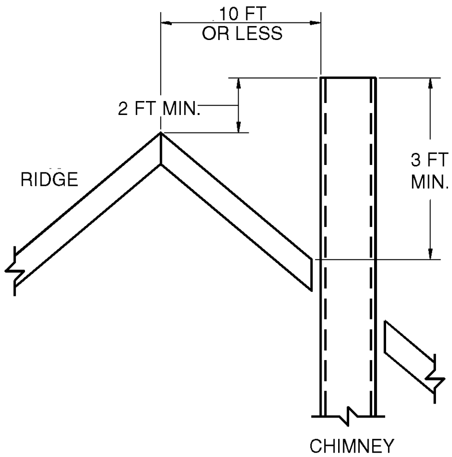


ROOF SLOPE	H (minimum) ft
Flat to $^{6}/_{12}$	1.0
Over $^{6}/_{12}$ to $^{7}/_{12}$	1.25
Over $^{7}/_{12}$ to $^{8}/_{12}$	1.5
Over $^{8}/_{12}$ to $^{9}/_{12}$	2.0
Over $^{9}/_{12}$ to $^{10}/_{12}$	2.5
Over $^{10}/_{12}$ to $^{11}/_{12}$	3.25
Over $^{11}/_{12}$ to $^{12}/_{12}$	4.0
Over $^{12}/_{12}$ to $^{14}/_{12}$	5.0
Over $^{14}/_{12}$ to $^{16}/_{12}$	6.0
Over $^{16}/_{12}$ to $^{18}/_{12}$	7.0
Over $^{18}/_{12}$ to $^{20}/_{12}$	7.5
Over $^{20}/_{12}$ to $^{21}/_{12}$	8.0

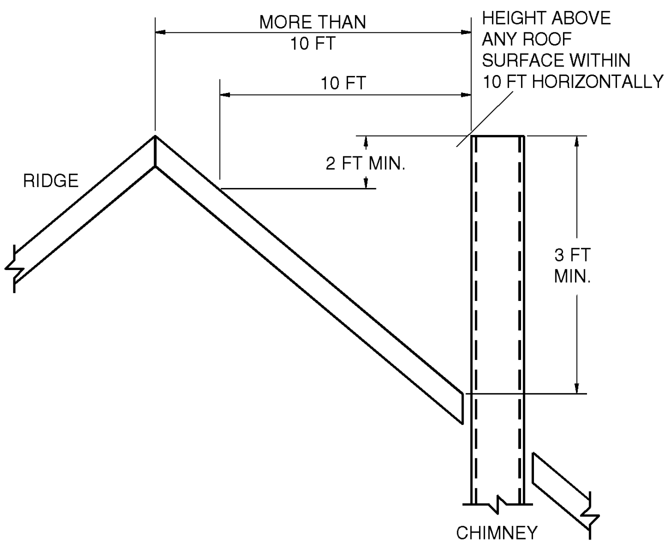
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE G2427.6.3
TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR GAS VENTS WITH LISTED CAPS 12 INCHES OR LESS IN SIZE AT LEAST 8 FEET FROM A VERTICAL WALL

(continued)



A. TERMINATION 10 FT OR LESS FROM RIDGE, WALL, OR PARAPET



B. TERMINATION MORE THAN 10 FT FROM RIDGE, WALL, OR PARAPET

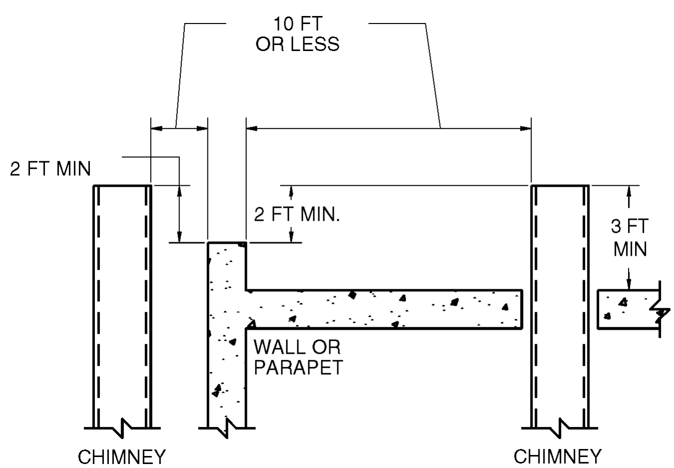


FIGURE G2427.6.3—continued
TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR GAS VENTS WITH LISTED CAPS 12 INCHES OR LESS IN SIZE AT LEAST 8 FEET FROM A VERTICAL WALL

shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad), except that a vent system having not more than one 60-degree (1.04 rad) *offset* shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent *connector* serving *draft hood*-equipped *appliances* shall be not greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.

G2427.6.8.3 Category II, III and IV appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. The sizing of plastic pipe that is specified by the appliance manufacturer as a venting material for Category II, III and IV appliances, shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.6.8.4 Mechanical draft. *Chimney venting systems* using mechanical *draft* shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

G2427.6.9 Support of gas vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2427.6.10 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the *vent connector* enters the gas vent. The determination of where such localities exist shall be made by the *code official*. The label shall read:

"This gas vent is for *appliances* that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

G2427.6.11 Fastener penetrations. Screws, rivets and other fasteners shall not penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents, except at the transition from an *appliance draft hood* outlet, a *flue collar* or a single-wall metal connector to a double-wall vent.

G2427.7 Single-wall metal pipe. Single-wall metal *pipe* vents shall comply with Sections G2427.7.1 through G2427.7.13.

G2427.7.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick, or other *approved*, noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material.

G2427.7.2 Cold climate. Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors for venting *appliances* in regions where the 99-percent winter design temperature is below 32ºF (0ºC).

G2427.7.3 Termination. Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*. Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). An *approved* cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe.

G2427.7.4 Limitations of use. Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the *appliance* is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outdoor atmosphere.

G2427.7.5 Roof penetrations. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble. Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above and 6 inches (152 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with Section G2427.7.7.

G2427.7.6 Installation. Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor. The installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall shall comply with Section G2427.7.7.

G2427.7.7 Single-wall penetrations of combustible walls. Single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

1. For *listed appliances* with *draft hoods* and *appliances listed* for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) of metal pipe in the open between the *draft hood* outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be permitted to be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
2. For unlisted *appliances* having *draft hoods*, the thimble shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
3. For residential and low-heat *appliances*, the thimble shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all *combustible material* in the wall shall be removed a sufficient distance from the metal pipe to provide the specified *clearance* from such metal pipe to *combustible material*. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

G2427.7.8 Clearances. Minimum *clearances* from single-wall metal pipe to *combustible material* shall be in accordance with Table G2427.10.5. The *clearance* from single-wall metal pipe to *combustible material* shall be permitted to be reduced where the *combustible material* is protected as specified for *vent connectors* in Table G2409.2.

G2427.7.9 Size of single-wall metal pipe. A venting system constructed of single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions:

1. For a draft-hood-equipped *appliance*, in accordance with Section G2428.
2. For a venting system for a single *appliance* with a *draft hood*, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall be not less than the area of the *appliance flue collar* or *draft hood* outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall not be greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

G2427.7.10 Pipe geometry. Any shaped single-wall metal pipe shall be permitted to be used, provided that its equivalent effective area is equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted, and provided that the minimum internal dimension of the pipe is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

G2427.7.11 Termination capacity. The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity of not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

G2427.7.12 Support of single-wall metal pipe. All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed.

G2427.7.13 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of Section G2427.6.10.

G2427.8 Venting system termination location. The location of venting system terminations shall comply with the following (see Appendix AC):

1. A mechanical *draft* venting system shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced-air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

   Exceptions:

   1. This provision shall not apply to the *combustion air* intake of a direct-vent *appliance*.
   2. This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of *listed* outdoor *appliances*.

2. A mechanical *draft* venting system, excluding *direct*-vent *appliances*, shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, operable window or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
3. The vent terminal of a *direct*-vent *appliance* with an input of 10,000 *Btu* per hour (3 kW) or less shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from any air opening into a building. Such an *appliance* with an input over 10,000 *Btu* per hour (3 kW) but not over 50,000 *Btu* per hour (14.7 kW) shall be installed with a 9-inch (230 mm) vent termination *clearance*, and an *appliance* with an input over 50,000 Btu per hour (14.7 kW) shall have not less than a 12-inch (305 mm) vent termination *clearance*. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above grade finished ground level.
4. Through-the-wall vents for Category II and IV *appliances* and noncategorized condensing *appliances* shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where *condensate* or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of *regulators, relief valves* or other *equipment*. Where local experience indicates that *condensate* is a problem with Category I and III *appliances*, this provision shall also apply. Drains for *condensate* shall be installed in accordance with the appliance and vent manufacturer's installation instructions.
5. Vent systems for Category IV appliances that terminate through an outside wall of a building and discharge flue gases perpendicular to the adjacent wall shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from an operable opening in an adjacent building. This requirement shall not apply to vent terminals that are 2 feet (607 mm) or more above or 25 feet (7620 mm) or more below operable openings.

   Exception: If manufacturer's installation instructions allow closer clearances, those instructions can be followed.

6. Externally mounted appliances. Vent systems for externally wall-mounted appliances shall be located as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2427.9 Condensation drainage. Provisions shall be made to collect and dispose of *condensate* from *venting systems* serving Category II and IV *appliances* and noncategorized condensing *appliances* in accordance with Section G2427.8, Item 4. Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provisions shall be made to drain off and dispose of *condensate* from *venting systems* serving Category I and III *appliances* in accordance with Section G2427.8, Item 4.

G2427.10 Vent connectors for Category I appliances. Vent *connectors* for Category I *appliances* shall comply with Sections G2427.10.1 through G2427.10.13.

G2427.10.1 Where required. A vent *connector* shall be used to connect an *appliance* to a gas vent, *chimney* or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, *chimney* or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the *appliance*.

G2427.10.2 Materials. *Vent connectors* shall be constructed in accordance with Sections G2427.10.2.1 through G2427.10.2.4.

G2427.10.2.1 General. A *vent connector* shall be made of noncombustible corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the *appliance* and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage.

G2427.10.2.2 Vent connectors located in unconditioned areas. Where the *vent connector* used for an *appliance* having a *draft hood* or a Category I *appliance* is located in or passes through attics, crawl spaces or other unconditioned spaces, that portion of the *vent con-*

nector shall be *listed* Type B, Type L or listed vent material having equivalent insulation properties.

Exception: Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building in areas having a local 99-percent winter design temperature of 5ºF (-15ºC) or higher shall be permitted to be used in unconditioned spaces other than attics and crawl spaces.

G2427.10.2.3 Residential-type appliance connectors. Where *vent connectors* for residential-type *appliances* are not installed in attics or other unconditioned spaces, connectors for *listed appliances* having *draft hoods*, *appliances* having *draft hoods* and equipped with *listed conversion burners* and Category I *appliances* shall be one of the following:

1. Type B or L vent material.
2. Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
3. Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027 inch (0.69 mm) thick.
4. Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012 inch (0.31 mm) thick.
5. Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of Item 2, 3 or 4.
6. A *listed* vent *connector*.

Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: *Listed* insulated *vent connectors* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.10.2.4 Low-heat appliance. A *vent connector* for a nonresidential, low-heat *appliance* shall be a factory-built *chimney* section or steel *pipe* having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table G2427.10.2.4. Factory-built *chimney* sections shall be joined together in accordance with the *chimney* manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE G2427.10.2.4
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR GALVANIZED STEEL VENT CONNECTORS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
Over 16	0.056

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

G2427.10.3 Size of vent connector. *Vent connectors* shall be sized in accordance with Sections G2427.10.3.1 through G2427.3.5.

G2427.10.3.1 Single draft hood and fan-assisted. A *vent connector* for an *appliance* with a single *draft hood* or for a Category I fan-assisted *combustion* system *appliance* shall be sized and installed in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

G2427.10.3.2 Multiple draft hood. For a single *appliance* having more than one *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the *appliance* manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with *approved* engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the *flue collars* or *draft hood* outlets and the *vent connectors* shall have a minimum 1-foot (305 mm) rise.

G2427.10.3.3 Multiple appliances. Where two or more *appliances* are connected to a common *vent* or *chimney*, each *vent connector* shall be sized in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternative method applicable only when all of the *appliances* are *draft hood* equipped, each *vent connector* shall have an effective area not less than the area of the *draft hood* outlet of the *appliance* to which it is connected.

G2427.10.3.4 Common connector/manifold. Where two or more *appliances* are vented through a common *vent connector* or vent manifold, the common *vent connector* or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and the required *clearance* to *combustible materials* and shall be sized in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only where there are two *draft hood*-equipped *appliances*, the effective area of the common *vent connector* or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger *vent connector* plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *flue collar* outlet.

G2427.10.3.5 Size increase. Where the size of a *vent connector* is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the *appliance* input, the size increase shall be made at the *appliance draft hood* outlet.

G2427.10.4 Two or more appliances connected to a single vent or chimney. Where two or more *vent connectors* enter a common gas vent, *chimney* flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or *clearance* to *combustible material*. *Vent connectors* serving Category I *appliances* shall not be connected to any portion of a *mechanical draft* system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or IV *appliances*.

G2427.10.4.1 Two or more openings. Where two or more openings are provided into one *chimney* flue or vent, the openings shall be at different levels, or the connectors shall be attached to the vertical portion of the *chimney* or vent at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less relative to the vertical.

G2427.10.5 Clearance. Minimum *clearances* from *vent connectors* to *combustible material* shall be in accordance with Table G2427.10.5.

Exception: The *clearance* between a *vent connector* and *combustible material* shall be permitted to be reduced where the *combustible material* is protected as specified for *vent connectors* in Table G2409.2.

G2427.10.6 Joints. Joints between sections of connector *piping* and connections to *flue collars* and *draft hood* outlets shall be fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Sheet metal screws.
2. *Vent connectors* of *listed* vent material assembled and connected to *flue collars* or *draft hood* outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.
3. Other *approved* means.

G2427.10.7 Slope. A *vent connector* shall be installed without dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or *chimney* at least $^1/_4$ inch per foot (21 mm/m).

Exception: *Vent connectors* attached to a mechanical *draft* system installed in accordance with the *appliance* and *draft* system manufacturers' instructions.

G2427.10.8 Length of vent connector. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent except for engineered systems. The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent except for engineered systems.

G2427.10.9 Support. A *vent connector* shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain *clearances* and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

G2427.10.10 Chimney connection. Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal *chimney*, the *vent connector* shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the *chimney* flue (see Section G2425.9).

G2427.10.11 Inspection. The entire length of a *vent connector* shall be provided with *ready access* for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

G2427.10.12 Fireplaces. A *vent connector* shall not be connected to a *chimney* flue serving a *fireplace* unless the *fireplace* flue opening is permanently sealed.

G2427.10.13 Passage through ceilings, floors or walls. Single-wall metal pipe connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling except as permitted by Section G2427.7.4.

G2427.11 Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances. *Vent connectors* for Category II, III and IV *appliances* shall be as specified for the *venting systems* in accordance with Section G2427.4.

G2427.12 Draft hoods and draft controls. The installation of *draft hoods* and draft controls shall comply with Sections G2427.12.1 through G2427.12.7.

G2427.12.1 Appliances requiring draft hoods. *Vented appliances* shall be installed with *draft hoods*.

Exception: Dual oven-type combination ranges; *direct-vent appliances*; fan-assisted *combustion* system *appliances*; *appliances* requiring *chimney draft* for operation; single firebox boilers equipped with *conversion burners* with inputs greater than 400,000 *Btu* per hour (117 kW); *appliances* equipped with blast, power or pressure *burners* that are not *listed* for use with *draft hoods*; and *appliances* designed for forced venting.

G2427.12.2 Installation. A *draft hood* supplied with or forming a part of a *listed vented appliance* shall be installed without *alteration*, exactly as furnished and specified by the *appliance* manufacturer.

TABLE G2427.10.5[a]
CLEARANCES FOR CONNECTORS

APPLIANCE	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL			
	Listed Type B gas vent material	Listed Type L vent material	Single-wall metal pipe	Factory-built chimney sections
Listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents	As listed	As listed	6 inches	As listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 inches	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents	Not permitted	As listed	9 inches	As listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	Not permitted	As listed	As listed	As listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	Not permitted	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential and low-heat appliances other than above	Not permitted	9 inches	18 inches	As listed
Medium-heat appliances	Not permitted	Not permitted	36 inches	As listed

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These clearances shall apply unless the manufacturer's installation instructions for a listed appliance or connector specify different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

G2427.12.2.1 Draft hood required. If a *draft hood* is not supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer where one is required, a *draft hood* shall be installed, shall be of a *listed* or *approved* type and, in the absence of other instructions, shall be of the same size as the *appliance flue* collar. Where a *draft hood* is required with a *conversion burner*, it shall be of a *listed* or *approved* type.

G2427.12.2.2 Special design draft hood. Where it is determined that a *draft hood* of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the installation shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the *appliance* manufacturer and shall be *approved*.

G2427.12.3 Draft control devices. Where a *draft control* device is part of the *appliance* or is supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the *flue collar* of the *appliance* or as near to the *appliance* as practical.

G2427.12.4 Additional devices. *Appliances* requiring a controlled *chimney draft* shall be permitted to be equipped with a *listed* double-acting barometric-*draft regulator* installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2427.12.5 Location. *Draft hoods* and *barometric draft regulators* shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or *regulator* and the *combustion air* supply.

G2427.12.6 Positioning. *Draft hoods* and *draft regulators* shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the *relief opening* is not obstructed by any part of the *appliance* or adjacent construction. The *appliance* and its *draft hood* shall be located so that the *relief opening* is accessible for checking *vent* operation.

G2427.12.7 Clearance. A *draft hood* shall be located so its *relief opening* is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from any surface except that of the *appliance* it serves and the venting system to which the *draft hood* is connected. Where a greater or lesser *clearance* is indicated on the *appliance* label, the *clearance* shall be not less than that specified on the label. Such *clearances* shall not be reduced.

G2427.13 Manually operated dampers. A manually operated *damper* shall not be placed in the vent *connector* for any *appliance*. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated *dampers*.

G2427.14 Automatically operated vent dampers. An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a *listed* type.

G2427.15 Obstructions. Devices that retard the flow of *vent gases* shall not be installed in a *vent connector*, *chimney*, or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions:

1. *Draft regulators* and safety *controls* specifically listed for installation in *venting systems* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. *Approved draft regulators* and safety *controls* that are designed and installed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.
3. Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. *Approved* economizers, heat reclaimers and recuperators installed in *venting systems* of *appliances* not required to be equipped with *draft hoods*, provided that the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Sections G2427.3 and G2427.3.1 is obtained.
5. Vent dampers serving *listed appliances* installed in accordance with Sections G2428.2.1 and G2428.3.1 or other *approved* engineering methods.

G2427.16 (IFGS) Outside wall penetrations. Where vents, including those for *direct-vent appliances*, penetrate outside walls of buildings, the annular spaces around such penetrations shall be permanently sealed using *approved* materials to prevent entry of *combustion products* into the building.

SECTION G2428
SIZING OF CATEGORY I
APPLIANCE VENTING SYSTEMS

G2428.1 Definitions. The following definitions apply to the tables in this section.

APPLIANCE CATEGORIZED VENT DIAMETER/AREA. The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I *appliances* to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION SYSTEM. An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of *combustion* through the *combustion chamber* or heat exchanger.

FAN Min. The minimum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

FAN Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

NAT Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

FAN + FAN. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted *appliances* attached to the common vent.

FAN + NAT. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted *appliances* and one or more Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliances* attached to the common vent.

NA. Vent configuration is not permitted due to potential for *condensate* formation or pressurization of the venting system, or not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

NAT + NAT. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliances* attached to the common vent.

G2428.2 Application of single appliance vent Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2). The application of Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections G2428.2.1 through G2428.2.17.

G2428.2.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section G2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving *listed appliances* with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the "NAT Max" column.
2. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the *appliance* were a fan-assisted *appliance*, using the "FAN Min" column to determine the minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "FAN Min" is "NA," the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

G2428.2.2 Minimum size. Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the *appliance draft hood outlet* or *flue collar*, the smaller size shall be permitted to be used provided all of the following requirements are met:

1. The total vent height (H) is at least 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. Vents for *appliance draft hood* outlets or *flue collars* 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
3. Vents for *appliance draft hood* outlets or *flue collars* larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
4. The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted *appliance* is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum table capacity).
5. The *draft hood* outlet is greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) vent to a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) *draft hood* outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted *appliances*.

G2428.2.3 Vent offsets. Single-*appliance* venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall not have elbows in the *venting system*. Single-*appliance* venting configurations with lateral lengths include two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. Where multiple *offsets* occur in a vent, the total lateral length of all *offsets* combined shall not exceed that specified in Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2).

G2428.2.4 Zero lateral. Zero (0) lateral (L) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet *draft hood* or *flue collar*.

G2428.2.5 High-altitude installations. Sea- level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

G2428.2.6 Multiple input rate appliances. For *appliances* with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest *appliance* input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest *appliance* rating input.

G2428.2.7 Liner system sizing and connections. *Listed* corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems in masonry *chimneys* shall be sized by using Table G2428.2(1) or G2428.2(2) for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table G2428.2(1) or G2428.2(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Section G2428.2.3. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner.

Connections between *chimney* liners and listed double-wall connectors shall be made with listed adapters designed for such purpose.

G2428.2.8 Vent area and diameter. Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the *vent connector*, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed *appliance* categorized vent area, *flue collar* area, or *draft hood* outlet area unless designed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

G2428.2.9 Chimney and vent locations. Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure G2427.6.3 and where vents terminate in accordance with Section G2427.6.3, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8.

G2428.2.10 Corrugated vent connector size. Corrugated *vent connectors* shall be not smaller than the listed *appliance* categorized *vent* diameter, *flue collar* diameter, or *draft hood* outlet diameter.

G2428.2.11 Vent connector size limitation. *Vent connectors* shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed *appliance* categorized vent diameter, *flue collar* diameter or *draft hood* outlet diameter.

G2428.2.12 Component commingling. In a single run of vent or *vent connector*, different diameters and types of vent and connector components shall be permitted to be used, provided that all such sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

G2428.2.13 Draft hood conversion accessories. *Draft hood* conversion accessories for use with *masonry chimneys* venting listed Category I fan-assisted *appliances* shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for such listed accessories.

G2428.2.14 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between the table entries.

G2428.2.15 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

G2428.2.16 Engineering calculations. For *vent* heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate *vent* capacities.

G2428.2.17 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table entries shall be used for FAN Max and NAT Max column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN MIN column values.

G2428.3 Application of multiple appliance vent Tables G2428.3(1) through G2428.3(4). The application of Tables G2428.3(1) through G2428.3(4) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections G2428.3.1 through G2428.3.23.

G2428.3.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section G2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed *appliances* with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the *vent connector* shall be determined using the NAT Max column.
2. The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or *chimney* shall be determined using the FAN+NAT column when the second *appliance* is a fan-assisted *appliance*, or the NAT+NAT column when the second *appliance* is equipped with a *draft hood*.
3. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the *appliance* were a fan-assisted *appliance*.
   3.1. The minimum capacity of the *vent connector* shall be determined using the FAN Min column.
   3.2. The FAN+FAN column shall be used when the second *appliance* is a fan-assisted *appliance*, and the FAN+NAT column shall be used when the second *appliance* is equipped with a *draft hood*, to determine whether the vertical vent or *chimney* configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

G2428.3.2 Connector length limit. The *vent connector* shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Except as provided in Section G2428.3.3, the maximum *vent connector* horizontal length shall be $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table G2428.3.2.

TABLE G2428.3.2
MAXIMUM VENT CONNECTOR LENGTH

CONNECTOR DIAMETER (inches)	CONNECTOR MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL LENGTH (feet)
3	$4^1/_2$
4	6
5	$7^1/_2$
6	9
7	$10^1/_2$
8	12
9	$13^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

G2428.3.3 Connectors with longer lengths. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Section G2428.3.2 are permitted under the following conditions:

1. The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the *vent connector* shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length allowed by Section G2428.3.2. For example, the maximum length listed in Table G2428.3.2 for a 4-inch (102 mm) connector is 6 feet (1829 mm). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) but not exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum vent *connector* capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3658 mm), but not exceeding 18 feet (5486 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).
2. For a connector serving a fan-assisted *appliance*, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single-*appliance* table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table G2428.2(1) shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table G2428.2(2) shall be used. The height (*H*) and lateral (*L*) shall be mea-

sured according to the procedures for a single-*appliance* vent, as if the other *appliances* were not present.

G2428.3.4 Vent connector manifold. Where the *vent connectors* are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10-percent reduction (0.90 × maximum common vent capacity) to the common vent capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common *vent connector* manifold (L_m) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common *vent connector* manifold diameter (*D*).

G2428.3.5 Common vertical vent offset. Where the common vertical vent is *offset*, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with Section G2428.3.6. The horizontal length of the common vent *offset* (L_o) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter (*D*). Where multiple *offsets* occur in a common vent, the total horizontal length of all *offsets* combined shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm/mm per) of the common vent diameter (*D*).

G2428.3.6 Elbows in vents. For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad) in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

G2428.3.7 Elbows in connectors. The *vent connector* capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum *vent connector* capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum *vent connector* capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

G2428.3.8 Common vent minimum size. The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector.

G2428.3.9 Common vent fittings. At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced-size openings at the point of connection of *appliance vent connectors*.

G2428.3.9.1 Tee and wye fittings. Tee and wye fittings connected to a common gas vent shall be considered as part of the common gas vent and shall be constructed of materials consistent with that of the common gas vent.

G2428.3.10 High-altitude installations. Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

G2428.3.11 Connector rise measurement. Connector rise (*R*) for each *appliance connector* shall be measured from the *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar* to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together.

G2428.3.12 Vent height measurement. For multiple *appliances* all located on one floor, available total height (H) shall be measured from the highest *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar* up to the level of the outlet of the common vent.

G2428.3.13 Vertical vent maximum size. Where two or more *appliances* are connected to a vertical vent or *chimney*, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or *chimney* shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed *appliance* categorized vent areas, *flue collar* area, or *draft hood* outlet area unless designed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

G2428.3.14 Multiple input rate appliances. For *appliances* with more than one input rate, the minimum *vent connector* capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest *appliance* input rating, and the maximum *vent connector* capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest *appliance* input rating.

G2428.3.15 Liner system sizing and connections. Listed, corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems in masonry *chimneys* shall be sized by using Table G2428.3(1) or G2428.3(2) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table G2428.3(1) or G2428.3(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Sections G2428.3.5 and G2428.3.6. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner. Where double-wall connectors are required, tee and wye fittings used to connect to the common vent *chimney* liner shall be listed double-wall fittings. Connections between *chimney* liners and listed double-wall fittings shall be made with listed adapter fittings designed for such purpose.

G2428.3.16 Chimney and vent location. Tables G2428.3(1), G2428.3(2), G2428.3(3) and G2428.3(4) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or *listed* chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure G2427.6.3 and where vents terminate in accordance with Section G2427.6.3, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8.

G2428.3.17 Connector maximum and minimum size. *Vent connectors* shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed *appliance* categorized vent diameter, *flue collar* diameter or *draft hood* outlet diameter. *Vent connectors* for draft-hood-equipped *appliances* shall not be smaller than the *draft hood* outlet diameter. Where a *vent connector* size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted *appliance(s)* is smaller than the *flue collar* diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

1. *Vent connectors* for fan-assisted *appliance flue collars* 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 inches to 10 inches (305 mm to 254 mm) is a one-size reduction] and those larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 inches to 20 inches (610 mm to 508 mm) is a two-size reduction].
2. The fan-assisted *appliance(s)* is common vented with a draft-hood-equipped *appliance(s)*.
3. The vent *connector* has a smooth interior wall.

G2428.3.18 Component commingling. All combinations of pipe sizes, single-wall and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided that all of the appropriate tables permit all of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for *vent connectors* within the same venting system, the common vent must be sized using Table G2428.3(2) or G2428.3(4), as appropriate.

G2428.3.19 Draft hood conversion accessories. *Draft hood* conversion accessories for use with *masonry chimneys* venting listed Category I fan-assisted *appliances* shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for such listed accessories.

G2428.3.20 Multiple sizes permitted. Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

G2428.3.21 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries.

G2428.3.22 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

G2428.3.23 Engineering calculations. For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

G2428.3.24 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables G2428.3(1) through G2428.3(4), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table shall be used for FAN Max and NAT Max column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN Min column values.

SECTION G2429 DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT, MECHANICAL VENT AND VENTILATION/EXHAUST HOOD VENTING

G2429.1 General. The installation of direct-vent and integral vent *appliances* shall be in accordance with Section G2427. Mechanical *venting systems* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section G2427.

SECTION G2430 FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

G2430.1 Listing. Factory-built *chimneys* for building heating *appliances* producing *flue gases* having a temperature not greater than 1,000ºF (538ºC), measured at the entrance to the *chimney*, shall be listed and *labeled* in accordance with UL 103 and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2430.2 Support. Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

SECTION G2431 GENERAL

G2431.1 Scope. Sections G2432 through G2454 shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the *appliances* and *equipment* specifically identified herein.

SECTION G2432 DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN FIREPLACES

G2432.1 General. Decorative *appliances* for installation in *approved* solid fuel-burning *fireplaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.60 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Manually lighted natural gas decorative *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84.

G2432.2 Flame safeguard device. Decorative *appliances* for installation in *approved* solid fuel-burning *fireplaces*, with the exception of those tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84, shall utilize a direct ignition device, an ignitor or a *pilot* flame to ignite the fuel at the *main burner*, and shall be equipped with a *flame safeguard* device. The *flame safeguard* device shall automatically shut off the fuel supply to a *main burner* or group of *burners* when the means of ignition of such *burners* becomes inoperative.

TABLE G2428.2(1) [504.2(1)]
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	78	46	0	152	86	0	251	141	0	375	205	0	524	285	0	698	370	0	897	470
	2	13	51	36	18	97	67	27	157	105	32	232	157	44	321	217	53	425	285	63	543	370
	4	21	49	34	30	94	64	39	153	103	50	227	153	66	316	211	79	419	279	93	536	362
	6	25	46	32	36	91	61	47	149	100	59	223	149	78	310	205	93	413	273	110	530	354
8	0	0	84	50	0	165	94	0	276	155	0	415	235	0	583	320	0	780	415	0	1,006	537
	2	12	57	40	16	109	75	25	178	120	28	263	180	42	365	247	50	483	322	60	619	418
	5	23	53	38	32	103	71	42	171	115	53	255	173	70	356	237	83	473	313	99	607	407
	8	28	49	35	39	98	66	51	164	109	64	247	165	84	347	227	99	463	303	117	596	396
10	0	0	88	53	0	175	100	0	295	166	0	447	255	0	631	345	0	847	450	0	1,096	585
	2	12	61	42	17	118	81	23	194	129	26	289	195	40	402	273	48	533	355	57	684	457
	5	23	57	40	32	113	77	41	187	124	52	280	188	68	392	263	81	522	346	95	671	446
	10	30	51	36	41	104	70	54	176	115	67	267	175	88	376	245	104	504	330	122	651	427
15	0	0	94	58	0	191	112	0	327	187	0	502	285	0	716	390	0	970	525	0	1,263	682
	2	11	69	48	15	136	93	20	226	150	22	339	225	38	475	316	45	633	414	53	815	544
	5	22	65	45	30	130	87	39	219	142	49	330	217	64	463	300	76	620	403	90	800	529
	10	29	59	41	40	121	82	51	206	135	64	315	208	84	445	288	99	600	386	116	777	507
	15	35	53	37	48	112	76	61	195	128	76	301	198	98	429	275	115	580	373	134	755	491
20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1,057	575	0	1,384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537

(continued)

TABLE G2428.2(1) [504.2(1)]—continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1,173	650	0	1,548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1,072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1,055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1,028	668
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1,002	648
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA	88	214	NA	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	363	0	932	518	0	1,297	708	0	1,730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1,276	813
	5	20	82	NA	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1,259	798
	10	26	76	NA	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1,230	773
	15	59	70	NA	42	158	NA	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1,203	747
	20	NA	NA	NA	50	149	NA	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1,176	722
	30	NA	NA	NA	69	131	NA	84	250	NA	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1,125	670

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE G2428.2(2) [504.2(2)]
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1,118	569	537	1,639	849
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648
	4	NA	NA	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638
	6	NA	NA	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1,002	536	360	1,257	658	521	1,852	967
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1,120	743
	5	NA	NA	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1,104	730
	8	NA	NA	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1,089	715
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1,093	584	351	1,373	718	507	2,031	1,057
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1,242	848
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1,224	825
	10	NA	NA	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1,194	788
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1,259	681	336	1,591	838	488	2,374	1,237
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1,015	673	457	1,491	983
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1,469	963
	10	NA	NA	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1,433	928
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1,399	894
20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1,053	573	238	1,379	750	326	1,751	927	473	2,631	1,346
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1,146	754	443	1,689	1,098
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	596	381	1,126	734	547	1,665	1,074
	10	NA	NA	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1,092	702	646	1,626	1,037
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1,060	677	730	1,587	1,005
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1,028	651	808	1,550	973

(continued)

TABLE G2428.2(2) [504.2(2)]—continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1,168	647	229	1,542	852	312	1,971	1,056	454	2,996	1,545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1,069	698	296	1,346	863	424	1,999	1,308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1,049	684	366	1,324	846	524	1,971	1,283
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1,017	662	440	1,287	821	620	1,927	1,234
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1,251	794	702	1,884	1,205
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	181	223	NA	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1,216	768	780	1,841	1,166
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	389	477	305	461	670	426	541	895	574	704	1,147	720	937	1,759	1,101
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1,292	704	220	1,724	948	295	2,223	1,189	428	3,432	1,818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1,273	811	280	1,615	1,007	401	2,426	1,509
	5	48	80	NA	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1,252	795	347	1,591	991	496	2,396	1,490
	10	NA	NA	NA	89	160	NA	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1,217	765	418	1,551	963	589	2,347	1,455
	15	NA	NA	NA	112	148	NA	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1,183	736	481	1,512	934	668	2,299	1,421
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	176	257	NA	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1,150	708	544	1,473	906	741	2,251	1,387
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	315	376	NA	373	573	NA	442	809	502	521	1,086	649	674	1,399	848	892	2,159	1,318

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE G2428.3(1) [504.3(1)]
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER (*D*)—inches																				
	4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1,035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1,209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1,164	977	705	1,451	1,188	860

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE G2428.3(2) [504.3(2)]
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	71	NA	NA	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286
	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385
8	1	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299
	2	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355
	3	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400
10	1	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308
	2	NA	NA	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368
	3	NA	NA	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413
15	1	NA	NA	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324
	2	NA	NA	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387
	3	NA	NA	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																				
	4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	78	64	NA	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407
8	NA	87	71	NA	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460
10	NA	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1,013	808	626
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1,183	952	723
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1,139	954	689	1,418	1,157	838

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE G2428.3(3) [504.3(3)] MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319
	2	26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378
	3	27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439
8	1	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335
	2	26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394
	3	27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452
10	1	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348
	2	26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407
	3	27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463
15	1	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375
	2	25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432
	3	26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486
20	1	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397
	2	25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1,011	452
	3	26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1,067	505

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	74	25	NA	119	46	NA	178	71	NA	257	103	NA	351	143	NA	458	188	NA	582	246	1,041	853	NA
8	NA	80	28	NA	130	53	NA	193	82	NA	279	119	NA	384	163	NA	501	218	724	636	278	1,144	937	408
10	NA	84	31	NA	138	56	NA	207	90	NA	299	131	NA	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1,226	1,010	454
15	NA	NA	36	NA	152	67	NA	233	106	NA	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1,374	1,156	546
20	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	75	NA	250	122	NA	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1,513	1,286	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	270	137	NA	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1,062	969	496	1,702	1,473	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	620	328	879	831	461	1,165	1,089	606	1,905	1,692	922

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE G2428.3(4) [504.3(4)]
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Single-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER (*D*)—inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	39	NA	NA	66	179	191	100	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	84	186	227	123	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	61	134	153	97	193	258	142	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437
8	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	40	NA	NA	68	195	208	103	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	137	139	85	202	240	125	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	143	156	98	210	264	145	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450
10	1	NA	NA	22	NA	NA	41	130	151	70	202	225	106	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343
	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	53	136	150	86	210	255	128	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403
	3	NA	NA	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459
15	1	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	43	129	151	73	199	271	112	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366
	2	NA	NA	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424
	3	NA	NA	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479
20	1	NA	NA	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	347
	2	NA	NA	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443
	3	NA	NA	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1,042	496

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	NA	25	NA	118	45	NA	176	71	NA	255	102	NA	348	142	NA	455	187	NA	579	245	NA	846	NA
8	NA	NA	28	NA	128	52	NA	190	81	NA	276	118	NA	380	162	NA	497	217	NA	633	277	1,136	928	405
10	NA	NA	31	NA	136	56	NA	205	89	NA	295	129	NA	405	175	NA	532	234	171	680	300	1,216	1,000	450
15	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	66	NA	230	105	NA	335	150	NA	400	210	677	602	280	866	772	360	1,359	1,139	540
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	74	NA	247	120	NA	362	170	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415	1,495	1,264	640
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	135	NA	398	195	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1,052	957	490	1,682	1,447	740
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1,152	1,076	600	1,879	1,672	910

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

G2432.3 Prohibited installations. Decorative *appliances* for installation in *fireplaces* shall not be installed where prohibited by Section G2406.2.

SECTION G2433
LOG LIGHTERS

G2433.1 General. Log lighters shall be tested in accordance with CSA 8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2434
VENTED GAS FIREPLACES (DECORATIVE APPLIANCES)

G2434.1 General. Vented gas *fireplaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.50, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2.

G2434.2 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

SECTION G2435
VENTED GAS FIREPLACE HEATERS

G2435.1 General. Vented gas *fireplace* heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.88 and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2.

SECTION G2436
VENTED WALL FURNACES

G2436.1 General. *Vented wall furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2436.2 Venting. *Vented wall furnaces* shall be vented in accordance with Section G2427.

G2436.3 Location. *Vented wall furnaces* shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. *Vented wall furnaces* installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

G2436.4 Door swing. *Vented wall furnaces* shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such *furnace* measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

G2436.5 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall *furnaces*. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless listed as part of the *appliance*.

G2436.6 Access. *Vented wall furnaces* shall be provided with *access* for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of *burners*, replacement of sections, motors, *controls*, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION G2437
FLOOR FURNACES

G2437.1 General. *Floor furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2437.2 Placement. The following provisions apply to *floor furnaces*:

1. Floors. *Floor furnaces* shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.
2. Walls and corners. The register of a *floor furnace* with a horizontal warm air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall. A distance of at least 18 inches (457 mm) from two adjoining sides of the *floor furnace* register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm-air discharge. The remaining sides shall be permitted to be placed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a wall. Wall-register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.
3. Draperies. The *furnace* shall be placed so that a door, drapery, or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the *furnace*.
4. Floor construction. *Floor furnaces* shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
5. *Thermostat.* The controlling *thermostat* for a *floor furnace* shall be located within the same room or space as the *floor furnace* or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the *floor furnace*.

G2437.3 Bracing. The floor around the *furnace* shall be braced and headed with a support framework designed in accordance with Chapter 5.

G2437.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the *floor furnace* shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the *floor furnace* is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum *clearance* shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where such *clearances* cannot be provided, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the *furnace* so that the required *clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the *furnace*. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum clearance shall be provided on all sides except the *control* side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum *clearance*.

G2437.5 First floor installation. Where the basement story level below the floor in which a *floor furnace* is installed is utilized as habitable space, such *floor furnaces* shall be enclosed as specified in Section G2437.6 and shall project into a nonhabitable space.

G2437.6 Upper floor installations. *Floor furnaces* installed in upper stories of buildings shall project below into nonhabitable space and shall be separated from the nonhabitable space by an enclosure constructed of *noncombustible materials*. The *floor furnace* shall be provided with *access, clearance* to all sides and bottom of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and *combustion air* in accordance with Section G2407.

SECTION G2438 CLOTHES DRYERS

G2438.1 General. *Clothes dryers* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.5.1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2439 CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

G2439.1 Installation. *Clothes dryers* shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the building.

G2439.2 Duct penetrations. Ducts that exhaust *clothes dryers* shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by this *code* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in the mechanical provisions of this *code* and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with this *code*. Fire dampers shall not be installed in *clothes dryer* exhaust duct systems.

G2439.3 Exhaust installation. Exhaust ducts for *clothes dryers* shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft *damper*. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the flow. *Clothes dryer* exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a *vent connector*, vent or *chimney*. *Clothes dryer* exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or plenums.

G2439.4 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall be listed and labeled to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2439.5 Makeup air. Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air*. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a *clothes dryer*, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) for *makeup air* shall be provided in the closet enclosure, or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

G2439.6 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the *clothes dryer* exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

G2439.7 Domestic clothes dryer exhaust ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic *clothes dryers* shall conform to the requirements of Sections G2439.7.1 through G2439.7.6.

G2439.7.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal a minimum 0.0157-inch (0.4 mm) thick (No. 28 gage for steel, No. 26 gage for aluminum). The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter. With the exception of the transition duct, flexible ducts are prohibited.

G2439.7.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct. Ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section M1601.4.1.

a. Nonmetallic mechanical fasteners (tie-straps) shall be *listed* to UL 181B.

b. Metal band duct clamps are not required to be *listed*.

G2439.7.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction, and must remain entirely within the room in which the *appliance* is located.

G2439.7.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections G2439.7.4.1 through G2439.7.4.3.

G2439.7.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table G2439.7.4.1.

TABLE G2439.7.4.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4 inch radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet, 6 inches
4 inch radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 9 inches
8 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 7 inches
10 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

G2439.7.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The *code official* shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the *code official* prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table G2439.7.4.1 shall be utilized.

G2439.7.4.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2439.7.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

1. Labels shall be permanently stenciled, laminated, or commercially available plastic or metal tags.
2. Labels shall state, at a minimum (fill in the blank):

   Caution: Equivalent length _____ ft. Any installed dryer must be equipped with an exhaust system that meets or exceeds this equivalent length requirement.
3. Labels can be attached to wall or vent receptor.

G2439.7.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a *clothes dryer* is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing *clothes dryer* is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

G2439.7.7 Exhaust duct termination. Exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

Exception: Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross-sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm^2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.

SECTION G2440
SAUNA HEATERS

G2440.1 General. Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2440.2 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

G2440.2.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

G2440.3 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations, shall not be attached to the building.

G2440.4 Combustion and dilution air intakes. Sauna heaters of other than the direct-vent type shall be installed with the *draft hood* and *combustion air* intake located outside the sauna room. Where the *combustion air* inlet and the *draft hood* are in a dressing room adjacent to the sauna room, there shall be provisions to prevent physically blocking the *combustion air* inlet and the *draft hood* inlet, and to prevent physical contact with the *draft hood* and vent assembly, or warning notices shall be posted to avoid such contact. Any warning notice shall be easily readable, shall contrast with its background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) high.

G2440.5 Combustion and ventilation air. *Combustion air* shall not be taken from inside the sauna room. *Combustion* and ventilation air for a sauna heater not of the direct-vent type shall be provided to the area in which the *combustion air* inlet and *draft hood* are located in accordance with Section G2407.

G2440.6 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a *thermostat* which will limit room temperature to 194ºF (90ºC). If the *thermostat* is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

G2440.6.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to *control main burner* operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The *control* for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

G2440.7 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided as required by the manufacturer.

SECTION G2441
POOL AND SPA HEATERS

G2441.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.56/CSA 4.7 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2442
FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

G2442.1 General. Forced-air warm-air *furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.47 or UL 795 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2442.2 Forced-air furnaces. The minimum unobstructed total area of the outside and return air ducts or openings to a forced-air warm-air *furnace* shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 mm^2/W) output rating capacity of the *furnace* and not less than that specified in the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions. The minimum unobstructed total area of supply ducts from a forced-air warm-air *furnace* shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 mm^2/W) output rating capacity of the *furnace* and not less than that specified in the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions.

With the addition of a cooling coil, the sizing criteria shall be based on 6 square inches (3870 mm^2) for each 1,000 Btu/h (13 206 mm^2/W) output.

Exception: The total area of the supply air ducts and outside and return air ducts shall not be required to be larger than the minimum size required by the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions.

G2442.3 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a *furnace* in a manner that will reduce the required air to the *furnace*.

G2442.4 Prohibited sources. Outdoor or return air for forced-air heating and cooling systems shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an *appliance* vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the outlet is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outside air inlet.
2. Where there is the presence of objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration machinery room as defined in the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by such system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with Section G2442.2, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered as a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of such rooms or spaces.

   Exception: The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to such room or space.
5. A room or space containing an *appliance* where such a room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

   Exception: This shall not apply where:

   1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* or an *appliance* not requiring a vent in accordance with Section G2425.8.
   2. The room or space complies with the following requirements:

      2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.

      2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.

      2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a draft hood in the same room or space or the combustion chamber of any atmospheric burner *appliance* in the same room or space.
   3. Rooms or spaces containing solid fuel-burning appliances, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of such appliances.
6. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

   Exceptions:

   1. Where return air intakes are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from cooking appliances, taking return air from a kitchen area shall not be prohibited.
   2. Dedicated forced air systems serving only a garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.
7. Deleted.

G2442.5 Screen. Required outdoor air inlets shall be covered with a screen having $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) openings.

G2442.6 Return-air limitation. Return air from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit.*

G2442.7 Furnace plenums and air ducts. Where a *furnace* is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the *furnace* to areas outside of the space containing the *furnace*, the return air shall be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the *furnace* casing and terminating outside of the space containing the *furnace.*

G2442.7.1 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. When a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5-inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is listed and labeled for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from heat exchangers unless listed and labeled for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted, provided the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

G2442.7.2 Return-air intake (nonengineered systems). If only one central return-air grille is installed, it shall be of a size sufficient to return a volume of air compatible with the cubic foot per minute requirements and the temperature rise limitations specified by the equipment manufacturer. The face velocity of return air grilles shall not exceed 450 feet per minute (fpm) (2.3 m/s). At least one separate return shall be installed on each level of a multilevel structure. For split-level and split-foyer structures, one return may serve more than one level if located within the split area and the total area of the levels does not exceed 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2). Return-air grilles shall not be located in bathrooms. The return air from one residential living unit shall not be mixed with the return air from other living units. In dwellings with 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) or less of conditioned area, a central return is permitted. When the dwelling contains more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) of conditioned area, additional returns shall be provided. Each return shall serve not more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m^2) of area and shall be located in the area it serves. Return air may travel through the living space to the return-air intake if there are no restrictions, such as solid doors, to the air movement. Undercut doors are allowed. When panned joists are used for return air, the structural integrity shall be maintained. Air capacity for joists 16 inches (406 mm) on center shall be a maximum of 375 cubic foot per minute (0.177 m^3/s) for 8-inch (203 mm) joists and 525 cubic foot per minute (0.248 m^3/s) for 10-inch (254 mm) joists. Wiring located in spaces used for return-air ducts shall comply with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

SECTION G2443 CONVERSION BURNERS

G2443.1 Conversion burners. The installation of *conversion burners* shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION G2444 UNIT HEATERS

G2444.1 General. *Unit heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2444.2 Support. Suspended-type *unit heaters* shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

G2444.3 Ductwork. Ducts shall not be connected to a unit heater unless the heater is *listed* for such installation.

G2444.4 Clearance. Suspended-type *unit heaters* shall be installed with *clearances* to *combustible materials* of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) at the sides, 12 inches (305 mm) at the bottom and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal *draft hood* or 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sloping side of the vertical *draft hood*.

Floor-mounted-type *unit heaters* shall be installed with *clearances* to *combustible materials* at the back and one side only of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where the *flue gases* are vented horizontally, the 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* shall be measured from the *draft hood* or *vent* instead of the rear wall of the unit heater. Floor-mounted-type *unit heaters* shall not be installed on combustible floors unless *listed* for such installation.

Clearances for servicing all *unit heaters* shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: *Unit heaters listed* for reduced *clearance* shall be permitted to be installed with such *clearances* in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2445 UNVENTED ROOM HEATERS

G2445.1 General. *Unvented room heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.11.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

G2445.2 Prohibited use. One or more *unvented room heaters* shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a *dwelling unit*.

G2445.3 Input rating. *Unvented room heaters* shall not have an input rating in excess of 40,000 *Btu*/h (11.7 kW).

G2445.4 Prohibited locations. The location of *unvented room heaters* shall comply with Section G2406.2.

G2445.5 Room or space volume. The aggregate input rating of all *unvented appliances* installed in a room or space shall not exceed 20 *Btu*/h per *cubic foot* (207 W/m^3) of volume of such room or space. Where the room or space in which the *appliances* are installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

G2445.6 Oxygen-depletion safety system. *Unvented room heaters* shall be equipped with an oxygen-depletion-sensitive safety shutoff system. The system shall shut off the gas supply to the main and *pilot burners* when the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is depleted to the percent concentration specified by the manufacturer, but not lower than 18 percent. The system shall not incorporate field adjustment means capable of changing the set point at which the system acts to shut off the gas supply to the room heater.

G2445.7 Unvented decorative (log) room heaters. An unvented decorative room heater shall not be installed in a *factory-built fireplace* unless the *fireplace* system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

G2445.7.1 Ventless firebox enclosures. Ventless firebox enclosures used with unvented decorative (log) room heaters shall be *listed* as complying with ANSI Z21.91.

SECTION G2446 VENTED ROOM HEATERS

G2446.1 General. *Vented room heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2447 COOKING APPLIANCES

G2447.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking *appliances* that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles, hot plates and barbecues, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.1 or ANSI Z21.58 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2447.2 Prohibited location. Cooking appliances designed, tested, *listed* and *labeled* for use in commercial occupancies shall not be installed within dwelling units or within any area where domestic cooking operations occur.

Exception: Appliances that are also listed as domestic cooking appliances.

G2447.3 Domestic appliances. Cooking *appliances* installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type *appliances* for domestic use.

G2447.4 Range installation. Ranges installed on combustible floors shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with *clearances* of not less than that shown on the label.

G2447.5 Vertical clearance above cooking top. Household cooking *appliances* shall have a vertical *clearance* above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (760 mm) to *combustible material* and metal cabinets. A minimum *clearance* of 24 inches (610 mm) is permitted where one of the following is installed:

1. The underside of the *combustible material* or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick.
2. A metal ventilating hood constructed of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a *clearance* of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) between the hood and the underside of the *combustible material* or metal cabinet. The hood shall have a width not less than the width of the *appliance* and shall be centered over the *appliance*.
3. A *listed* cooking *appliance* or microwave oven is installed over a *listed* cooking *appliance* and in compliance with the terms of the manufacturer's installation instructions for the upper *appliance*.

SECTION G2448 WATER HEATERS

G2448.1 General. Water heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.10.1 and ANSI Z21.10.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2448.1.1 Installation requirements. The requirements for *water heaters* relative to sizing, *relief valves*, drain pans and scald protection shall be in accordance with this code.

G2448.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. *Water heaters* utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

SECTION G2449 AIR-CONDITIONING APPLIANCES

G2449.1 General. Gas-fired air-conditioning *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.40.1 or ANSI Z21.40.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2449.2 Independent piping. *Gas piping* serving heating *appliances* shall be permitted to also serve cooling *appliances* where such heating and cooling *appliances* cannot be operated simultaneously (see Section G2413).

G2449.3 Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners. To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

G2449.4 Installation. Air conditioning *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unless the *appliance* is *listed* for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an *approved* manner, the *appliance* shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with *noncombustible material* and surface finish and with no *combustible material* against the underside thereof.

SECTION G2450 ILLUMINATING APPLIANCES

G2450.1 General. Illuminating *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.42 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2450.2 Mounting on buildings. Illuminating *appliances* designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the *gas piping* for support.

G2450.3 Mounting on posts. Illuminating *appliances* designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post. Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a $2^1/_2$-inch-diameter (64 mm) post constructed of 0.064-inch-thick (1.6 mm) steel or a 1-inch (25 mm) Schedule 40 steel *pipe*. Posts 3 feet (914 mm) or less in height shall not be smaller than a $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) Schedule 40 steel *pipe*. Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where there is a possibility of water collecting inside them.

G2450.4 Appliance pressure regulators. Where an *appliance pressure regulator* is not supplied with an illuminating *appliance* and the service line is not equipped with a *service pressure regulator*, an *appliance pressure regulator* shall be installed in the line to the illuminating *appliance*. For multiple installations, one *regulator* of adequate capacity shall be permitted to serve more than one illuminating *appliance*.

SECTION G2451
INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

G2451.1 General. Infrared radiant heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.19 or Z83.20 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

G2451.2 Support. *Infrared radiant heaters* shall be fixed in a position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of *noncombustible material*.

SECTION G2452
BOILERS

G2452.1 Standards. Boilers shall be *listed* in accordance with the requirements of ANSI Z21.13 or UL 795. If applicable, the boiler shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of ASME CSD-1 and as applicable, the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Sections I, II, IV, V and IX and NFPA 85.

G2452.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all *controls* set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete *control* diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

G2452.3 Clearance to combustible material. *Clearances* to *combustible materials* shall be in accordance with Section G2409.4.

SECTION G2453
CHIMNEY DAMPER OPENING AREA

DELETED

SECTION G2454
OUTDOOR DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

G2454.1 General. Permanently fixed-in-place outdoor decorative appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.97 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION G2455
ENGINE AND GAS TURBINE-POWERED EQUIPMENT

G2455.1 Powered equipment. Permanently installed *equipment* powered by internal combustion engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 37. Stationary engine generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of UL 2200.

G2455.2 Gas supply connection. Equipment powered by internal combustion engines and turbines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

Part VII—Plumbing

CHAPTER 25

PLUMBING ADMINISTRATION

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2024 edition of the *North Carolina Plumbing Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings*.

SECTION P2501 GENERAL

P2501.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapters 25 through 33 of this code shall apply to the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing systems within this jurisdiction. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and equipment, fuel-gas-fired water heaters and water heater venting systems shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

P2501.2 Application. In addition to the general administration requirements of Chapter 1, the administrative provisions of this chapter shall apply to the plumbing requirements of Chapters 25 through 33.

P2501.3 Intent. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum standards to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of plumbing equipment and systems.

P2501.4 Severability. If any section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code.

P2501.5 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted or referenced in this code.

P2501.6 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing board or commissions. The North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

SECTION P2502 EXISTING PLUMBING SYSTEMS

P2502.1 Existing building sewers and building drains. Plumbing systems lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code shall be permitted to have their use and maintenance continued if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design; and if hazard to life, health or property is not created by such plumbing system.

P2502.2 Additions, alterations or repairs. Additions, *alterations*, renovations or repairs to any plumbing system shall conform to that required for a new plumbing system without requiring the existing plumbing system to comply with the requirements of this code. Additions, *alterations* or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe, insanitary or overloaded.

Minor additions, *alterations*, renovations and repairs to existing plumbing systems shall be permitted in the same manner and arrangement as in the existing system, provided that such repairs or replacement are not hazardous and are *approved*.

P2502.3 Change in occupancy. It shall be unlawful to make any change in the *occupancy* of any structure that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new *occupancy* without approval of the code official. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing building construction for the proposed new *occupancy* and that such change of *occupancy* does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

P2502.4 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

P2502.5 Moved buildings. Except as determined by Section P2502.1, plumbing systems that are a part of buildings or structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations.

P2502.6 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those that are listed in Chapter 44 and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections P2502.6.1 and P2502.6.2.

P2502.6.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply

P2502.6.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code shall be the minimum requirements.

P**2502.7 Requirements not covered by code.** Any requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare, not specifically covered by this code shall be determined by the code official.

P2502.8 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

P2502.9 Application of references. Reference to chapter section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

SECTION P2503 INSPECTION AND TESTS

P2503.1 Inspection required. New plumbing work and parts of existing systems affected by new work or *alterations* shall be inspected by the *building official* to ensure compliance with the requirements of this code.

P2503.2 Concealment. A plumbing or drainage system, or part thereof, shall not be covered, concealed or put into use until it has been tested, inspected and *approved* by the *building official*.

P2503.3 Responsibility of permittee. The permit holder shall make the applicable tests prescribed in Sections P2503.4 through P2503.8 to determine compliance with the provisions of this code. The permit holder shall give reasonable advance notice to the code official when the plumbing work is ready for tests. The equipment, material, power and labor necessary for the inspection and test shall be furnished by the permit holder and the permit holder shall be responsible for determining that the work will withstand the test pressure prescribed in the following tests. All plumbing system piping shall be tested with either water or by air. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, the entire drainage system shall be submitted to final tests. The code official shall require the removal of any cleanouts if necessary to ascertain whether the pressure has reached all parts of the system.

P2503.4 Building sewer testing. Deleted.

P2503.5 Drain, waste and vent systems testing. Rough-in and finished plumbing installations of drain, waste and vent systems shall be tested in accordance with Sections P2503.5.1 and P2503.5.2.

P2503.5.1 Rough plumbing. DWV systems shall be tested on completion of the rough piping installation by water, by air for piping systems, or by vacuum or air for plastic piping systems, without evidence of leakage. The test shall be applied to the drainage system in its entirety or in sections after rough-in piping has been installed, as follows:

1. Water test. If applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be tightly closed, except the highest opening, and the system shall be filled with water to the point of overflow. If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged except the highest openings of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water, but no section shall be tested with less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. In testing successive sections, at least the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the next preceding section shall be tested so that no joint or pipe in the building, except the uppermost 10 feet (3048 mm) of the system, shall have been submitted to a test of less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The system shall then be tight at all points.

   Exception: Rough plumbing testing for one- and two-family dwellings shall be as specified above except the water level shall be a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest drainage fitting. Under slab piping systems shall be tested with a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) of head.

2. Air test. An air test shall be made by forcing air into the system until there is a uniform gauge pressure of 5 psi (34.5 kPa) or sufficient to balance a 10-inch (254 mm) column of mercury. This pressure shall be held for a test period of not less than 15 minutes. Any adjustments to the test pressure required because of changes in ambient temperatures or the seating of gaskets shall be made prior to the beginning of the test period.

3. Vacuum test. The portion under test shall be evacuated of air by a vacuum-type pump to achieve a uniform gauge pressure of negative 5 pounds per square inch or a negative 10 inches of mercury column (-34 kPa). This pressure shall be held without the removal of additional air for a period of 15 minutes.

P2503.5.2 Finished plumbing. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, their connections shall be tested and proved gastight or watertight as follows:

1. Watertightness. Each fixture shall be filled and then drained. Traps and fixture connections shall be proven watertight by visual inspection.

2. Gastightness. Where required by the local administrative authority, a final test for gastightness of the DWV system shall be made by the smoke or peppermint test as follows:

   2.1. Smoke test. Introduce a pungent, thick smoke into the system. When the smoke appears at vent terminals, such terminals shall be sealed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column (249 Pa) shall be applied and maintained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes.

2.2. Peppermint test. Introduce 2 ounces (59 mL) of oil of peppermint into the system. Add 10 quarts (9464 mL) of hot water and seal the vent terminals. The odor of peppermint shall not be detected at any trap or other point in the system.

P2503.6 Shower liner or pan test. Where shower floors and receptors are made watertight by the application of materials required by Section P2709.2, the completed liner installation shall be tested. The pipe from the shower drain shall be plugged watertight for the test. The floor and receptor area shall be filled with water to a depth of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured at the threshold. Where a threshold of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in height does not exist, a temporary threshold shall be constructed to retain the test water in the lined floor or receptor area to a level not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in depth measured at the threshold. The water shall be retained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes and there shall not be evidence of leakage.

P2503.7 Water distribution system testing. Upon completion of a section of or the entire water distribution system, the system, or portion completed, shall be tested and proved tight under a water or air test of not less than 100 psi (688 kPa). Repaired sections of existing water systems shall be tested at existing operating pressure. This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The water utilized for tests shall be obtained from a potable source of supply. The required tests shall be performed in accordance with this section.

P2503.8 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention devices. Deleted.

P2503.9 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 psi or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure greater than 10 psi (0.69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (690 kPa) shall use a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure greater than 100 psi (690 kPa) shall use a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

SECTION P2504 APPROVAL

P2504.1 Modifications. Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or owner's authorized agent, provided the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification conforms to the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, life and fire safety requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the plumbing inspection department.

P2504.2 Alternative materials, methods and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved.* An alternative material or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed alternative material, method or equipment complies with the intent of the provisions of this code and is not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

P2504.2.1 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

P2504.3 Required testing. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternate materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction.

P2504.3.1 Test methods. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official shall approve the testing procedures.

P2504.3.2 Testing agency. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency.

P2504.3.3 Test reports. Reports of tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

P2504.4 Alternative engineered design. The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an *alternative engineered design* plumbing system shall comply with Sections P2504.4.1 through P2504.4.6.

P2504.4.1 Design criteria. An *alternative engineered design* shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Material, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

P2504.4.2 Submittal. The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the plumbing system is an *alternative engineered design*. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an *alternative engineered design* was part of the *approved* installation.

P2504.4.3 Technical data. The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed *alternative engineered design* and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

P2504.4.4 Construction documents. The registered design professional shall submit to the code official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the *alternative engineered design*. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the construction documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading, and location of fixtures and appliances.

P2504.4.5 Design approval. Where the code official determines that the *alternative engineered design* conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be *approved*. If the *alternative engineered design* is not *approved*, the code official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons thereof.

P2504.4.6 Inspection and testing. The *alternative engineered design* shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of Section P2503.

P2504.5 Approved materials and equipment. Materials, equipment and devices *approved* by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

P2504.5.1 Material and equipment reuse. Materials, equipment and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested, placed in good and proper working condition and *approved*.

SECTION P2505
TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES

P2505.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary equipment, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

P2505.2 Conformance. Temporary equipment, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

P2505.3 Temporary utilities. The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

P2505.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary equipment, systems or uses and to order the temporary equipment, systems or uses to be discontinued.

P2505.5 Toilet facilities. Toilet facilities shall be provided for construction workers in accordance with the table below and such facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary condition. Construction worker toilet facilities of the nonsewer-type shall conform to ANSI Z4.3.

Number of Employees	Minimum Number of Facilities
Less than 20	1 toilet
20 to 200	1 toilet & 1 urinal per 40 workers
More than 200	1 toilet & urinal per 50 workers

There shall be at least one facility for every two contiguous construction sites. Such facilities may be portable, enclosed, chemically treated, tank-tight units. Portable toilets shall be enclosed, screened and weatherproofed with internal latches. Temporary toilet facilities need not be provided on site for crews on a job site for no more than one working day and having transportation readily available to toilet facilities.

CHAPTER 26

GENERAL PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2024 edition of the *North Carolina Plumbing Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.*

SECTION P2601 GENERAL

P2601.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the installation of plumbing not specifically covered in other chapters applicable to plumbing systems. The installation of plumbing, *appliances*, *equipment* and systems not addressed by this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Plumbing Code*.

P2601.2 Connections to drainage system. Plumbing fixtures, drains, appurtenances and *appliances* used to receive or discharge liquid wastes or sewage shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises, in accordance with the requirements of this code. This section shall not be construed to prevent indirect waste connections where required by the code.

Exception: All drain waste and vent piping associated with gray water or rainwater recycling systems shall be installed in compliance with this code. Bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays shall not be required to discharge to the sanitary drainage system where such fixtures discharge to systems complying with Sections P2910 and P2911.

P2601.3 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, plumbing fixtures, drains, and *appliances* shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

SECTION P2602 INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY AND SEWAGE DISPOSAL

P2602.1 General. The water-distribution system of any building or premises where plumbing fixtures are installed shall be connected to a public water supply. Where a public water-supply system is not available, or connection to the supply is not feasible, an individual water supply shall be provided. Individual water supplies shall be constructed and installed in accordance with the applicable state and local laws.

Sanitary drainage piping from plumbing fixtures in buildings and sanitary drainage piping systems from premises shall be connected to a public sewer. Where a public sewer is not available, the sanitary drainage piping and systems shall be connected to a private sewage disposal system in compliance with state or local requirements.

Exception: Sanitary drainage piping and systems that convey only the discharge from bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays shall not be required to connect to a public sewer or to a private sewage disposal system provided that the piping or systems are connected to a system in accordance with Section P2910 or P2911.

P2602.2 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2:

1. Water supply systems shall be designed and constructed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters.
2. Pipes for sewage disposal systems shall be designed and constructed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters into the systems and discharges from the systems into floodwaters.

SECTION P2603 STRUCTURAL AND PIPING PROTECTION

P2603.1 General. In the process of installing or repairing any part of a plumbing and drainage installation, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises that must be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the building portion of this code.

P2603.2 Drilling and notching. Wood-framed structural members shall not be drilled, notched or altered in any manner except as provided in Sections R502.8, R602.6, R802.7 and R802.7.1. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel *light-frame construction* shall be made only in accordance with Sections R505.2.6, R603.2.6 and R804.2.6. In accordance with the provisions in Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.3 and R804.3.4, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel *light-frame construction* shall be prohibited. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R610.7.

P2603.2.1 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations, where piping, other than cast-iron or galvanized steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_4$ inches (31.8 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by steel shield plates. Such shield plates shall have a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 Gage). Such plates shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

P2603.3 Protection against corrosion. Pipes passing through concrete or cinder walls and floors or other corrosive material shall be protected against external corrosion by a protective sheathing or wrapping or other means that will withstand any reaction from the lime and acid of concrete, cinder or other corrosive material. Sheathing or wrapping shall allow for movement including expansion and contraction of piping. The wall thickness of the material shall be not less than 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).

P2603.4 Pipes through or under footings or foundation walls. Any pipe that passes within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the footing or through a foundation wall shall be provided with a relieving arch or a pipe sleeve. Pipe sleeves for foundation walls shall be built into the foundation wall. The sleeve shall be two pipe sizes greater than the pipe passing through the wall. Piping shall not be run under pier footings (refer to Section P2604). Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes shall be filled or tightly sealed in an *approved* manner. Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes in fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be filled or tightly sealed in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Only sleeves through foundation or exterior building walls shall be sealed on both sides.

P2603.5 Freezing. Water pipes installed in a wall or ceiling exposed to the exterior shall be located on the heated side of the wall or ceiling insulation. Water, soil and waste pipes shall not be installed outside of a building. When soil and waste piping is installed under a non-enclosed area of a building or structure, freeze protections shall be installed at the discretion of the authority having jurisdiction. When installed in unconditioned utility rooms, or in the building in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures, adequate provision shall be made to protect such pipes from freezing by a minimum of R6.5 insulation determined at 75°F (24°C) in accordance with ASTM C177 or heat, or both.

Exterior water supply system piping shall be installed below the frost line and in no case less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade.

Note: These provisions are minimum requirements, which have been found suitable for normal weather conditions. Abnormally low temperatures for extended periods may require additional provisions to prevent freezing.

P2603.5.1 Frost protection. No traps of soil or waste pipe shall be installed or permitted outside of a building, or concealed in outside walls or in any place where they may be subjected to freezing temperatures, unless adequate provision is made to protect them from freezing.

P2603.5.2 Sewer depth. *Building sewers* that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below finished grade at the point of septic tank connection. *Building sewers* shall be not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below grade.

SECTION P2604
TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

P2604.1 Trenching and bedding. Where trenches are excavated such that the bottom of the trench forms the bed for the pipe, solid and continuous load-bearing support shall be provided between joints. Where over-excavated, the trench shall be backfilled to the proper grade with compacted earth, sand, fine gravel or similar granular material. Piping shall not be supported on rocks or blocks at any point. Rocky or unstable soil shall be over-excavated by two or more pipe diameters and brought to the proper grade with suitable compacted granular material.

P2604.1.1 Over-excavation. Where trenches are excavated below the installation level of the pipe such that the bottom of the trench does not form the bed for the pipe, the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand or fine gravel placed in layers not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) in depth and such backfill shall be compacted after each placement.

P2604.1.2 Rock removal. Where rock is encountered in trenching, the rock shall be removed to not less than 3 inches (76 mm) below the installation level of the bottom of the pipe, and the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand tamped in place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints. The pipe, including the joints, shall not rest on rock at any point.

P2604.1.3 Soft load-bearing materials. If soft materials of poor load-bearing quality are found at the bottom of the trench, stabilization shall be achieved by over excavating not less than two pipe diameters and backfilling to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with fine gravel, crushed stone or a concrete foundation. The concrete foundation shall be bedded with sand tamped into place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints.

P2604.2 Water service and building sewer in same trench. Where the water service piping and *building sewer* piping is installed in same trench, the installation shall be in accordance with Section P2906.4.1.

P2604.3 Backfilling. Backfill shall be free from discarded construction material and debris. Backfill shall be free from rocks, broken concrete and frozen chunks until the pipe is covered by not less than 12 inches (305 mm) of tamped earth. Backfill shall be placed evenly on both sides of the pipe and tamped to retain proper alignment. Loose earth shall be carefully placed in the trench in 6-inch (152 mm) layers and tamped in place.

P2604.4 Protection of footings. Trenching installed parallel to footings and walls shall not extend into the bearing plane of a footing or wall. The upper boundary of the bearing plane is a line that extends downward, at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal, from the outside bottom edge of the footing or wall.

P2604.5 Tracer wire. For plastic sewer piping, an insulated copper tracer wire or other *approved* conductor shall be installed adjacent to and over the full length of the piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate at the cleanout between the building drain and the building sewer. The tracer wire shall be not less than 14 AWG and the insulation type shall be listed for direct burial.

SECTION P2605 SUPPORT

P2605.1 General. Piping shall be supported in accordance with the following:

1. Piping shall be supported to ensure alignment and prevent sagging, and allow movement associated with the expansion and contraction of the piping system.
2. Piping in the ground shall be laid on a firm bed for its entire length, except where support is otherwise provided.
3. Hangers and *anchors* shall be of sufficient strength to maintain their proportional share of the weight of pipe and contents and of sufficient width to prevent distortion to the pipe. Hangers and strapping shall be of *approved* material that will not promote galvanic action.
4. Where horizontal pipes 4 inches (102 mm) and larger convey drainage or waste, and where a pipe fitting changes the flow direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad), rigid bracing or other rigid support arrangements shall be installed to resist movement of the upstream pipe in the direction of flow. A change of flow direction into a vertical pipe shall not require the upstream pipe to be braced.
5. Piping shall be supported at distances not to exceed those indicated in Table P2605.1.
6. A thermal expansion tank shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Thermal expansion tanks shall not be supported by the piping that connects to such tanks.

SECTION P2606 PENETRATIONS

P2606.1 Sealing of annular spaces. The annular space between the outside of a pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or between the outside of a pipe and an opening in a building envelope wall, floor, or ceiling assembly penetrated by a pipe shall be sealed with caulking material or foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Annular spaces created by pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of such assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with the building portion of this code.

TABLE P2605.1 PIPING SUPPORT

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS pipe	4	10[b]
Aluminum tubing	10	15
Cast-iron pipe	5[a]	15
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing ($1^1/_4$ inches in diameter and smaller)	6	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing ($1^1/_2$ inches in diameter and larger)	10	10
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) pipe, 1 inch and smaller	2.67 (32 inches)	10[b]
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) pipe, $1^1/_4$ inches and larger	4	10[b]
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe	2.67 (32 inches)	4[b]
CPVC pipe or tubing (1 inch in diameter and smaller)	3	10[b]
CPVC pipe or tubing ($1^1/_4$ inches in diameter and larger)	4	10[b]
Lead pipe	Continuous	4
PB pipe or tubing	2.67 (32 inches)	4
Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) pipe, 1 inch and smaller	2.67 (32 inches)	10[b]
Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) pipe, $1^1/_4$ inches and larger	4	10[b]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing (1 inch and smaller)	2.67 (32 inches)	10[b]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing ($1^1/_4$ inches and larger)	4	10[b]
PVC pipe	4	10[b]
Stainless steel drainage systems	10	10[b]
Steel pipe	12	15

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.

b. For sizes 2 inches and smaller, a guide shall be installed midway between required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.

SECTION P2607
WATERPROOFING OF OPENINGS

P2607.1 Pipes penetrating roofs. Where a pipe penetrates a roof, a flashing of lead, copper, galvanized steel or an *approved* elastomeric material shall be installed in a manner that prevents water entry into the building. Counterflashing into the opening of pipe serving as a vent terminal shall not reduce the required internal cross-sectional area of the vent pipe to less than the internal cross-sectional area of one pipe size smaller. Joints at the roof and around vent pipes shall be made watertight by the use of lead, copper, galvanized steel, aluminum, plastic or other *approved* flashings or flashing material.

P2607.2 Pipes penetrating exterior walls. Where a pipe penetrates an exterior wall, a waterproof seal shall be made on the exterior of the wall by one of the following methods:

1. A waterproof sealant applied at the joint between the wall and the pipe.
2. A flashing of an *approved* elastomeric material.

SECTION P2608
WORKMANSHIP

P2608.1 General. Valves, pipes and fittings shall be installed in correct relationship to the direction of the flow. Burred ends shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe.

SECTION P2609
MATERIALS EVALUATION AND LISTING

P2609.1 Identification. Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material and device utilized in a plumbing system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer and any markings required by the applicable referenced standards. Nipples created from the cutting and threading of *approved* pipe shall not be required to be identified.

Exception: Where the manufacturer identification cannot be marked on pipe fittings and pipe nipples because of the small size of such fittings, the identification shall be printed on the item packaging or on documentation provided with the item.

P2609.2 Installation of materials. Materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and *approved*. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to the minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

P2609.2.1 Materials for specialty fixtures. Materials for specialty fixtures not otherwise covered in this code shall be of stainless steel, soapstone, chemical stoneware or plastic, or shall be lined with lead, copper-base alloy, nickel-copper alloy, corrosion-resistant steel or other material especially suited to the application for which the fixture is intended.

P2609.2.2 Sheet copper. Sheet copper for general applications shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall not weigh less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m^2).

P2609.2.3 Sheet lead. Sheet lead for pans shall not weigh less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2) and shall be coated with an asphalt paint or other *approved* coating.

P2609.3 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be third-party certified as conforming to NSF 14.

P2609.4 Third-party certification. Plumbing products and materials required by the code to be in compliance with a referenced standard shall be *listed* by a third-party certification agency as complying with the referenced standards. Products and materials shall be identified in accordance with Section P2609.1.

P2609.5 Water supply systems. Water service pipes, water distribution pipes and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves, faucets and appurtenances used to dispense water intended for human ingestion shall be evaluated and *listed* as conforming to the requirements of NSF 61.

CHAPTER 27

PLUMBING FIXTURES

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2024 edition of the *North Carolina Plumbing Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code* for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

SECTION P2701 FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

P2701.1 Quality of fixtures. Plumbing fixtures, faucets and fixture fittings shall have smooth impervious surfaces, shall be free from defects, shall not have concealed fouling surfaces, and shall conform to the standards indicated in Table P2701.1 and elsewhere in this code. All porcelain enameled surfaces on plumbing fixtures shall be acid resistant.

SECTION P2702 FIXTURE ACCESSORIES

P2702.1 Plumbing fixtures. Plumbing fixtures, other than water closets, shall be provided with *approved* strainers.

> **Exception:** Hub drains receiving only clear water waste and standpipes shall not require strainers.

P2702.2 Waste fittings. Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, ASTM F409 or shall be made from pipe and pipe fittings complying with any of the standards indicated in Tables P3002.1(1) and P3002.3.

P2702.3 Plastic tubular fittings. Plastic tubular fittings shall conform to ASTM F409 as indicated in Table P2701.1.

P2702.4 Carriers for wall-hung water closets. Carriers for wall-hung water closets shall conform to ASME A112.6.2. Wall hung water closet bowls shall be supported by a concealed metal carrier that is attached to the building structural members so that strain is not transmitted to the closet connector or any other part of the plumbing system.

SECTION P2703 TAIL PIECES

P2703.1 Minimum size. Fixture tail pieces shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter for sinks, dishwashers, laundry tubs, bathtubs and similar fixtures, and not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in diameter for bidets, lavatories and similar fixtures.

SECTION P2704 SLIP-JOINT CONNECTIONS

P2704.1 Slip joints. Slip-joint connections shall be installed only for tubular waste piping and only between the trap outlet of a fixture and the connection to the drainage piping. Slip-joint connections shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric sealing gasket. Slip-joint connections shall be accessible. Such access shall provide an opening that is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in its smallest dimension. Where such access cannot be provided, access doors shall not be required, provided that all joints are soldered, solvent cemented or screwed to form a solid connection.

SECTION P2705 INSTALLATION

P2705.1 General. The installation of fixtures shall conform to the following:

1. Floor-outlet or floor-mounted fixtures shall be secured to the drainage connection and to the floor, where so designed, by screws, bolts, washers, nuts and similar fasteners of copper, copper alloy or other corrosion-resistant material.
2. Wall-hung fixtures shall be rigidly supported so that strain is not transmitted to the plumbing system.
3. Where fixtures come in contact with walls and floors, the contact area shall be watertight.
4. Plumbing fixtures shall be usable.
5. See Figure R307.1 for minimum fixture clearances.
6. The location of piping, fixtures or equipment shall not interfere with the operation of windows or doors.
7. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, plumbing fixtures shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.
8. Integral fixture-fitting mounting surfaces on manufactured plumbing fixtures or plumbing fixtures constructed on site, shall meet the design requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
9. Floor flanges for water closets or similar fixtures shall be not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick for brass, 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick for plastic and 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick and not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) caulking depth for cast iron or galvanized malleable iron. Floor flanges of hard lead shall weigh not less than 1 pound, 9 ounces (0.7 kg) and shall be composed of lead alloy with not less than 7.75-percent antimony by weight. Flanges shall be secured to the building structure with corrosion-resistant screws or bolts.

TABLE P2701.1
PLUMBING FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances	ASME A112.1.3
Bathtub/whirlpool pressure-sealed doors	ASME A112.19.15
Diverters for faucets with hose spray, anti-syphon type, residential application	ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1
Enameled cast-iron plumbing fixtures	ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2
Floor drains	ASME A112.6.3
Framing-affixed supports for off-the-floor water closets with concealed tanks	ASME A112.6.2
Hose connection vacuum breaker	ASSE 1052
Hot water dispensers, household storage type, electrical	ASSE 1023
Household disposers	ASSE 1008
Hydraulic performance for water closets and urinals	ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1
Individual automatic compensating valves for individual fixture fittings	ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1
Individual shower control valves anti-scald	ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16
Macerating toilet systems and related components	ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9
Nonvitreous ceramic plumbing fixtures	ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1
Plastic bathtub units	CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124; ASME A112.19.2/ CSA B45.1
Plastic lavatories	CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124
Plastic shower receptors and shower stalls	CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124
Plastic sinks	CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124
Plastic water closet bowls and tanks	CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124
Plumbing fixture fittings	ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1
Plumbing fixture waste fittings	ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2; ASTM F409
Porcelain-enameled formed steel plumbing fixtures	ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2
Pressurized flushing devices for plumbing fixtures	ASSE 1016/ASME 112.1016/CSA B125.16; CSA B125.3
Specification for copper sheet and strip for building construction	ASTM B370
Stainless steel plumbing fixtures	ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4
Suction fittings for use in whirlpool bathtub appliances	ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10
Temperature-actuated, flow reduction valves to individual fixture fittings	ASSE 1062
Thermoplastic accessible and replaceable plastic tube and tubular fittings	ASTM F409
Trench drains	ASME A112.6.3
Trim for water closet bowls, tanks and urinals	ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15
Vacuum breaker wall hydrant-frost-resistant, automatic-draining type	ASSE 1019
Vitreous china plumbing fixtures	ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1
Wall-mounted and pedestal-mounted, adjustable and pivoting lavatory and sink carrier systems	ASME A112.19.12
Water closet flush tank fill valves	ASSE 1002/ASME A112.1002/CSA B125.12; CSA B125.3
Whirlpool bathtub appliances	ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10

10. Where any fixture is provided with an overflow, the waste shall be designed and installed so that standing water in the fixture will not rise in the overflow when the stopper is closed, and no water will remain in the overflow when the fixture is empty. The overflow from any fixture shall discharge into the drainage system on the inlet or fixture side of the trap.

    Exception: The overflow from a flush tank serving a water closet or urinal shall discharge into the fixture served.

11. Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls.

SECTION P2706 WASTE RECEPTORS

P2706.1 General. Every waste receptor shall be of an *approved* type. A removable strainer or basket shall cover the waste outlet of waste receptors. Waste receptors shall be installed in ventilated spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in concealed spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in plenums, attics, crawl spaces or interstitial spaces above ceilings and below floors. Waste receptors shall be *readily accessible*.

Exceptions:

1. Where hub drains are installed in a crawl space for condensate waste.
2. This section shall not apply to hub drains in equipment rooms and furnace rooms in dwelling units.
3. Hub drains shall not be required to have strainers.

P2706.1.1 Hub drains. Hub drains shall be in the form of a hub or a pipe that extends not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above a water-impervious floor and shall not be required to have a strainer.

P2706.1.2 Standpipes. Standpoints shall be individually trapped. *Access* shall be provided to standpipes and drains for rodding. Standpipes shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and not less than 18 inches (762 mm) or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in height as measured from the crown weir. The standpipe shall extend 34 inches (864 mm) minimum above the base of the clothes washer unless recommended otherwise by the manufacturer. The connection of a laundry tray waste line may be made into a standpipe for the automatic clothes-washer drain. The standpipe shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall be a maximum horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm) from the standpipe trap.

P2706.1.2.1 Laundry tray connection to standpipe. Where a laundry tray waste line connects into a standpipe for an automatic clothes washer drain, the standpipe shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the standpipe trap weir and shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall not be greater than 30 inches (762 mm) horizontally from the standpipe trap.

P2706.2 Prohibited waste receptors. Plumbing fixtures that are used for washing or bathing shall not be used to receive the discharge of indirect waste piping.

Exceptions:

1. A kitchen sink trap is acceptable for use as a receptor for a dishwasher.
2. A laundry tray is acceptable for use as a receptor for a clothes washing machine.

SECTION P2707 DIRECTIONAL FITTINGS

P2707.1 Directional fitting required. *Approved* directional-type branch fittings shall be installed in fixture tailpieces receiving the discharge from food-waste disposer units or dishwashers.

SECTION P2708 SHOWERS

P2708.1 General. Shower compartments shall have not less than 900 square inches (0.6 m^2) of interior cross-sectional area. Shower compartments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the shower compartment, exclusive of fixture valves, shower heads, soap dishes, and safety grab bars or rails. The minimum required area and dimension shall be measured from the finished interior dimension at a height equal to the top of the threshold and at a point tangent to its centerline and shall be continued to a height of not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the shower drain outlet. Hinged shower doors shall open outward. The wall area above built-in tubs having installed shower heads and in shower compartments shall be constructed in accordance with Section R702.4. Such walls shall form a watertight joint with each other and with either the tub, receptor or shower floor.

Exceptions:

1. Fold-down seats shall be permitted in the shower, provided that the required 900-square-inch (0.6 m^2) dimension is maintained when the seat is in the folded-up position.
2. Shower compartments having not less than 25 inches (635 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment provided that the shower compartment has a cross-sectional area of not less than 1,300 square inches (0.838 m^2).
3. Shower compartments with prefabricated receptors conforming to the standards listed in Table P2708.1.
4. Where load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes meeting ANSI A118.10 are used, integrated bonding flange drains shall be approved. Clamping devices and weep holes are not required where shower drains include an integrated bonding flange. Manufacturer's

installation instructions shall be followed to achieve a watertight seal between the bonded waterproof membrane and the integrated bonding flange drain. Integrated bonding flange drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, or CSA B79.

TABLE P2708.1
PREFABRICATED SHOWER RECEPTOR STANDARDS
MATERIALS STANDARDS

Plastic shower receptors and shower stalls	ANSI Z124
Shower pans, nonmetallic	ASTM D4551

P2708.1.1 Access. The shower compartment access and egress opening shall have a clear and unobstructed finished width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm).

P2708.2 Shower drain. Shower drains shall have an outlet size of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter, and for other than waste outlets in bathtubs, shall have removable strainers not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter with strainer openings not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in least dimension. Where each shower space is not provided with an individual waste outlet, the waste outlet shall be located and the floor pitched so that waste from one shower does not flow over the floor area serving another shower. Waste outlets shall be fastened to the waste pipe in an *approved* manner.

Exception: Retaining pre-existing $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) in diameter waste outlets shall be permitted when removing an existing bathtub and installing a shower in its place.

P2708.2.1 Waste fittings. Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

P2708.3 Water supply riser. Water supply risers from the shower valve to the shower head outlet, whether exposed or concealed, shall be attached to the structure using support devices designed for use with the specific piping material or fittings anchored with corrosion resistant screws of a minimum nominal length of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm).

P2708.4 Shower control valves. Individual shower and tub/shower combination valves shall be balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic valves that conform to the requirements of ASSE 1016/ASME 112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Shower control valves shall be rated for the flow rate of the installed shower head. Such valves shall be installed at the point of use. Shower and tub/shower combination valves required by this section shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the valve to 120°F (49°C), which shall be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to provide water at a temperature not to exceed 120ºF (49°C). In-line thermostatic valves shall not be utilized for compliance with this section. Scald preventative valves are not required in dwelling units with individual water heaters set at 120°F (49°C).

P2708.5 Hand showers. Hand-held showers shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Hand-held showers shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 or shall be protected against backflow by a device complying with ASME A112.18.3.

SECTION P2709
SHOWER RECEPTORS

P2709.1 Construction. Where a shower receptor has a finished curb threshold, it shall be not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) below the sides and back of the receptor. The curb shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 9 inches (229 mm) deep when measured from the top of the curb to the top of the drain. The finished floor shall slope uniformly toward the drain not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) nor more than $^1/_2$ unit vertical per 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope) and floor drains shall be flanged to provide a watertight joint in the floor.

P2709.2 Lining required. The adjoining walls and floor framing enclosing on-site built-up shower receptors shall be lined with one of the following materials:

1. Sheet lead. Sheet lead shall weigh not less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2) and shall be coated with an asphalt paint or other *approved* coating. The lead sheet shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or an equivalent. Sheet lead shall be joined by burning.
2. Sheet copper. Sheet copper shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m^2). The copper sheet shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or an equivalent. Sheet copper shall be joined by brazing or soldering.
3. Plastic liner material shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick and shall comply with ASTM D4068 or ASTM D4551.
4. Hot-mopping in accordance with Section P2709.2.3.
5. Sheet-applied load-bearing, bonded waterproof membranes that comply with ANSI A118.10.

The lining material shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond or around the rough jambs and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above finished thresholds. Sheet-applied load bearing, bonded waterproof membranes shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2709.2.1 PVC sheets. Plasticized polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sheet shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4551. Sheets shall be joined by solvent welding in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2709.2.2 Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) sheets. Nonplasticized chlorinated polyethylene sheet shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4068. The liner shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2709.2.3 Hot-mopping. Shower receptors lined by hot-mopping shall be built-up with not less than three layers of standard grade Type 15 asphalt-impregnated roofing felt. The bottom layer shall be fitted to the formed subbase and each succeeding layer thoroughly hot-mopped to that below. Corners shall be carefully fitted and shall be made strong and watertight by folding or lapping, and each corner shall be reinforced with suitable webbing hot-mopped in place. Folds, laps and reinforcing webbing shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in all directions from the corner and webbing shall be of *approved* type and mesh, producing a tensile strength of not less than 50 pounds per inch (893 kg/m) in either direction.

P2709.2.4 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials. Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials shall meet the requirements of ANSI A118.10 and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2709.3 Installation. Lining materials shall be sloped a minimum of $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) to weep holes in the subdrain by means of a smooth, solidly formed subbase, shall be properly recessed and fastened to *approved* backing so as not to occupy the space required for the wall covering, and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the finished threshold.

P2709.3.1 Materials. Lead and copper linings shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or its equivalent. Sheet lead liners shall weigh not less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2). Sheet copper liners shall weigh not less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m^2). Joints in lead and copper pans or liners shall be burned or silver brazed, respectively. Joints in plastic liner materials shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2709.4 Receptor drains. An *approved* flanged drain shall be installed with shower subpans or linings. The flange shall be placed flush with the subbase and be equipped with a clamping ring or other device to make a watertight connection between the lining and the drain. The flange shall have weep holes into the drain.

P2709.4.1 Waste fittings. Flanged drains shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

SECTION P2710 SHOWER WALLS

P2710.1 Bathtub and shower spaces. Walls in shower compartments and walls above bathtubs that have a wall-mounted showerhead shall be finished in accordance with Section R307.2.

SECTION P2711 LAVATORIES

P2711.1 Approval. Lavatories shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

P2711.2 Cultured marble lavatories. Cultured marble vanity tops with an integral lavatory shall conform to CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

P2711.3 Lavatory waste outlets. Lavatories shall have waste outlets not less than $1^1/_4$ inch (32 mm) in diameter. A strainer, pop-up stopper, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

P2711.4 Movable lavatory systems. Movable lavatory systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

SECTION P2712 WATER CLOSETS

P2712.1 Approval. Water closets shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section P2903.2 and shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Water closets shall conform to the hydraulic performance requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1. Water closet tanks shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Water closets that have an invisible seal and unventilated space or walls that are not thoroughly washed at each discharge shall be prohibited. Water closets that allow backflow of the contents of the bowl into the flush tank shall be prohibited. Water closets equipped with a dual flushing device shall comply with ASME A112.19.14.

P2712.2 Flushing devices required. Water closets shall be provided with a flush tank, flushometer tank or flushometer valve designed and installed to supply water in sufficient quantity and flow to flush the contents of the fixture, to cleanse the fixture and refill the fixture trap in accordance with ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

P2712.3 Water supply for flushing devices. An adequate quantity of water shall be provided to flush and clean the fixture served. The water supply to flushing devices equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a float valve or other automatic device designed to refill the tank after each discharge and to completely shut off the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. Provision shall be made to automatically supply water to the fixture so as to refill the trap after each flushing.

P2712.4 Flush valves in flush tanks. Flush valve seats in tanks for flushing water closets shall be not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the flood-level rim of the bowl connected thereto, except an *approved* water closet and flush tank combination designed so that when the tank is flushed and the fixture is clogged or partially clogged, the flush valve will close tightly so that water will not spill continuously over the rim of the bowl or backflow from the bowl to the tank.

P2712.5 Overflows in flush tanks. Flush tanks shall be provided with overflows discharging to the water closet connected thereto and such overflow shall be of sufficient size to prevent flooding the tank at the maximum rate at which the tanks are supplied with water according to the manufacturer's design conditions.

P2712.6 Access. Parts in a flush tank shall be accessible for repair and replacement.

P2712.7 Water closet seats. Water closets shall be equipped with seats of smooth, nonabsorbent material and shall be properly sized for the water closet bowl type.

P2712.8 Flush tank lining. Sheet copper used for flush tank linings shall have a weight of not less than 10 ounces per square foot (3 kg/m^2).

P2712.9 Electro-hydraulic water closets. Electro-hydraulic water closets shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

P2712.10 Water closet connections. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend shall be acceptable. Where a 3-inch (76 mm) bend is utilized on water closets, a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) flange shall be installed to receive the fixture horn.

SECTION P2713 BATHTUBS

P2713.1 Bathtub waste outlets and overflows. Where an overflow is installed, the overflow shall be not less than 1 inch (38 mm) in diameter. Bathtubs shall be equipped with a waste outlet and an overflow outlet. The outlets shall be connected to waste tubing or piping not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter. The waste outlet shall be equipped with a water-tight stopper.

Exception: An overflow outlet is not required for bathtubs located on an impervious floor with a floor drain or trench drain, or installed in a shower enclosure.

P2713.2 Bathtub enclosures. Doors within a bathtub enclosure shall conform to ASME A112.19.15.

P2713.3 Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves. Bathtubs and whirlpool bathtub valves shall have or be supplied by a water-temperature-limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70, except where such valves are combination tub/shower valves in accordance with Section P2708.4. The water-temperature-limiting device required by this section shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the device to 120ºF (49ºC), and, where adjustable, shall be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to provide hot water at a temperature not to exceed 120ºF (49ºC). Access shall be provided to water-temperature-limiting devices that conform to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70.

Exception: Access is not required for nonadjustable water-temperature-limiting devices that conform to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70 and are integral with a fixture fitting, provided that the fixture fitting itself can be accessed for replacement.

P2713.4 Approval. Bathtubs shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/ CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/ CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

SECTION P2714 SINKS

P2714.1 Sink waste outlets. Sinks shall be provided with waste outlets not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter. A strainer, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

P2714.2 Movable sink systems. Movable sink systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

P2714.3 Approval. Sinks shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

SECTION P2715 LAUNDRY TUBS

P2715.1 Laundry tub waste outlet. Each compartment of a laundry tub shall be provided with a waste outlet not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter. A strainer or crossbar shall restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

P2715.2 Approval. Laundry tubs shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

SECTION P2716 FOOD-WASTE DISPOSER

P2716.1 Food-waste disposer waste outlets. Food-waste disposers shall be connected to a drain of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter.

P2716.2 Water supply required. A sink equipped with a food-waste disposer shall be provided with a faucet.

P2716.3 Approval. Domestic food waste disposers shall conform to ASSE 1008 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 430.

SECTION P2717 DISHWASHING MACHINES

P2717.1 Protection of water supply. The water supply to a dishwasher shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* complying with ASME A112.1.3 or A112.1.2 that is installed integrally within the machine or a backflow preventer in accordance with Section P2902.

P2717.2 Sink and dishwasher waste connection. The combined discharge from a dishwasher and a one- or two-compartment sink, with or without a food-waste disposer, shall be served by a trap of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in outside diameter. The waste connection of a residential dishwasher shall connect directly to a wye branch fitting on the tailpiece of the kitchen sink, directly to the dishwasher connection of a food waste disposer, or through an *air break* to a standpipe. The waste line of a residential dishwasher shall rise and shall be securely fastened to the underside of the sink rim or countertop, before connecting to the head of the food-waste disposer or to a wye fitting in the sink tailpiece.

P2717.3 Approval. Residential dishwashers shall conform to NSF 184.

SECTION P2718 CLOTHES WASHING MACHINE

P2718.1 Waste connection. The waste from an automatic clothes washer shall connect to a vertical drain of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter, or a horizontal drain of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. The 2-inch (51 mm) trap in the waste connection may be used as a cleanout for both the 2-inch (51 mm) and the 3-inch (76 mm). In retrofit or remodel work automatic domestic clothes washers shall be permitted to drain to a laundry sink. Automatic clothes washers that discharge by gravity shall be permitted to drain to a waste receptor or an approved trench drain.

P2718.2 Water connection. The water supply to an automatic clothes washer shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* that is integral with the machine or a backflow preventer shall be installed in accordance with Section 608. *Air gaps* shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 or A112.1.3.

SECTION P2719 FLOOR DRAINS

P2719.1 Floor drains. Floor drains shall have waste outlets not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and a removable strainer. Floor drains shall be constructed so that the drain can be cleaned. Access shall be provided to the drain inlet. Floor drains shall not be located under or have their access restricted by permanently installed appliances.

P2719.2 Location. Floor drains shall be located to drain the entire floor area.

P2719.3 Approval. Floor drains shall conform to ASME A112.3.1, ASME A112.6.3 or CSA B79.

SECTION P2720 WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS

P2720.1 Access to pump. Access shall be provided to circulation pumps in accordance with the fixture or pump manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify the location and minimum size of field-fabricated access openings, an opening of not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) shall be installed for access to the circulation pump. Where pumps are located more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the access opening, an opening of not less than 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm) shall be installed. A door or panel shall be permitted to close the opening. The access opening shall be unobstructed and be of the size necessary to permit the removal and replacement of the circulation pump. A minimum clearance of 21 inches (533 mm) is required in front of the access door. Removal of a toilet cannot be used to obtain the required clearance.

P2720.2 Piping drainage. The circulation pump shall be accessibly located above the crown weir of the trap. The pump drain and circulation piping shall be sloped to drain the water in the volute and the circulation piping when the whirlpool bathtub is empty.

P2720.3 Leak testing. Leak testing and pump operation shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2720.4 Manufacturer's instructions. The product shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2720.5 Suction fittings. Suction fittings for whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10.

P2720.6 Approval. Whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1795.

SECTION P2721 BIDET INSTALLATIONS

P2721.1 Water supply. The bidet shall be equipped with either an air-gap-type or vacuum-breaker-type fixture supply fitting.

P2721.2 Bidet water temperature. The discharge water temperature from a bidet fitting shall be limited to not greater than 110°F (43°C) by a water-temperature-limiting device conforming to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70.

P2721.3 Approval. Bidets shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/ CSA B45.1.

SECTION P2722 FIXTURE FITTING

P2722.1 General. Fixture supply valves and faucets shall comply with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 as indicated in Table P2701.1. Faucets and fixture fittings that supply drinking water for human ingestion shall conform to the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Flexible water connectors shall conform to the requirements of Section P2906.7.

P2722.2 Hot water. Fixture fittings supplied with both hot and cold water shall be installed and adjusted so that the left-hand side of the water temperature control represents the flow of hot water when facing the outlet.

> **Exception:** Shower and tub/shower mixing valves conforming to ASSE 1016/ASME 112.1016/CSA B125.16, where the water temperature control corresponds to the markings on the device.

P2722.3 Hose-connected outlets. Faucets and fixture fittings with hose-connected outlets shall conform to ASME A112.18.3 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

P2722.4 Individual pressure-balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings. Individual pressure-balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings shall comply with ASSE 1066. Such valves shall be installed in an accessible location and shall not be used as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section P2708.4.

P2722.5 Water closet personal hygiene devices. Personal hygiene devices integral to water closets or water closet seats shall conform to ASME A112.4.2/CSA B45.16.

SECTION P2723
MACERATING TOILET SYSTEMS

P2723.1 General. Macerating toilet systems shall be installed in accordance with shall comply with ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9 and manufacturer's instructions.

P2723.2 Drain. The size of the drain from the macerating toilet system shall be not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) in diameter.

SECTION P2724
SPECIALTY TEMPERATURE CONTROL DEVICES AND VALVES

P2724.1 Temperature-actuated mixing valves. Temperature-actuated mixing valves, which are installed to reduce water temperatures to defined limits, shall comply with ASSE 1017. Such valves shall be installed at the hot water source.

P2724.2 Temperature-actuated, flow-reduction devices for individual fixtures. Temperature-actuated, flow-reduction devices, where installed for individual fixture fittings, shall conform to ASSE 1062. Such valves shall not be used as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required for showers in Section P2708.4.

SECTION P2725
NONLIQUID SATURATED TREATMENT SYSTEMS

P2725.1 General. Materials, design, construction and performance of nonliquid saturated treatment systems shall comply with NSF 41.

CHAPTER 28
WATER HEATERS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2024 edition of the *North Carolina Plumbing Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings*.

SECTION P2801
GENERAL

P2801.1 Required. *Hot water* shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures and plumbing *appliances* intended for bathing, washing or culinary purposes.

P2801.2 Drain valves. Drain valves for emptying shall be installed at the bottom of each tank-type water heater and hot water storage tank. Drain valves shall conform to ASSE 1005. The drain valve inlet shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) nominal iron pipe size and the outlet shall be provided with a male hose thread.

P2801.3 Installation. Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and Chapters 20 and 24.

P2801.4 Location. Water heaters and storage tanks shall be installed in accordance with Section M1305 and shall be located and connected to provide access for observation, maintenance, servicing and replacement.

P2801.5 Prohibited locations. Water heaters shall be located in accordance with Chapter 20, Section 2005.2 and as elsewhere required in this code.

P2801.6 Required pan. Where a storage tank-type water heater or a hot water storage tank is installed in remote locations such as (a) above a suspended ceiling, (b) attics, (c) above occupied spaces, (d) above crawl spaces or (e) in unventilated crawl spaces, a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage to primary structural framing, the tank or water heater shall be installed in a galvanized steel or aluminum pan constructed of one of the following:

1. Galvanized steel or aluminum of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) in thickness.
2. Plastic not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) in thickness.
3. Other *approved* materials.

A plastic pan beneath a gas-fired water heater shall be constructed of material having a flame spread index of 25 or less and a *smoke-developed index* of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exception: Water heater(s) installed on concrete slab construction and located on the lowest floor or in a private garage.

P2801.6.1 Pan size and drain. The pan shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) deep and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe of not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) diameter. Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials indicated in Table P2906.5.

Where a pan drain was not previously required, a pan drain shall not be required for a replacement water heater installation.

P2801.6.1.1 Water heater located in a pan. Where Water heater(s) are subject to water damage when drain pans fill, that portion of the water heater shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the appliance or equipment shall be water resistant and approved.

P2801.6.2 Pan drain termination. The pan drain shall extend full-size and terminate over a suitably located indirect waste receptor or shall extend to the exterior of the building and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above the adjacent ground surface.

P2801.7 Water heaters installed in garages. Water heaters having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the garage floor.

Exception: Elevation of the *ignition source* is not required for *appliances* that are *listed* as flammable vapor ignition-resistant (FVIR).

P2801.8 Water heater seismic bracing. In Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2 and townhouses in Seismic Design Category C, water heaters shall be anchored or strapped in the upper one-third and in the lower one-third of the *appliance* to resist a horizontal force equal to one-third of the operating weight of the water heater, acting in any horizontal direction, or in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's recommendations.

P2801.9 Rooms used as a plenum. Water heaters using solid, liquid or gas fuel shall not be installed in a room containing air-handling machinery where such room is used as a plenum.

P2801.10 Water heaters installed in attics. Attics containing a water heater shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the water heater. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in height and 22 inches (559 mm) in width and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater. If 6 feet (1829 mm) of headroom is provided along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater, the length of the passageway is permitted to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in length. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in width. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in length and 30 inches (762 mm) in width shall be present at the front or service side of the water heater. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the water heater.

P2801.11 Installation in crawl spaces. Under-floor spaces containing appliances requiring access shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the appliance. The passageway shall not be less than 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the equipment. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the appliance. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and having sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the appliance.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the appliance is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet high (1829 mm) for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

P2801.12 Under-floor and exterior-grade installation.

P2801.12.1 Exterior-grade installations. Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

P2801.12.2 Under-floor installation. Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade.

P2801.12.3 Crawl space supports. The support shall be a minimum of a 2-inch (51 mm) thick solid base, 2-inch (51 mm) thick formed concrete, or stacked masonry units held in place by mortar or other approved method. The water heater shall be supported not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above grade.

P2801.12.4 Drainage. Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. Existing installation that can be terminated outdoors must terminate outdoors. Where the installation is such that outdoor termination is impossible, indoor termination is allowable.

P2801.13 Prohibited installations. Water heaters, (using solid, liquid or gas fuel) with the exception of those having direct vent systems, shall not be installed in bathrooms and bedrooms or in a closet with access only through a bedroom or bathroom. However, water heaters of the automatic storage type may be installed as replacement in a bathroom, when approved by the plumbing official, provided they are vented and supplied with adequate combustion air.

Exception: When a closet, having a weather-stripped solid door with an approved closing device, has been designed exclusively for the water heater and where all air for combustion and ventilation is supplied from outdoors.

SECTION P2802 SOLAR WATER HEATING SYSTEMS

P2802.1 Water temperature control. Where heated water is discharged from a solar thermal system to a hot water distribution system, a temperature-actuated mixing valve complying with ASSE 1017 shall be installed to temper the water to a temperature of not greater than 140°F (60°C). Solar thermal systems supplying hot water for both space heating and domestic uses shall comply with Section P2803.2. A temperature-indicating device shall be installed to indicate the temperature of the water discharged from the outlet of the mixing valve. The temperature-actuated mixing valve required by this section shall not be a substitute for water-temperature limiting devices required by Chapter 27 for specific fixtures.

P2802.2 Isolation valves. Isolation valves in accordance with Section P2903.9.2 shall be provided on the cold water feed to the water heater. Isolation valves and associated piping shall be provided to bypass solar storage tanks where the system contains multiple storage tanks.

SECTION P2803 WATER HEATERS USED FOR SPACE HEATING

P2803.1 Protection of potable water. Piping and components connected to a water heater for space heating applications shall be suitable for use with potable water in accordance with Chapter 29. Water heaters that will be used to supply potable water shall not be connected to a heating system or components previously used with nonpotable-water heating *appliances*. Chemicals for boiler treatment shall not be introduced into the water heater.

P2803.2 Temperature control. Where a combination water heater-space heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures exceeding 140°F (60°C), a temperature-actuated mixing valve complying with ASSE 1017 shall be installed to temper the water to a temperature of not greater than 140°F (60°C) for domestic uses.

SECTION P2804 RELIEF VALVES

P2804.1 Relief valves required. *Appliances* and equipment used for heating water or storing hot water shall be protected by one of the following:

1. A separate pressure-relief valve and a separate temperature-relief valve.

2. A combination pressure-and-temperature relief valve.

P2804.2 Rating. Relief valves shall have a minimum rated capacity for the equipment served and shall conform to ANSI Z21.22.

P2804.3 Pressure relief valves. Pressure relief valves shall have a relief rating adequate to meet the pressure conditions for the *appliances* or equipment protected. In tanks, they shall be installed directly into a tank tapping or in a water line close to the tank. They shall be set to open at not less than 25 psi (172 kPa) above the system pressure and not greater than 150 psi (1034 kPa). The relief-valve setting shall not exceed the rated working pressure of the tank.

P2804.4 Temperature relief valves. Temperature relief valves shall have a relief rating compatible with the temperature conditions of the *appliances* or equipment protected. The valves shall be installed such that the temperature-sensing element monitors the water within the top 6 inches (152 mm) of the tank. The valve shall be set to open at a temperature of not greater than 210°F (99°C).

P2804.5 Combination pressure-and-temperature relief valves. Combination-pressure-and-temperature relief valves shall comply with the requirements for separate pressure and temperature relief valves.

P2804.6 Installation of relief valves. A check or shutoff valve shall not be installed in any of the following locations:

1. Between a relief valve and the termination point of the relief valve discharge pipe.
2. Between a relief valve and a tank.
3. Between a relief valve and heating *appliances* or equipment.

P2804.6.1 Requirements for discharge pipe. The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination valve shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an *air gap* located in the same room as the water heater.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the *air gap*.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed to flow by gravity.
10. Terminate not more than 6 inches (152 mm) and not less than two times the discharge pipe diameter above the floor or waste receptor flood level rim.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of the piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials indicated in Section P2906.5 or materials tested, rated and *approved* for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.
14. The discharge pipe shall be clamped or otherwise supported with not less than one clamp or support within 12-inches (305 mm) of the point of discharge.

P2804.7 Vacuum relief valve. Bottom fed tank-type water heaters and bottom fed tanks connected to water heaters shall have a vacuum relief valve installed that complies with ANSI Z21.22.

P2804.8 Relief valve installation by manufacturer. The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S. 66-27.1, "Safety Features of Hot Water Heaters."

a. No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any automatic hot water tank or heater of 120-gallon (454 L) capacity or less, except for a tankless water heater, which does not have installed thereon by the manufacturer of the tank or heater an American Society of Mechanical Engineers and National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors approved type pressure-temperature relief valve set at or below the safe working pressure of the tank as indicated, and so labeled by the manufacturer's Identification stamped or cast upon the tank or heater or upon a plate secured to it.

b. No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any relief valve, whether it be pressure type, temperature type or pressure-temperature type, which does not carry the stamp of approval of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S. 66-27.1A, "Water heater thermostat settings."

a. The thermostat of any new residential water heater offered for sale or lease for use in a single-family or multifamily dwelling in the State shall be preset by the manufacturer or installer no higher than approximately 120°F (49°C). A water heater reservoir temperature may be set higher if it is supplying space heaters that require higher temperatures. For purposes of this section, a water heater shall mean the primary source of hot water for any single-family or multifamily residential dwelling including, but not limited to any solar or other hot water heating systems.

b. Nothing in this section shall prohibit the occupant of a single-family or multiunit residential dwelling with an individual water heater from resetting or having reset the thermostat on the water heater. Any such resetting shall relieve the manufacturer or installer of the water heater and, in the case of a residential dwelling that is leased or rented, also the unit's owner, from liability for damages attributed to the resetting.

c. A warning tag or sticker shall be placed on or near the operating thermostat control of any residential water heater. This tag or sticker shall state that the thermostat settings above the preset temperature may cause severe burns. This tag or sticker may carry such other appropriate warnings as may be agreed upon by manufacturers, installers and other interested parties.

P2804.9 Fossil fuel equipment installation. The installation of the following equipment and systems shall comply with the *International Fuel Gas Code*:

1. Fuel piping for any fossil fuel-burning equipment.
2. Venting systems for fossil fuel-burning equipment which is part of the plumbing system.

SECTION P2805 CONNECTIONS

P2805.1 Cold water line valve. The cold water *branch* line from the main water supply line to each hot water storage tank or water heater shall be provided with a valve, located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the equipment and serving only the hot water storage tank or water heater. The valve shall not interfere or cause a disruption of the cold water supply to the remainder of the cold water system. The valve shall be provided with *access* on the same floor level as the water heater served.

P2805.2 Water circulation. The method of connecting a circulating water heater to the tank shall provide circulation of water through the water heater. The pipe or tubes required for the installation of appliances that will draw from the water heater or storage tank shall comply with the provisions of this code for material and installation. Installation shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code.*

SECTION P2806 SAFETY DEVICES

P2806.1 Antisiphon devices. An *approved* means, such as a cold water "dip" tube with a hole at the top or a vacuum relief valve installed in the cold water supply line above the top of the heater or tank, shall be provided to prevent siphoning of any storage water heater or tank.

P2806.2 Shutdown. A means for disconnecting an electric hot water supply system from its energy supply shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 70. A separate valve shall be provided to shut off the energy fuel supply to all other types of hot water supply systems**.**

SECTION P2807 INSULATION

P2807.1 Unfired vessel insulation. Unfired hot water storage tanks shall be insulated to R-12.5 ($h \cdot ft^2 \cdot °F$)/Btu (R-2.2 $m^2 \cdot K/W$).

SECTION P2808 VEHICLE IMPACT PROTECTION

P2808.1 General. Equipment and appliances shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

P2808.2 Protection from impact. *Appliances* located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor. *Appliances* located out of the normal path of travel are not required to be protected.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Figure P2808.1.

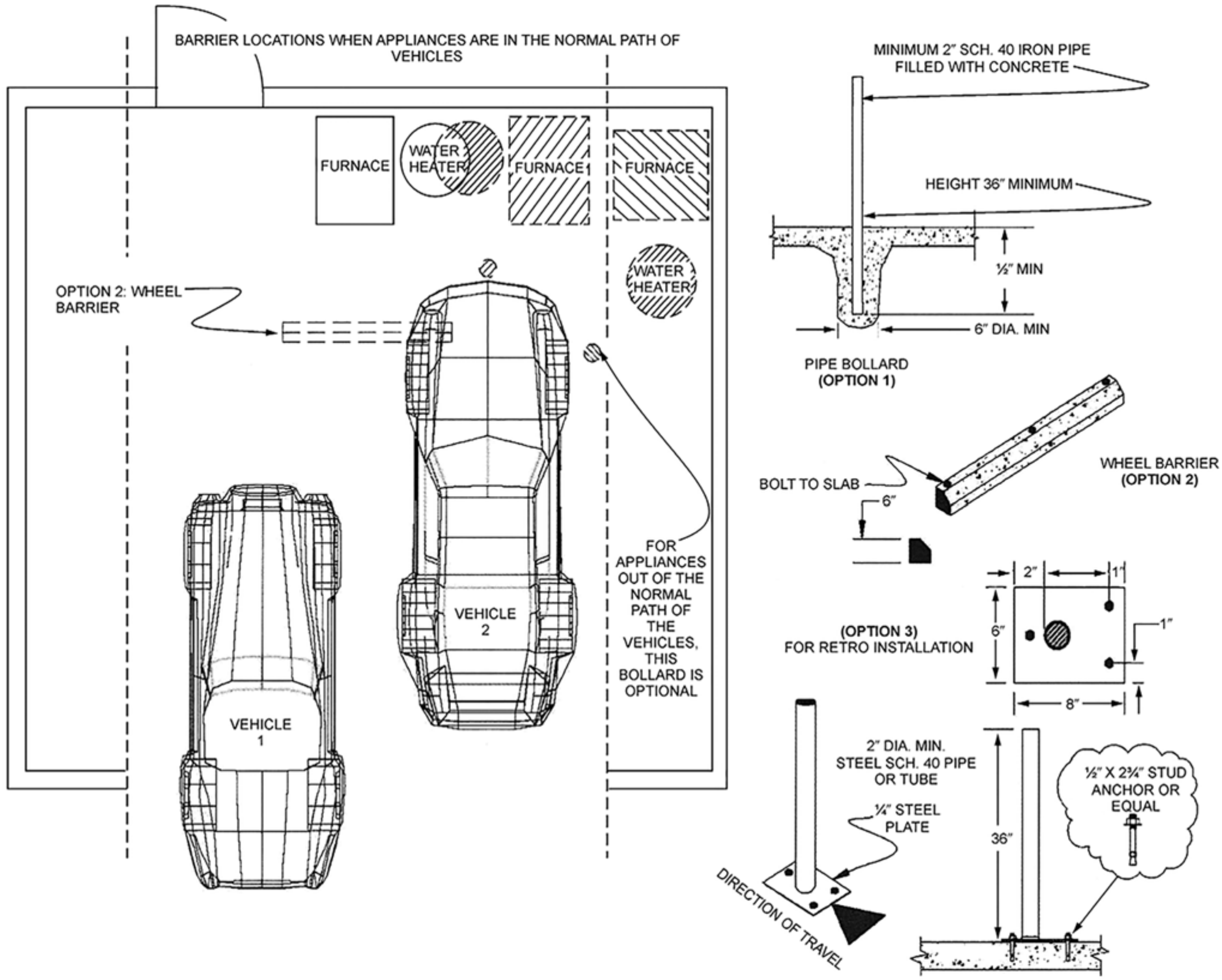


Figure 2808.1
MOTOR VEHICLE IMPACT PROTECTION

CHAPTER 29
WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

SECTION P2901 GENERAL

P2901.1 Potable water required. Potable water shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures and plumbing *appliances* except where treated rainwater, treated graywater or municipal reclaimed water is supplied to water closets, urinals and trap primers. The requirements of this section shall not be construed to require signage for water closets and urinals.

P2901.2 Identification of nonpotable water systems. Where *nonpotable* water systems are installed, the piping conveying the nonpotable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Sections P2901.2.1 through P2901.2.2.3.

P2901.2.1 Signage required. Nonpotable water outlets such as hose connections, open-ended pipes and faucets shall be identified with signage that reads as follows: "Nonpotable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER. DO NOT DRINK." The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) in height and in colors in contrast to the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wordage, the pictograph shown in Figure P2901.2.1 shall appear on the required signage.

P2901.2.2 Distribution pipe labeling and marking. Nonpotable distribution piping shall be: purple in color and embossed or integrally stamped or marked with the words, "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER. DO NOT DRINK"; or installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall include the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

FIGURE P2901.2.1
PICTOGRAPH—DO NOT DRINK

P2901.2.2.1 Color. The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed water, rainwater and graywater distribution systems.

P2901.2.2.2 Lettering size. The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table P2901.2.2.2.

TABLE P2901.2.2.2
SIZE OF PIPE IDENTIFICATION

PIPE DIAMETER (inches)	LENGTH OF BACKGROUND COLOR FIELD (inches)	SIZE OF LETTERS (inches)
$^3/_4$ to $1^1/_4$	8	0.5
$1^1/_2$ to 2	8	0.75
$2^1/_2$ to 6	12	1.25
8 to 10	2	2.5
Over 10	32	3.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

P2901.2.2.3 Identification tape. Where used, identification tape shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have white or black lettering on a purple field stating, "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER—DO NOT DRINK." Identification tape shall be installed on top of nonpotable rainwater distribution pipes and fastened not greater than every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length, and run continuously the entire length of the pipe.

P2901.3 Reuse of piping. Piping that has been utilized for any purpose other than conveying potable water shall not be utilized for conveying potable water.

SECTION P2902 PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER SUPPLY

P2902.1 General. A potable water supply system shall be designed and installed as to prevent contamination from nonpotable liquids, solids or gases being introduced into the potable water supply. Connections shall not be made to a potable water supply in a manner that could contaminate the water supply or provide a cross connection between the supply and a source of contamination except where *approved* backflow prevention assemblies, backflow prevention devices or other means or methods are installed to protect the potable water supply. Cross connections between an individual water supply and a potable public water supply shall be prohibited.

P2902.2 Plumbing fixtures. The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be installed so as to prevent backflow. Plumbing fixture fittings shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

P2902.3 Backflow protection. A means of protection against backflow shall be provided in accordance with Sections P2902.3.1 through P2902.3.7. Backflow prevention applications shall conform to Table P2902.3, except as specifically stated in Sections P2902.4 through P2902.5.5.

P2902.3.1 Air gaps. *Air gaps* shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 and *air gap* fittings shall comply with ASME A112.1.3. An *air gap* shall be measured vertically from the lowest end of a water outlet to the flood level rim of the fixture or receptor into which the water outlets discharges to the floor. The required *air gap* shall be not less than twice the diameter of the effective opening of the outlet and not less than the values specified in Table P2902.3.1.

P2902.3.2 Atmospheric-type vacuum breakers. Atmospheric-type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Hose-connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1011, ASSE 1019, ASSE 1035, ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1, CSA B64.2.1.1, CSA B64.2.2 or CSA B64.7. Both types of vacuum breakers shall be installed with the outlet continuously open to the atmosphere. The critical level of the atmospheric vacuum breaker shall be set at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device.

P2902.3.3 Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent. Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vents shall conform to ASSE 1012, ASSE 1081 or CSA B64.3. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. These devices shall be prohibited as a means of protection where any hazardous chemical additives are introduced downstream of the device. The relief opening shall discharge by *air gap* and shall be prevented from being submerged.

P2902.3.4 Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies. Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1020 or CSA B64.1.2. Spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies shall comply with ASSE 1056. These assemblies are designed for installation under continuous pressure conditions where the critical level is installed at the required height. The critical level of a pressure vacuum breaker and a spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly shall be set at not less than 12 inches (304 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device. Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall not be installed in locations where spillage could cause damage to the structure.

P2902.3.5 Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies. Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies and reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4 or CSA B64.4.1. Reduced pressure detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1047. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. The relief opening shall discharge by *air gap* and shall be prevented from being submerged.

P2902.3.6 Double-check backflow prevention assemblies. Double-check backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1015, AWWA C510, CSA B64.5 or CSA B64.5.1. Double-check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1048. These assemblies shall be capable of operating under continuous pressure conditions.

P2902.3.7 Dual check backflow preventer. Dual check backflow preventers shall conform with ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

P2902.4 Protection of potable water outlets. Potable water openings and outlets shall be protected by an *air gap*, a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly, an atmospheric vent, an atmospheric-type vacuum breaker, a pressure-type vacuum breaker assembly or a hose connection backflow preventer.

P2902.4.1 Fill valves. Flush tanks shall be equipped with an antisiphon fill valve conforming to ASSE 1002/ASME A112.1002/CSA B125.12 or CSA B125.3. The critical level of the fill valve shall be located not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the flush tank overflow pipe.

P2902.4.2 Deck-mounted and integral vacuum breakers. *Approved* deck-mounted or equipment-mounted vacuum breakers and faucets with integral atmospheric vacuum breakers or spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements for labeling. The critical level of the breakers and assemblies shall be located at not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the *flood level rim*.

P2902.4.3 Hose connection. Sillcocks, hose bibbs, wall hydrants and other openings with a hose connection shall be protected by an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker, a pressure vacuum-breaker assembly or a permanently attached hose connection vacuum breaker.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to water heater and boiler drain valves that are provided with hose connection threads and that are intended only for tank or vessel draining.
2. This section shall not apply to water supply valves intended for connection of clothes washing machines where backflow prevention

**TABLE P2902.3
APPLICATION FOR BACKFLOW PREVENTERS**

DEVICE	DEGREE OF HAZARD[a]	APPLICATION[b]	APPLICABLE STANDARDS
Backflow Prevention Assemblies			
Double-check backflow prevention assembly and double-check fire protection backflow prevention assembly	Low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^3/_8$″ – 16″	ASSE 1015, AWWA C510, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1
Double-check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies	Low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes 2″ – 16″	ASSE 1048
Pressure vacuum breaker assembly	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage only sizes $^1/_2$″ – 2″	ASSE 1020, CSA B64.1.2
Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly and reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly	High or low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^3/_8$″ – 16″	ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4, CSA B64.4.1
Reduced pressure detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage or backpressure (automatic sprinkler systems)	ASSE 1047
Spill-resistant vacuum breaker	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage only sizes $^1/_4$″ – 2″	ASSE 1056, CSA B64.1.3
Backflow Preventer Plumbing Devices			
Antisiphon-type fill valves for gravity water closet flush tanks	High hazard	Backsiphonage only	ASSE 1002/ASME A112.1002/CSA B125.12, CSA B125.3
Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vents	Low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^1/_4$″ – $^3/_8$″	ASSE 1012, CSA B64.3
Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent and pressure-reducing valve	Low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^1/_4$″ – $^3/_8$″	ASSE 1081
Dual-check-valve-type backflow preventers	Low hazard	Backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^1/_4$″ – 1″	ASSE 1024, CSA B64.6
Hose-connection backflow preventer	High or low hazard	Low head backpressure, rated working pressure backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^1/_2$″ – 1″	ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2.1.1
Hose-connection vacuum breaker	High or low hazard	Low head backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^1/_2$″, $^3/_4$″, 1″	ASSE 1011, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1
Laboratory faucet backflow preventer	High or low hazard	Low head backpressure and backsiphonage	ASSE 1035, CSA B64.7
Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breaker	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage only sizes $^1/_4$″ – 4″	ASSE 1001, CSA B64.1.1
Vacuum breaker wall hydrants, frost-resistant, automatic-draining type	High or low hazard	Low head backpressure or backsiphonage sizes $^3/_4$″ – 1″	ASSE 1019, CSA B64.2.2
Other Means or Methods			
Air gap	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage only	ASME A112.1.2
Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances	High or low hazard	Backsiphonage or backpressure	ASME A112.1.3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Low hazard—See “*Pollution*” (Section R202). High hazard—See “*Contamination*” (Section R202).

b. See “*Backpressure*” (Section R202). See “*Backpressure, Low Head*” (Section R202). See “*Backsiphonage*” (Section R202).

**TABLE P2902.3.1
MINIMUM AIR GAPS**

FIXTURE	MINIMUM AIR GAP	
	Away from a wall[a] (inches)	Close to a wall (inches)
Effective openings greater than 1 inch	Two times the diameter of the effective opening	Three times the diameter of the effective opening
Lavatories and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than $^1/_2$ inch in diameter	1	1.5
Over-rim bath fillers and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 1 inch in diameter	2	3
Sink, laundry trays, gooseneck back faucets and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than $^3/_4$ inch in diameter	1.5	2.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Applicable where walls or obstructions are spaced from the nearest inside edge of the spout opening a distance greater than three times the diameter of the effective opening for a single wall, or a distance greater than four times the diameter of the effective opening for two intersecting walls.

is otherwise provided or is integral with the machine.

P2902.5 Protection of potable water connections. Connections to the potable water shall conform to Sections P2902.5.1 through P2902.5.5.

P2902.5.1 Connections to boilers. Where chemicals will not be introduced into a boiler, the potable water supply to the boiler shall be protected from the boiler by a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE 1012 or CSA B64.3. Where chemicals will be introduced into a boiler, the potable water supply to the boiler shall be protected from the boiler by an *air gap* or a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly complying with ASSE 1013, AWWA C511 or CSA B64.4.

P2902.5.2 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers using an essentially toxic transfer fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An *air gap* open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. Single-wall construction heat exchangers shall be used only where an *essentially nontoxic transfer fluid* is utilized.

P2902.5.3 Lawn irrigation systems. The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric vacuum breaker, a pressure vacuum-breaker assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly. Valves shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.

P2902.5.4 Connections to automatic fire sprinkler systems. The potable water supply to automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be protected against backflow by a double-check backflow prevention assembly, a double-check fire protection backflow prevention assembly, a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly.

Exception: Where sprinkler systems are installed in accordance with Section P2904.1, backflow protection for the water supply system shall not be required.

P2902.5.4.1 Additives or nonpotable source. Where systems contain chemical additives or antifreeze, or where systems are connected to a nonpotable secondary water supply, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly. Where chemical additives or antifreeze is added to only a portion of an automatic sprinkler or standpipe system, the reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow preventer shall be permitted to be located so as to isolate that portion of the system.

P2902.5.5 Solar thermal systems. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution or any other type of heating system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Section P2902.5.5.1, P2902.5.5.2 or P2902.5.5.3 as applicable. Solar energy systems used for heating potable water or using an independent medium for heating potable water shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code. The use of solar energy shall not compromise the requirements for cross connection or protection of the potable water supply system required by this code.

P2902.5.5.1 Indirect systems. Water supplies of any type shall not be connected to the solar heating loop of an indirect solar thermal hot water heating system. This requirement shall not prohibit the presence of inlets or outlets on the solar heating loop for the purposes of servicing the fluid in the solar heating loop.

P2902.5.5.2 Direct systems for potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats potable water for a potable water distribution system, the pipe, fittings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the system shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 29.

P2902.5.5.3 Direct systems for other than potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats water for a system other than a potable water distribution system, a potable water supply connected to such system shall be protected by a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE 1012. Where a solar thermal system directly heats chemically treated water for a system other than a potable water distribution system, a potable water supply connected to such system shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly complying with ASSE 1013.

P2902.6 Location of backflow preventers. Access shall be provided to backflow preventers as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

P2902.6.1 Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices. Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices shall comply with ASSE 1060.

P2902.6.2 Protection of backflow preventers. Backflow preventers shall not be located in areas subject to freezing except where they can be removed by means of unions, or are protected by heat, insulation or both.

P2902.6.3 Relief port piping. The indirect waste receptor and drainage piping shall be sized to drain the maximum discharge flow rate from the relief port as published by the backflow preventer manufacturer. The termination of the piping from the relief port or air gap fitting of the backflow preventer shall discharge to an *approved* indirect waste receptor or to the outdoors where it will not cause damage or create a nuisance.

SECTION P2903 WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

P2903.1 Water supply system design criteria. The water service and water distribution systems shall be designed and sized for peak demand using values shown in Table P2903.1.

P2903.2 Maximum flow and water consumption. The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall be in accordance with Table P2903.2.

P2903.3 Minimum pressure. Where the water pressure supplied by the public water main or an individual water supply system is insufficient to provide for the minimum pressures and quantities for the plumbing fixtures in the building, the pressure shall be increased by means of an elevated water tank, a hydropneumatic pressure booster system or a water pressure booster pump.

P2903.3.1 Pumps handling drinking water. Pumps intended to supply drinking water shall conform to NSF 61.

P2903.3.2 Maximum pressure. The static water pressure shall be not greater than 80 psi (551 kPa). Where the main pressure exceeds 80 psi (551 kPa), an *approved* pressure-reducing valve conforming to ASSE 1003 or CSA B356 shall be installed on the domestic water branch main or riser at the connection to the water service pipe.

Exception: Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants when equipped with a shutoff valve.

P2903.4 Thermal expansion control. A means for controlling increased pressure caused by thermal expansion shall be installed where required in accordance with Sections P2903.4.1 and P2903.4.2.

P2903.4.1 Pressure-reducing valve. For water service system sizes up to and including 2 inches (51 mm), a device for controlling pressure shall be installed where, because of thermal expansion, the pressure on the downstream side of a pressure-reducing valve exceeds the pressure-reducing valve setting.

P2903.4.2 Backflow prevention device or check valve. Where a backflow prevention device, check valve or other device is installed on a water supply system using storage water heating equipment such that thermal expansion causes an increase in pressure, a device for controlling pressure shall be installed.

TABLE P2903.1
REQUIRED CAPACITIES AT POINT OF OUTLET DISCHARGE

FIXTURE SUPPLY OUTLET SERVING	FLOW RATE (gpm)	FLOW PRESSURE (psi)
Bathtub, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic mixing valve	4	20
Bidet, thermostatic mixing valve	2	20
Dishwasher	2.75	8
Laundry tray	4	8
Lavatory	0.8	8
Shower, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic mixing valve	2.5[a]	20
Sillcock, hose bibb	5	8
Sink	1.75	8
Water closet, flushometer tank	1.6	20
Water closet, tank, close coupled	3	20
Water closet, tank, one-piece	6	20

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.
a. Where the shower mixing valve manufacturer indicates a lower flow rating for the mixing valve, the lower value shall be applied.

TABLE P2903.2
MAXIMUM FLOW RATES AND CONSUMPTION FOR PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE FITTINGS[b]

PLUMBING FIXTURE OR FIXTURE FITTING	MAXIMUM FLOW RATE OR QUANTITY
Lavatory faucet	2.2 gpm at 60 psi
Shower head[a]	2.5 gpm at 80 psi
Sink faucet	2.2 gpm at 60 psi
Water closet	1.6 gallons per flushing cycle

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
a. A hand-held shower spray shall be considered to be a shower head.
b. Consumption tolerances shall be determined from referenced standards.

P2903.5 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the water distribution system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. A water-hammer arrestor shall be installed where quick-closing valves are utilized for clothes washers, dishwashers, ice makers, or similar applications. Water-hammer arrestors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Water-hammer arrestors shall conform to ASSE 1010.

P2903.6 Determining water supply fixture units. Supply loads in the building water distribution system shall be determined by total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of water supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.), as shown in Table P2903.6, and gallon per minute (gpm) flow rates [see Table P2903.6(1)]. For fixtures not listed, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.

P2903.7 Size of water-service mains, branch mains and risers. The size of the water service pipe shall be not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) diameter. The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers shall be determined from the water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including *equivalent length* of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be determined according to design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice, such as those methods in Appendix AP and shall be *approved* by the *building official.*

P2903.8 Gridded and parallel water distribution systems. Hot water and cold water manifolds installed with parallel-connected individual distribution lines and cold water manifolds installed with gridded distribution lines to each fixture or fixture fitting shall be designed in accordance with Sections P2903.8.1 through P2903.8.5. Gridded systems for hot water distribution systems shall be prohibited.

P2903.8.1 Sizing of manifolds. Manifolds shall be sized in accordance with Table P2903.8.1. Total gallons per minute is the demand for all outlets.

TABLE P2903.8.1
MANIFOLD SIZING[a]

PLASTIC		METALLIC	
Nominal Size ID (inches)	Maximum[b] gpm	Nominal Size ID (inches)	Maximum[b] gpm
$^3/_4$	17	$^3/_4$	11
1	29	1	20
$1^1/_4$	46	$1^1/_4$	31
$1^1/_2$	66	$1^1/_2$	44

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 foot per second = 0.3048 m/s.

a. See Table P2903.6 for w.s.f.u and Table P2903.6(1) for gallon-per-minute (gpm) flow rates.

b. Based on velocity limitation: plastic, 12 feet per second; metal, 8 feet per second.

P2903.8.2 Minimum size. Where the *developed length* of the distribution line is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or less, and the available pressure at the meter is not less than 40 pounds per square inch (276 kPa), the size of individual distribution lines shall be not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm) diameter. Certain fixtures such as one-piece water closets and whirlpool bathtubs shall require a larger size where specified by the manufacturer. Where a water heater is fed from the end of a cold water manifold, the manifold shall be one size larger than the water heater feed.

P2903.8.3 Support and protection. Plastic piping bundles shall be secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and supported in accordance with Section P2605. Bundles that have a change in direction equal to or greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) shall be protected from chafing at the point of contact with framing members by sleeving or wrapping.

TABLE P2903.6
WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES FOR VARIOUS PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE GROUPS

TYPE OF FIXTURES OR GROUP OF FIXTURES	WATER-SUPPLY FIXTURE-UNIT VALUE (w.s.f.u.)		
	Hot	Cold	Combined
Bathtub (with/without overhead shower head)	1.0	1.0	1.4
Clothes washer	1.0	1.0	1.4
Dishwasher	1.4	—	1.4
Full-bath group with bathtub (with/without shower head) or shower stall	1.5	2.7	3.6
Half-bath group (water closet and lavatory)	0.5	2.5	2.6
Hose bibb (sillcock)[a]	—	2.5	2.5
Kitchen group (dishwasher and sink with or without food-waste disposer)	1.9	1.0	2.5
Kitchen sink	1.0	1.0	1.4
Laundry group (clothes washer standpipe and laundry tub)	1.8	1.8	2.5
Laundry tub	1.0	1.0	1.4
Lavatory	0.5	0.5	0.7
Shower stall	1.0	1.0	1.4
Water closet (tank type)	—	2.2	2.2

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. The fixture-unit value 2.5 assumes a flow demand of 2.5 gallons per minute, such as for an individual lawn sprinkler device. If a hose bibb or sill cock will be required to furnish a greater flow, the equivalent fixture-unit value may be obtained from this table or Table P2903.6(1).

TABLE P2903.6(1)
CONVERSIONS FROM WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT TO GALLON PER MINUTE FLOW RATES

SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS			SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETER VALVES		
Load	Demand		Load	Demand	
(Water supply fixture units)	(Gallons per minute)	(Cubic feet per minute)	(Water supply fixture units)	(Gallons per minute)	(Cubic feet per minute)
1	3.0	0.04104	—	—	—
2	5.0	0.0684	—	—	—
3	6.5	0.86892	—	—	—
4	8.0	1.06944	—	—	—
5	9.4	1.256592	5	15.0	2.0052
6	10.7	1.430376	6	17.4	2.326032
7	11.8	1.577424	7	19.8	2.646364
8	12.8	1.711104	8	22.2	2.967696
9	13.7	1.831416	9	24.6	3.288528
10	14.6	1.951728	10	27.0	3.60936
11	15.4	2.058672	11	27.8	3.716304
12	16.0	2.13888	12	28.6	3.823248
13	16.5	2.20572	13	29.4	3.930192
14	17.0	2.27256	14	30.2	4.037136
15	17.5	2.3394	15	31.0	4.14408
16	18.0	2.90624	16	31.8	4.241024
17	18.4	2.459712	17	32.6	4.357968
18	18.8	2.513184	18	33.4	4.464912
19	19.2	2.566656	19	34.2	4.571856
20	19.6	2.620128	20	35.0	4.6788
25	21.5	2.87412	25	38.0	5.07984
30	23.3	3.114744	30	42.0	5.61356
35	24.9	3.328632	35	44.0	5.88192
40	26.3	3.515784	40	46.0	6.14928
45	27.7	3.702936	45	48.0	6.41664
50	29.1	3.890088	50	50.0	6.684

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s.

P2903.8.4 Valving. Fixture valves, when installed, shall be located either at the fixture or at the manifold. Valves installed at the manifold shall be *labeled* indicating the fixture served.

P2903.8.5 Hose bibb bleed. A *readily accessible* air bleed shall be installed in hose bibb supplies at the manifold or at the hose bibb exit point.

P2903.9 Valves. Valves shall be installed in accordance with Sections P2903.9.1 through P2903.9.5.

P2903.9.1 Service valve. Each *dwelling unit* shall be provided with an accessible main shutoff valve located either inside or outside the dwelling within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the foundation wall in a readily accessible valve box, in the crawl space within 3 feet (914 mm) of the crawl space access door or within the dwelling in a location where it may be accessed without the use of a ladder or a tool. The valve shall be of a full-open type having nominal restriction to flow, with provision for drainage such as a bleed orifice or installation of a separate drain valve.

P2903.9.2 Water heater valve. A *readily accessible* full-open valve shall be installed in the cold-water supply pipe to each water heater within 3 feet (914 mm) of the water heater. The valve shall not interfere or cause a disruption of the cold water supply to the remainder of the cold water system. The valve shall be provided with *access* on the same floor level as the water heater served.

P2903.9.3 Fixture valves and access. Shutoff valves shall be required on each fixture supply pipe to each plumbing *appliance* and to each plumbing fixture other than bathtubs and showers. Valves serving individual plumbing fixtures, *plumbing appliances*, risers and branches shall be accessible.

P2903.9.4 Valve requirements. Valves shall be compatible with the type of piping material installed in the system. Valves shall conform to one of the standards indicated in Table P2903.9.4 or shall be *approved*. Valves intended to supply drinking water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61.

P2903.9.5 Valves and outlets prohibited below grade. Potable water outlets and combination stop-and-waste valves shall not be installed underground or below grade. Freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground are considered to be stop-and-waste valves.

Exception: Installation of freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground shall be permitted if the potable water supply to such hydrants is protected upstream of the hydrants in accordance with Section P2902 and the hydrants are permanently identified as nonpotable outlets by *approved* signage that reads, “CAUTION, NONPOTABLE WATER. DO NOT DRINK.”

P2903.10 Hose bibb. Hose bibbs subject to freezing, including the “frostproof” type, shall be equipped with an accessible stop-and-waste-type valve inside the building so that they can be controlled and drained during cold periods.

Exception: Frostproof hose bibbs installed such that the stem extends through the building insulation into an open heated or *semiconditioned space* need not be separately valved (see Figure P2903.10).

P2903.11 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall be in accordance with Section N1103.5.3.

SECTION P2904
DWELLING UNIT FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

P2904.1 General. The design and installation of residential automatic sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 13D or Section P2904, which shall be considered to be equivalent to NFPA 13D. Partial residential sprinkler systems shall be permitted to be installed only in buildings not required to be equipped with a residential sprinkler system. Section P2904 shall apply to stand-alone and multipurpose wet-pipe sprinkler systems that do not include the use of antifreeze. A multipurpose fire sprinkler system shall provide domestic water to both fire sprinklers and plumbing fixtures. A stand-alone sprinkler system shall be separate and independent from the water distribution system. A backflow preventer shall not be required to separate a sprinkler system from the water distribution system, provided that the sprinkler system complies with all of the following:

1. The system complies with NFPA 13D or Section P2904.
2. The piping material complies with Section P2906.
3. The system does not contain antifreeze.

TABLE P2903.9.4
VALVES

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic	ASME A112.4.14, ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, ASTM F1970, CSA B125.3, MSS SP-122
Copper or copper alloy	ASME A112.4.14, ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, ASME B16.34, CSA B125.3, MSS SP-67, MSS SP-80, MSS SP-110, MSS SP-139
Gray and ductile iron	ASTM A126, AWWA C500, AWWA C504, AWWA C507, MSS SP-42, MSS SP-67, MSS SP-70, MSS SP-71, MSS SP-72, MSS SP-78
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic	ASME A112.4.14, ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, CSA B125.3, NSF 359
Polypropylene (PP) plastic	ASME A112.4.14, ASTM F2389
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic	ASME A112.4.14, ASTM F1970, MSS SP-122

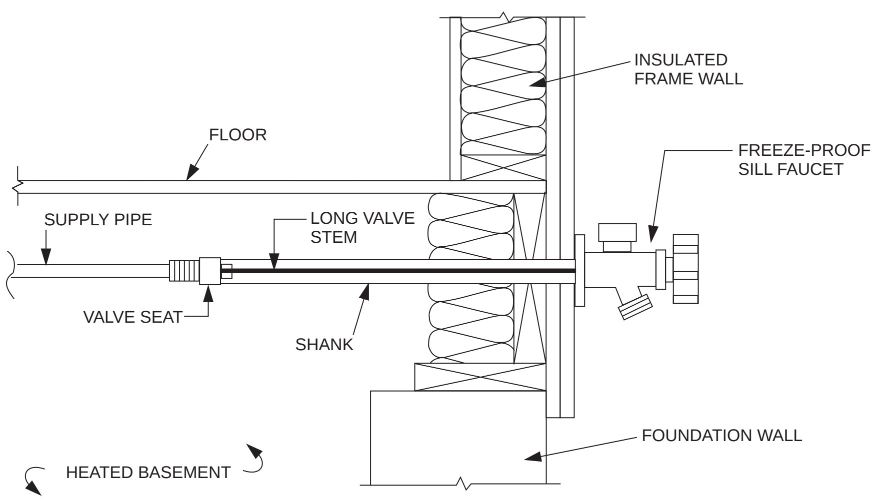


FIGURE P2903.10
TYPICAL FROSTPROOF HOSE BIBB INSTALLATION NOT REQUIRING SEPARATE VALVE

4. The system does not have a fire department connection.

P2904.1.1 Required sprinkler locations. Sprinklers shall be installed to protect all areas of a *dwelling unit*.

Exceptions:

1. *Attics*, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that do not contain fuel-fired *appliances* do not require sprinklers. In *attics*, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that contain fuel-fired equipment, a sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment; however, sprinklers shall not be required in the remainder of the space.
2. Clothes closets, linen closets and pantries not exceeding 24 square feet (2.2 m^2) in area, with the smallest dimension not greater than 3 feet (915 mm) and having wall and ceiling surfaces of gypsum board.
3. Bathrooms not more than 55 square feet (5.1 m^2) in area.
4. Garages; carports; exterior porches; unheated entry areas, such as mud rooms, that are adjacent to an exterior door; and similar areas.

P2904.2 Sprinklers. Sprinklers shall be new *listed* residential sprinklers and shall be installed in accordance with the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.

P2904.2.1 Temperature rating and separation from heat sources. Except as provided for in Section P2904.2.2, sprinklers shall have a temperature rating of not less than 135°F (57°C) and not more than 225°F (107°C). Sprinklers shall be separated from heat sources as required by the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

P2904.2.2 Intermediate temperature sprinklers. Sprinklers shall have an intermediate temperature rating not less than 175°F (79°C) and not more than 225°F (107°C) where installed in the following locations:

1. Directly under skylights, where the sprinkler is exposed to direct sunlight.
2. In *attics*.
3. In concealed spaces located directly beneath a roof.
4. Within the distance to a heat source as specified in Table P2904.2.2.

P2904.2.3 Freezing areas. Piping shall be protected from freezing as required by Section P2603.5 or by using one of the following:

1. A dry-pipe automatic sprinkler system that is listed for residential occupancy applications.
2. Dry-sidewall or dry-pendent sprinklers extending from a nonfreezing area into a freezing area.

P2904.2.4 Sprinkler coverage. Sprinkler coverage requirements and sprinkler obstruction requirements shall be in accordance with Sections P2904.2.4.1 and P2904.2.4.2.

P2904.2.4.1 Coverage area limit. The area of coverage of a single sprinkler shall not exceed 400 square feet (37 m^2) and shall be based on the sprinkler *listing* and the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

P2904.2.4.2 Obstructions to coverage. Sprinkler discharge shall not be blocked by obstructions unless additional sprinklers are installed to protect the obstructed area. Additional sprinklers shall not be required where the sprinkler separation from obstructions complies with either the minimum distance indicated in Figure P2904.2.4.2 or the minimum distances specified in the sprinkler manufacturer's

TABLE P2904.2.2
LOCATIONS WHERE INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED

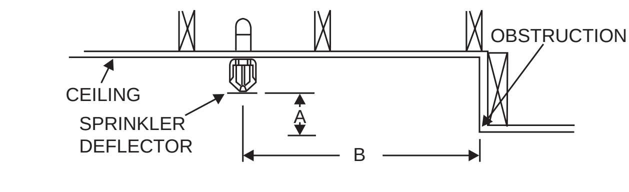
HEAT SOURCE	RANGE OF DISTANCE FROM HEAT SOURCE WITHIN WHICH INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED[a, b] (inches)
Coal and wood burning stove	12 to 42
Fireplace, front of recessed fireplace	36 to 60
Fireplace, side of open or recessed fireplace	12 to 36
Front of wall-mounted warm-air register	18 to 36
Heating duct, not insulated	9 to 18
Hot water pipe, not insulated	6 to 12
Kitchen range top	9 to 18
Luminaire up to 250 watts	3 to 6
Luminaire 250 watts up to 499 watts	6 to 12
Oven	9 to 18
Side of ceiling or wall warm-air register	12 to 24
Vent connector or chimney connector	9 to 18
Water heater, furnace or boiler	3 to 6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Sprinklers shall not be located at distances less than the minimum table distance unless the sprinkler listing allows a lesser distance.

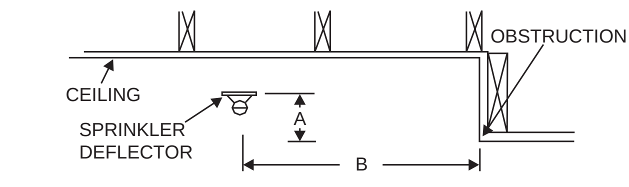
b. Distances shall be measured in a straight line from the nearest edge of the heat source to the nearest edge of the sprinkler.

PENDENT SPRINKLER TO SIDE OBSTRUCTION



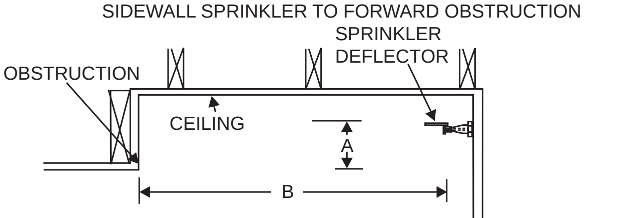
WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	1½
3	3
5	4
7	4½
9	6
11	6½
14	7

SIDEWALL SPRINKLER TO SIDE OBSTRUCTION



WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	1½
3	3
5	4
7	4½
9	6
11	6½
14	7

SIDEWALL SPRINKLER TO FORWARD OBSTRUCTION



WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	8
2	10
3	11
4	12
6	13
7	14
9	15
11	16
14	17

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE P2904.2.4.2
MINIMUM ALLOWABLE DISTANCE
BETWEEN SPRINKLER AND OBSTRUCTION

instructions where the manufacturer's instructions permit a lesser distance.

P2904.2.4.2.1 Additional requirements for pendent sprinklers. Pendent sprinklers within 3 feet (915 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

P2904.2.4.2.2 Additional requirements for sidewall sprinklers. Sidewall sprinklers within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

P2904.2.5 Sprinkler installation on systems assembled with solvent cement. The solvent cementing of threaded adapter fittings shall be completed and threaded adapters for sprinklers shall be verified as being clear of excess cement prior to the installation of sprinklers on systems assembled with solvent cement.

P2904.2.6 Sprinkler modifications prohibited. Painting, caulking or modifying of sprinklers shall be prohibited. Sprinklers that have been painted, caulked, modified or damaged shall be replaced with new sprinklers.

P2904.3 Sprinkler piping system. Sprinkler piping shall be supported in accordance with requirements for cold water distribution piping. Sprinkler piping shall comply with the requirements for cold water distribution piping. For multipurpose piping systems, the sprinkler piping shall connect to and be a part of the cold water distribution piping system.

Exception: For plastic piping, it shall be permissible to follow the manufacturer's installation instructions.

P2904.3.1 Nonmetallic pipe and tubing. Nonmetallic pipe and tubing, such as CPVC, PEX, and PE-RT shall be *listed* for use in residential fire sprinkler systems.

P2904.3.1.1 Nonmetallic pipe protection. Nonmetallic pipe and tubing systems shall be protected from exposure to the living space by a layer of not less than $^3/_8$-inch-thick (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard, $^1/_2$-inch-thick (13 mm) plywood, or other material having a 15-minute fire rating.

Exceptions:

1. Pipe protection shall not be required in areas that do not require protection with sprinklers as specified in Section P2904.1.1.
2. Pipe protection shall not be required where exposed piping is permitted by the pipe *listing.*

P2904.3.2 Shutoff valves prohibited. With the exception of shutoff valves for the entire water distribution system or a single master control valve for the automatic sprinkler system that is locked in the open position, valves shall not be installed in any location where the valve would isolate piping serving one or more sprinklers.

P2904.3.3 Single dwelling limit. Piping beyond the service valve located at the beginning of the water distribution system shall not serve more than one *dwelling*.

P2904.3.4 Drain. A means to drain the sprinkler system shall be provided on the system side of the water distribution shutoff valve.

P2904.4 Determining system design flow. The flow for sizing the sprinkler piping system shall be based on Sections P2904.4.1 and P2904.4.2.

P2904.4.1 Determining required flow rate for each sprinkler. The minimum required flow for each sprinkler shall be determined using the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on all of the following:

1. The area of coverage.
2. The ceiling configuration, in accordance with Sections P2904.4.1.1 through P2904.4.1.3.
3. The temperature rating.
4. Any additional conditions specified by the sprinkler manufacturer.

P2904.4.1.1 Ceiling configurations. Manufacturer's published flow rates for sprinklers tested under a ceiling 8 feet (2438 mm) in height, in accordance with the sprinkler listing, shall be used for the following ceiling configurations, provided that the ceiling surface does not have significant irregularities, lumps or indentations and is continuous in a single plane.

1. Ceilings that are horizontal or that have a slope not exceeding 8 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (67 percent), without beams, provided that the ceiling height, measured to the highest point, does not exceed 24 feet (7315 mm) above the floor. Where the slope exceeds 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17 percent), the highest sprinkler installed along the sloped portion of a ceiling shall be positioned above all communicating openings connecting the sloped ceiling compartment with an adjacent space.
2. Ceilings that are horizontal or that have a slope not exceeding 8 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (67 percent), with beams, provided that the ceiling height, measured to the highest point, does not exceed 24 feet (7315 mm) above the floor. Beams shall not exceed 14 inches (350 mm) in depth, and pendent sprinklers shall be installed under the beams as described at the end of this section. The compartment containing the beamed ceiling shall not exceed 600 square feet (56 m^2) in area. Where the slope does not exceed 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17 percent), the highest sprinkler in the compartment shall be above all communicating openings connecting the compartment with an adjacent space. Where the slope exceeds 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17 percent), the highest sprinkler installed along the sloped portion of a ceiling shall be positioned above all communicating openings connecting the sloped ceiling compartment with an adjacent space.
3. Ceilings that have a slope exceeding 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17 percent) but not exceeding 8 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (67 percent), with beams of any depth, provided that the ceiling height, measured to the highest point, does not exceed 24 feet (7315 mm) above the floor. Sidewall or pendent sprinklers shall be installed in each pocket formed by beams. The compartment containing the sloped, beamed ceiling shall not exceed 600 square feet (56 m^2) in area.

Pendent, recessed pendent and flush-type pendent sprinklers installed directly under a beam having a maximum depth of 14 inches (356 mm) shall have the sprinkler deflector located not less than 1 inch (25 mm) or more than 2 inches (51 mm) below the bottom of the beam. Pendent sprinklers installed adjacent to the bottom of a beam having a maximum depth of 14 inches (356 mm) shall be positioned such that the vertical centerline of the sprinkler is not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from the edge of the beam, with the sprinkler deflector located not less than 1 inch (25 mm) or more than 2 inches (51 mm) below the bottom of the beam. Pendent sprinklers shall also be permitted to be installed less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the bottom of a beam where in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for installation of flush sprinklers.

P2904.4.1.2 Ceiling configurations with special sprinkler listings. For ceiling configurations not specified in Section 2904.4.1.1, the manufacturer's published flow rate for sprinklers that have been listed for protection of such configurations shall be used.

P2904.4.1.3 Other ceiling configurations. For ceiling configurations not addressed by Section P2904.4.1.1 or P2904.4.1.2, the flow rate shall be subject to approval by the building official.

P2904.4.2 System design flow rate. The design flow rate for the system shall be based on the following:

1. The design flow rate for a room having only one sprinkler shall be the flow rate required for that sprinkler, as determined by Section P2904.4.1.
2. The design flow rate for a room having two or more sprinklers shall be determined by identifying the sprinkler in that room with the highest required flow rate, based on Section P2904.4.1, and multiplying that flow rate by 2.
3. Where the sprinkler manufacturer specifies different criteria for ceiling configurations that are not smooth, flat and horizontal, the required flow rate for that room shall comply with the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.

4. The design flow rate for the sprinkler system shall be the flow required by the room with the largest flow rate, based on Items 1, 2 and 3.
5. For the purpose of this section, it shall be permissible to reduce the design flow rate for a room by subdividing the space into two or more rooms, where each room is evaluated separately with respect to the required design flow rate. Each room shall be bounded by walls and a ceiling. Openings in walls shall have a lintel not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth and each lintel shall form a solid barrier between the ceiling and the top of the opening.

P2904.5 Water supply. The water supply shall provide not less than the required design flow rate for sprinklers in accordance with Section P2904.4.2 at a pressure not less than that used to comply with Section P2904.6.

P2904.5.1 Water supply from individual sources. Where a *dwelling unit* water supply is from a tank system, a private well system or a combination of these, the available water supply shall be based on the minimum pressure control setting for the pump.

P2904.5.2 Required capacity. The water supply shall have the capacity to provide the required design flow rate for sprinklers for a period of time as follows:

1. Seven minutes for *dwelling units* one *story* in height and less than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area.
2. Ten minutes for *dwelling units* two or more stories in height or equal to or greater than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area.

Where a well system, a water supply tank system or a combination thereof is used, any combination of well capacity and tank storage shall be permitted to meet the capacity requirement.

P2904.6 Pipe sizing. The piping to sprinklers shall be sized for the flow required by Section P2904.4.2. The flow required to supply the plumbing fixtures shall not be required to be added to the sprinkler design flow.

P2904.6.1 Method of sizing pipe. Piping supplying sprinklers shall be sized using the prescriptive method in Section P2904.6.2 or by hydraulic calculation in accordance with NFPA 13D. The minimum pipe size from the water supply source to any sprinkler shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) nominal. Threaded adapter fittings at the point where sprinklers are attached to the piping shall be not less than $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) nominal.

P2904.6.2 Prescriptive pipe sizing method. Pipe shall be sized by determining the available pressure to offset friction loss in piping and identifying a piping material, diameter and length using the equation in Section P2904.6.2.1 and the procedure in Section P2904.6.2.2.

P2904.6.2.1 Available pressure equation. The pressure available to offset friction loss in the interior piping system (P_t) shall be determined in accordance with the Equation 29-1.

$$P_t = P_{sup} - PL_{svc} - PL_m - PL_d - PL_e - P_{sp}$$

(Equation 29-1)

where:

P_t = Pressure used in applying Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9).

P_{sup} = Pressure available from the water supply source.

PL_{svc} = Pressure loss in the water service pipe. [Table P2904.6.2(1)]

PL_m = Pressure loss in the water meter. [Table P2904.6.2(2)]

PL_d = Pressure loss from devices other than the water meter.

PL_e = Pressure loss associated with changes in elevation. [Table P2904.6.2(3)]

P_{sp} = Maximum pressure required by a sprinkler.

P2904.6.2.2 Calculation procedure. Determination of the required size for water distribution piping shall be in accordance with the following procedure:

Step 1—Determine P_{sup}

Obtain the static supply pressure that will be available from the water main from the water purveyor, or for an individual source, the available supply pressure shall be in accordance with Section P2904.5.1.

Step 2—Determine PL_{svc}

Use Table P2904.6.2(1) to determine the pressure loss in the water service pipe based on the selected size of the water service.

Step 3—Determine PL_m

Use Table P2904.6.2(2) to determine the pressure loss from the water meter, based on the selected water meter size.

Step 4—Determine PL_d

Determine the pressure loss from devices other than the water meter installed in the piping system supplying sprinklers, such as pressure-reducing valves, backflow preventers, water softeners or water filters. Device pressure losses shall be based on the device manufacturer's specifications. The flow rate used to determine pressure loss shall be the rate from Section P2904.4.2, except that 5 gpm (0.3 L/s) shall be added where the device is installed in a water service pipe that supplies more than one *dwelling*. As an alternative to deducting pressure loss for a device, an automatic bypass valve shall be installed to divert flow around the device when a sprinkler activates.

Step 5—Determine PL_e

Use Table P2904.6.2(3) to determine the pressure loss associated with changes in elevation. The elevation used in applying the table shall be the difference between the elevation where the water source pressure was measured and the elevation of the highest sprinkler.

Step 6—Determine P_{sp}

Determine the maximum pressure required by any individual sprinkler based on the flow rate from Section P2904.4.1. The required pressure is provided in the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on the selected flow rate.

Step 7—Calculate P_t

Using Equation 29-1, calculate the pressure available to offset friction loss in water-distribution piping between the service valve and the sprinklers.

Step 8—Determine the maximum allowable pipe length

Use Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) to select a material and size for water distribution piping. The piping material and size shall be acceptable if the *developed length* of pipe between the service valve and the most remote sprinkler does not exceed the maximum allowable length specified by the applicable table. Interpolation of P_t between the tabular values shall be permitted.

The maximum allowable length of piping in Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) incorporates an adjustment for pipe fittings. Additional consideration of friction losses associated with pipe fittings shall not be required.

P2904.7 Instructions and signs. An owner's manual for the fire sprinkler system shall be provided to the *owner*. A sign or valve tag shall be installed at the main shutoff valve to the water distribution system stating, "Warning, the water system for this home supplies fire sprinklers that require certain flows and pressures to fight a fire. Devices that restrict the flow or decrease the pressure or automatically shut off the water to the fire sprinkler system, such as water softeners, filtration systems and automatic shutoff valves, shall not be added to this system without a review of the fire sprinkler system by a fire protection specialist. Do not remove this sign."

P2904.8 Inspections. The water distribution system shall be inspected in accordance with Sections P2904.8.1 and P2904.8.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(1)
WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (PL_{svc})[a, b]

FLOW RATE[c] (gpm)	3/4-INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)				1-INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)				1 1/4-INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)			
	Length of water service pipe (feet)				Length of water service pipe (feet)				Length of water service pipe (feet)			
	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150
8	5.1	8.7	11.8	17.4	1.5	2.5	3.4	5.1	0.6	1.0	1.3	1.9
10	7.7	13.1	17.8	26.3	2.3	3.8	5.2	7.7	0.8	1.4	2.0	2.9
12	10.8	18.4	24.9	NP	3.2	5.4	7.3	10.7	1.2	2.0	2.7	4.0
14	14.4	24.5	NP	NP	4.2	7.1	9.6	14.3	1.6	2.7	3.6	5.4
16	18.4	NP	NP	NP	5.4	9.1	12.4	18.3	2.0	3.4	4.7	6.9
18	22.9	NP	NP	NP	6.7	11.4	15.4	22.7	2.5	4.3	5.8	8.6
20	27.8	NP	NP	NP	8.1	13.8	18.7	27.6	3.1	5.2	7.0	10.4
22	NP	NP	NP	NP	9.7	16.5	22.3	NP	3.7	6.2	8.4	12.4
24	NP	NP	NP	NP	11.4	19.3	26.2	NP	4.3	7.3	9.9	14.6
26	NP	NP	NP	NP	13.2	22.4	NP	NP	5.0	8.5	11.4	16.9
28	NP	NP	NP	NP	15.1	25.7	NP	NP	5.7	9.7	13.1	19.4
30	NP	NP	NP	NP	17.2	NP	NP	NP	6.5	11.0	14.9	22.0
32	NP	NP	NP	NP	19.4	NP	NP	NP	7.3	12.4	16.8	24.8
34	NP	NP	NP	NP	21.7	NP	NP	NP	8.2	13.9	18.8	NP
36	NP	NP	NP	NP	24.1	NP	NP	NP	9.1	15.4	20.9	NP

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NP = Not Permitted. Pressure loss exceeds reasonable limits.

a. Values are applicable for underground piping materials listed in Table P2906.4 and are based on an SDR of 11 and a Hazen Williams C Factor of 150.

b. Values include the following length allowances for fittings: 25-percent length increase for actual lengths up to 100 feet and 15-percent length increase for actual lengths over 100 feet.

c. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section P2904.4.2 where the water service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

TABLE P2904.6.2(2)
MINIMUM WATER METER PRESSURE LOSS (PL_m)[a]

FLOW RATE (gallons per minute, gpm)[b]	$^5/_8$-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi)	$^3/_4$-INCH METER PRESSURE LESS (pounds per square inch, psi)	1-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi)
8	3	3	1
10	3	3	1
12	4	3	1
14	6	5	1
16	7	6	1
18	9	7	2
20	11	9	2
23	14	11	3
26	18	14	3
31	26	22	4
39	38	35	6
52	NP	NP	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s.
NP = Not permitted unless the actual water meter pressure loss is known.
a. Table P2904.6.2(2) establishes conservative values for water meter pressure loss or installations where the water meter loss is unknown. Where the actual water meter pressure loss is published and available from the meter manufacturer, PL_m shall be the published pressure loss for the selected meter.
b. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section P2904.4.2 where the water service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

TABLE P2904.6.2(3)
ELEVATION LOSS (PL_e)

ELEVATION (feet)	PRESSURE LOSS (psi)
5	2.2
10	4.4
15	6.5
20	8.7
25	10.9
30	13
35	15.2
40	17.4

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

TABLE P2904.6.2(4)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR $^3/_4$-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	$^3/_4$	217	289	361	434	506	578	650	723	795	867
9	$^3/_4$	174	232	291	349	407	465	523	581	639	697
10	$^3/_4$	143	191	239	287	335	383	430	478	526	574
11	$^3/_4$	120	160	200	241	281	321	361	401	441	481
12	$^3/_4$	102	137	171	205	239	273	307	341	375	410
13	$^3/_4$	88	118	147	177	206	235	265	294	324	353
14	$^3/_4$	77	103	128	154	180	205	231	257	282	308
15	$^3/_4$	68	90	113	136	158	181	203	226	248	271
16	$^3/_4$	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	220	241
17	$^3/_4$	54	72	90	108	125	143	161	179	197	215
18	$^3/_4$	48	64	81	97	113	129	145	161	177	193
19	$^3/_4$	44	58	73	88	102	117	131	146	160	175
20	$^3/_4$	40	53	66	80	93	106	119	133	146	159
21	$^3/_4$	36	48	61	73	85	97	109	121	133	145
22	$^3/_4$	33	44	56	67	78	89	100	111	122	133
23	$^3/_4$	31	41	51	61	72	82	92	102	113	123
24	$^3/_4$	28	38	47	57	66	76	85	95	104	114
25	$^3/_4$	26	35	44	53	61	70	79	88	97	105
26	$^3/_4$	24	33	41	49	57	65	73	82	90	98
27	$^3/_4$	23	30	38	46	53	61	69	76	84	91
28	$^3/_4$	21	28	36	43	50	57	64	71	78	85
29	$^3/_4$	20	27	33	40	47	53	60	67	73	80
30	$^3/_4$	19	25	31	38	44	50	56	63	69	75
31	$^3/_4$	18	24	29	35	41	47	53	59	65	71
32	$^3/_4$	17	22	28	33	39	44	50	56	61	67
33	$^3/_4$	16	21	26	32	37	42	47	53	58	63
34	$^3/_4$	NP	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
35	$^3/_4$	NP	19	24	28	33	38	42	47	52	57
36	$^3/_4$	NP	18	22	27	31	36	40	45	49	54
37	$^3/_4$	NP	17	21	26	30	34	38	43	47	51
38	$^3/_4$	NP	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	45	49
39	$^3/_4$	NP	15	19	23	27	31	35	39	42	46
40	$^3/_4$	NP	NP	18	22	26	29	33	37	40	44

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
NP = Not Permitted.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(5)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	806	1,075	1,343	1,612	1,881	2,149	2,418	2,687	2,955	3,224
9	1	648	864	1,080	1,296	1,512	1,728	1,945	2,161	2,377	2,593
10	1	533	711	889	1,067	1,245	1,422	1,600	1,778	1,956	2,134
11	1	447	586	745	894	1,043	1,192	1,341	1,491	1,640	1,789
12	1	381	508	634	761	888	1,015	1,142	1,269	1,396	1,523
13	1	328	438	547	657	766	875	985	1,094	1,204	1,313
14	1	286	382	477	572	668	763	859	954	1,049	1,145
15	1	252	336	420	504	588	672	756	840	924	1,008
16	1	224	298	373	447	522	596	671	745	820	894
17	1	200	266	333	400	466	533	600	666	733	799
18	1	180	240	300	360	420	479	539	599	659	719
19	1	163	217	271	325	380	434	488	542	597	651
20	1	148	197	247	296	345	395	444	493	543	592
21	1	135	180	225	270	315	360	406	451	496	541
22	1	124	165	207	248	289	331	372	413	455	496
23	1	114	152	190	228	267	305	343	381	419	457
24	1	106	141	176	211	246	282	317	352	387	422
25	1	98	131	163	196	228	261	294	326	359	392
26	1	91	121	152	182	212	243	273	304	334	364
27	1	85	113	142	170	198	226	255	283	311	340
28	1	79	106	132	159	185	212	238	265	291	318
29	1	74	99	124	149	174	198	223	248	273	298
30	1	70	93	116	140	163	186	210	233	256	280
31	1	66	88	110	132	153	175	197	219	241	263
32	1	62	83	103	124	145	165	186	207	227	248
33	1	59	78	98	117	137	156	176	195	215	234
34	1	55	74	92	111	129	148	166	185	203	222
35	1	53	70	88	105	123	140	158	175	193	210
36	1	50	66	83	100	116	133	150	166	183	199
37	1	47	63	79	95	111	126	142	158	174	190
38	1	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	181
39	1	43	57	72	86	100	115	129	143	158	172
40	1	41	55	68	82	96	109	123	137	150	164

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(6)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR $^3/_4$-INCH CPVC PIPE

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	$^3/_4$	348	465	581	697	813	929	1,045	1,161	1,278	1,394
9	$^3/_4$	280	374	467	560	654	747	841	934	1,027	1,121
10	$^3/_4$	231	307	384	461	538	615	692	769	845	922
11	$^3/_4$	193	258	322	387	451	515	580	644	709	773
12	$^3/_4$	165	219	274	329	384	439	494	549	603	658
13	$^3/_4$	142	189	237	284	331	378	426	473	520	568
14	$^3/_4$	124	165	206	247	289	330	371	412	454	495
15	$^3/_4$	109	145	182	218	254	290	327	363	399	436
16	$^3/_4$	97	129	161	193	226	258	290	322	354	387
17	$^3/_4$	86	115	144	173	202	230	259	288	317	346
18	$^3/_4$	78	104	130	155	181	207	233	259	285	311
19	$^3/_4$	70	94	117	141	164	188	211	234	258	281
20	$^3/_4$	64	85	107	128	149	171	192	213	235	256
21	$^3/_4$	58	78	97	117	136	156	175	195	214	234
22	$^3/_4$	54	71	89	107	125	143	161	179	197	214
23	$^3/_4$	49	66	82	99	115	132	148	165	181	198
24	$^3/_4$	46	61	76	91	107	122	137	152	167	183
25	$^3/_4$	42	56	71	85	99	113	127	141	155	169
26	$^3/_4$	39	52	66	79	92	105	118	131	144	157
27	$^3/_4$	37	49	61	73	86	98	110	122	135	147
28	$^3/_4$	34	46	57	69	80	92	103	114	126	137
29	$^3/_4$	32	43	54	64	75	86	96	107	118	129
30	$^3/_4$	30	40	50	60	70	81	91	101	111	121
31	$^3/_4$	28	38	47	57	66	76	85	95	104	114
32	$^3/_4$	27	36	45	54	63	71	80	89	98	107
33	$^3/_4$	25	34	42	51	59	68	76	84	93	101
34	$^3/_4$	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	88	96
35	$^3/_4$	23	30	38	45	53	61	68	76	83	91
36	$^3/_4$	22	29	36	43	50	57	65	72	79	86
37	$^3/_4$	20	27	34	41	48	55	61	68	75	82
38	$^3/_4$	20	26	33	39	46	52	59	65	72	78
39	$^3/_4$	19	25	31	37	43	50	56	62	68	74
40	$^3/_4$	18	24	30	35	41	47	53	59	65	71

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(7)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH CPVC PIPE

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	1,049	1,398	1,748	2,098	2,447	2,797	3,146	3,496	3,845	4,195
9	1	843	1,125	1,406	1,687	1,968	2,249	2,530	2,811	3,093	3,374
10	1	694	925	1,157	1,388	1,619	1,851	2,082	2,314	2,545	2,776
11	1	582	776	970	1,164	1,358	1,552	1,746	1,940	2,133	2,327
12	1	495	660	826	991	1,156	1,321	1,486	1,651	1,816	1,981
13	1	427	570	712	854	997	1,139	1,281	1,424	1,566	1,709
14	1	372	497	621	745	869	993	1,117	1,241	1,366	1,490
15	1	328	437	546	656	765	874	983	1,093	1,202	1,311
16	1	291	388	485	582	679	776	873	970	1,067	1,164
17	1	260	347	433	520	607	693	780	867	954	1,040
18	1	234	312	390	468	546	624	702	780	858	936
19	1	212	282	353	423	494	565	635	706	776	847
20	1	193	257	321	385	449	513	578	642	706	770
21	1	176	235	293	352	410	469	528	586	645	704
22	1	161	215	269	323	377	430	484	538	592	646
23	1	149	198	248	297	347	396	446	496	545	595
24	1	137	183	229	275	321	366	412	458	504	550
25	1	127	170	212	255	297	340	382	425	467	510
26	1	118	158	197	237	276	316	355	395	434	474
27	1	111	147	184	221	258	295	332	368	405	442
28	1	103	138	172	207	241	275	310	344	379	413
29	1	97	129	161	194	226	258	290	323	355	387
30	1	91	121	152	182	212	242	273	303	333	364
31	1	86	114	143	171	200	228	257	285	314	342
32	1	81	108	134	161	188	215	242	269	296	323
33	1	76	102	127	152	178	203	229	254	280	305
34	1	72	96	120	144	168	192	216	240	265	289
35	1	68	91	114	137	160	182	205	228	251	273
36	1	65	87	108	130	151	173	195	216	238	260
37	1	62	82	103	123	144	165	185	206	226	247
38	1	59	78	98	117	137	157	176	196	215	235
39	1	56	75	93	112	131	149	168	187	205	224
40	1	53	71	89	107	125	142	160	178	196	214

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(8)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 3/4-INCH PEX AND PE-RT TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	3/4	93	123	154	185	216	247	278	309	339	370
9	3/4	74	99	124	149	174	199	223	248	273	298
10	3/4	61	82	102	123	143	163	184	204	225	245
11	3/4	51	68	86	103	120	137	154	171	188	205
12	3/4	44	58	73	87	102	117	131	146	160	175
13	3/4	38	50	63	75	88	101	113	126	138	151
14	3/4	33	44	55	66	77	88	99	110	121	132
15	3/4	29	39	48	58	68	77	87	96	106	116
16	3/4	26	34	43	51	60	68	77	86	94	103
17	3/4	23	31	38	46	54	61	69	77	84	92
18	3/4	21	28	34	41	48	55	62	69	76	83
19	3/4	19	25	31	37	44	50	56	62	69	75
20	3/4	17	23	28	34	40	45	51	57	62	68
21	3/4	16	21	26	31	36	41	47	52	57	62
22	3/4	NP	19	24	28	33	38	43	47	52	57
23	3/4	NP	17	22	26	31	35	39	44	48	52
24	3/4	NP	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	49
25	3/4	NP	NP	19	22	26	30	34	37	41	45
26	3/4	NP	NP	17	21	24	28	31	35	38	42
27	3/4	NP	NP	16	20	23	26	29	33	36	39
28	3/4	NP	NP	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	36
29	3/4	NP	NP	NP	17	20	23	26	28	31	34
30	3/4	NP	NP	NP	16	19	21	24	27	29	32
31	3/4	NP	NP	NP	15	18	20	23	25	28	30
32	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	17	19	21	24	26	28
33	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22	25	27
34	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	17	19	21	23	25
35	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22	24
36	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	15	17	19	21	23
37	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22
38	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	17	19	21
39	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20
40	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	17	19

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
NP = Not Permitted.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

TABLE P2904.6.2(9)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH PEX AND PE-RT TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	314	418	523	628	732	837	941	1,046	1,151	1,255
9	1	252	336	421	505	589	673	757	841	925	1,009
10	1	208	277	346	415	485	554	623	692	761	831
11	1	174	232	290	348	406	464	522	580	638	696
12	1	148	198	247	296	346	395	445	494	543	593
13	1	128	170	213	256	298	341	383	426	469	511
14	1	111	149	186	223	260	297	334	371	409	446
15	1	98	131	163	196	229	262	294	327	360	392
16	1	87	116	145	174	203	232	261	290	319	348
17	1	78	104	130	156	182	208	233	259	285	311
18	1	70	93	117	140	163	187	210	233	257	280
19	1	63	84	106	127	148	169	190	211	232	253
20	1	58	77	96	115	134	154	173	192	211	230
21	1	53	70	88	105	123	140	158	175	193	211
22	1	48	64	80	97	113	129	145	161	177	193
23	1	44	59	74	89	104	119	133	148	163	178
24	1	41	55	69	82	96	110	123	137	151	164
25	1	38	51	64	76	89	102	114	127	140	152
26	1	35	47	59	71	83	95	106	118	130	142
27	1	33	44	55	66	77	88	99	110	121	132
28	1	31	41	52	62	72	82	93	103	113	124
29	1	29	39	48	58	68	77	87	97	106	116
30	1	27	36	45	54	63	73	82	91	100	109
31	1	26	34	43	51	60	68	77	85	94	102
32	1	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	89	97
33	1	23	30	38	46	53	61	68	76	84	91
34	1	22	29	36	43	50	58	65	72	79	86
35	1	20	27	34	41	48	55	61	68	75	82
36	1	19	26	32	39	45	52	58	65	71	78
37	1	18	25	31	37	43	49	55	62	68	74
38	1	18	23	29	35	41	47	53	59	64	70
39	1	17	22	28	33	39	45	50	56	61	67
40	1	16	21	27	32	37	43	48	53	59	64

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

P2904.8.1 Preconcealment inspection. The following items shall be verified prior to the concealment of any sprinkler system piping:

1. Sprinklers are installed in all areas as required by Section P2904.1.1.
2. Where sprinkler water spray patterns are obstructed by construction features, luminaires or ceiling fans, additional sprinklers are installed as required by Section P2904.2.4.2.
3. Sprinklers are the correct temperature rating and are installed at or beyond the required separation distances from heat sources as required by Sections P2904.2.1 and P2904.2.2.
4. The pipe size equals or exceeds the size used in applying Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section P2904.6.1, the size used in the hydraulic calculation.
5. The pipe length does not exceed the length permitted by Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section P2904.6.1, pipe lengths and fittings do not exceed those used in the hydraulic calculation.
6. Nonmetallic piping that conveys water to sprinklers is *listed* for use with fire sprinklers.
7. Piping is supported in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's and sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.
8. The piping system is tested in accordance with Section P2503.7.

P2904.8.2 Final inspection. The following items shall be verified upon completion of the system:

1. Sprinklers are not painted, damaged or otherwise hindered from operation.
2. Where a pump is required to provide water to the system, the pump starts automatically upon system water demand.
3. Pressure-reducing valves, water softeners, water filters or other impairments to water flow that were not part of the original design have not been installed.
4. The sign or valve tag required by Section P2904.7 is installed and the owner's manual for the system is present.

SECTION P2905
HEATED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

P2905.1 Heated water circulation systems and heat trace systems. Circulation systems and heat trace systems that are installed to bring heated water in close proximity to one or more fixtures shall meet the requirements of Section N1103.5.2.

P2905.2 Demand recirculation systems. *Demand recirculation water systems* shall be in accordance with Section N1103.5.2.

P2905.3 Hot water supply to fixtures. The *developed length* of hot water piping, from the source of the hot water to the fixtures that require hot water, shall not exceed 100 feet (30 480 mm). Water heaters and recirculating system piping shall be considered to be sources of hot water.

SECTION P2906
MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

P2906.1 Soil and groundwater. The installation of water service pipe, water distribution pipe, fittings, valves, appurtenances and gaskets shall be prohibited in soil and groundwater that is contaminated with solvents, fuels, organic compounds or other detrimental materials that cause permeation, corrosion, degradation or structural failure of the water service or water distribution piping material.

P2906.1.1 Investigation required. Where detrimental conditions are suspected by or brought to the attention of the *building official*, a chemical analysis of the soil and groundwater conditions shall be required to ascertain the acceptability of the water service material for the specific installation.

P2906.1.2 Detrimental condition. Where a detrimental condition exists, *approved* alternate materials or alternate routing shall be required.

P2906.2 Lead content. The lead content in pipe and fittings used in the water supply system shall be in accordance with Section P2906.2.1.

P2906.2.1 Lead content of drinking water pipe and fittings. Pipe, pipe fittings, joints, valves, faucets and fixture fittings utilized to supply water for drinking or cooking purposes shall comply with NSF 372 and shall have a weighted average lead content of 0.25-percent lead or less.

P2906.3 Polyethylene plastic piping installation. Polyethylene pipe shall be cut square using a cutter designed for plastic pipe. Except where joined by heat fusion, pipe ends shall be chamfered to remove sharp edges. Pipe that has been kinked shall not be installed. For bends, the installed radius of pipe curvature shall be greater than 30 pipe diameters or the coil radius where bending with the coil. Coiled pipe shall not be bent beyond straight. Bends within 10 pipe diameters of any fitting or valve shall be prohibited. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2906.3.1 or P2906.3.2.

P2906.3.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melting temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657.

P2906.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.4 Water service pipe. Water service pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards indicated in Table P2906.4. Water service pipe or tubing, installed underground and outside of the structure, shall have a working pressure rating of not less than 160 pounds per square inch at 73°F (1103 kPa at 23°C). Where the water pressure exceeds 160 pounds per square inch (1103 kPa), piping material shall have a rated working pressure equal to or greater than the highest available pressure. Water service pipe shall terminate 5 feet (1524 mm) inside or outside of the building foundation wall. Water service piping materials not third-party certified for water distribution shall terminate at or before the full open valve located at the entrance to the structure. Ductile iron water service piping shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104/A21.4.

P2906.4.1 Separation of water service and building sewer. Trenching, pipe installation and backfilling shall be in accordance with Section P2604.

1. Where water service piping is located in the same trench with the *building sewer*, such sewer shall be constructed of materials listed in Table P3002.1(2).
2. Where the *building sewer* piping is not constructed of materials indicated in Table P3002.1(2), the water service pipe and the *building sewer* shall be horizontally separated by not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth.
3. The required separation distance shall not apply where a water service pipe crosses a sewer pipe, provided that the water service is sleeved to a point not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing. The sleeve shall be of pipe materials indicated in Table P2906.4, P3002.1(2) or P3002.2.
4. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the water service pipe that is located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the sewer is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the highest point of the top of the *building sewer*.

P2906.5 Water distribution pipe. Water distribution piping within *dwelling units* shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards indicated in Table P2906.5. Hot water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a pressure rating of not less than 100 psi at 180°F (689 kPa at 82°C). Cold water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a pressure rating of not less than 160 psi at 73.4°F (1100 kPa at 23°C).

P2906.6 Fittings. Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards indicated in Table P2906.6. Pipe fittings used in water supply systems shall comply with NSF 61.

P2906.6.1 Saddle tap fittings. The use of saddle tap fittings and combination saddle tap and valve fittings shall be prohibited.

P2906.7 Flexible water connectors. Flexible water connectors, exposed to continuous pressure, shall conform to ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6. Access shall be provided to flexible water connectors.

P2906.8 Joint and connection tightness. Joints and connections in the plumbing system shall be gastight and watertight for the intended use or required test pressure.

TABLE P2906.4
WATER SERVICE PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM D1527; ASTM D2282
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442/F442M; CSA B137.6
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM F2855
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)	ASTM B75/B75M; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe	ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE) pipe	ASTM F1986
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing	ASTM F876; AWWA C904; CSA 137.5
Ductile iron water pipe	AWWA C115/A21.15; AWWA C151/A21.51
Galvanized steel pipe	ASTM A53
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe	ASTM D2104; ASTM D2239; AWWA C901; CSA 137.1
Polyethylene (PE) plastic tubing	ASTM D2737; AWWA C901; CSA 137.1
Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing	ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18
Polypropylene (PP) plastic tubing	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; ASTM D2672; CSA B137.3
Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe	ASTM A312; ASTM A778
Stainless steel (Type 316/316L) pipe	ASTM A312; ASTM A778

TABLE P2906.5
WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe and tubing	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442/F442M; CSA B137.6
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM F2855
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)	ASTM B75/B75M; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe	ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE) pipe	ASTM F1986
Galvanized steel pipe	ASTM A53
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) composite pipe	ASTM F1282
Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing	ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18
Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11
Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe	ASTM A312; ASTM A778

TABLE P2906.6
PIPE FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic	ASTM D2468
Cast iron	ASME B16.4
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic	ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6
Copper or copper alloy (Brass)	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.51; ASSE 1061; ASTM F3226
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE)	ASTM F1986
Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing	ASSE 1061; ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; ASTM F2735; CSA B137.5
Gray iron and ductile iron	AWWA C110/A21.10; AWWA C153/A21.53
Malleable iron	ASME B16.3
Insert fittings for polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX)	ASTM F1281; ASTM F1282; ASTM F1974; CSA B137.9; CSA B137.10
Polyethylene (PE) plastic	ASTM D2609; CSA B137.1
Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing	ASSE 1061; ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18
Polybutylene (PB) plastic	ASSE 1061; CSA B137.8
Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe	ASTM A312; ASTM A778
Stainless steel (Type 316/316L) pipe	ASTM A312; ASTM A778
Steel	ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28

P2906.9 Plastic pipe joints. Joints in plastic piping shall be made with *approved* fittings by solvent cementing, heat fusion, corrosion-resistant metal clamps with insert fittings or compression connections. Flared joints for polyethylene pipe shall be permitted in accordance with Section P2906.10.1.

P2906.9.1 Solvent cementing. Solvent-cemented joints shall comply with Sections P2906.9.1.1 through P2906.9.1.4.

P2906.9.1.1 ABS plastic pipe. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

P2906.9.1.2 CPVC plastic pipe. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joints shall be made in accordance with the pipe, fitting or solvent cement manufacturer's installation instructions. Where such instructions require a primer to be used, an *approved* primer shall be applied, and a solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to joint surfaces. Where such instructions allow for a one-step solvent cement, yellow or red in color and conforming to ASTM F493, to be used, the joint surfaces shall not require application of a primer before the solvent cement is applied. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

P2906.9.1.3 CPVC/AL/CPVC pipe. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and an *approved* primer shall be applied. Solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent-cemented joints shall be installed above or below ground.

Exception: A primer shall not be required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) through 1-inch (25 mm) diameter CPVC/AL/CPVC pipe and CPVC fittings.
4. The CPVC fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

P2906.9.1.4 PVC plastic pipe. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied to PVC solvent-cemented joints. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection**v**. Solvent cement for PVC plastic pipe conforming to ASTM D 2564 shall be applied to all joint surfaces.

P2906.10 Cross-linked polyethylene plastic (PEX). Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing or fittings shall comply with Section P2906.9.10.1 or Section P2906.9.10.2.

P2906.10.1 Flared joints. Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

P2906.10.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards indicated in Table P2906.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. PEX tubing shall be factory marked with the applicable standards for the fittings that the PEX manufacturer specifies for use with the tubing.

P2906.11 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between polypropylene plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2906.11.1 or P2906.11.2.

P2906.11.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat fusion joints for polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, butt fusion polypropylene fittings or electrofusion polypropylene fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

P2906.11.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.12 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2906.12.1.

P2906.12.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for PE-AL-PE and PEX-AL-PEX as described in ASTM F1281, ASTM F1282, ASTM F1974, CSA B137.9 and CSA B137.10 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.13 Stainless steel. Joints between stainless steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2906.13.1 or P2906.13.2.

P2906.13.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.13.2 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded autogenously or with an *approved* filler metal in accordance with ASTM A312.

P2906.14 Threaded pipe joints. Threaded joints shall conform to American National Taper Pipe Thread specifications. Pipe ends shall be deburred and chips removed. Pipe joint compound shall be used only on male threads.

P2906.15 Soldered and brazed joints. Soldered joints in copper and copper alloy tubing shall be made with fittings *approved* for water piping and shall conform to ASTM B828. Surfaces to be soldered shall be cleaned bright. Fluxes for soldering shall be in accordance with ASTM B813. Brazing fluxes shall be in accordance with AWS A5.31M/A5.31. Solders and fluxes used in potable water-supply systems shall have a lead content of not greater than 0.2 percent. Solder and flux joining pipe or fittings intended to supply drinking water shall conform to NSF 61.

P2906.16 Flared joints. Flared joints in water tubing shall be made with *approved* fittings. The tubing shall be reamed and then expanded with a flaring tool.

P2906.17 Above-ground joints. Joints within the building between copper pipe or CPVC tubing, in any combination with compatible outside diameters, shall be permitted to be made with the use of *approved* push-in mechanical fittings of a pressure-lock design.

P2906.18 Joints between different materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made in accordance with Section P2906.18.1, P2906.18.2, P2906.18.3 or P2906.18.4, or with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical sealing type having an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D1869 or ASTM F477. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.18.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a copper alloy fitting or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be joined to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

P2906.18.2 Joint between PVC water service and CPVC water distribution. Where a PVC water service pipe connects to a CPVC pipe at the beginning of a water distribution system, the transition shall be by a mechanical fitting, an *approved* adapter fitting or transition fitting.

P2906.18.3 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material. Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting or transition fitting.

P2906.18.4 Stainless steel. Joints between stainless steel and different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type or a dielectric fitting.

P2906.19 Press-connected joints. Press-connected joints shall conform to one of the standards indicated in Table P2906.6. Press-type mechanical joints in copper tubing shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The tube shall be fully inserted into the press-connected fitting. Press-connected joints shall be pressed with a tool certified by the manufacturer.

P2906.20 Polyethylene of raised temperature plastic. Joints between polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing and fittings shall be in accordance with Sections P2906.20.1, P2906.20.2 and P2906.20.3.

P2906.20.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards indicated in Table P2906.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall be factory marked with the applicable standards for the fittings that the manufacturer of the tubing specifies for use with the tubing.

P2906.20.2 Heat fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion, or butt-fusion type, and shall be joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

P2906.20.3 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for a period of time specified by the manufacturer and joined. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

P2906.21 Push-fit fitting joints. Push-fit fittings shall be used only on copper-tube-size outside diameter dimensioned CPVC, PEX, PE-RT and copper tubing. Push-fit fittings shall conform to ASSE 1061 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P2906.22 Polybutylene plastic. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall comply with Sections P2906.22.1 through P2906.22.3.

P2906.22.1 Flared joints. Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

P2906.22.2 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be heated to the melting temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657, ASTM D3309 or CAN3-B137.8M.

P2906.22.3 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION P2907 CHANGES IN DIRECTION

P2907.1 Bends. Changes in direction in copper tubing shall be permitted to be made with bends having a radius of not less than four diameters of the tube, provided that such bends are made by use of forming equipment that does not deform or create loss in cross-sectional area of the tube.

SECTION P2908 SUPPORT

P2908.1 General. Pipe and tubing support shall conform to Section P2605.

SECTION P2909 DRINKING WATER TREATMENT UNITS

P2909.1 Design. Drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of NSF42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 62 or CSA B483.1.

P2909.2 Reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units. Point-of-use reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units, designed for residential use, shall meet the requirements of CSA B483.1 or NSF 58. Waste or discharge from reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units shall enter the drainage system through an *air gap* or an *air gap* device that meets the requirements of NSF 58.

P2909.3 Connection tubing. The tubing to and from drinking water treatment units shall be of a size and material as recommended by the manufacturer. The tubing shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 58 or NSF 61.

SECTION P2910 NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

P2910.1 Scope. The provisions of Sections P2909, P2910, P2911, P2912 and P2913 shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of nonpotable water. For nonpotable rainwater systems, the provisions of CSA B805/ICC 805 shall be an alternative for regulating the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for rainwater collection, storage, treatment and distribution of nonpotable water. The use and application of nonpotable water shall comply with laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the jurisdiction.

P2910.2 Water quality. Nonpotable water for each end use application shall meet the minimum water quality requirements as established for the intended application by the laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the *jurisdiction*. Where nonpotable water from different sources is combined in a system, the system shall comply with the most stringent requirements of this code applicable to such sources.

P2910.2.1 Residual disinfectants. Where chlorine is used for disinfection, the nonpotable water shall contain not more than 4 ppm (4 mg/L) of chloramines or free chlorine. Where ozone is used for disinfection, the nonpotable water shall not contain gas bubbles having elevated levels of ozone at the point of use.

Exception: Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with the requirements of this section.

P2910.2.2 Filtration required. Nonpotable water utilized for water closet and urinal flushing applications shall be filtered by a 100 micron or finer filter. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

Exception: Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with the requirements of this section.

P2910.2.3 Applications. Untreated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section P2910.2.3.1. Treated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section P2910.2.3.2.

P2910.2.3.1 Examples of acceptable uses without treatment.

1. Outdoor irrigation
2. Decorative fountains
3. Yard hydrants
4. Industrial processes (e.g., dust control, indoor hose bibs spray)
5. Vehicle washing
6. Outdoor hose bibs (not routed through building wall)

P2910.2.3.2 Examples of acceptable uses with disinfection and filtration.

1. Toilet flushing
2. Urinal flushing
3. Evaporative cooling tower make-up
4. Trap primers
5. Fire suppression systems
6. Clothes washers
7. Outdoor pools and spas
8. Hose bibs – Residential

P2910.3 Signage required. Nonpotable water outlets such as hose connections, sillcocks, hose bibs, wall hydrants, yard hydrants, other outdoor outlets, open-ended pipes and faucets shall be identified at the point of use for each outlet with signage that reads, “Nonpotable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER. DO NOT DRINK.” The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant, waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) in height and in colors contrasting the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wordage, the pictograph shown in Figure P2910.3 shall appear on the signage required by this section.

P2910.4 Permits. *Permits* shall be required for the construction, installation, *alteration* and *repair* of nonpotable water systems. *Construction documents*, engineering calculations, diagrams and other such data pertaining to the nonpotable

FIGURE P2910.3
PICTOGRAPH—DO NOT DRINK

water system shall be submitted with each *permit* application.

P2910.5 Potable water connections. Where a potable system is connected to a nonpotable water system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section P2902.

P2910.6 Approved components and materials. Piping, plumbing components and materials used in collection and conveyance systems shall be manufactured of material *approved* for the intended application and compatible with any disinfection and treatment systems used.

P2910.6.1 Identification of nonpotable water systems. Where nonpotable plumbing systems (drainage or supply within gray water, rain water or reclaimed water systems) are installed, the piping conveying the non-potable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Section P2910.6.2.

P2910.6.2 Nonpotable pipe labeling and marking. Nonpotable distribution piping shall be purple in color or shall be embossed, or integrally stamped or marked, with the words: "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK" or the piping shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall include the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall also contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

P2910.6.2.1 Color. The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed, rain and gray water distribution systems.

P2910.6.2.2 Lettering size. The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table P2910.6.2.2.

TABLE P2910.6.2.2 (1301.6.2.2)
SIZE OF PIPE IDENTIFICATION

PIPE DIAMETER (inches)	LENGTH OF BACKGROUND COLOR FIELD (inches)	SIZE OF LETTERS (inches)
$^3/_4$ to $1^1/_4$	8	0.5
$1^1/_2$ to 2	8	0.75
$2^1/_2$ to 6	12	1.25
8 to 10	24	2.5
Over 10	32	3.5

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm.

P2910.6.2.3 Identification tape. Where used, identification tape shall be at least 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have white or black lettering on a purple field stating "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER — DO NOT DRINK." Identification tape shall be installed on top of nonpotable rainwater distribution pipes, fastened at least every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length and run continuously the entire length of the pipe.

P2910.7 Insect and vermin control. The system shall be protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into storage tanks and piping systems. Screens installed on vent pipes, inlets, and overflow pipes shall have an aperture of not greater than $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.59 mm) and shall be close-fitting or other *approved* methods. Screen materials shall be compatible with contacting system components and shall not accelerate the corrosion of system components.

P2910.8 Freeze protection. Where sustained freezing temperatures occur, provisions shall be made to keep storage tanks and the related piping from freezing.

P2910.9 Nonpotable water storage tanks. Nonpotable water storage tanks shall comply with Sections P2910.9.1 through P2910.9.11.

P2910.9.1 Sizing. The holding capacity of the storage tank shall be sized in accordance with the anticipated demand.

P2910.9.2 Location. Storage tanks shall be installed above or below grade. Above-grade storage tanks shall be protected from direct sunlight and shall be constructed using opaque, UV-resistant materials such as, but not limited to, heavily tinted plastic, lined metal, concrete and wood; or painted to prevent algae growth; or shall have specially constructed sun barriers including, but not limited to, installation in garages, crawl spaces or sheds. Storage tanks and their manholes shall not be located directly under any soil piping, waste piping or any source of contamination.

P2910.9.3 Materials. Where collected on site, water shall be collected in an *approved* tank constructed of durable, nonabsorbent and corrosion-resistant materials. The storage tank shall be constructed of materials compatible with any disinfection systems used to treat water upstream of the tank and with any systems used to maintain water quality within the tank. Wooden storage tanks that are not equipped with a makeup water source shall be provided with a flexible liner.

P2910.9.4 Foundation and supports. Storage tanks shall be supported on a firm base capable of withstanding the weight of the storage tank when filled to capacity. Storage tanks shall be supported in accordance with this code.

P2910.9.4.1 Ballast. Where the soil can become saturated, an underground storage tank shall be ballasted or otherwise secured to prevent the tank from floating out of the ground when empty. The combined weight of the tank and hold-down ballast shall meet or exceed the buoyancy force of the tank. Where the installation requires a foundation, the foundation shall be flat and shall be designed to support the storage tank weight when full, consistent with the bearing capability of adjacent soil.

P2910.9.4.2 Structural support. Where installed below grade, storage tank installations shall be designed to withstand earth and surface structural loads without damage and with minimal deformation when empty or filled with water.

P2910.9.5 Makeup water. Where an uninterrupted nonpotable water supply is required for the intended application, potable or reclaimed water shall be provided as a source of makeup water for the storage tank. The makeup water supply shall be protected against backflow by means of an *air gap* not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the overflow or an *approved* backflow device in accordance with Section P2902. A full-open valve located on the makeup water supply line to the storage tank shall be provided. Inlets to the storage tank shall be controlled by fill valves or other automatic supply valves installed to prevent the tank from overflowing and to prevent the water level from dropping below a predetermined point. Where makeup water is provided, the water level shall be prohibited from dropping below the source water inlet or the intake of any attached pump.

P2910.9.5.1 Inlet control valve alarm. Makeup water systems shall be fitted with a warning mechanism that alerts the user to a failure of the inlet control valve to close correctly. The alarm shall activate before the water within the storage tank begins to discharge into the overflow system.

P2910.9.6 Overflow. The storage tank shall be equipped with an overflow pipe having a diameter not less than that shown in Table P2910.9.6. The overflow outlet shall discharge at a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof or roof drain; floor or floor drain; or over an open water-supplied fixture. The overflow outlet shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of not less than 16 by 20 mesh per inch (630 by 787 mesh per m) and by $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) hardware cloth or shall terminate in a horizontal angle seat check valve. Drainage from overflow pipes shall be directed to prevent freezing on roof walks. The overflow drain shall not be equipped with a shutoff valve. Not less than one cleanout shall be provided on each overflow pipe in accordance with Section P3005.2.

TABLE P2910.9.6
SIZE OF DRAIN PIPES FOR WATER TANKS

TANK CAPACITY (gallons)	DRAIN PIPE (inches)
Up to 750	1
751 to 1,500	$1^1/_2$
1,501 to 3,000	2
3,001 to 5,000	$2^1/_2$
5,001 to 7,500	3
Over 7,500	4

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.875 liters, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

P2910.9.7 Access. Not less than one access opening shall be provided to allow inspection and cleaning of the tank interior. Access openings shall have an *approved* locking device or other *approved* method of securing access. Below-grade storage tanks, located outside of the building, shall be provided with a manhole either not less than 24 inches (610 mm) square or with an inside diameter not less than 24 inches (610 mm). Manholes shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above ground or shall be designed to prevent water infiltration. Finished grade shall be sloped away from the manhole to divert surface water. Manhole covers shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access. Service ports in manhole covers shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter and shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished grade level. The service port shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access.

Exception: Storage tanks under 800 gallons (3028 L) in volume installed below grade shall not be required to be equipped with a manhole, but shall have a service port not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

P2910.9.8 Venting. Storage tanks shall be provided with a vent sized in accordance with Chapter 31 and based on the aggregate diameter of all tank influent pipes. The reservoir vent shall not be connected to sanitary drainage system vents. Vents shall be protected from contamination by means of an *approved* cap or a U-bend installed with the opening directed downward. Vent outlets shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above grade, or as necessary to prevent surface water from entering the storage tank. Vent openings shall be protected against the entrance of vermin and insects in accordance with the requirements of Section P2910.7.

P2910.9.9 Drain. A drain shall be located at the lowest point of the storage tank. The tank drain pipe shall discharge as required for overflow pipes and shall not be smaller in size than specified in Table P2910.9.6. Not less than one cleanout shall be provided on each drain pipe in accordance with Section P3005.2.

P2910.10 Marking and signage. Each nonpotable water storage tank shall be *labeled* with its rated capacity. The contents of storage tanks shall be identified with the words, “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER. DO NOT DRINK.” Where an opening is provided that could allow the entry of personnel, the opening shall be marked with the words, “DANGER—CONFINED SPACE.” Markings shall be indelibly printed on the tank, or on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material that is mounted on the tank. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) in height and shall be of a color in contrast with the background on which they are applied.

P2910.11 Storage tank tests. Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with the following:

1. Storage tanks shall be filled with water to the overflow line prior to and during inspection. Seams and joints shall be left exposed and the tank shall remain watertight without leakage for a period of 24 hours.

   Exception: If air testing, system shall be pressurized with air equivalent to the water pressure for the full depth of the tank for the time period identified in Section P2503.7.

2. After 24 hours, supplemental water shall be introduced for a period of 15 minutes to verify proper drainage of the overflow system and leaks do not exist.
3. Following a successful test of the overflow, the water level in the tank shall be reduced to a level that is 2 inches (51 mm) below the makeup water trigger point by using the tank drain. The tank drain shall be observed for proper operation. The makeup water system shall be observed for proper operation, and successful automatic shutoff of the system at the refill threshold shall be verified. Water shall not be drained from the overflow at any time during the refill test.

P2910.12 System abandonment. If the *owner* of an on-site nonpotable water reuse system or rainwater collection and conveyance system elects to cease use of or fails to properly maintain such system, the system shall be abandoned and shall comply with the following:

1. System piping connecting to a utility-provided water system shall be removed or disabled.
2. The distribution piping system shall be replaced with an *approved* potable water supply piping system. Where an existing potable water pipe system is already in place, the fixtures shall be connected to the existing system.
3. The storage tank shall be secured from accidental access by sealing or locking tank inlets and access points, or filled with sand or equivalent.

P2910.13 Separation requirements for nonpotable water piping. Nonpotable water collection and distribution piping and reclaimed water piping shall be separated from the *building sewer* and potable water piping underground by 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth. Nonpotable water collection and distribution piping shall not be located in, under or above cesspools, septic tanks, septic tank drainage fields or seepage pits. Buried nonpotable water piping shall comply with the requirements of Section P2604.

Exceptions:

1. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the nonpotable water pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the sewer is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the sewer and the pipe materials conforms to Table P3002.2.
2. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the potable water service pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the nonpotable water pipe is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the nonpotable water pipe and the pipe materials comply with the requirements of Table P2906.5.
3. The required separation distance shall not apply where a nonpotable water pipe is located in the same trench with a *building sewer* that is constructed of materials that comply with the requirements of Table P3002.2.
4. The required separation distance shall not apply where a nonpotable water pipe crosses a sewer pipe provided that the nonpotable water pipe is sleeved to not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table P3002.2.
5. The required separation distance shall not apply where a potable water service pipe crosses a nonpotable water pipe, provided that the potable water service pipe is sleeved for a distance of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the centerline of the nonpotable pipe on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table P3002.2.
6. The required separation distance shall not apply to irrigation piping located outside of a building and downstream of the backflow preventer where nonpotable water is used for outdoor applications.

P2910.14 Outdoor outlet access. Sillcocks, hose bibbs, wall hydrants, yard hydrants and other outdoor outlets supplied by nonpotable water shall be located in a locked vault or shall be operable only by means of a removable key.

SECTION P2911
ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS

P2911.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and *repair* of on-site nonpotable water reuse systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of on-site sources of nonpotable water as permitted by the *jurisdiction*.

P2911.2 Sources. On-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall collect waste discharge only from the following sources: bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays. Water from other *approved* nonpotable sources including swimming pool backwash operations, air conditioner condensate, rainwater, foundation drain water, fluid cooler discharge water and fire pump test water shall be permitted to be collected for reuse by on-site nonpotable water reuse systems, as *approved* by the *building official* and as appropriate for the intended application.

P2911.2.1 Prohibited sources. Reverse osmosis system reject water, water softener backwash water, kitchen sink wastewater, dishwasher wastewater and wastewater containing urine or fecal matter shall not be collected for reuse within an on-site nonpotable water reuse system.

P2911.3 Traps. Traps serving fixtures and devices discharging wastewater to on-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall comply with the Section P3201.2.

P2911.4 Collection pipe. On-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall utilize drainage piping *approved* for use within plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey untreated water for reuse. Vent piping *approved* for use within plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents within the graywater system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section P3002.

P2911.4.1 Installation. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be installed in accordance with Section P3005.

P2911.4.2 Joints. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section P3002.

P2911.4.3 Size. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be sized in accordance with drainage sizing requirements specified in Section P3005.4.

P2911.4.4 Marking. Additional marking of collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste and vent piping by Chapter 30.

P2911.5 Filtration. Untreated water collected for reuse shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other *approved* method to provide indication when a filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

P2911.6 Disinfection. Nonpotable water collected on site for reuse shall be disinfected, treated or both as determined by a *registered design professional* to provide the quality of water needed for the intended end-use application. Where the intended end-use application does not have requirements for the quality of water, disinfection and treatment of water collected on site for reuse shall not be required. Nonpotable water collected on site containing untreated graywater shall be retained in collection reservoirs for not more than 24 hours.

P2911.6.1 Graywater used for fixture flushing. Graywater used for flushing water closets and urinals shall be disinfected and treated by an on-site water reuse treatment system complying with NSF 350.

P2911.7 Storage tanks. Storage tanks utilized in on-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall comply with Section P2910.9 and Sections P2911.7.1 through P2911.7.3.

P2911.7.1 Location. Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table P2911.7.1.

TABLE P2911.7.1
LOCATION OF NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE STORAGE TANKS

ELEMENT	MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM STORAGE TANK (feet)
Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees	2
Lot line adjoining private lots	5
Public water main	10
Seepage pits	5
Septic tanks	5
Streams and lakes	50
Water service	5
Water wells	50

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm

P2911.7.2 Inlets. Storage tank inlets shall be designed to introduce water into the tank with minimum turbulence, and shall be located and designed to avoid agitating the contents of the storage tank.

P2911.7.3 Outlets. Outlets shall be located not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank, and shall not skim water from the surface.

P2911.8 Valves. Valves shall be supplied on on-site nonpotable water reuse systems in accordance with Sections P2911.8.1 and P2911.8.2.

P2911.8.1 Bypass valve. One three-way diverter valve certified to NSF 50 or other *approved* device shall be installed on collection piping upstream of each storage tank, or drainfield, as applicable, to divert untreated on-site reuse sources to the sanitary sewer to allow servicing and inspection of the system. Bypass valves shall be installed downstream of fixture traps and vent connections. Bypass valves shall be *labeled* to indicate the direction of flow, connection and storage tank or drainfield connection. Bypass valves shall be installed in accessible locations. Two shutoff valves shall not be installed to serve as a bypass valve.

P2911.8.2 Backwater valve. Backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section P3008.

P2911.9 Pumping and control system. Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be accessible and removable in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall be appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section P2903.

P2911.10 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the nonpotable water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section P2903.3.2.

Exception: Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

P2911.11 Distribution pipe. Distribution piping utilized in on-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall comply with Sections P2911.11.1 through P2911.11.3.

Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

P2911.11.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section P2906 for nonpotable water.

P2911.11.2 Design. On-site nonpotable water reuse distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section P2903 for the intended application.

P2911.11.3 Marking. On-site nonpotable water distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section P2901.2.

P2911.12 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections P2911.12.1 through P2911.12.6.

P2911.12.1 Collection pipe and vent test. Drain, waste and vent piping used for on-site water reuse systems shall be tested in accordance with Section P2503.

P2911.12.2 Storage tank test. Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with Section P2910.11.

P2911.12.3 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section P2503.7.

P2911.12.4 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

P2911.12.5 Inspection of vermin and insect protection. Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section P2910.7.

P2911.12.6 Water quality test. The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the *jurisdiction*.

P2911.13 Operation and maintenance manuals. Operation and maintenance materials shall be supplied with nonpotable on-site water reuse systems in accordance with Sections P2911.13.1 through P2911.13.4.

P2911.13.1 Manual. A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied in hard-copy form for each system.

P2911.13.2 Schematics. The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, the location of system components and a list of system components that includes the manufacturers and model numbers of the components.

P2911.13.3 Maintenance procedures. The manual shall provide a schedule and procedures for system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts including filters shall be noted along with part numbers.

P2911.13.4 Operations procedures. The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures. The manual shall include detailed operating procedures for the system.

SECTION P2912
NONPOTABLE RAINWATER COLLECTION AND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

P2912.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of rainwater collection and conveyance systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of rainwater for nonpotable applications. For nonpotable rainwater systems, the provisions of CSA B805/ICC 805 shall be an alternative for regulating the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for rainwater collection, storage, treatment and distribution of nonpotable water. The use and application of nonpotable water shall comply with laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the *jurisdiction*.

P2912.2 Collection surface. Rainwater shall be collected only from above-ground impervious roofing surfaces constructed from *approved* materials for acceptable uses without treatment listed in Section P2910.2.3.1 or where additional appropriate treatment is designed by a *registered design professional*. Collection of water from vehicular parking or pedestrian walkway surfaces shall be prohibited except where the water is used exclusively for landscape irrigation. Overflow and bleed-off pipes from roof-mounted *appliances* including, but not limited to, evaporative coolers, water heaters and solar water heaters shall not discharge onto rainwater collection surfaces.

P2912.3 Debris excluders. Downspouts and leaders shall be connected to a roof washer and shall be equipped with a debris excluder or equivalent device to prevent the contamination of collected rainwater with leaves, sticks, pine needles and undesirable material. Debris excluders and equivalent devices shall be self-cleaning.

P2912.4 Roof washer. An amount of rainwater shall be diverted at the beginning of each rain event, and not allowed to enter the storage tank, to wash accumulated debris from the collection surface. The amount of rainfall to be diverted shall be field adjustable as necessary to minimize storage tank water contamination. The roof washer shall not rely on manually operated valves or devices, and shall operate automatically. Diverted rainwater shall not be drained to the roof surface, and shall be discharged in a manner consistent with the stormwater runoff requirements of the *jurisdiction.* Roof washers shall be accessible for maintenance and service.

P2912.5 Roof gutters and downspouts. Gutters and downspouts shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the collection surface and the rainwater quality for the desired end use. Joints shall be watertight.

P2912.5.1 Slope. Roof gutters, leaders and rainwater collection piping shall slope continuously toward collection inlets and shall be free of leaks. Gutters and downspouts shall have a slope of not less than $^1/_8$ inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) along their entire length. Gutters and downspouts shall be installed so that water does not pool at any point.

P2912.5.2 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be provided in the water conveyance system to allow access to filters, flushes, pipes and downspouts.

P2912.6 Drainage. Water drained from the roof washer first flush diverter or debris excluder shall not be drained to the sanitary sewer. Such water shall be diverted from the storage tank and shall discharge to a location that will not cause erosion or damage to property. Roof washers first flush diverter and debris excluders shall be provided with an automatic means of self-draining between rain events and shall not drain onto roof surfaces.

P2912.7 Collection pipe. Rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall utilize drainage piping *approved* for use within plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey captured rainwater. Vent piping *approved* for use within plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents within the rainwater system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section P3002.

P2912.7.1 Installation. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be installed in accordance with Section P3005.3.

P2912.7.2 Joints. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section P3003.

P2912.7.3 Size. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be sized in accordance with drainage-sizing requirements specified in Section P3005.4.

P2912.7.4 Marking. Additional marking of collection piping conveying captured rainwater for reuse shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste, and vent piping by Chapter 30.

P2912.8 Filtration. Collected rainwater shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other *approved* method to provide indication when a filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves installed immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

P2912.9 Disinfection. Where the intended application for rainwater requires disinfection or other treatment or both, it shall be disinfected as determined by a *registered design professional* to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use.

P2912.10 Storage tanks. Storage tanks utilized in nonpotable rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall comply with Section P2910.9 and Sections P2912.10.1 through P2912.10.3.

P2912.10.1 Location. Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table P2912.10.1.

TABLE P2912.10.1
LOCATION OF RAINWATER STORAGE TANKS

ELEMENT	MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM STORAGE TANK (feet)
Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees	2
Lot line adjoining private lots	5
Seepage pits	5
Septic tanks	5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm

P2912.10.2 Inlets. Storage tank inlets shall be designed to introduce collected rainwater into the tank with minimum turbulence, and shall be located and designed to avoid agitating the contents of the storage tank.

P2912.10.3 Outlets. Outlets shall be located not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank and shall not skim water from the surface.

P2912.11 Valves. Valves shall be supplied on rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Sections P2912.11.1 and P2912.11.2.

P2912.11.1 Influent diversion. A means shall be provided to divert storage tank influent to allow for maintenance and repair of the storage tank system.

P2912.11.2 Backwater valve. Backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section P3008.

P2912.12 Pumping and control system. Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be easily accessible and removable in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section P2903.

P2912.13 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the rainwater distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section P2903.3.2.

Exception: Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

P2912.14 Distribution pipe. Distribution piping utilized in rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall comply with Sections P2912.14.1 through P2912.14.3.

Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

P2912.14.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section P2906 for nonpotable water.

P2912.14.2 Design. Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with the Section P2903 for the intended application.

P2912.14.3 Labeling and marking. Nonpotable rainwater distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section P2901.2.

P2912.15 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections P2912.15.1 through P2912.15.8.

P2912.15.1 Roof gutter inspection and test. Deleted.

P2912.15.2 Roofwasher test. Deleted.

P2912.15.3 Collection pipe and vent test. Drain, waste and vent piping used for rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall be tested in accordance with Section P2503.

P2912.15.4 Storage tank test. Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with the Section P2910.11.

P2912.15.5 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section P2503.7.

P2912.15.6 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

P2912.15.7 Inspection of vermin and insect protection. Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section P2910.7.

P2912.15.8 Water quality test. The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the *jurisdiction*.

P2912.16 Operation and maintenance manuals. Operation and maintenance manuals shall be supplied with rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Sections P2912.16.1 through P2912.16.4.

P2912.16.1 Manual. A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied for each system.

P2912.16.2 Schematics. The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, the location of system components and a list of system components that includes the manufacturers and model numbers of the components.

P2912.16.3 Maintenance procedures. The manual shall provide a maintenance schedule and procedures for system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts, including filters, shall be noted along with part numbers.

P2912.16.4 Operations procedures. The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures, and detailed operating procedures.

SECTION P2913
RECLAIMED WATER SYSTEMS

P2913.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and *repair* of systems supplying nonpotable reclaimed water.

P2913.2 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the reclaimed water pressure supplied to the building exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the reclaimed water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section P2903.3.2

Exception: Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

P2913.3 Reclaimed water systems. The design of the reclaimed water systems shall conform to accepted engineering practice.

P2913.3.1 Distribution pipe. Distribution piping shall comply with Sections P2913.3.1.1 through P2913.3.1.3.

Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

P2913.3.1.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping conveying reclaimed water shall conform to standards and requirements specified in Section P2906 for nonpotable water.

P2913.3.1.2 Design. Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section P2903 for the intended application.

P2913.3.1.3 Labeling and marking. Nonpotable rainwater distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section P2901.2.

P2913.4 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections P2913.4.1 and P2913.4.2.

P2913.4.1 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and reclaimed water distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section P2503.7.

P2913.4.2 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

CHAPTER 30

SANITARY DRAINAGE

SECTION P3001 GENERAL

P3001.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of sanitary drainage systems. Plumbing materials shall conform to the requirements of this chapter. The drainage, waste and vent (DWV) system shall consist of piping for conveying wastes from plumbing fixtures, *appliances* and appurtenances, including fixture traps; above-grade drainage piping; below-grade drains within the building, such as a *building drain*; below- and above-grade venting systems; and piping to the public sewer or private septic system.

P3001.2 Protection from freezing. Water pipes installed in a wall or ceiling exposed to the exterior shall be located on the heated side of the wall insulation. Water, soil and waste pipes shall not be installed outside of a building. When soil and waste piping is installed under a non-enclosed area of a building or structure, freeze protections shall be installed at the discretion of the authority having jurisdiction. When installed in unconditioned utility rooms, or in the building in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures, adequate provision shall be made to protect such pipes from freezing by a minimum of R6.5 insulation determined at 75°F (24°C) in accordance with ASTM C177 or heat, or both.

No traps of soil or waste pipe shall be installed or permitted outside of a building, or concealed in outside walls or in any place where they may be subjected to freezing temperatures, unless adequate provision is made to protect them from freezing.

Exterior water supply system piping shall be installed below the frost line and in no case less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade.

Building sewers that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below finished grade at the point of septic tank connection. *Building sewers* shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below grade.

Note: These provisions are minimum requirements, which have been found suitable for normal weather conditions. Abnormally low temperatures for extended periods may require additional provisions to prevent freezing.

P3001.3 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, drainage, waste and vent systems shall be located and installed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters into the systems and discharges from the systems into floodwaters.

SECTION P3002 MATERIALS

P3002.1 Piping within buildings. Drain, waste and vent (DWV) piping in buildings shall be as indicated in Tables P3002.1(1) and P3002.1(2) except that galvanized wrought-iron or galvanized steel pipe shall not be used underground and shall be maintained not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above ground. Allowance shall be made for the thermal expansion and contraction of plastic piping.

P3002.2 Building sewer. *Building sewer* piping shall be as indicated in Table P3002.2 Forced main sewer piping shall conform to one of the standards for ABS plastic pipe, copper or copper-alloy tubing, PVC plastic pipe or pressure-rated pipe indicated in Table P3002.2.

P3002.2.1 Building sewer pipe near the water service. The proximity of a *building sewer* to a water service shall comply with Section P2906.4.1.

TABLE P3002.1(1)
ABOVE-GROUND DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2661; ASTM D2680; ASTM F628; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.1
Cast-iron pipe	ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301
Copper or copper-alloy pipe (Brass),	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Brass), (Type K, L, M or DWV)	ASTM B75/B75M; ASTM B88; ASTM B251/B251M; ASTM B306
Galvanized steel pipe	ASTM A53/A53M
Polyolefin pipe	CSA B181.3
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2665; ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2949; ASTM F1488
Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L	ASME A112.3.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE P3002.1(2)
UNDERGROUND BUILDING DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE

PIPE	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2661; ASTM F628; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.1
Cast-iron pipe	ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)	ASTM B75/B75M; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B306
Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR)	ASTM F714
Polyolefin pipe	ASTM F714; ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2665; ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2949; ASTM F1488
Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L	ASME A112.3.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE P3002.2
BUILDING SEWER PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2661; ASTM F628; ASTM F1488
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), PS35, SDR 35 (PS 45), PS50, PS100, PS140, SDR 23.5 (PS 150) and PS200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2751; ASTM F1488
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including PS 25, SDR 41 (PS 28), PS 35, SDR 35 (PS 46), PS 50, PS 100, SDR 26 (PS 115), PS140 and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D3034; ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4; ANSI/AWWA C900
Cast-iron pipe	ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301
Concrete pipe	ASTM C14; ASTM C76; CSA A257.1; CSA A257.2
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Brass), (Type K or L)	ASTM B75/B75M; ASTM B88; ASTM B251/B251M
Ductile iron pipe	ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50
Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR)	ASTM F714
Polyolefin pipe	ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2665; ASTM D2949; ASTM D3034; ASTM F1412; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall	ASTM D2949, ASTM F1488
Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L	ASME A112.3.1
Vitrified clay pipe	ASTM C425; ASTM C700

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE P3002.3
PIPE FITTINGS

PIPE MATERIAL	FITTING STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters	ASME A112.4.4; ASTM D2661; ASTM D3311; ASTM F628; CSA B181.1
Acrylonotrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters	ASTM D2751
Cast-iron	ASME B16.4; ASME B16.12; ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301
Copper or copper alloy (Brass),	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29
Gray iron and ductile iron	AWWA C110/A21.10
Polyethylene	ASTM D2683
Polyolefin	ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic in IPS diameters	ASME A112.4.4; ASTM D2665; ASTM D3311; ASTM F1866
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters	ASTM D3034
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D.	ASTM D2949
PVC fabricated fittings	ASTM F1866
Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L	ASME A112.3.1
Vitrified clay	ASTM C700

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

P3002.3 Fittings. Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards indicated in Table P3002.3. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent cemented inside of plastic pipe.

P3002.3.1 Drainage. Drainage fittings shall have a smooth interior waterway of the same diameter as the piping served. Fittings shall conform to the type of pipe used. Drainage fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions that can retard or obstruct drainage flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type, black or galvanized. Drainage fittings shall be designed to maintain $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) grade. This section shall not be applicable to tubular waste fittings used to convey vertical flow upstream of the trap seal liquid level of a fixture trap. This section shall not be applicable to tubular waste fittings used to convey vertical flow upstream of the trap seal liquid level of a fixture trap.

P3002.4 Other materials. Sheet lead, lead bends, lead traps and sheet copper shall comply with Sections P3002.4.1 through P3002.4.3.

P3002.4.1 Sheet lead. Sheet lead shall weigh not less than indicated for the following applications:

1. Flashing of vent terminals, 3 psf (15 kg/m^2).
2. Prefabricated flashing for vent pipes, 2$^1/_2$ psf (12 kg/m^2).

P3002.4.2 Lead bends and traps. Lead bends and lead traps shall be not less than $^1/_8$-inch (3 mm) wall thickness.

P3002.4.3 Sheet copper. Sheet copper shall weigh not less than indicated for the following applications:

1. General use, 12 ounces per square feet (4 kg/m^2).
2. Flashing for vent pipes, 8 ounces per square feet (2.5 kg/m^2).

SECTION P3003
JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

P3003.1 Tightness. Joints and connections in the DWV system shall be gastight and watertight for the intended use or pressure required by test.

P3003.1.1 Threaded joints, general. Pipe and fitting threads shall be tapered.

P3003.2 Prohibited joints. Running threads and bands shall not be used in the drainage system. Drainage and vent piping shall not be drilled, tapped, burned or welded.

The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

1. Cement or concrete.
2. Mastic or hot-pour bituminous joints.
3. Joints made with fittings not *approved* for the specific installation.
4. Joints between different diameter pipes made with elastomeric rolling O-rings.

5. Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
6. Saddle-type fittings.

P3003.3 ABS plastic. Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.3.1 through P3003.3.4.

P3003.3.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed only in underground systems unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.3.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235, ASTM D2661, ASTM F628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

P3003.3.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

P3003.3.4 Push-fit fitting joints. Push-fit DWV fittings shall be *listed* and *labeled* to ASME A112.4.4 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.4 Cast iron. Joints between cast-iron pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.4.1 through P3003.4.3.

P3003.4.1 Caulked joints. Joints for hub and spigot pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp. Molten lead shall be poured in one operation to a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm). The lead shall not recede more than $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3 mm) below the rim of the hub and shall be caulked tight. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and *approved*. Lead shall be run in one pouring and shall be caulked tight.

P3003.4.2 Compression gasket joints. Compression gaskets for hub and spigot pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C564. Gaskets shall be compressed when the pipe is fully inserted.

P3003.4.3 Mechanical joint coupling. Mechanical joint couplings for hubless pipe and fittings shall consist of an elastomeric sealing sleeve and a metallic shield that comply with CISPI 310, ASTM C1277 or ASTM C1540. The elastomeric sealing sleeve shall conform to ASTM C564 or CSA B602 and shall have a center stop. Mechanical joint couplings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.5 Concrete joints. Joints between concrete pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C443, ASTM C1173, CSA A257.3 or CSA B602.

P3003.6 Copper and copper-alloy (brass) pipe and tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe tubing or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.6.1 through P3003.6.4.

P3003.6.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. Brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys filler metal shall be in accordance with AWS A5.8.

P3003.6.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.6.3 Soldered joints. Copper and copper-alloy (brass) joints shall be soldered in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. Fluxes for soldering shall be in accordance with ASTM B813 and shall become noncorrosive and nontoxic after soldering. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

P3003.6.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

P3003.7 Steel. Joints between galvanized steel pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.7.1 and P3003.7.2.

P3003.7.1 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

P3003.7.2 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.8 Lead. Joints between lead pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.8.1 and P3003.8.2.

P3003.8.1 Burned. Burned joints shall be uniformly fused together into one continuous piece. The thickness of the joint shall be not less than the thickness of the lead being joined. The filler metal shall be of the same material as the pipe.

P3003.8.2 Wiped. Joints shall be fully wiped, with an exposed surface on each side of the joint not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm). The joint shall be not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) thick at the thickest point.

P3003.9 PVC plastic. Joints between PVC plastic pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.9.1 through P3003.9.4.

P3003.9.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.9.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564, CSA B137.3 or CSA B181.2 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be installed above or below ground. *Clear primer conforming to* ASTM F656 may be applied to all joint surfaces where the piping is exposed under sinks and in buildings.

P3003.9.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

P3003.9.4 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall conform to ASME A112.4.4 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.10 Vitrified clay. Joints between vitrified clay pipe or fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C1173 or CSA B602.

P3003.11 Polyolefin plastic. Joints between polyolefin plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.11.1 and P3003.11.2.

P3003.11.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polyolefin pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyolefin fittings or electrofusion polyolefin fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F1412 or CSA B181.3.

P3003.11.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.12 Polyethylene plastic pipe. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall be underground and shall comply with Section P3003.12.1 or P3003.12.2.

P3003.12.1 Heat fusion joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be cut, heated to melting temperature and joined using tools specifically designed for the operation. Joints shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657 and the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.12.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints in drainage piping shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.13 Joints between different materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM C1460 or ASTM C1461. Connectors and adapters shall be *approved* for the application and such joints shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C443, ASTM C564, ASTM C1440, ASTM D1869, ASTM F477, CSA A257.3 or CSA B602, or as required in Sections P3003.13.1 through P3003.13.6. Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.13.1 Copper pipe or tubing to cast-iron hub pipe. Joints between copper pipe or tubing and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made with a copper-alloy (brass) ferrule or compression joint. The copper pipe or tubing shall be soldered to the ferrule in an *approved* manner, and the ferrule shall be joined to the cast-iron hub by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

P3003.13.2 Copper pipe or tubing to galvanized steel pipe. Joints between copper pipe or tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a copper-alloy (brass) or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

P3003.13.3 Cast-iron pipe to galvanized steel or copper-alloy (brass) pipe. Joints between cast-iron and galvanized steel or copper-alloy (brass) pipe shall be made by either caulked or threaded joints or with an *approved* adapter fitting.

P3003.13.4 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material. Joints between different types of plastic pipe shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

P3003.13.5 Lead pipe to other piping material. Joints between lead pipe and other piping material shall be made by a wiped joint to a caulking ferrule, soldering nipple, or bushing or shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting.

P3003.13.6 Stainless steel drainage systems to other materials. Joints between stainless steel drainage systems and other piping materials shall be made with *approved* mechanical couplings.

P3003.14 Joints between drainage piping and water closets. Joints between drainage piping and water closets or similar fixtures shall be made by means of a closet flange or a waste connector and sealing gasket compatible with the drainage system material, securely fastened to a structurally firm base. Floor outlet fixtures shall be secured to the floor or floor flanges by screws or bolts of corrosion-resistant material. The joint shall be bolted, with an *approved* gasket flange to fixture connection complying with ASME A112.4.3 or setting compound between the fixture and the closet flange or waste connector and sealing gasket. The waste connector and sealing gasket joint shall comply with the joint-tightness test of ASME A112.4.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3003.14.1 Floor flanges. Floor flanges for water closets or similar fixtures shall be not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick for brass, 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick for plastic and 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick and not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) caulking depth for cast iron or galvanized malleable iron.

Floor flanges of hard lead shall weigh not less than 1 pound, 9 ounces (0.7 kg) and shall be composed of lead alloy with not less than 7.75-percent antimony by weight.

P3003.14.2 Securing wall-hung water closet bowls. Wall hung water closet bowls shall be supported by a concealed metal carrier that is attached to the building structural members so that strain is not transmitted to the closet connector or any other part of the plumbing system. The carrier shall conform to ASME A112.6.1M or ASME A112.6.2.

SECTION P3004 DETERMINING DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS

P3004.1 DWV system load. The load on DWV-system piping shall be computed in terms of drainage fixture unit (d.f.u.) values in accordance with Table P3004.1.

SECTION P3005 DRAINAGE SYSTEM

P3005.1 Drainage fittings and connections. Fittings shall be installed to guide sewage and waste in the direction of flow. Changes in direction in drainage piping shall be made by the appropriate use of sanitary tees, wyes, sweeps, bends or by a combination of these drainage fittings in accordance

TABLE P3004.1
DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT (d.f.u.) VALUES FOR VARIOUS PLUMBING FIXTURES

TYPE OF FIXTURE OR GROUP OF FIXTURES	DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT VALUE (d.f.u.)[a]
Bar sink	1
Bathtub (with or without a shower head or whirlpool attachments)	2
Bidet	1
Clothes washer standpipe	2
Dishwasher	2
Floor drain[b] (including waste receptors or hub drains for condensate waste)	0
Kitchen sink	2
Lavatory	1
Laundry tub	2
Shower stall	2
Water closet (1.6 gallons per flush)	3
Water closet (greater than 1.6 gallons per flush)	4
Full-bath group with bathtub (with 1.6-gallons-per-flush water closet, and with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachment on the bathtub or shower stall)	5
Full-bath group with bathtub (water closet greater than 1.6 gallons per flush, and with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachment on the bathtub or shower stall)	6
Half-bath group (1.6-gallons-per-flush water closet plus lavatory)	4
Half-bath group (water closet greater than 1.6 gallons per flush plus lavatory)	5
Kitchen group (dishwasher and sink with or without food-waste disposer)	2
Laundry group (clothes washer standpipe and laundry tub)	3
Multiple-bath groups[c]:	
1.5 baths	7
2 baths	8
2.5 baths	9
3 baths	10
3.5 baths	11

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. For a continuous or semicontinuous flow into a drainage system, such as from a pump or similar device, 2 fixture units shall be allowed per gpm of flow. For a fixture not listed, use the highest d.f.u. value for a similar listed fixture.

b. A floor drain itself does not add hydraulic load. Where used as a receptor, the fixture unit value of the fixture discharging into the receptor shall be applicable.

c. Add 2 d.f.u. for each additional full bath.

with Table P3005.1. Change in direction by combination fittings, heel or side inlets or increasers shall be installed in accordance with Table P3005.1 and Sections P3005.1.1 through P3005.1.4, based on the pattern of flow created by the fitting. Double sanitary tee patterns shall not receive the discharge of appliances with pumping action discharge.

P3005.1.1 Horizontal to vertical (multiple connection fittings). Double fittings such as double sanitary tees and tee-wyes or *approved* multiple connection fittings and back-to-back fixture arrangements that connect two or more branches at the same level shall be permitted as long as directly opposing connections are the same size and the discharge into directly opposing connections is from similar fixture types or fixture groups. Double sanitary tee patterns shall not receive the discharge of *appliances* with pumping action discharge.

Exception: Deleted.

P3005.1.2 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends, drainage. Deleted.

P3005.1.3 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends, venting. Heel-inlet or side-inlet quarter bends, or any arrangement of pipe and fittings producing a similar effect, shall be acceptable as a dry vent where the inlet is placed in a vertical position. The inlet is permitted to be placed in a *horizontal* position only where the entire fitting is part of a dry vent arrangement.

P3005.1.4 Water closet connection between flange and pipe. One-quarter bends 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter shall be acceptable for water closet or similar connections, provided that a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) flange is installed to receive the closet fixture horn. Alternately, a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) elbow shall be acceptable with a 4-inch (102 mm) flange.

P3005.1.5 Provisions for future fixtures. Where drainage has been roughed-in for future fixtures, the drainage unit values of the future fixtures shall be considered in determining the required drain sizes. Such future installations shall be terminated with an accessible permanent plug or cap fitting.

P3005.1.6 Drainage piping size reduction in the direction of flow. The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in the direction of the flow. The following shall not be considered a reduction in size in the direction of flow:

1. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) water closet flange.
2. A water closet bend fitting having a 4-inch (102 mm) inlet and a 3-inch (76 mm) outlet provided that the 4-inch (102 mm) leg of the fitting is upright and below, but not necessarily directly connected to, the water closet flange.
3. An offset closet flange with a full flow, minimum 3-inch (76 mm) interior diameter throat.

P3005.2 Cleanouts required. Cleanouts shall be provided for drainage piping in accordance with Sections P3005.2.1 through P3005.2.11.

P3005.2.1 Gravity horizontal drains and building drains. *Horizontal* drainage pipes in buildings shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). *Building drains* shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) except where manholes are used instead of cleanouts, the manholes shall be located at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the *developed length* of the piping to the next drainage

TABLE P3005.1
FITTINGS FOR CHANGE IN DIRECTION

TYPE OF FITTING PATTERN	CHANGE IN DIRECTION		
	Horizontal to vertical	Vertical to horizontal	Horizontal to horizontal
Sixteenth bend	X	X	X
Eighth bend	X	X	X
Sixth bend	X	X	X
Quarter bend	X	X[d, f]	X[e]
Short sweep	X	X[a,b]	X[a]
Long sweep	X	X	X
Sanitary tee	X[c]	—	—
Wye	X	X	X
Combination wye and eighth bend	X	X	X

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The fittings shall only be permitted for a 2-inch or smaller sink or lavatory fixture drain.
b. Two inches and larger.
c. For a limitation on multiple connection fittings, see Section P3005.1.1.
d. May be used only within 12 inches below water closet flange measured to centerline of the quarter bend.
e. This fitting shall only be permitted to be used as the first fitting directly behind the fixture for drains 2 inches and smaller, except clothes washers.
f. The heel inlet connection of a quarter bend may be used as a wet or dry vent if the heel inlet connection of the quarter bend is located in the vertical position. The heel or side inlet connection may be used as a wet vent if the quarter bend is located directly below a water closet or other fixture with one integral trap.

fitting providing access for cleaning, the end of the *horizontal* drain or the end of the *building drain*.

Exception: Horizontal *fixture drain* piping serving a nonremovable trap shall not be required to have a cleanout for the section of piping between the trap and the vent connection for such trap.

P3005.2.2 Gravity building sewers. *Building sewers* smaller than 8 inches (203 mm) shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). *Building sewers* 8 inches (203 mm) and larger shall have a manhole located not more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from the junction of the *building drain* and *building sewer* and at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the *developed length* of the piping to the next drainage fitting providing access for cleaning, a manhole or the end of the *building sewer*.

P3005.2.3 Building drain and building sewer junction. There shall be a cleanout at the junction of the building drain and the building sewer. The cleanout shall be outside the building wall and shall be brought up to the finished ground level. An approved two-way cleanout is allowed to be used at this location to serve as a required cleanout for both the building drain and building sewer. The cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall not be required if the cleanout on a 3 inch (76 mm) or larger diameter soil stack is located within a developed length of not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from the building drain and building sewer connection and is extended to the outside of the building. The minimum size of the cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall comply with Section P3005.2.5.

P3005.2.4 Changes of direction. One cleanout shall be required for every four horizontal 45 degree (0.79 rad) changes located in series. (A long sweep is equivalent to two 45 degree (0.79 rad) bends.)

P3005.2.5 Cleanout size. Cleanouts shall be the same size as the piping served by the cleanout, except cleanouts for piping larger than 4 inches (102 mm) need not be larger than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exceptions:

1. A removable P-trap with slip- or ground-joint connections can serve as a cleanout for drain piping that is one size larger than the P-trap size.
2. Cleanouts located on stacks can be one size smaller than the stack size.
3. The size of cleanouts for cast-iron piping can be in accordance with the referenced standards for cast iron fittings as indicated in Table P3002.3.
4. "P" traps into which floor drains, shower drains or tub drains with removable strainers discharge.
5. "P" traps into which the straight-through type waste and overflow discharge with the overflow connecting to the top of the tee.
6. "P" traps into which residential washing machines discharge.
7. Test tees or cleanouts in a vertical pipe.
8. Cleanout near the junction of the building drain and the building sewer which may be rodded both ways.
9. Water closets for the water closet fixture drain only.

P3005.2.6 Cleanout plugs. Cleanout plugs shall be copper alloy, plastic or other *approved* materials. Cleanout plugs for borosilicate glass piping systems shall be of borosilicate glass. Copper-alloy cleanout plugs shall conform to ASTM A74 and shall be limited for use only on metallic piping systems. Plastic cleanout plugs shall conform to the referenced standards for plastic pipe fittings as indicated in Table P3002.3. Cleanout plugs shall have a raised square head, a countersunk square head or a countersunk slot head. Where a cleanout plug will have a trim cover screw installed into the plug, the plug shall be manufactured with a blind end threaded hole for such purpose.

P3005.2.7 Manholes. Manholes and manhole covers shall be of an *approved* type. Manholes located inside of a building shall have gastight covers that require tools for removal.

P3005.2.8 Installation arrangement. The installation arrangement of a cleanout shall enable cleaning of drainage piping only in the direction of drainage flow.

Exceptions:

1. Test tees serving as cleanouts.
2. A two-way cleanout installation that is *approved* for meeting the requirements of Section P3005.2.3.

P3005.2.9 Required clearance. Cleanouts for 6-inch (153 mm) and smaller piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction. Cleanouts for 8-inch (203 mm) and larger piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction.

P3005.2.10 Cleanout access. Required cleanouts shall not be installed in concealed locations. For the purposes of this section, concealed locations include, but are not limited to, the inside of plenums, within walls, within floor/ceiling assemblies, below grade and in crawl spaces where the height from the *crawl space* floor to the nearest obstruction along the path from the *crawl space* opening to the cleanout location is less than 24 inches (610 mm). Cleanouts with openings at a finished wall shall have the face of the opening located within $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of the finished wall surface. Cleanouts located below grade shall be extended to grade level so that the top of the cleanout plug is at or above grade. A cleanout installed in a floor or walkway that will not have a trim cover installed shall have a counter-sunk plug installed so the top surface of the plug is flush with the finished surface of the floor or walkway.

P3005.2.10.1 Cleanout equivalent. A fixture trap or a fixture with an integral trap, removable without altering the concealed piping, shall be acceptable as a cleanout equivalent.

P3005.2.10.2 Cleanout plug trim covers. Trim covers and access doors for cleanout plugs shall be designed for such purposes. Trim cover fasteners that thread into cleanout plugs shall be corrosion resistant. Cleanout plugs shall not be covered with mortar, plaster or any other permanent material.

P3005.2.10.3 Floor cleanout assemblies. Where it is necessary to protect a cleanout plug from the loads of vehicular traffic, cleanout assemblies in accordance with ASME A112.36.2M shall be installed.

P3005.2.11 Prohibited use. The use of a threaded cleanout opening to add a fixture or extend piping shall be prohibited except where another cleanout of equal size is installed with the required access and clearance.

P3005.3 Horizontal drainage piping slope. *Horizontal* drainage piping shall be installed in uniform alignment at uniform slopes not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for $2^1/_2$-inch (64 mm) diameter and less, and not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope) for diameters of 3 inches (76 mm) or more.

P3005.4 Drain pipe sizing. Drain pipes shall be sized according to drainage fixture unit (d.f.u.) loads. The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in size in the direction of flow. The following general procedure is permitted to be used:

1. Draw an isometric layout or riser diagram denoting fixtures on the layout.
2. Assign d.f.u. values to each fixture group plus individual fixtures using Table P3004.1.
3. Starting with the top floor or most remote fixtures, work downstream toward the *building drain* accumulating d.f.u. values for fixture groups plus individual fixtures for each branch. Where multiple bath groups are being added, use the reduced d.f.u. values in Table P3004.1, which take into account probability factors of simultaneous use.
4. Size branches and stacks by equating the assigned d.f.u. values to pipe sizes shown in Table P3005.4.1.
5. Determine the pipe diameter and slope of the *building drain* and *building sewer* based on the accumulated d.f.u. values, using Table P3005.4.2.

P3005.4.1 Branch and stack sizing. Branches and stacks shall be sized in accordance with Table P3005.4.1. Below grade drain pipes shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter. Drain stacks shall be not smaller than the largest horizontal branch connected.

Exception: A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend or flange.

TABLE P3005.4.1
MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNITS ALLOWED TO BE CONNECTED TO BRANCHES AND STACKS[d, e]

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	ANY HORIZONTAL FIXTURE BRANCH	ANY ONE VERTICAL STACK OR DRAIN
$1^1/_4$[a, b]	—	—
$1^1/_2$[b]	3	4
2[b]	6	10
$2^1/_2$[b]	12	20
3[f]	20[c]	48
4	160	240

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. $1^1/_4$-inch pipe size limited to a single-fixture drain. See Table P3201.7.
b. Water closets prohibited.
c. No more than four water closets.
d. 50 percent less for circuit-vented fixture branches.
e. Minimum of 2-inch diameter underground.
f. The minimum size of any branches serving a water closet shall be 3 inches.

P3005.4.2 Building drain and sewer size and slope. Pipe sizes and slope shall be determined from Table P3005.4.2 on the basis of drainage load in fixture units (d.f.u.) computed from Table P3004.1.

TABLE P3005.4.2
MAXIMUM NUMBER OF FIXTURE UNITS ALLOWED TO BE CONNECTED TO THE BUILDING DRAIN, BUILDING DRAIN BRANCHES OR THE BUILDING SEWER[c, e]

DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches)	SLOPE PER FOOT		
	$^1/_8$ inch	$^1/_4$ inch	$^1/_2$ inch
$1^1/_2$[a, b]	—	Note a	Note a
2[b]	—	21	27
$2^1/_2$[b]	—	24	31
3[d]	36	42	50
4	180	216	250

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. $1^1/_2$-inch pipe size limited to a building drain branch serving not more than two waste fixtures, or not more than one waste fixture if serving a pumped discharge fixture or food waste disposer discharge.
b. No water closets.
c. No building sewer shall be less than 4 inches in size.
d. No more than four water closets.
e. Minimum of 2-inch diameter underground.

P3005.5 Connections to offsets and bases of stacks. Horizontal branches shall connect to the bases of stacks at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the stack. Horizontal branches shall connect to horizontal stack offsets at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the upper stack.

P3005.6 Dead ends. In the installation or removal of any part of a drainage system, dead ends shall be prohibited. Cleanout extensions and approved future fixture drainage piping shall not be considered as dead ends.

SECTION P3006
SIZING OF DRAIN PIPE OFFSETS

P3006.1 Vertical offsets. An offset in a vertical drain, with a change of direction of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less from the vertical, shall be sized as a straight vertical drain.

P3006.2 Horizontal offsets above the lowest branch. A stack with an offset of more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical shall be sized as follows:

1. The portion of the stack above the offset shall be sized as for a regular stack based on the total number of fixture units above the offset.
2. The offset shall be sized as for a *building drain* in accordance with Table P3005.4.2.
3. The portion of the stack below the offset shall be sized as for the offset or based on the total number of fixture units on the entire stack, whichever is larger.

P3006.3 Horizontal offsets below the lowest branch. In soil or waste stacks below the lowest horizontal branch, a change in diameter shall not be required if the offset is made at an angle not greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical. If an offset greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is made, the offset and stack below it shall be sized as a *building drain* in accordance with Table P3005.4.2.

SECTION P3007
SUMPS AND EJECTORS

P3007.1 Building subdrains. Building subdrains that cannot be discharged to the sewer by gravity flow shall be discharged into a tightly covered and vented sump from which the liquid shall be lifted and discharged into the building gravity drainage system by automatic pumping equipment or other *approved* method. In other than existing structures, the sump shall not receive drainage from any piping within the building capable of being discharged by gravity to the *building sewer*.

P3007.2 Valves required. A check valve, a full open valve and a means for cleanout located on the discharge side of the check valve shall be installed in the pump or ejector discharge piping between the pump or ejector and the gravity drainage system. Access shall be provided to such valves. Such valves shall be located above the sump cover required by Section P3007.3.2 or, where the discharge pipe from the ejector is below grade, the valves shall be accessibly located outside the sump below grade in an access pit with a removable access cover.

P3007.3 Sump design. The sump pump, sump and discharge piping shall conform to the requirements of Sections P3007.3.1 through P3007.3.5.

P3007.3.1 Sump pump. The sump pump capacity and head shall be appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

P3007.3.2 Sump. The sump shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and 24 inches (610 mm) deep, unless otherwise *approved*. The sump shall be accessible and located so that drainage flows into the sump by gravity. The sump shall be constructed of tile, concrete, steel, plastic or other *approved* materials. The sump bottom shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump. The sump shall be fitted with a gastight removable cover that is installed not more than 2 inches (51 mm) below grade or floor level. The cover shall be adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The sump shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 31.

P3007.3.3 Discharge pipe and fittings. Discharge pipe and fittings serving sump pumps and ejectors shall be constructed of materials pressure-rated for not less than the maximum discharge pressure of the pump in accordance with Sections P3007.3.3.1 and P3007.3.3.2.

P3007.3.3.1 Materials. Forced main sewer pipe and fitting material shall conform to one of the standards for ABS plastic pipe, copper or copper-alloy tubing, PVC plastic pipe or pressure-rated pipe indicated in Table P3002.2., excluding cell-core products.

P3007.3.3.2 Ratings. Pipe and fittings shall be rated for the maximum system operating pressure and temperature. Pipe fitting materials shall be compatible with the pipe material. Where pipe and fittings are buried in the earth, they shall be suitable for burial. DWV fittings that are properly rated and allowed by the manufacturer's installation instructions shall be acceptable.

P3007.3.4 Maximum effluent level. The effluent level control shall be adjusted and maintained to at all times prevent the effluent in the sump from rising to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the invert of the gravity drain inlet into the sump.

P3007.3.4.1 Sump alarms. Sumps that discharge by means of automatic pumping equipment shall be provided with an approved, electrically operated high-water indicating alarm. A remote sensor shall activate the alarm when the fluid level exceeds a preset level that is less than the maximum capacity of the sump. The alarm shall function to provide an audiovisual signal to occupants within the building. Electrical power for the alarm shall be supplied through a branch circuit separate from that supplying the pump motor.

Exception: Sump alarms are not required for single point-of-use sump pumps and macerating toilet systems.

P3007.3.5 Ejector connection to the drainage system. Pumps connected to the drainage system shall connect to a *building sewer, building drain*, soil stack, waste stack or *horizontal* branch drain. Where the discharge line connects into *horizontal* drainage piping, the connection shall be made through a wye fitting into the top of the drainage piping and such wye fitting shall be located not less than 10 pipe diameters from the base of any soil stack, waste stack or *fixture drain*.

P3007.4 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors. A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall automatically discharge the contents of the sump to the building drainage system. The ejector pump discharge pipe shall not discharge directly into a septic tank. The pumped line shall discharge laterally into a 4-inch (102 mm) gravity line not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the connection to the tank through a lateral wye branch.

P3007.5 Macerating toilet systems and pumped waste systems. Macerating toilet systems and pumped waste systems shall comply with ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3007.6 Capacity. Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors shall have the capacity and head for the application requirements. Pumps and ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 2 inches (51 mm). Other pumps or ejectors shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm). The minimum capacity of a pump or ejector based on the diameter of the discharge pipe shall be in accordance with Table 3007.6.

Exceptions:

1. Grinder pumps or grinder ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm).
2. Macerating toilet assemblies that serve single water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm).

TABLE 3007.6
MINIMUM CAPACITY OF SEWAGE PUMP OR SEWAGE EJECTOR

DIAMETER OF THE DISCHARGE PIPE (inches)	CAPACITY OF PUMP OR EJECTOR (gpm)
2	21
$2^1/_2$	30
3	46

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

SECTION P3008
BACKWATER VALVES

P3008.1 Where required. Where plumbing fixtures are installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation below the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer*, such fixtures shall be protected by a backwater valve installed in the *building drain*, or horizontal *branch* serving such fixtures. Plumbing fixtures installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer* shall not discharge through a backwater valve.

Exceptions:

1. In existing buildings, fixtures above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer* shall not be prohibited from discharging through a backwater valve.
2. Where the sewer service line ties directly to a manhole, that manhole is considered to be the next upstream manhole.
3. Where hub drains are located in the crawl space for condensate waste, a backwater valve shall be installed.

P3008.2 Allowable installations. Deleted.

P3008.3 Material. Backwater valves shall comply with ASME A112.14.1, CSA B181.1 or CSA B181.2.

P3008.4 Location. Backwater valves shall be installed so that access is provided to the working parts.

P3008.5 Diameter. Backwater valves, when fully opened, shall have a capacity not less than that of the pipes in which they are installed.

P3008.6 Crawl spaces. All hub drains or floor drains installed in crawl spaces shall be protected from backflow into the building by a check valve or back-water valve installed in the lateral serving the said hub drain or floor drain.

SECTION P3009
GRAYWATER SOIL ABSORPTION SYSTEMS
DELETED

SECTION P3010
REPLACEMENT OF UNDERGROUND BUILDING SEWERS AND BUILDING DRAINS BY PIPE BURSTING METHODS

P3010.1 General. This section shall govern the replacement of existing *building sewer* and *building drain* piping by pipe-bursting methods.

P3010.2 Applicability. The replacement of *building sewer* and *building drain* piping by pipe bursting methods shall be limited to gravity drainage piping of sizes 6 inches (150 mm) and smaller. The replacement piping shall be of the same nominal size as the existing piping.

P3010.3 Preinstallation inspection. The existing piping sections to be replaced shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. The survey shall include notations of the position of cleanouts and the depth of connections to the existing piping.

P3010.4 Pipe. The replacement pipe shall be made of a high-density polyethylene (HDPE) and shall be in compliance with ASTM F714.

P3010.5 Pipe fittings. Pipe fittings to be connected to the replacement pipe shall be made of high-density polyethylene (HDPE) and shall be in compliance with ASTM D2683.

P3010.6 Cleanouts. Where the existing *building sewer* or *building drain* did not have cleanouts meeting the requirements of this code, cleanout fittings shall be installed as required by this code.

P3010.7 Post-installation inspection. The completed replacement piping section shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. When a permit is issued, a live video survey shall be reviewed and *approved* by the *building official* prior to pressure testing of the replacement piping system.

P3010.8 Pressure testing. The replacement piping system shall be tested in accordance with Section P2503.4.

SECTION P3011 RELINING OF BUILDING SEWERS AND BUILDING DRAINS

P3011.1 General. This section shall govern the relining of existing *building sewer* and building drainage piping.

P3011.2 Applicability. The relining of existing *building sewer* piping and building drainage piping shall be limited to gravity drainage piping 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter and larger. The relined piping shall be of the same nominal size as the existing piping.

P3011.3 Preinstallation requirements. Prior to commencement of the relining installation, the existing piping sections to be relined shall be descaled and cleaned. After the cleaning process has occurred and water has been flushed through the system, the piping shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey.

P3011.3.1 Preinstallation recorded video camera survey. The video survey shall include verification of the project address location. The video shall include notations of the cleanout and fitting locations, and the approximate depth of the existing piping. The video shall also include notations of the length of piping at intervals not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm).

P3011.4 Permitting. Prior to issuing a permit for relining, the building official shall review and evaluate the preinstallation recorded video camera survey to determine whether the piping system is able to be relined in accordance with the proposed lining system manufacturer's installation requirements and applicable referenced standards.

P3011.5 Prohibited applications. Where the preinstallation recorded video camera survey reveals that piping systems are not installed correctly, or defects exist, relining shall not be permitted. The defective portions of piping shall be exposed and repaired with pipe and fittings in accordance with this code. Defects shall include, but are not limited to, backslope or insufficient slope, complete pipe wall deterioration or complete separations such as from tree root invasion or improper support.

P3011.6 Relining materials. The relining materials shall be manufactured in compliance with applicable standards and certified as required in Section P2609. Fold-and-form pipe reline materials shall be manufactured in compliance with ASTM F1504 or ASTM F1871.

P3011.7 Installation. The installation of relining materials shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, applicable referenced standards and this code.

P3011.7.1 Material data report. The installer shall record the data as required by the relining material manufacturer and applicable standards. The recorded data shall include, but is not limited to, the location of the project, relining material type, amount of product installed and conditions of the installation. A copy of the data report shall be provided to the building official prior to final approval.

P3011.8 Post-installation recorded video camera survey. When a permit is issued, the completed relined piping system shall be inspected internally by a live video camera survey after the system has been flushed and flow-tested with water. The video survey shall be submitted to the building official prior to finalization of the permit. The video survey shall be reviewed and evaluated to provide verification that no defects exist. Any defects identified shall be repaired and replaced in accordance with this code.

P3011.9 Certification. Certification shall be provided in writing to the building official, from the permit holder, that the relining materials have been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, the applicable standards and this code.

P3011.10 Approval. Upon verification of compliance with the requirements of Sections P3011.1 through P3011.9, the building official shall approve the installation.

CHAPTER 31
VENTS

SECTION P3101 VENT SYSTEMS

P3101.1 General. This chapter shall govern the selection and installation of piping, tubing and fittings for vent systems. This chapter shall control the minimum diameter of vent pipes, circuit vents, branch vents and individual vents, and the size and length of vents and various aspects of vent stacks and stack vents. Additionally, this chapter regulates vent grades and connections, height above fixtures and relief vents for stacks and fixture traps, and the venting of sumps and sewers.

P3101.2 Trap seal protection. The plumbing system shall be provided with a system of vent piping that will allow the admission or emission of air so that the liquid seal of any fixture trap shall not be subjected to a pressure differential of more than 1 inch of water column (249 Pa).

P3101.2.1 Venting required. Every *trap* and trapped fixture shall be vented in accordance with one of the venting methods specified in this chapter. All fixtures discharging downstream from a water closet shall be individually vented.

P3101.3 Use limitations. The plumbing vent system shall not be used for purposes other than the venting of the plumbing system.

P3101.4 Extension outside a structure. Deleted.

P3101.5 Flood resistance. In flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2, vents shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section R322.1 (flood hazard areas including A Zones) or R322.2 (coastal high-hazard areas including V Zones). The plumbing systems, pipes and fixtures shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls intended to break away under flood loads.

P3101.6 Tests. The vent system shall be tested in accordance with Section P2503.5.

P3101.7 Materials. The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of venting systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section P2906.

P3101.7.1 Sheet copper. Sheet copper for vent pipe flashings shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 8 ounces per square foot (2.5 kg/m^2).

P3101.7.2 Sheet lead. Sheet lead for vent pipe flashings shall weigh not less than 3 pounds per square foot (15 kg/m^2) for field-constructed flashings and not less than $2^1/_2$ pounds per square foot (12 kg/m^2) for prefabricated flashings.

SECTION P3102 VENT STACKS AND STACK VENTS

P3102.1 Stack required. Every building in which plumbing is installed shall have at least one stack the size of which is not less than one-half of the required diameter of the building drain, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter. Such stack shall run undiminished in size and as directly as possible from the building drain through to the open air or to a vent header that extends to the open air.

P3102.1.1 Connection to drainage system. A vent stack shall connect to the building drain or to the base of a drainage stack in accordance with Section P3005.5. A stack vent shall be an extension of the drainage stack. For townhouses and one- and two-family dwellings, the main vent shall connect to the building drain, building stack or branch thereof not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in size.

P3102.2 Installation. The required vent shall be a dry vent that connects to the *building drain* or an extension of a drain that connects to the *building drain*. Such vent shall not be an island fixture vent as permitted by Section P3112.

P3102.3 Size. The required vent shall be sized in accordance with Section P3113.1 based on the required size of the *building drain*.

P3102.4 Stack vent termination. *Stack vents* shall terminate outdoors to the open air or to a stack-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section P3114.

P3102.5 Stack vent headers. *Stack vents* connected into a common vent header at the top of the *stacks* and extending to the open air at one point shall be sized in accordance with the requirements of Section P3113.1. The number of fixture units shall be the sum of all fixture units on all *stacks* connected thereto, and the *developed length* shall be the longest vent length from the intersection at the base of the most distant *stack* to the vent terminal in the open air, as a direct extension of one *stack.*

SECTION P3103 VENT TERMINALS

P3103.1 Vent pipes terminating outdoors. Vent pipes terminating outdoors shall be extended to the outdoors through the roof or a sidewall of the building in accordance with one of the methods identified in Sections P3103.1.1 through P3103.1.4.

P3103.1.1 Roof extension. Open vent pipes that extend through a roof that do not meet the conditions of Section P3103.1.2 or P3103.1.3 shall terminate not less than 6 inches (150 mm) above the roof or 6 inches (150 mm) above the anticipated snow accumulation, whichever is greater.

P3103.1.2 Roof used for recreational purposes. Where a roof is to be used for assembly, as a promenade, observation deck or sunbathing deck, or for similar purposes, open vent pipes shall terminate not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.

Exception: Vent terminals greater than 10 feet from a demarcation line of the occupied area.

P3103.1.3 Roof extension covered. Where an open vent pipe terminates above a sloped roof and is covered by either a roof-mounted panel (such as a solar collector or *photovoltaic panel* mounted over the vent opening) or a roof element (such as an architectural feature or a decorative shroud), the vent pipe shall terminate not less than 6 inches (153 mm) above the roof surface. Such roof elements shall be designed to prevent the adverse effects of snow accumulation and wind on the function of the vent. The placement of a panel over a vent pipe and the design of a roof element covering the vent pipe shall provide for an open area for the vent pipe to the outdoors that is not less than the area of the pipe, as calculated from the inside diameter of the pipe. Such vent terminals shall be protected by a method that prevents birds and rodents from entering or blocking the vent pipe opening.

P3103.1.4 Sidewall vent terminal. Vent terminals extending through the wall shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a *lot line* and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the highest grade elevation within 10 feet (3048 mm) in any direction horizontally of the vent terminal. Vent pipes shall not terminate under the overhang of a structure where the overhang includes soffit vents. Such vent terminals shall be protected by an *approved* method that prevents birds and rodents from entering or blocking the vent pipe opening and that does not reduce the open area of the vent pipe.

P3103.2 Frost closure. Deleted.

P3103.3 Flashings and sealing. The juncture of each vent pipe with the roof line shall be made watertight by an *approved* flashing. Vent extensions in walls and soffits shall be made weathertight by caulking.

P3103.4 Prohibited use. A vent terminal shall not be used for any purpose other than a vent terminal. Vent terminals shall not be used as a flag pole or to support flag poles, television aerials or similar items, except when the piping has been anchored in an approved manner.

P3103.5 Location of vent terminal. An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is 2 feet (610 mm) or more above the top of such opening.

P3103.6 Extension through the wall. Vent terminals extending through the wall shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the *lot line* and 10 feet (3048 mm) above the highest adjacent *grade* within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of the vent terminal. Vent terminals shall not terminate under the overhang of a structure with soffit vents. Side wall vent terminals shall be protected to prevent birds or rodents from entering or blocking the vent opening.

SECTION P3104
VENT CONNECTIONS AND GRADES

P3104.1 Connection. Individual branch and circuit vents shall connect to a vent stack, stack vent or extend to the open air.

Exception: Individual, branch and circuit vents shall be permitted to terminate at an *air admittance valve* in accordance with Section P3114.

P3104.2 Grade. Vent and branch vent pipes shall be graded, connected and supported to allow moisture and condensate to drain back to the soil or waste pipe by gravity.

P3104.3 Vent connection to drainage system. A dry vent connecting to a horizontal drain shall connect above the centerline of the horizontal drain pipe.

P3104.4 Vertical rise of vent. A dry vent shall rise vertically to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest trap or trapped fixture being vented.

Exceptions:

1. Vents for interceptors located outdoors.
2. When vents for interceptors are not located near an adjacent wall, the vent must rise 6 inches (152 mm) vertically before turning horizontally and continuing to the nearest wall. For cleaning purposes, a cleanout of the same size as the vent shall be installed.

P3104.5 Height above fixtures. A connection between a vent pipe and a vent stack or stack vent shall be made not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served by the vent. *Horizontal* vent pipes forming branch vents shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served.

P3104.6 Vent for future fixtures. Where the drainage piping has been roughed-in for future fixtures, a rough-in connection for a vent, not less than one-half the diameter of the drain, shall be installed. The vent rough-in shall connect to the vent system or shall be vented by other means as provided in this chapter. The connection shall be identified to indicate that the connection is a vent.

SECTION P3105
FIXTURE VENTS

P3105.1 Distance of trap from vent. Each fixture trap shall have a protecting vent located so that the slope and the *developed length* in the *fixture drain* from the trap weir to the vent fitting are within the limits indicated in Table P3105.1.

Exception: The *developed length* of the *fixture drain* from the trap weir to the vent fitting for self-siphoning fixtures, such as water closets, shall not be limited.

TABLE P3105.1
MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF FIXTURE TRAP FROM VENT

SIZE OF TRAP (inches)	SLOPE (inch per foot)	DISTANCE FROM TRAP (feet)
$1^1/_4$	$^1/_4$	5
$1^1/_2$	$^1/_4$	6
2	$^1/_4$	8
3	$^1/_8$	12
4	$^1/_8$	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

P3105.2 Fixture drains. The total fall in a *fixture drain* resulting from pipe slope shall not exceed one pipe diameter, nor shall the vent pipe connection to a *fixture drain*, except for water closets, be below the weir of the trap.

P3105.3 Crown vent prohibited. A vent shall not be installed within two pipe diameters of the trap weir.

SECTION P3106
INDIVIDUAL VENT

P3106.1 Individual vent permitted. Each trap and trapped fixture shall be permitted to be provided with an individual vent. The individual vent shall connect to the *fixture drain* of the trap or trapped fixture being vented.

SECTION P3107
COMMON VENT

P3107.1 Individual vent as common vent. An individual vent shall be permitted to vent two traps or trapped fixtures as a common vent. The traps or trapped fixtures being common vented shall be located on the same floor level.

P3107.2 Connection at the same level. Where the *fixture drains* being common vented connect at the same level, the vent connection shall be at the interconnection of the *fixture drains*.

P3107.3 Connection at different levels. Where the *fixture drains* connect at different levels, the vent shall connect as a vertical extension of the vertical drain. The vertical drain pipe connecting the two *fixture drains* shall be considered to be the vent for the lower *fixture drain*, and shall be sized in accordance with Table P3107.3. The upper fixture shall not be a water closet or clothes washer.

TABLE P3107.3
COMMON VENT SIZES

PIPE SIZE (inches)	MAXIMUM DISCHARGE FROM UPPER FIXTURE DRAIN (d.f.u.)
$1^1/_2$	1
2	4
$2^1/_2$ to 3	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION P3108
WET VENTING

P3108.1 Horizontal wet vent permitted. Any combination of fixtures located on the same floor level shall be permitted to be vented by a wet vent. The wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent along the direction of the flow in the drain pipe to the most downstream *fixture drain* connection. Each *fixture drain* shall connect horizontally to the horizontal branch being wet vented or shall have a dry vent. Each wet-vented *fixture drain* shall connect independently to the horizontal wet vent. A residential clothes washer drain line shall not be used as a wet vent.

P3108.2 Dry vent connection. The required dry-vent connection for wet-vented systems shall comply with Sections P3108.2.1 and P3108.2.2.

P3108.2.1 Horizontal wet vent. The dry-vent connection for a horizontal wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or a common vent for any fixture, except an emergency floor drain. Where the dry vent connects to a water closet *fixture drain*, the drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal wet vent system.

P3108.2.2 Vertical wet vent. The dry-vent connection for a vertical wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or common vent for the most upstream *fixture drain*.

P3108.3 Size. Horizontal and vertical wet vents shall be not less than the size as specified in Table P3108.3, based on the fixture unit discharge to the wet vent. The dry vent serving the wet vent shall be sized based on the largest required diameter of pipe within the wet-vent system served by the dry vent.

TABLE P3108.3
WET VENT SIZE

WET VENT PIPE SIZE (inches)	FIXTURE UNIT LOAD (d.f.u.)
$1^1/_2$	1
2	4
$2^1/_2$	6
3	12
4	32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

P3108.4 Vertical wet vent permitted. A combination of fixtures located on the same floor level shall be permitted to be vented by a vertical wet vent. The vertical wet vent shall be considered to be the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent down to the lowest *fixture drain* connection. Each wet-vented fixture shall connect independently to the vertical wet vent. All water closet drains shall connect at the same elevation. Other *fixture drains* shall connect above or at the same elevation as the water closet *fixture drains*. The dry-vent connection to the vertical wet vent shall be an individual or common vent serving one or two fixtures.

P3108.5 Trap weir to wet-vent distances. The maximum *developed length* of wet-vented *fixture drains* shall comply with Table P3105.1.

SECTION P3109 WASTE STACK VENT

P3109.1 Waste stack vent permitted. A waste stack shall be considered to be a vent for all of the fixtures discharging to the stack where installed in accordance with the requirements of this section.

P3109.2 Stack installation. The waste stack shall be vertical, and both horizontal and vertical offsets shall be prohibited between the lowest *fixture drain* connection and the highest *fixture drain* connection to the stack. Every *fixture drain* shall connect separately to the waste stack. The stack shall not receive the discharge of water closets or urinals.

P3109.3 Stack vent. A stack vent shall be installed for the waste stack. The size of the stack vent shall be not less than the size of the waste stack. Offsets shall be permitted in the stack vent and shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level of the highest fixture, and shall be in accordance with Section P3104.5. The stack vent shall be permitted to connect with other stack vents and vent stacks in accordance with Section P3113.3.

P3109.4 Waste stack size. The waste stack shall be sized based on the total discharge to the stack and the discharge within a *branch interval* in accordance with Table P3109.4. The waste stack shall be the same size throughout the length of the waste stack.

TABLE P3109.4 WASTE STACK VENT SIZE

STACK SIZE (inches)	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF FIXTURE UNITS (d.f.u.)	
	Total discharge into one branch interval	Total discharge for stack
$1^1/_2$	1	2
2	2	4
$2^1/_2$	No limit	8
3	No limit	24
4	No limit	50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION P3110 CIRCUIT VENTING DELETED

SECTION P3111 COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM DELETED

SECTION P3112 ISLAND FIXTURE VENTING

P3112.1 Limitation. Island fixture venting shall not be permitted for fixtures other than sinks and lavatories. Kitchen sinks with a dishwasher waste connection, a food waste disposer, or both, in combination with the kitchen sink waste, shall be permitted to be vented in accordance with this section.

P3112.2 Vent connection. The island fixture vent shall connect to the *fixture drain* as required for an individual or common vent. The vent shall rise vertically to above the drainage outlet of the fixture being vented before offsetting horizontally or vertically downward. The vent or branch vent for multiple island fixture vents shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest island fixture being vented before connecting to the outside vent terminal.

P3112.3 Vent installation below the fixture flood level rim. The vent located below the flood level rim of the fixture being vented shall be installed as required for drainage piping in accordance with Chapter 30, except for sizing. The vent shall be sized in accordance with Section P3113.1. The lowest point of the island fixture vent shall connect full size to the drainage system. The connection shall be to a vertical drain pipe or to the top half of a horizontal drain pipe. Cleanouts shall be provided in the island fixture vent to permit rodding of all vent piping located below the flood level rim of the fixtures. Rodding in both directions shall be permitted through a cleanout.

SECTION P3113 VENT PIPE SIZING

P3113.1 Size of vents. The required diameter of individual vents, branch vents, circuit vents, vent stacks and stack vents shall be not less than one-half the required diameter of the drain served. The required size of the drain shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 30. Vent pipes shall be not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in diameter. Vents exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in *developed length* shall be increased by one nominal pipe size for the entire *developed length* of the vent pipe.

P3113.2 Developed length. The *developed length* of individual, branch and circuit vents shall be measured from the farthest point of vent connection to the drainage system, to the point of connection to the vent stack, stack vent or termination outside of the building.

P3113.3 Branch vents. Where branch vents are connected to a common branch vent, the common branch vent shall be sized in accordance with this section, based on the size of the common horizontal drainage branch that is or would be required to serve the total drainage fixture unit (d.f.u.) load being vented.

P3113.4 Sump vents. Sump vent sizes shall be determined in accordance with Sections P3113.4.1 and P3113.4.2.

P3113.4.1 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors other than pneumatic. Drainage piping below sewer level shall be vented in the same manner as that of a gravity system. Building sump vent sizes for sumps with sewage pumps or sewage ejectors, other than pneumatic, shall be determined in accordance with Table P3113.4.1. An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the top of such opening.

P3113.4.2 Pneumatic sewage ejectors. The air pressure relief pipe from a pneumatic sewage ejector shall be connected to an independent vent stack terminating as required for vent extensions through the roof. The relief pipe shall be sized to relieve air pressure inside the ejector to atmospheric pressure, but shall be not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in size.

SECTION P3114 AIR ADMITTANCE VALVES

P3114.1 General. Vent systems using *air admittance valves* shall comply with this section. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1051. Stack-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1050.

P3114.2 Installation. The valves shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the manufacturer's instructions. *Air admittance valves* shall be installed after the DWV testing required by Section P2503.5.1 or P2503.5.2 has been performed.

P3114.3 Where permitted. Individual vents, branch vents, circuit vents and stack vents shall be permitted to terminate with a connection to an *air admittance valve*. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall vent only fixtures that are on the same floor level and connect to a horizontal branch drain.

P3114.4 Location. Individual and branch *air admittance valves* shall be located not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the horizontal branch drain or *fixture drain* being vented. Stack-type air admittance valves shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture being vented. The *air admittance valve* shall be located within the maximum *developed length* permitted for the vent. The *air admittance valve* shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above insulation materials where installed in *attics*.

P3114.5 Access and ventilation. Access shall be provided to *air admittance valves*. Such valves shall be installed in a location that allows air to enter the valve.

P3114.6 Size. The *air admittance valve* shall be rated for the size of the vent to which the valve is connected.

P3114.7 Vent required. Within each plumbing system, not less than one stack vent or a vent stack shall extend outdoors to the open air.

P3114.8 Prohibited installations. *Air admittance valves* shall not be used to vent sumps or tanks except where the vent system for the sump or tank has been designed by an engineer. *Air admittance valves* shall not be installed on outdoor vent terminals for the sole purpose of reducing clearances to gravity or mechanical air intakes. *Air admittance valves* shall not be located in spaces utilized as supply or return air plenums.

TABLE P3113.4.1
SIZE AND LENGTH OF SUMP VENTS

DISCHARGE CAPACITY OF PUMP (gpm)	MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet)[a]				
	Diameter of vent (inches)				
	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2	$2^1/_2$	3
10	No limit[b]	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit
20	270	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit
40	72	160	No limit	No limit	No limit
60	31	75	270	No limit	No limit

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute (gpm) = 3.785 L/m.

a. Developed length plus an appropriate allowance for entrance losses and friction caused by fittings, changes in direction and diameter. Suggested allowances shall be obtained from NBS Monograph 31 or other approved sources. An allowance of 50 percent of the developed length shall be assumed if a more precise value is not available.

b. Actual values greater than 500 feet.

CHAPTER 32
TRAPS

SECTION P3201
FIXTURE TRAPS

P3201.1 Design of traps. Traps shall be of standard design, shall have smooth uniform internal waterways, shall be self-cleaning and shall not have interior partitions except where integral with the fixture. Traps shall be constructed of lead, cast iron, copper or copper alloy or *approved* plastic. Copper or copper-alloy traps shall be not less than No. 20 gage (0.8 mm) thickness. Solid connections, slip joints and couplings shall be permitted to be used on the trap inlet, trap outlet, or within the trap seal. Traps having slip-joint connections shall comply with Section P2704.1.

P3201.2 Trap seals. Each fixture trap shall have a liquid seal of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: Trap seal protection for waste receptors or hub drains used for condensate waste shall be by the use of a deep seal trap.

P3201.2.1 Trap seal protection. Traps seals of emergency floor drain traps and traps subject to evaporation shall be protected by one of the methods in Sections P3201.2.1.1 through P3201.2.1.4.

P3201.2.1.1 Potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve. A potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

P3201.2.1.2 Reclaimed or graywater-supplied trap seal primer valve. A reclaimed or graywater-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The quality of reclaimed or graywater supplied to trap seal primer valves shall be in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer of the trap seal primer valve. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

P3201.2.1.3 Wastewater-supplied trap primer device. A wastewater-supplied trap primer device shall supply water to the trap. Wastewater-supplied trap primer devices shall conform to ASSE 1044. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer device shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

P3201.2.1.4 Barrier-type trap seal protection device. A barrier-type trap seal protection device shall protect the floor drain trap seal from evaporation. Barrier-type floor drain trap seal protection devices shall conform to ASSE 1072. The devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

P3201.3 Trap setting and protection. Traps shall be set level with respect to their water seals and shall be protected from freezing. Trap seals shall be protected from siphonage, aspiration or back pressure by an *approved* system of venting (see Section P3101).

P3201.4 Building traps. Building traps shall be prohibited.

P3201.5 Prohibited trap designs. The following types of traps are prohibited:

1. Bell traps.
2. Separate fixture traps with interior partitions, except those lavatory traps made of plastic, stainless steel or other corrosion-resistant material.
3. "S" traps.
4. Drum traps.
5. Trap designs with moving parts.

P3201.6 Number of fixtures per trap. Each plumbing fixture shall be separately trapped by a water seal trap. The vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the trap weir shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) and the horizontal distance shall not exceed 30 inches (762 mm) measured from the centerline of the fixture outlet to the centerline of the inlet of the trap. The height of a clothes washer standpipe above a trap shall conform to Section P2706.1.2. Fixtures shall not be double trapped.

Exceptions:

1. Fixtures that have integral traps.
2. A single trap shall be permitted to serve two or three like fixtures limited to kitchen sinks, laundry tubs and lavatories. Such fixtures shall be adjacent to each other and located in the same room with a continuous waste arrangement. The trap shall be installed at the center fixture where three fixtures are installed. Common trapped fixture outlets shall be not more than 30 inches (762 mm) apart.
3. Connection of a laundry tray waste line into a standpipe for the automatic clothes-washer drain shall be permitted in accordance with Section P2706.1.2.1.

P3201.7 Size of fixture traps. Trap sizes for plumbing fixtures shall be as indicated in Table P3201.7. Where the tailpiece of a plumbing fixture is larger than that indicated in Table P3201.7, the trap size shall be the same nominal size as the fixture tailpiece. A trap shall not be larger than the drainage pipe into which the trap discharges.

TABLE P3201.7
SIZE OF TRAPS FOR PLUMBING FIXTURES

PLUMBING FIXTURE	TRAP SIZE MINIMUM (inches)
Bathtub (with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachments)	$1^1/_2$
Bidet	$1^1/_4$
Clothes washer standpipe	2
Dishwasher (on separate trap)	$1^1/_2$
Floor drain	2
Kitchen sink (one or two traps, with or without dishwasher and food waste disposer)	$1^1/_2$
Laundry tub (one or more compartments)	$1^1/_2$
Lavatory	$1^1/_4$
Shower (based on the total flow rate through showerheads and body sprays) Flow rate:	
5.7 gpm and less	2
More than 5.7 gpm up to 12.3 gpm	2
More than 12.3 gpm up to 25.8 gpm	3
More than 25.8 gpm up to 55.6 gpm	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

CHAPTER 33

STORM DRAINAGE

DELETED

Part VIII—Electrical

CHAPTERS 34 through 43

DELETED

See the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

Part IX—Referenced Standards

CHAPTER 44
REFERENCED STANDARDS

User notes:

About this chapter: *The* North Carolina Residential Code *contains numerous references to standards promulgated by other organizations that are used to provide requirements for materials, products and methods of construction. Chapter 44 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard.*

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section R102.4.

AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1900 E. Golf Road, Suite 1250
Schaumburg, IL 60173

450—20: Voluntary Performance Rating Method for Mulled Fenestration Assemblies
R609.8

506—16: Voluntary Specifications for Hurricane Impact and Cycle Testing of Fenestration Products
R609.6.1

711—20: Voluntary Specification for Self-adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products
R703.4

712—14: Voluntary Specification for Mechanically Attached Flexible Flashing
R703.4

714—20: Voluntary Specification for Liquid Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-resistive Seal around Exterior Wall Openings in Buildings
R703.4

AAMA/NSA 2100—20: Specifications for Sunrooms
R301.2.1.1.1

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11: North American Fenestration Standards/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
N1102.4.4

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standards/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
R308.6.9, R609.3

ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
1330 Braddock Place, Suite 350
Alexandria, VA 22314

ANSI/ACCA 1 Manual D—2011: Residential Duct Systems
M1601.1, M1602.2

ANSI/ACCA 2 Manual J—2011: Residential Load Calculation
N1103.7, M1401.3

ANSI/ACCA 3 Manual S—2013: Residential Equipment Selection
N1103.7, M1401.3

ACI

American Concrete Institute
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

318—19: Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
R301.2.2.5, R402.2, Table R404.1.2(2), Table R404.1.2(5), Table R404.1.2(6), Table R404.1.2(7), Table R404.1.2(8), R404.1.3, R404.1.3.1, R404.1.3.3, R404.1.3.4, R404.5.1, R608.1, R608.1.1, R608.1.2, R608.2, R608.5.1, R608.6.1, R608.8.2, R608.9.2, R608.9.3

332—20: Residential Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
R402.2, R403.1, R404.1.3, R404.1.3.4, R506.1, R608.1, R608.5

AISI

American Iron and Steel Institute
25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800
Washington, DC 20001

AISI S100—16 (2020) w/S2—20: North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members, 2016 Edition (Reaffirmed 2020), with Supplement 2, 2020 Edition
R608.9.2, R608.9.3

AISI S230—18: Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing—Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-Family Dwellings, 2019
R301.1.1, R301.2.1.1, R301.2.2.7, R301.2.2.8, R603.6, R603.9.4.1, R603.9.4.2, Figure 608.9(11), R608.9.2, R608.9.3, R608.10

AISI S240—20: North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing, 2020
R505.1.3, R603.6

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51—07: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

A108.1A—17: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar
R702.4.1

A108.1B—2017: Installation of Ceramic Tile, Quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex Portland Mortar
R702.4.1

A108.4—09: Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water-Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive
R702.4.1

A108.5—20: Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex Portland Cement Mortar
R702.4.1

ANSI—continued

A108.6—99(reaffirmed 2019): Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy
R702.4.1

A108.11—10: Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units
R702.4.1

A118.1—18: American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar
R702.4.1

A118.3—13: American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy, and Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive
R702.4.1

A118.4—18: American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar
R606.2.11

A118.10—14: Specification for Load-bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation
P2708.1, P2709.2, P2709.2.4

A136.1—20: American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
R702.4.1

A137.1—19: American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile
R702.4.1

ANSI 117—2020: Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species
R502.1.3, R602.1.3, R802.1.3

ANSI/CSA FC 1—2012: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems
M1903.1

LC1/CSA 6.26—13: Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)
G2414.5.3

LC4/CSA 6.32—12: Press-connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems
G2414.10.2

Z21.1—2010: Household Cooking Gas Appliances
G2447.1

Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1—14: Gas Clothes Dryers—Volume I—Type I Clothes Dryers
G2438.1

Z21.8—94(R2002): Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners
G2443.1

Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1—2012: Gas Water Heaters—Volume I—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per hour or Less
G2448.1

Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—11: Gas Water Heaters—Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu per hour, Circulating and Instantaneous
G2448.1

Z21.11.2—11: Gas-fired Room Heaters—Volume II—Unvented Room Heaters
G2445.1

Z21.13/CSA 4.9—11: Gas-fired Low-pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers
G2452.1

Z21.15/CSA 9.1—09: Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves and Hose End Valves
Table G2420.1.1

Z21.22—2015: Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems
P2804.2, P2804.7

Z21.24/CSA 6.10—06: Connectors for Gas Appliances
G2422.1

Z21.40.1/CSA 2.91—96(2011): Gas-fired, Heat-activated Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances
G2449.1

Z21.40.2/CSA 2.92—96(R2011): Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (Internal Combustion)
G2449.1

ANSI—continued

Z21.42—2013: Gas-fired Illuminating Appliances
G2450.1

Z21.47/CSA 2.3—12: Gas-fired Central Furnaces
G2442.1

Z21.50/CSA 2.22—12: Vented Gas Fireplaces
G2434.1

Z21.56/CSA 4.7—13: Gas-fired Pool Heaters
G2441.1

Z21.58—95/CSA 1.6—13: Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances
G2447.1

Z21.60/CSA 2.26—12: Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel-burning Fireplaces
G2432.1

Z21.75/CSA 6.27—07: Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes
G2422.1

Z21.80—11: Line Pressure Regulators
G2421.1

Z21.84—12: Manually Listed, Natural Gas Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel-burning Fireplaces
G2432.1, G2432.2

Z21.86—08: Gas-fired Vented Space Heating Appliances
G2436.1, G2437.1, G2446.1

Z21.88/CSA 2.33—14: Vented Gas Fireplace Heaters
G2435.1

Z21.91—07: Ventless Firebox Enclosures for Gas-fired Unvented Decorative Room Heaters
G2445.7.1

Z21.97—12: Outdoor Decorative Appliances
G2454.1

Z83.6—90 (R1998): Gas-fired Infrared Heaters
G2451.1

Z83.8/CSA 2.6—09: Gas-fired Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters, and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces
G2444.1

Z83.19—01 (R2009): Gas-fuel High-intensity Infrared Heaters
G2451.1

Z83.20—08: Gas-fired Low-intensity Infrared Heaters Outdoor Decorative Appliances
G2451.1

Z97.1—2014: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test
R308.1.1, R308.3.1, Table R308.3.1(2)

APA

APA—The Engineered Wood Association
7011 South 19th Street
Tacoma, WA 98466

ANSI/A190.1—2017: Structural Glued-laminated Timber
R502.1.3, R602.1.3, R802.1.2

ANSI/APA PRG 320—2019: Standard for Performance-rated Cross Laminated Timber
R502.1.6, R602.1.6, R802.1.6

ANSI/APA PRP 210—2019: Standard for Performance-rated Engineered Wood Siding
R604.1, Table R703.3(1), R703.3.4

ANSI/APA PRR 410—2016: Standard for Performance-rated Engineered Wood Rim Boards
R502.1.7, R602.1.7, R802.1.7

ANSI/APA PRS 610.1—2018: Standard for Performance-Rated Structural Insulated Panels in Wall Applications
R602.1.11, R610.3, R610.4

APA E30—19: Engineered Wood Construction Guide
Table R503.2.1.1(1), R503.2.2, R803.2.2, R803.2.3

APSP

Pool & Hot Tub Alliance (formerly the Association of Pool & Spa Professionals)
211 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 500
Alexander, VA 22314

ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2011: American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spas—Includes Addenda A Approved January 9, 2013
N1103.12

ASCE/SEI

American Society of Civil Engineers
Structural Engineering Institute
Reston, VA 20191-4400

7—16 with Supplement 1: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
Table R301.2.1(1), Table R301.2(6), R301.2.1.1, R301.2.1.2, R301.2.1.2.1, Table R608.6(1), Table R608.6(2), Table R608.6(3), Table R608.6(4), Table R608.7(1A), Table R608.7(1B), Table R608.7(1C), R608.9.2, R608.9.3, R609.2, R609.6.2, Table R4502, NCA103.3

24—14: Flood-resistant Design and Construction
R301.2.4, R301.2.4.1, R322.1, R322.1.1, R322.1.6, R322.2.2

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
180 Technology Parkway NW
Peachtree Corners, GA 30092

ASHRAE 34—2019: Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
M1411.1

ASHRAE—2001: 2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals
Table N1105.5.2(1), N1102.1.5

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

A18.1—2020: Safety Standard for Platforms and Stairway Chair Lifts
R321.2

A112.1.2—2012(R2017): Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems (For Plumbing Fixtures and Water Connected Receptors)
P2717.1, P2718.2, Table P2902.3, P2902.3.1

A112.1.3—2000 (R2019): Air Gap Fittings for Use with Plumbing Fixtures, Appliances and Appurtenances
Table P2701.1, P2717.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.3.1

A112.3.1—2007(R2017): Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary, DWV, Storm and Vacuum Applications Above and Below Ground
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

A112.3.4—2018/CSA B45.9—2018: Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components
Table P2701.1, P2723.1, P3007.5

A112.4.1—2019: Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes
P2804.6.1

A112.4.3—R2019: Plastic Fittings for Connecting Water Closets to the Sanitary Drainage System
P3003.14

A112.4.4—2017: Plastic Push-Fit Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Fittings
Table P3002.3, P3003.3.4, P3003.9.4

A112.4.14—2019/CSA B125.14—19: Manually Operated Valves for Use in Plumbing Systems
Table P2903.9.4

A112.6.2—2017: Framing-affixed Supports for Off-the-floor Water Closets with Concealed Tanks
Table P2701.1, P2702.4

ASME—continued

A112.6.3—2019: Floor and Trench Drains
Table P2701.1, P2708.1, P2719.3

A112.14.1—03(R2017): Backwater Valves
P3008.3

A112.18.1—2018/CSA B125.1—2020: Plumbing Supply Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2708.5, P2722.1, P2722.3, P2902.2, Table P2903.9.4

A112.18.2—2020/CSA B125.2—2019: Plumbing Waste Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2702.2, P2708.1, P2708.2.1, P2709.4.1

A112.18.3M—2002(R2017): Performance Requirements for Backflow Protection Devices and Systems in Plumbing Fixture Fittings
P2708.5, P2722.3

A112.18.6—2017/CSA B125.6—17: Flexible Water Connectors
P2906.7

A112.19.1—2018/CSA B45.2—18: Enameled Cast-iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2

A112.19.2—2018/CSA B45.1—18: Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1, P2712.1, P2712.2, P2712.9, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2, P2721.3

A112.19.3—2017/CSA B45.4—17: Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1, P2712.1, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2

A112.19.5—2017/CSA B45.15—2017: Flush Valves and Spuds for Water-closets, Urinals and Tanks
Table P2701.1

A112.19.7—2012/CSA B45.10—2012(R2017): Hydromassage Bathtub Systems
Table P2701.1, P2720.5, P2720.6

A112.19.12—2014(R2019): Wall-mounted and Pedestal-mounted, Adjustable, Elevating, Tilting, and Pivoting Lavatory and Sink, and Shampoo Bowl Carrier Systems and Drain Waste Systems
Table P2701.1, P2711.4, P2714.2

A112.19.14—2013(R2018): Six-Liter Water Closets Equipped with Dual Flushing Device
P2712.1

A112.19.15—2012(R2017): Bathtub/Whirlpool Bathtubs with Pressure-sealed Doors
Table P2701.1, P2713.2

A112.36.2M—1991(R2017): Cleanouts
P3005.2.10.3

ASME A17.1—2019/CSA B44—2019: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
R321.1, R321.4

ASME A112.4.2—2015/CSA B45.16—2015(R2020): Water-closet Personal Hygiene Devices
P2722.5

ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—20: Anti-Siphon Fill Valves
Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.4.1

ASSE 1016—2017/ASME 112.1016—2017/CSA B125.16—2017: Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations
Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2722.2

ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020: Performance Requirements for Water-temperature-limiting Devices
P2713.3, P2721.2

B1.20.1—2013(R2018): Pipe Threads, General-purpose (Inch)
P3003.3.3, P3003.6.4, P3003.7.1, P3003.9.3

B1.20.1—1983: (R2006): Pipe Threads, General-purpose (Inch)
G2414.9

B16.3—2016: Malleable-iron-threaded Fittings, 150 and 300
Table P2906.6

B16.4—2016: Gray-iron-threaded Fittings
Table P2906.6, Table P3002.3

B16.9—2018: Factory-made, Wrought-steel Buttwelding Fittings
Table P2906.6

ASME—continued

B16.11—2016: Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded
Table P2906.6

B16.12—2009(R2014): Cast-iron-threaded Drainage Fittings
Table P3002.3

B16.15—2018: Cast Alloy Threaded Fittings: Classes 125 and 250
Table P2906.6, Table P3002.3

B16.18—2018: Cast-copper-alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
Table P2906.6, Table P3002.3

B16.22—2018: Wrought-copper and Copper-alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
Table P2906.6, Table P3002.3

B16.23—2016: Cast-copper-alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings (DWV)
Table P3002.3

B16.26—2018: Cast-copper-alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
Table P2906.6, Table P3002.3

B16.28—1994: Wrought-steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
Table P2906.6

B16.29—2017: Wrought-copper and Wrought-copper-alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings (DWV)
Table P3002.3

B16.33—2012: Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 125 psig (Sizes $^1/_2$ through 2)
Table G2420.1.1

B16.34—2017: Valves—Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
Table P2903.9.4

B16.44—2002(Reaffirmed 2007): Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Above-ground Piping Systems up to 5 psi
Table G2420.1.1

B16.51—2018: Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings
Table P2906.6

B16.51—2011: Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings
Table M2101.1, M2103.3

B36.10M—2004: Welded and Seamless Wrought-steel Pipe
G2414.4.2

BPVC—2010/2011 addenda: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (2007 Edition)
M2001.1.1, G2452.1

CSD-1—2012: Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers
M2001.1.1, G2452.1

ASSE

ASSE International
18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220
Mokena, IL 60448

1001—2017: Performance Requirements for Atmospheric-type Vacuum Breakers
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

1003—2009: Performance Requirements for Water-pressure-reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems
P2903.3.1

1008—2006: Performance Requirements for Plumbing Aspects of Residential Food Waste Disposer Units
Table P2701.1, P2716.3

1010—2004: Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters
P2903.5

1011—2017: Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

1012—2009: Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventers with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.3, P2902.5.1, P2902.5.5.3

ASSE—continued

1013—2011: Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Principle Fire Protection Backflow Preventers
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1, P2902.5.5.3

1015—2011: Performance Requirements for Double Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6

1017—2009: Performance Requirements for Temperature-actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems
P2724.1, P2802.1, P2803.2

1018—2001: Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Valves; Potable Water Supplied
P3201.2.1.1, P3201.2.1.2

1019—2011(R2016): Performance Requirements for Freeze-resistant, Wall Hydrants, Vacuum Breaker, Draining Types
Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

1020—2004: Performance Requirements for Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.4

1023—1979: Performance Requirements for Hot Water Dispensers, Household-storage-type—Electrical
Table P2701.1

1024—2017: Performance Requirements for Dual Check Backflow Preventers, Anti-siphon-type, Residential Applications
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.7

1035—2008: Performance Requirements for Laboratory Faucet Backflow Preventers
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

1044—2015: Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Devices Drainage Types and Electronic Design Types
P3201.2.1.3

1047—2011: Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5

1048—2011: Performance Requirements for Double Check Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6

1050—2009: Performance Requirements for Stack Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems
P3114.1

1051—2009: Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch-type Air Admittance Valves for Plumbing Drainage Systems
P3114.1

1052—2016: Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Backflow Preventers
Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

1056—2013: Performance Requirements for Spill-resistant Vacuum Breakers
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.4

1060—2017: Performance Requirements for Outdoor Enclosures for Fluid-conveying Components
P2902.6.1

1061—2015: Performance Requirements for Push Fit Fittings
Table P2906.6, P2906.21

1062—2017: Performance Requirements for Temperature-actuated, Flow Reduction (TAFR) Valves for Individual Supply Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2724.2

1066—1997: Performance Requirements for Individual Pressure Balancing In-line Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings
P2722.4

1072—2007: Performance Requirements for Barrier-type Floor Drain Trap Seal Protection Devices
P3201.2.1.4

1081—2014: Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventers with Integral Pressure Reducing Boiler Feed Valve and Intermediate Atmospheric Vent Style for Domestic and Light Commercial Water Distribution Systems
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.3

ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—20: Anti-Siphon Fill Valves
Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.4.1

ASSE—continued

ASSE 1016—2017/ASME 112.1016—2017/CSA B125.16—2017: Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations
Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2722.2

ASSE 1037—2015/ASME A112.1037—2015/CSA B125.37—15: Performance Requirements for Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1

ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020/ CSA B125.70—20: Performance Requirements for Water-temperature-limiting Devices
P2713.3, P2721.2, P2724.1

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

A36/A36M—14: Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
R608.5.2.2

A53/A53M—2018: Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless
R407.3, Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1)

A53/A53M—12: Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless
Table M2101.1, G2414.4.2

A74—2017: Specification for Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3005.2.6

A106/A106M—11: Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-temperature Service
Table M2101.1, G2414.4.2

A123/A123M—2017: Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
R4606.1, Table 4703.3

A126—04(2014): Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings
Table P2903.9.4

A153/A153M—2016A: Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
R317.3, Table R606.3.4.1, R703.6.3, R905.7.5, R905.8.6, Table R4603.6, Table 4603.6.1, 4703.1, Table 4703.3, Table 4711.3, Table 4711.4

A167—99(2009): Specification for Stainless and Heat-resisting Chromium-nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
Table R606.3.4.1

A240/A240M—17: Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
Table R905.10.3(1)

A254—97(2007): Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing
Table M2101.1, G2414.5.1

A307—2014E1: Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength
R608.5.2.2

A312—2018: Specification for Seamless, Welded and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6, P2906.13.2

A463/A463M—15: Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated by the Hot-dip Process
Table R905.10.3(2)

A539—99: Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines
M2202.1

ASTM—continued

A615/A615M—2015aE1: Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
R402.3.1, R404.1.3.3.7.1, R608.5.2.1

A641/A641M—09a(2014): Specification for Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
Table R606.3.4.1

A653—2017: Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-dip Process
R317.3.1, R505.2.2, Table R606.3.4.1, R608.5.2.3, Table R905.10.3(1), Table R905.10.3(2)

A653/A653M—11: Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-dip Process
M1601.1.1

A706M—2016: Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
R402.3.1, R404.1.3.3.7.1, R608.5.2.1

A755M—2016E1: Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products
Table R905.10.3(2)

A778M—2016: Specification for Welded Unannealed Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubular Products
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

A792/A792M—10(2015): Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process
R505.2.2, R608.5.2.3, Table 905.10.3(2)

A875/A875M—13: Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-5%, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process
R608.5.2.3, Table R905.10.3(2)

A888—2018: Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Application
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

A924M—2017A: Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process
Table R905.10.3(1)

A996M—2016: Specifications for Rail-steel and Axle-steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
R402.3.1, Table R404.1.2(9), R404.1.3.3.7.1, R608.5.2.1, Table R608.5.4(2)

A1003/A1003M—15: Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic and Nonmetallic-coated for Cold-formed Framing Members
R505.2.1, R505.2.2

B32—08(2014): Specification for Solder Metal
P3003.6.3

B42—2015A: Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1)

B42—10: Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table M2101.1

B43—15: Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1)

B43—09: Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table M2101.1

B75/B75M—11: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
Table M2101.1, Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2

B88—2016: Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2

B88—09: Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
Table M2101.1, G2414.5.2

B101—12: Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
Table R905.2.8.2, Table R905.10.3(1)

B135M—10: Specification for Seamless Brass Tube
Table M2101.1

ASTM—continued

B209—14: Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Sheet and Plate
Table 905.10.3(1)

B251/B251M—2017: Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2

B251/B251M—10: Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube
Table M2101.1

B302—2017: Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P3002.1(1)

B302—12: Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table M2101.1

B306—13: Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2)

B306—09: Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
Table M2101.1

B370—12: Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
Table R905.2.8.2, Table R905.10.3(1), Table P2701.1

B447—12a: Specification for Welded Copper Tube
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

B695—2004(2016): Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel
R317.3.1, R317.3.3

B813—2016: Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
P2906.15, P3003.6.3

B813—2010: Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
Table M2101.1, M2103.3

B828—2016: Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
P2906.15, P3003.6.3

B828—02(2010): Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
M2103.3

C5—2018: Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes
R702.2.1

C14—15a: Specification for Non-reinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain and Culvert Pipe
Table P3002.2

C22/C22M—2015: Specification for Gypsum
R702.2.1, R702.3.1

C27—1998(2018): Specification for Standard Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick
R1001.5

C28/C28M—10(2015): Specification for Gypsum Plasters
R702.2.1

C33/C33M—2018: Specification for Concrete Aggregates
R403.4.1

C34—2017: Specification for Structural Clay Load-bearing Wall Tile
Table R301.2(1), R606.2.2

C35/C35M—01(2014): Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster
R702.2.1

C55—2017: Specification for Concrete Building Brick
R202, Table R301.2(1), R606.2.1

C56—2013(2017): Standard Specification for Structural Clay Nonloadbearing Tile
R606.2.2

C59/C59M—00(2015): Specification for Gypsum Casting Plaster and Molding Plaster
R702.2.1

ASTM—continued

C61/C61M—00(2015): Specification for Gypsum Keene's Cement
R702.2.1

C62—2017: Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
R202, Table R301.2(1), R606.2.2

C73—2017: Specification for Calcium Silicate Face Brick (Sand Lime Brick)
R202, Table R301.2(1), R606.2.1

C76—2018A: Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe
Table P3002.2

C90—2016A: Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
Table R301.2(1), R606.2.1

C91M—2018: Specification for Masonry Cement
R702.2.2, R703.7.2

C94/C94M—2017A: Standard Specification for Ready-mixed Concrete
R404.1.3.3.2, R608.5.1.2

C126—2017: Standard Specification for Ceramic Glazed Structural Clay Facing Tile, Facing Brick, and Solid Masonry Units
R606.2.2

C129—2017: Specification for Nonload-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
Table R301.2(1)

C143/C143M—15A: Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
R404.1.3.3.4, R608.5.1.4

C145—85: Specification for Solid Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
R202, Table R301.2(1)

C150/C150M—2018: Specification for Portland Cement
R608.5.1.1, R702.2.2

C199—1984(2016): Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortar
R1001.5, R1001.8, R1003.12

C207—2018: Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
R606.2.8, Table R606.2.8

C208—2012(2017)E1: Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
R602.1.10, Table R602.3(1), Table R906.2

C212—2017: Standard Specification for Structural Clay Facing Tile
R606.2.2

C216—2017A: Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
R202, Table R301.2(1), R606.2.2

C270—14A: Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry
R606.2.8, Table R606.2.8, R606.2.11

C315—2007(2016): Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
R1001.8, R1003.11.1, Table R1003.14(1)

C315—07(2011): Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
G2425.12

C406/C406M—2015: Specifications for Roofing Slate
R905.6.4

C411—11: Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation
M1601.3

C425—2004(2018): Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2, P3003.10, P3003.13

C443—2012(2017): Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
P3003.5, P3003.13

C475M—2017: Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Wallboard
R702.3.1

C476—2018: Specification for Grout for Masonry
R606.2.12

ASTM—continued

C503M—2015: Standard Specification for Marble Dimension Stone
R606.2.4

C514—04(2014): Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Wallboard
R702.3.1

C552—2017E1: Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
Table R906.2

C557—2003(2017): Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing
R702.3.1, R702.3.1.1

C564—14: Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
P3003.4.2, P3003.4.3, P3003.13

C568M—2015: Standard Specification for Limestone Dimension Stone
R606.2.4

C578—2018: Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
R316.8, Table 703.8.4(2), Table R703.15.1, Table R703.15.2, Table R906.2

C587—2004(2018): Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster
R702.2.1

C595/C595M—2018: Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
R608.5.1.1, R702.2.2, R703.7.2

C615/C615M—2018E1: Standard Specification for Granite Dimension Stone
R606.2.4

C616/C616M—2015: Standard Specification for Quartz-based Dimension Stone
R606.2.4

C629/C629M—2015: Standard Specification for Slate Dimension Stone
R606.2.4

C631—09(2014): Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering
R702.2.1

C652—2017A: Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
R202, Table R301.2(1), R606.2.2

C685/C685M—2017: Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
R404.1.3.3.2, R608.5.1.2

C700—2018: Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength and Perforated
Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

C726—2017: Standard Specification for Mineral Wool Roof Insulation Board
Table R906.2

C728—2017A: Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board
Table R906.2

C744—2016: Standard Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units
R606.2.1

C836/C836M—2018: Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course
R905.15.2

C841—2003(2018): Standard Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring
R702.2.1

C842—05(2015): Standard Specification for Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster
R702.2.1

C843—2017: Specification for Application of Gypsum Veneer Plaster
R702.2.1

C844—2015: Specification for Application of Gypsum Base to Receive Gypsum Veneer Plaster
R702.2.1

ASTM—continued

C847—2018: Specification for Metal Lath
R702.2.1, R702.2.2

C887—13: Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Surface Bonding Mortar
R406.1, R606.2.9

C897—15: Specification for Aggregate for Job-mixed Portland Cement-based Plasters
R702.2.2

C920—2018: Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
R406.4.1

C926—2018B: Specification for Application of Portland Cement-based Plaster
R702.2.2, R702.2.2.1, R703.7, R703.7.2, R703.7.2.1, R703.7.4

C933—2018: Specification for Welded Wire Lath
R702.2.1, R702.2.2

C946—2018: Standard Practice for Construction of Dry-Stacked, Surface-Bonded Walls
R606.2.9

C954—2018: Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in (0.84 mm) or to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness
R505.2.5, R702.3.5.1

C957/C957M—2017: Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Integral Wearing Surface
R905.15.2

C1002—2018: Specification for Steel Self-piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
R702.3.1, R702.3.5.1

C1029—15: Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation
R905.14.2

C1032—2018: Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base
R702.2.1, R702.2.2

C1047—14a: Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
R702.2.1, R702.2.2, R702.3.1

C1063—2018B: Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster
R702.2.2, R703.7, R703.7.1

C1088—2018: Standard Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale
R606.2.2

C1107/C1107M—2017: Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-cement Grout (Nonshrink)
R402.3.1

C1116/C116M—10(2015): Standard Specification for Fiber-reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete
R402.3.1

C1157—11/C1157M—2017: Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
R608.5.1.1, R703.7.2

C1167—2011(2017): Specification for Clay Roof Tiles
R905.3.4

C1173—2018: Specification for Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Piping Systems
P3003.3.1, P3003.5, P3003.9.1, P3003.10, P3003.12.2, P3003.13

C1177/C1177M—2017: Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
R702.3.1, Table 906.2

C1178/C1178M—2018: Specification for Glass Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel
R702.3.1, R702.3.7, Table R702.4.2

C1186—2008(2016): Specification for Flat Fiber Cement Sheets
R703.10.1, R703.10.2

C1261—2013(2017)E1: Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces
R1001.5, R1001.8

ASTM—continued

C1277—2018: Specification for Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
P3003.4.3

C1278/C1278M—2017: Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panels
R702.3.1, R702.3.7, Table R702.4.2, Table R906.2

C1280—13a: Standard Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing
R602.3(1)

C1283—2015: Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining
R1003.9.1, R1003.12

C1288—2017: Standard Specification for Discrete Nonasbestos Fiber-cement Interior Substrate Sheets
Table R503.2.1.1(1), Table R503.2.1.1(2), Table 602.3(2), Table R702.4.2

C1289—2018: Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board
R316.8, Table R703.15.1, Table R703.15.2, Table R906.2

C1325—2018: Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Interior Substrate Sheets Backer Units
Table R702.4.2

C1328/C1328M—12: Specification for Plastic (Stucco) Cement
R702.2.2, R703.7.2

C1363—11: The Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
N1101.10.4.1

C1364—2017: Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone
R606.2.5

C1396/C1396M—2017: Specification for Gypsum Board
Table R602.3(1), R702.2.1, R702.2.2, R702.3.1, R702.3.7

C1405—2016: Standard Specification for Glazed Brick (Single Fired, Brick Units)
R606.2.2

C1440—2017: Specification for Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gasket Materials for Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV), Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems
P3003.13

C1460—2017: Specification for Shielded Transition Couplings for Use with Dissimilar DWV Pipe and Fittings Above Ground
P3003.13

C1461—2008(2017): Specification for Mechanical Couplings Using Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gaskets for Joining Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems for Above and Below Ground Use
P3003.13

C1492—2003(2016): Specification for Concrete Roof Tile
R905.3.5

C1513—2018: Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-formed Steel Framing Connections
R505.2.5, R702.3.5.1

C1540—2018: Specification for Heavy Duty Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
P3003.4.3

C1634—2017: Standard Specification for Concrete Facing Brick
R606.2.1

C1658/C1658M—2018: Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels
R702.3.1

C1668—12: Standard Specification for Externally Applied Reflective Insulation Systems on Rigid Duct in Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems
M1601.3

C1670/1670M—2018: Standard Specification for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer Units
R606.2.6

C1691—2011(2017): Standard Specification for Unreinforced Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC) Masonry Units
R606.2.3

C1693—2011(2017): Standard Specification for Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC)
R606.2.3

ASTM—continued

C1766—2015: Standard Specification for Factory-Laminated Gypsum Panel Products
R702.3.1

D41/D41M—2011(2016): Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2

D43/D43M—2000(20118): Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D226/D226M—2017: Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
R703.2, R905.1.1, Table R905.1.1(1), R905.8.4, Table R905.9.2

D227/D227M—2003(2018): Specification for Coal Tar Saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D312/D312M—2016M: Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing
Table R905.9.2

D449/D449M—03(2014)E1: Specification for Asphalt Used in Dampproofing and Waterproofing
R406.2

D450/D450M—2017(2018): Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D1227—13: Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2, R905.15.2

D1248—12: Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable
M1601.1.2

D1527—99(2005): Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table P2906.4

D1693—2013: Test Method for Environmental Stress-cracking of Ethylene Plastics
Table M2101.1

D1784—11: Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
M1601.1.2

D1785—15E1: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120
Table P2906.4

D1863/D1863M—2005(2018): Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used in Built-up Roofs
Table R905.9.2

D1869—15: Specification for Rubber Rings for Fiber-Reinforced Cement Pipe
P2906.18, P3003.13

D1970/D1970M—2017A: Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bitumen Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
R905.1.1, R905.2.8.2, R905.11.2.1

D2104—03: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedule 40
Table P2906.4

D2178/D2178M—15A: Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D2235—2004(2016): Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
P2906.9.1.1, P3003.3.2

D2239—12A: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
Table P2906.4

D2241—15: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)
Table P2906.4

D2282—99(2005): Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table P2906.4

D2412—11: Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading
M1601.1.2

ASTM—continued

D2447—03: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter
Table M2101.1

D2464—15: Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table P2906.6

D2466—20: 17: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table P2906.6

D2467—15: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table P2906.6

D2468—96a: Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table P2906.6

D2513—2013el: Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings
Table M2101.1, G2414.6, G2414.6.1, G2414.11, G2415.17.2

D2564—2012(2018): Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
P2906.9.1.4, P3003.9.2

D2609—15: Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe
Table P2906.6

D2626/D2626M—04 (2012)e1: Specification for Asphalt-saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing
Table R905.1.1(1), Table R905.9.2

D2657—2007(2015): Standard Practice for Heat Fusion-joining of Polyolefin Pipe Fittings
P2906.3.1, P2906.20.2, P3003.12.1

D2657—2007: Standard Practice for Heat Fusion-joining of Polyolefin Pipe Fittings
M2105.11.1

D2661—14E1: Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2

D2665—14: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

D2672—14: Specification for Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement
Table P2906.4

D2680—01(2014): Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping
Table P3002.2

D2683—14: Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
P2906.20.2, P3002.3, P3010.5

D2683—2010el: Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
Table M2105.5, M2105.11.1

D2737—2012A: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
Table P2906.4

D2751—05: Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

D2822/D2822M—2005(2011): Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing
Table R905.9.2

D2823/D2823M—05(2011)e1: Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing
Table R905.9.2

D2824/D2824M—2018: Specification for Aluminum-pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Fibered without Asbestos
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2

D2846/D2846M—2017BE1: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6, P2906.9.1.2, P2906.9.1.3

ASTM—continued

D2846/D2846M—2009BE1: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table M2101.1

D2855—2015: Standard Practice for Making Solvent-cemented Joints with Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
P3003.9.2

D2898—2010(2017): Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing
R802.1.5.4, R802.1.5.8

D2949—10: Specification for 3.25-in. Outside Diameter Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

D3019/D3019—2017: Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2

D3034—2016: Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

D3035—2012el: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter
Table M2105.4

D3138—04(2016): Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Transition Joints Between Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Piping Components
P3003.13.4

D3161/D3161M—2016A: Test Method for Wind-Resistance of Steep Slope Roofing Products (Fan Induced Method)
R905.2.4.1, Table R905.2.4.1, R905.16.6

D3201/D3201M—2013: Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-retardant Wood and Wood-base Products
R802.1.5.9

D3212—07(2013): Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
P3003.3.1, P3003.9.1, P3003.12.2

D3261—2016: Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing
P2906.20.2

D3261—2012: Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing
Table M2101.1, Table M2105.5, M2105.11.1, M2105.13.3

D3309—96a(2002): Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution System
Table M2101.1

D3311—2017: Specification for Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns
P3002.3

D3350—2012el: Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fitting Materials
Table M2101.1

D3462/D3462M—2016: Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules
R905.2.4

D3468/D3468M—99(2013)E1: Specification for Liquid-applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfanated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
R905.15.2

D3679—2017: Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding
R703.11

D3737—2018E1: Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam)
R502.1.3, R602.1.3, R802.1.2

D3747—79(2007): Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Adhesive for Adhering Roof Insulation
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2

D3909/D3909M—14: Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules
R905.2.8.2, R905.5.4, Table R905.9.2

D4022/D4022M—2007(2012)e1: Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing
Table R905.9.2

D4068—2017: Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water Containment Membrane
P2709.2, P2709.2.2

ASTM—continued

D4434/D4434M—2015: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing
R905.13.2

D4479/D4479M—2007(2018): Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings—asbestos-free
Table R905.9.2

D4551—2017: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-containment Membrane
P2709.2, P2709.2.1

D4586/D4586M—2007(2018): Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement—asbestos-free
Table R905.9.2

D4601/D4601M—04(2012)e1: Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing
Table R905.9.2, R905.11.2.1

D4637/D4637M—2015: Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane
R905.12.2

D4869/D4869M—2016A: Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing
R905.1.1, Table R905.1.1(1)

D4897/D4897M—2016: Specification for Asphalt Coated Glass-fiber Venting Base Sheet Used in Roofing
Table R905.9.2

D4990—1997a(2013): Specification for Coal Tar Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D5019—07a: Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane
R905.12.2

D5055—2016: Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists
R502.1.2, R802.1.8

D5456—2018: Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products
R502.1.5, R602.1.5, R802.1.4

D5516—2018: Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to the Elevated Temperatures
R802.1.5.6

D5643/D5643M—2006(2018): Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement Asbestos-free
Table R905.9.2

D5664—2017: Test Methods for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Lumber
R802.1.5.7

D5665/D5665M—99a(2014)E1: Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D5726—98(2013): Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing
Table R905.9.2

D6083/D6083M—2018: Specification for Liquid-applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing
Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2, Table R905.14.3, R905.15.2

D6162/D6162M—2016: Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements
Table R905.11.2

D6163/D6163M—2016: Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements
Table R905.11.2

D6164/D6164M—2016: Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements
Table R905.11.2

ASTM—continued

D6222/D6222M—2016: Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements
Table R905.11.2

D6223/D6223M—2016: Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcement
Table R905.11.2

D6298—2016: Specification for Fiberglass-reinforced Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface
Table R905.11.2

D6305—08(2015)E1: Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing
R802.1.5.6

D6380/D6380—2003(2018): Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic Felt)
Table R905.1.1(1), R905.2.8.2, R905.5.4

D6464—2003A(2017): Standard Specification for Expandable Foam Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing
R702.3.1.1

D6694/D6694M—2015: Standard Specification for Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems
Table R905.14.3, R905.15.2

D6754/D6754M—2015: Standard Specification for Ketone-ethylene-ester-based Sheet Roofing
R905.13.2

D6757/D6757M—2018: Specification for Underlayment Felt Containing Inorganic Fibers Used with Steep Slope Roofing
R905.1.1, Table R905.1.1(1)

D6841—2016: Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Lumber
R802.1.5.7

D6878/D6878M—2017: Standard Specification for Thermoplastic-polyolefin-based Sheet Roofing
R905.13.2

D6947/D6947M—2016: Standard Specification for Liquid Applied Moisture Cured Polyurethane Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing System
Table R905.14.3, R905.15.2

D7158—D7158M—2019: Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Uplift Force/Uplift Resistance Method)
R905.2.4.1, Table R905.2.4.1

D7254—2017: Standard Specification for Polypropylene (PP) siding
Table R703.3(1), R703.14

D7425/D7425M—13: Standard Specification for Spray Polyurethane Foam Used for Roofing Application
R905.14.2

D7672—2014E1: Standard Specification for Evaluating Structural Capacities of Rim Board Products and Assemblies
R502.1.7, R602.1.7, R802.1.7

D7793—2017: Standard Specification for Insulated Vinyl Siding
Table R703.3(1), R703.13

E84—2018B: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
R202, R302.9.3, R302.9.4, R302.10.1, R302.10.2, R316.3, R316.5.9, R316.5.11, R703.14.3, R802.1.5, P2801.6

E84—2013a: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
M1601.3, M1601.5.2

E96/E96M—2016: Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
R202, Table R806.5

E96/E96M—2013: Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
M1411.6, M1601.4.6

ASTM—continued

E108—2017: Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings
R302.2.4, R902.1

E119—2018B: Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
Table R302.1(1), Table R302.1(2), R302.2.1, R302.2.2, R302.3, R302.4.1, R302.11.1, R606.2.2

E136—2019: Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C
R202, R302.11

E283—2004(2012): Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences across the Specimen
R202

E283—04: Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences across the Specimen
N1102.4.6

E330/E330M—14: Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
R609.4, R609.5, R609.6.2, R703.1.2

E331—2000(2016): Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
R703.1.1

E779—10: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
N1102.4.2.2

E814—2013A(2017): Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
R302.4.1.2

E970—2017: Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
R302.10.5

E1509—12: Standard Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type
M1410.1

E1554—07: Standard Test Methods for Determining Air Leakage of Air Distribution Systems by Fan Pressurization
N1103.3.3

E1602—2003(20117): Guide for Construction of Solid Fuel Burning Masonry Heaters
R1002.2

E1745—17: Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs
R506.2.3

E1827—11: Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door
N1102.4.1.2

E1886—2013A: Test Method for Performance Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials
R301.2.1.2, R609.6.1, R609.6.2, Table R703.11.2

E1996—2017: Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes
R301.2.1.2, R301.2.1.2.1, R609.6.1, R609.6.2

E2178—2013: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
R202

E2231—09: Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
M1601.3

E2273—2018: Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies
R703.9.2

E2556/E2556M—2010(2016): Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-Resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment
R703.2

ASTM—continued

E2568—2017A: Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems
R703.9.1, R703.9.2

E2570/E2570M—07(2014)E1: Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Water-resistive Barrier (WRB) Coatings Used Under Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) or EIFS with Drainage
R703.9.2

E2634—2018: Standard Specification for Flat Wall Insulating Concrete Form (ICF) Systems
R404.1.3.3.6.1, R608.4.4

E2925—17: Standard Specification for Manufactured Polymeric Drainage and Ventilation Materials Used to Provide a Rainscreen Function
R703.7.3.2

F409—2017: Specification for Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2702.2, P2702.3

F437—15: Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table P2906.6

F438—2017: Specification for Socket-type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table P2906.6

F439—13: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table P2906.6

F441/F441M—15: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

F442/F442M—13E1: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

F477—14: Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
P2906.18, P3003.13

F493—14: Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
P2906.9.1.2, P2906.9.1.3, P2906.18.2

F628—2012E2: Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2

F656—2015: Specification for Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
P2906.9.1.4, P3003.9.2

F714—13: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, P3010.4

F876—2017: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

F876—2013: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table M2101.1

F877—2018A: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table P2906.6

F877—11A: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table M2101.1

F891—2016: Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2

F1055—2016A: Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
P2906.20.2

F1055—2013: Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
Table M2105.5, M2105.11.2

ASTM—continued

F1281—2017: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
P2506.12.1, Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

F1281—2011: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
Table M2101.1

F1282—2017: Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6, P2906.12.1

F1282—2010: Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
Table M2101.1

F1412—2016: Specification for Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings for Corrosive Waste Drainage
Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.11.1

F1488—14E1: Specification for Coextruded Composite Pipe
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2

F1504—2014: Standard Specification for Folded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) for Existing Sewer and Conduit Rehabilitation
P3011.4

F1554—2018: Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55 and 105-ksi Yield Strength
R608.5.2.2

F1667—2018: Specification for Driven Fasteners, Nails, Spikes and Staples
R317.3, Table R602.3(1), R703.3.3, R703.6.3, Table R703.15.1, Table R703.15.2, R905.2.5

F1807—2018: Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table P2906.6

F1807—2013: Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table M2101.1

F1866—2018: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Schedule 40 Drainage and DWV Fabricated Fittings
Table P3002.3

F1871—2011: Standard Specification for Folded/Formed Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Pipe Type A for Existing Sewer and Conduit Rehabilitation
P3011.4

F1924—12: Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing
M2105.11.1

F1960—2018: Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table P2906.6

F1960—2012: Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table M2101.1

F1970—12E1: Standard Specification for Special Engineered Fittings, Appurtenances or Valves for Use in Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Systems
M2105.5, Table 2903.9.4

F1973—08: Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA 11) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems
G2415.17.2

F1974—09(2015): Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene/ Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe
Table P2906.6, P2906.12.1

F1986—2001(2011): Multilayer Pipe Type 2, Compression Joints for Hot and Cold Drinking Water Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

F2080—2016: Specification for Cold-expansion Fittings with Metal Compression-sleeves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe
Table P2906.6

ASTM—continued

F2090—17: Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms
R310.1.1, R312.2.1, R312.2.2

F2098—2015: Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings
Table P2906.6

F2098—2008: Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings
Table M2101.1

F2159—2018: Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table P2906.6

F2262—09: Standard Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Tubing OD Controlled SDR9
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

F2389—2017A: Standard for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6, P2906.11.1

F2434—14: Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing
Table P2906.6

F2623—08: Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDRG Tubing
Table M2101.1

F2735—2009(2016): Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table P2906.6

F2735—2009: Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table M2101.1

F2769—2018: Polyethylene or Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot and Cold-Water Tubing and Distribution Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

F2769—2010: Polyethylene or Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot and Cold-Water Tubing and Distribution Systems
Table M2101.1

F2806—10: Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (Metric SDR-PR)
Table M2101.1

F2855—12: Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride)/Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC AL CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5

F2969—12: Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) IPS Dimensioned Pressure Pipe
Table M2101.1

F3226/F3226M—16: Standard Specification for Metallic Press-Connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems
Table P2906.6

AWC

American Wood Council
222 Catoctin Circle SE, Suite 201
Leesburg, VA 20175

ANSI/AWC NDS—2018: National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction—with 2018 Supplement
R404.2.2, R502.2, Table R503.1, R507.2.1, R602.3, R608.9.2, R608.9.3, Table R703.15.1, Table R703.15.2, R802.2

ANSI/AWC PWF—2021: Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification
R317.3.2, R401.1, R404.2.3

ANSI/AWC WFCM—2018: Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-family Dwellings
R301.1.1, R301.2.1.1, R602.10.8.2, Figure R608.9(9), R608.9.2, R608.9.3, R608.10

AWC STJR—2021: Span Tables for Joists and Rafters
R502.3, R802.4.1, R802.5.1

AWPA

American Wood Protection Association
P.O. Box 361784
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784

C1—03: All Timber Products—Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes
R902.2

U1—20: USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Commodity Specification H
R317.1, R402.1.2, R504.3, R703.6.3, R905.7.5, Table R905.8.5, R905.8.6, R4603.7

AWS

American Welding Society
8669 NW 36 Street, #130
Miami, FL 33166

A5.8M/A5.8—2011—AMD1: Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
P3003.6.1

ANSI/AWS A5.31M/A5.31—2012: Specification for Fluxes for Brazing and Braze Welding Edition: 2nd
M2103.3, M2202.2, P2906.15

AWWA

American Water Works Association
6666 West Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235

C104/A21.4—16: Cement-mortar Lining for Ductile-iron Pipe and Fittings
P2906.4

C110/A21.10—12: Ductile-iron and Gray-iron Fittings
Table P2906.6, P3002.3, Table P3002.3

C115/A21.15—11: Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile-iron or Gray-iron Threaded Flanges
Table P2906.4

C150/A21.50—14: Thickness Design of Ductile-Iron Pipe
Table P3002.2

C151/A21.51—17: Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water
Table P2906.4

C153/A21.53—11: Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service
Table P2906.6

C500—09: Standard for Metal-seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service
Table P2903.9.4

C504—15: Standard for Rubber-seated Butterfly Valves
Table P2903.9.4

C507—15: Standard for Ball Valves, 6 In. Through 60 In. (150 mm through 1,500 mm)
Table P2903.9.4

C510—07: Double Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assembly
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6

C511—17: Reduced-pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1

C900—16: Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 4 in. through 60 in.
Table P3002.2

C901—16: Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service
P2906.4

C903—05: Polyethylene-aluminum-polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe, 12 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) through 50 mm (2 in.), for Water Service
Table M2105.4

C904—16: Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pressure Tubing, $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service
P2906.4

CEN

European Committee for Standardization (EN)
Rue de la Science 23
Brussels, Belgium B - 1040

EN 15250—2007: Slow Heat Release Appliances Fired by Solid Fuel Requirements and Test Methods
R1002.2, R1002.5

CISPI

Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
2401 Fieldcrest Drive
Mundelein, IL 60060

301—18: Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3

310—18: Standard Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications
P3003.4.3

CPA

Composite Panel Association
19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306
Leesburg, VA 20176

A208.1—2016: Particleboard
R503.3.1, R602.1.9, R605.1

ANSI A135.4—2012: Basic Hardboard
Table R602.3(2)

ANSI A135.5—2012: Prefinished Hardboard Paneling
R702.5, R703.5

ANSI A135.6—2012: Engineered Wood Siding
R703.5

ANSI A135.7—2012: Engineered Wood Trim
R703.5

CPSC

Consumer Product Safety Commission
4330 East-West Highway
Bethesda, MD 20814

16 CFR, Part 1201—(2002): Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing
R308.1.1, R308.3.1, Table R308.3.1(1)

16 CFR, Part 1209—(2002): Interim Safety Standard for Cellulose Insulation
R302.10.3

16 CFR, Part 1404—(2002): Cellulose Insulation
R302.10.3

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

A112.18.6—2017/CSA B125.6—17: Flexible Water Connectors
P2906.7

A112.19.5—2017/CSA B45.15—2017: Flush Valves and Spuds for Water-closets, Urinals and Tanks
Table P2701.1

A112.19.7—2012/CSA B45.10—2012(R2017): Hydromassage Bathtub Systems
Table P2701.1, P2720.5, P2720.6

A257.2—14: Reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2, P3003.13

CSA—continued

A257.3—14: Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Manhole Sections and Fittings Using Rubber Gaskets
P3003.5, P3003.13

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
R308.6.9, R609.3

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
N1102.4.4

ANSI/CSA FC I—2012: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems
M1903.1

CSA C448 Series-02-CAN/CSA—2002: Design and Installation of Earth Energy Systems—First Edition; Update 2: October 2009; Consolidated reprint 10/2009
Table M2105.4, Table M2105.5

ASME A17.1/CSA B44—2019: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
R321.1, R321.4

ASME A112.3.4—2018/CSA B45.9—2018: Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components
Table P2701.1, P3007.5, P2723.1

ASME A112.4.2—2015/CSA B45.16—2015(2020): Water-closet Personal Hygiene Device
P2722.5

ASME A112.18.1—2018/CSA B125.1—2018: Plumbing Supply Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2708.5, P2722.1, P2722.3, P2902.2, Table P2903.9.4

ASME A112.18.2—2020/CSA B125.2—2020: Plumbing Waste Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2702.2, P2708.1, P2708.2.1, P2709.4.1

ASME A112.19.1—2018/CSA B45.2—18: Enameled Cast-iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2

ASME A112.19.2—2018/CSA B45.1—18: Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1, P2712.1, P2712.2, P2712.9, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2, P2721.3

ASME A112.19.3—2017/CSA B45.4—2017: Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1, P2712.1, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2

ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—20: Anti-Siphon Fill Valves for Water Closet Tanks
Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.4.1

ASSE 1016—2017/ASME 112.1016—2017/CSA B125.16—2017: Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations
Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2722.2

ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020/CSA B125.70—2020: Performance Requirements for Water-temperature-limiting Devices
P2713.3, P2721.2, P2724.1

B44—2019: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
R321.1

B64.1.1—11(R2016): Vacuum Breakers, Atmospheric Type (AVB)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

B64.1.2—11(R2016): Pressure Vacuum Breakers (PVB)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.4

B64.1.3—11(R2016): Spill Resistant Pressure Vacuum Breakers (SRPVB)
Table P2902.3

B64.2—11(R2016): Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

B64.2.1—11(R2016): Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers (HCVB) with Manual Draining Feature
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

B64.2.1.1—11(2016): Hose Connection Dual Check Vacuum Breakers (HCDVB)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

CSA—continued

B64.2.2—11(2016): Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB) with Automatic Draining Feature
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

B64.3—11(2016): Dual Check Backflow Preventers with Atmospheric Port (DCAP)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.3, P2902.5.1

B64.4—11(2016): Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type (RP)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1

B64.4.1—11(2016): Reduced Pressure Principle for Fire Sprinklers (RPF)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5

B64.5—11(2016): Double Check Backflow Preventers (DCVA)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6

B64.5.1—11(2016): Double Check Valve Backflow Preventers, Type for Fire Systems (DCVAF)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6

B64.6—11(2016): Dual Check Valve Backflow Preventers (DuC)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.7

B64.7—11(2016): Laboratory Faucet Vacuum Breakers (LFVB)
Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2

B79-08—(R2018): Commercial and Residential Drains and Cleanouts
P2708.1, P2719.3

B125.3—18: Plumbing Fittings
Table P2701.1, P2713.3, P2721.2, Table P2902.3, P2902.4.1, Table P2903.9.4

B137.1—17: Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold Water Pressure Services
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.6

B137.1—13: Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold Water Pressure Services
Table M2105.4, Table M2105.5

B137.2—17: Polyvinylchloride PVC Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table P2906.6

B137.2—13: Polyvinylchloride PVC Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table M2105.5

B137.3—17: Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.6, P3003.9.2

B137.3—13: Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications
Table M2105.4, Table M2105.5

B137.5—17: Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

B137.5—13: Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table M21105.4, Table M2105.5

B137.6—17: Chlorinated polyvinylchloride CPVC Pipe, Tubing and Fittings For Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table 2906.6

B137.6—13: Chlorinated polyvinylchloride CPVC Pipe, Tubing and Fittings For Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table M2105.4, Table M2105.5

B137.8—92: Polybutylene (PB) Piping for Pressure Applications
Table 2906.6

B137.9—17: Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
Table P2906.4

B137.9—13: Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
Table M2101.1, Table M2105.4, Table M2105.5

B137.10—17: Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6, P2906.12.1

B137.10—13: Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
Table M2101.1

B137.11—17: Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

CSA—continued

B137.18—17: Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table P2906.4, Table P2906.5, Table P2906.6

B181.1—18: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2, P3008.3

B181.2—18: Polyvinylchloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinylchloride (CPVC) Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), P3003.9.2, P3008.3

B181.3—18: Polyolefin and polyvinylidene (PVDF) Laboratory Drainage Systems
Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.11.1

B182.2—18: PSM Type polyvinylchloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2

B182.4—18: Profile polyvinylchloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe & Fittings
Table P3002.2

B356—10(R2020): Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Supply Systems
P2903.3.2

B483.1—07(R2017): Drinking Water Treatment Systems
P2909.1, P2909.2

B602—16: Mechanical Couplings for Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Sewer Pipe
P3003.3.1, P3003.4.3, P3003.5, P3003.9.1, P3003.10, P3003.12.2, P3003.13

CSA C22.2 No. 60335-2-40—2019: Standard for Household and Similar Electrical Appliances, Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition
M1402.1, M1403.1

CSA 8—93: Requirements for Gas Fired Log Lighters for Wood Burning Fireplaces
G2433.1

CSA A257.1—2014: Non-reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings
Table P3002.2

CSA B45.5—2017/IAPMO Z124—2017 with Errata dated August 2017: Plastic Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2711.2, P2712.1, P2713.4, P2714.3, P2715.2

CSA B805—18/ICC 805—18: Rainwater Harvesting Systems
P2910.1, P2912.1

CSA O325—16: Construction Sheathing
R503.2.1, R602.1.8, R604.1, R803.2.1

O437-Series—93(R2011): Standards on OSB and Waferboard
R503.2.1, R602.1.8, R604.1, R803.2.1

CSSB

Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau
P.O. Box 1178
Sumas, WA 98295-1178

CSSB—97: Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
R702.6, R703.6, Table R905.7.4

DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association International
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

108—2017: Standard Method for Testing Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors; Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
R609.4, Table 4502

115—2017: Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Missile Impact and Cyclic Wind Pressure
R301.2.1.2

DHA

Decorative Hardwoods Association (formerly HPVA)
42777 Trade West Drive
Sterling, Virginia 20166

ANSI/HPVA HP-1—2016: American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood
R702.5

DOC

United States Department of Commerce
1401 Constitution Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20230

PS 1—19: Structural Plywood
R404.2.1, Table R404.2.3, R503.2.1, R602.1.8, R604.1, R803.2.1

PS 2—18: Performance Standard for Wood Structural Panels
R404.2.1, Table R404.2.3, R503.2.1, R602.1.8, R604.1, R803.2.1

PS 20—05: American Softwood Lumber Standard
R404.2.1, R502.1.1, R602.1.1, R802.1.1

DOTn

U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Avenue SE
Washington, DC 20590

49 CFR, Parts 192.281(e) & 192.283 (b) (2009): Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards
G2414.5.1

FEMA

Federal Emergency Management Agency
500 C Street SW
Washington, DC 20472

FEMA TB-2—08: Flood Damage-resistant Materials Requirements
R322.1.8

FEMA TB-11—01: Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Area
R408.7

FM

FM Approvals
Headquarters Office
Norwood, MA 02062

4450—(1989): Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs—with Supplements through July 1992
R906.1

4474—2011: American National Standard for Evaluating the Simulated Wind Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies Using Static Positive and/or Negative Differential Pressures
R905.4.4.1

ANSI/FM 4880—(2017): American National Standard for Evaluating the Fire Performance of Insulated Building Panel Assemblies and Interior Finish Materials
R316.6

GA

Gypsum Association
6525 Belcrest Road, Suite 480
Hyattsville, MD 20782

GA-253—2018: Application of Gypsum Sheathing
Table R602.3(1)

IAPMO

IAPMO Group
4755 E. Philadelphia Street
Ontario, CA 91761-USA

CSA B45.5—17/IAPMO Z124—2017: Plastic Plumbing Fixtures
Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2711.2, P2712.1

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
200 Massachusetts Avenue NW
Suite 250
Washington, DC 20001

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—14: Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index
N1106.2

IBC—21: International Building Code®
R320.1.1, R101.2, R202, R301.1.1, R301.1.3, R301.2.1.1, R301.2.2.1.1, R301.2.2.1.2, R301.3, Table R302.1(1), Table R302.1(2), R302.2.1, R302.2.2, R302.3, R308.5, R320.1, Table R602.10.3(3), Table R606.12.2.1, R609.2, R802.1.5.4, R905.10.3

IBC—15: International Building Code®
G2402.3

ICC 400—17: Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures
R301.1.1, R502.1.4, R602.1.4, R703.1, R802.1.3

ICC 500—2020: ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters
R323.1

ICC 600—2020: Standard for Residential Construction in High-wind Regions
R301.2.1.1

IEBC—21: International Existing Building Code®
R110.2

IECC—15: International Energy Conservation Code®
N1101.1

IFC—21: International Fire Code®
R102.7, R324.2

IFC—15: International Fire Code®
M2201.7, G2402.3, G2412.2

IFGC—15: International Fuel Gas Code®
G2401.1, G2402.3, G2423.1

IMC—15: International Mechanical Code®
N1107.4, N1103.6, G2402.3

IPC—21: International Plumbing Code®
Table R301.2(1), R903.4.1, P2601.1

IPC—15: International Plumbing Code®
G2402.3

IPMC—21: International Property Maintenance Code®
R102.7

IPSDC—21: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®
R322.1.7

ISPSC—21: International Swimming Pool and Spa Code®
R327.1

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
Chemin de Blandonnet 8
Geneva, Switzerland CP 401 - 1214

8336—2009: Fibre-cement Flat Sheets-product Specification and Test Methods
Table R503.2.1.1(1), Table R503.2.1.1(2), Table R602.3(2), Table R702.4.2, R703.10.1, R703.10.2

15874—2002: Polypropylene Plastic Piping Systems for Hot and Cold Water Installations
Table M2101.1

MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
127 Park Street, NE
Vienna, VA 22180

SP-42—2013: Corrosion Resistant Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves with Flanged and Butt Weld Ends (Glasses 150, 300 & 600)
Table P2903.9.4

SP-58—09: Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application and Installation
G2418.2

SP-67—2011: Butterfly Valves
Table P2903.9.4

SP-70—2011: Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
Table P2903.9.4

SP-71—2011: Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
Table P2903.9.4

SP-72—2010a: Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service
P2903.9.4

SP-78—2011: Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
Table P2903.9.4

SP-80—2013: Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
Table P2903.9.4

SP-110—2010: Ball Valves, Threaded, Socket Welded, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends
Table P2903.9.4

SP-122—2012: Plastic Industrial Ball Valves
Table P2903.9.4

SP-139—2014: Copper Alloy Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves for Low Pressure/ Low Temperature Plumbing Applications
Table P2903.9.4

NAIMA

North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
11 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 101
Alexandria, VA 22314

AH 116—09: Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, Fifth Edition
M1601.1.1

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

13D—19: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes
R302.2.6, R332.3.1, R332.4.1, R324.6.2.1, P2904.1, P2904.6.1

13R—19: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Low-Rise Residential Occupancies
R325.5

31—11: Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment
M1701.1, M1801.3.1, M1805.3

58—14: Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code
G2412.2, G2414.6.2

70—20: National Electrical Code
R107.3, R324.3, R328.6, R328.1, R328.10, R905.16, R905.17, R907.1

72—19: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
R314.1, R314.7.1, R315.7.1, R315.7.2, R332.3.7

85—15: Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code
G2452.1

211—19: Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel Burning Appliances
R1002.5

NFPA—continued

211—13: Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel Burning Appliances
G2427.5.5.1

259—18: Standard for Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials
R316.5.7, R316.5.8

275—17: Standard Method of Fire Tests for the Evaluation of Thermal Barriers
R316.4, R316.3

276—15: Standard Method of Fire Tests for Determining the Heat Release Rate of Roofing Assemblies with Combustible Above-deck Roofing Components
R906.1

286—19: Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth
R302.9.4, R316.6, R302.9.5

501—17: Standard on Manufactured Housing
R202

853—15: Standard on the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems
M1903.1

NFRC

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

100—2009: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U*-Factors—Second Edition
N1101.5

200—2009: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence—Second Edition
N1101.5

400—2009: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage—Second Edition
N1102.4.4

NGWA

National Ground Water Association
601 Dempsey Road
Westerville, OH 43081

ANSI/NGWA 01—14: Water Well Construction Standard
P2602.1

NSF

NSF International
789 N. Dixboro Road
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

14—2017: Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials
P2609.3, P2909.3

14—2011: Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials
M1301.4

41—2016: Nonliquid Saturated Treatment Systems (Composting Toilets)
P2725.1

42—2017: Drinking Water Treatment Units—Aesthetic Effects
P2909.1, P2909.3

44—2017: Residential Cation Exchange Water Softeners
P2909.1, P2909.3

50—2017: Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs and Other Recreational Water Facilities
P2911.8.1

53—2017: Drinking Water Treatment Units—Health Effects
P2909.1, P2909.3

58—2017: Reverse Osmosis Drinking Water Treatment Systems
P2909.2, P2909.3

NSF—continued

61—2018: Drinking Water System Components—Health Effects
P2609.5, P2722.1, P2903.9.4, P2906.4, P2906.5, P2906.6, P2909.3

62—2017: Drinking Water Distillation Systems
P2909.1

350—2017a: Onsite Residential and Commercial Water Reuse Treatment Systems
P2911.6.1

358-1—2011: Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground Source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
M2105.4, M2105.5

358-2—2012: Polypropylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground Source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
M2105.5

359—2016: Valves for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Water Distribution Tubing Systems
Table P2903.9.4

372—2016: Drinking Water Systems Components—Lead Content
P2906.2.1

PCA

Portland Cement Association
5420 Old Orchard Road
Skokie, IL 60077

100—17: Prescriptive Design of Exterior Concrete Walls for One- and Two-family Dwellings (Pub. No. PCA 100.3)
R301.2.2.5, R404.1.3, R404.1.3.2.1, R404.1.3.2.2, R404.1.3.4, R608.1, R608.2, R608.5.1, R608.9.2, R608.9.3

PSAI

Portable Sanitation Association International
2626 E. 82nd Street, Suite 175
Bloomington, MN 55425

PSAI/ANSI Z4.3—16: Minimum Requirements for Nonsewered Waste-disposal Systems
P2505.5

SBCA

Structural Building Components Association
6300 Enterprise Lane
Madison, WI 53719

ANSI/FS100—12(R2018): Standard Requirements for Wind Pressure Resistance of Foam Plastic Insulating Sheathing Used in Exterior Wall Covering Assemblies
R316.8

BCSI—2018: Building Component Safety Information Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses
R502.11.2, R802.10.3

SMACNA

Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Assoc. Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Road
Chantilly, VA 22021

SMACNA—10: Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards (2003)
M1601.1.1, M1601.4.1

SMACNA/ANSI—2005: HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible (2005)
M1601.4.1

SRCC

Solar Rating & Certification Corporation
400 High Point Drive, Suite 400
Cocoa, FL 32926

SRCC 100—13: Standard 100 for Solar Collectors
M2301.3.1

SRCC 300—13: Standard 300 for Solar Water Heating Systems
M2301.2.2.2, M2301.2.3, M2301.2.7, M2301.2.8, M2301.2.10, M2301.4

SRCC 600—13: Standard 600 for Solar Concentration Collectors
M2301.3.1

TMS

The Masonry Society
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q
Longmont, CO 80501

402—2016: Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures
R404.1.2, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R703.12

403—2017: Direct Design Handbook for Masonry Structures
R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1

404—2016: Standard for the Design of Architectural Cast Stone
R606.1

602—2016: Specification for Masonry Structures
R606.2.10, R606.2.13, R703.12

TPI

Truss Plate Institute
2670 Crain Highway, Suite 203
Waldorf, MD 20601

TPI 1—2014: National Design Standard for Metal Plate Connected Wood Truss Construction
R502.11.1, R802.10.2, Table 4606.1

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

17—2008: Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with revisions through January 2010
M1802.2.2

55A—2004: Materials for Built-up Roof Coverings
R905.9.2

58—96: Standard for Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with revisions through July 1998
M2201.1

80—2007: Steel Tanks for Oil-burner Fuel—with revisions through August 2009
M2201.1

103—2010: Factory-built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with revisions through March 2017
R202, R1005.3

103—2010: Factory-built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with revisions through July 2012
G2430.1

127—2011: Factory-built Fireplaces—with revisions through July 2016
R1001.11, R1004.1, R1004.4, R1004.5, R1005.4

127—2011: Factory-built Fireplaces
N1102.4.2, G2445.7

174—04: Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through September 2012
M2005.1

180—2012: Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids
M2201.5

UL—continued

181—05: Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through May 2003
M1601.1.1, M1601.4.1

181A—2013: Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through December 1998
M1601.2, M1601.4.1

181B—2013: Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through August 2003
M1601.4.1

217—2015: Smoke Alarms—with revisions through November 2016
R314.1.1, R315.1.1

263—2011: Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials—with revisions through March 2018
Table R302.1(2), R302.2, R302.2.1, R302.2.2, R302.4.1, R302.11.1, R606.2.2

268—2016: Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems—with revisions through July 2016
R314.7.1, R314.7.4, R315.7.4

325—2017: Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems
R309.4

343—2008: Pumps for Oil-burning Appliances—with revisions through June 2013
M2204.1

378—06: Draft Equipment—with revisions through January 2010
M1804.2.6

441—10: Gas Vents
G2426.1

508—99: Industrial Control Equipment—with revisions through March 2013
M1411.3.1

536—97: Flexible Metallic Hose—with revisions through June 2003
M2202.3

580—2006: Test for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies—with Revisions through October 2013
R905.4.4.1

641—2010: Type L, Low-temperature Venting Systems—with revisions through April 2018
R202, R1003.11.5

641—2010: Type L, Low-temperature Venting Systems—with revisions through May 2013
M1804.2.4, G2426.1

651—2011: Schedule 40, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings—with revisions through March 2012
G2414.5.3

705—04: Standard for Power Ventilators—with revisions through March 2012
M1502.4.4

723—2018: Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
R202, R302.9.3, R302.9.4, R302.10.1, R302.10.2, R316.3, R316.5.9, R316.5.11, R703.14.3, R802.1.5, P2801.6

723—08: Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials—with revisions through September 2010
M1601.3, M1601.5.2

726—95: Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with revisions through April 2011
M2001.1.1, M2006.1

727—06: Oil-fired Central Furnaces—with revisions through April 2010
M1402.1

729—2003: Oil-fired Floor Furnaces
M1408.1

730—03: Oil-fired Wall Furnaces—with revisions through August 2012
M1409.1

732—95: Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through April 2010
M2005.1

737—2011: Fireplaces Stoves
M1414.1, M1901.2

UL—continued

790—04: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with revisions through October 2018
R302.2.4, R902.1

795—2011: Commercial-industrial Gas Heating Equipment—with revisions through September 2012
G2442.1, G2452.1

834—2004: Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers—Electric—with revisions through January 2013
M2001.1.1

842—07: Valves for Flammable Fluids—with revisions through October 2012
M2204.2

858—05: Household Electric Ranges—with revisions through April 2012
M1901.2

875—09: Electric Dry-bath Heaters—with revisions through November 2011
M1902.2

896—93: Oil-burning Stoves—with revisions through August 2012
M1410.1

907—94: Fireplace Accessories—with revisions through November 2014
R1001.13

923—2013: Microwave Cooking Appliances
M1504.1

959—2010: Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys
R1005.6

1026—2012: Electric Household Cooking and Food Serving Appliances
M1901.2

1040—1996: Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction—with revisions through April 2017
R316.6

1042—2009: Electric Baseboard Heating Equipment—with revisions through June 2013
M1405.1

1256—02: Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction—with revisions through August 2018
R906.1

1261—01: Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with revisions through July 2012
M2006.1

1479—2015: Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops
R302.4.1.2

1482—2011: Solid-Fuel-type Room Heaters—with revisions through August 2015
R1002.2, R1002.5

1482—2011: Solid-Fuel-type Room Heaters
M1410.1

1618—2015: Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors, and Hearth Extensions—with revisions through January 2018
R1004.2

1618—09: Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors, and Hearth Extensions—with revisions through May 2013
M1410.2

1693—2010: Electric Radiant Heating Panels and Heating Panel Sets—with revisions through October 2011
M1406.1

1703—2002: Flat-plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with revisions through September 2018
R324.3.1, R902.4, R905.16.4

1715—97: Fire Test of Interior Finish Material—with revisions through April 2017
R316.6

1738—2010: Venting Systems for Gas-burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV—with revisions through May 2011
G2426.1

1741—2010: Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment with Distributed Energy Resources—with revisions through February 2018
R324.3.1, R328.6

UL—continued

1777—07: Chimney Liners—with revisions through April 2014
R1003.11.1, R1003.18

1777—07: Chimney Liners—with revisions through July 2009
M1801.3.4, G2425.12, G2425.15.4

1897—15: Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems
R905.4.4.1

1995—2015: Heating and Cooling Equipment
M1402.1, M1403.1, M1407.1

1996—2009: Electric Duct Heaters—with revisions through November 2011
M1402.1, M1407.1

2034—2017: Standard for Single- and Multiple-station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with revisions through September 2018
R314.1.1, R315.1.1

2075—2013: Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with revisions through December 2017
R314.7.4, R315.7.1, R315.7.4

2158A—2010: Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct
M1502.4.3

2200—2012: Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with revisions through October 2015
R329.1

2523—09: Standard for Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating Appliances, Water Heaters and Boilers—with revisions through February 2013
M2001.1.1, M2005.1

2703—2014: Mounting Systems, Mounting Devices, Clamping/Retention Devices and Ground Lugs for Use with Flat-Plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with revisions through December 2019
R902.4

7103—19: Outline of Investigation for Building-Integrated Photovoltaic Roof Covering
R902.3, R905.16.4, Table 905.16.6, R905.17.5

9540—2016: Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment
R328.2, R328.6

61730-1—2017: Photovoltaic (PV) Module Safety Qualification—Part 1: Requirements for Construction
R324.3.1, R905.16.4, 905.17.5, R905.17.5

61730-2—2017: Photovoltaic (PV) Module Safety Qualification—Part 2: Requirements for Testing
R324.3.1, R905.16.4, R905.17.5

60335-2-40—2019: Standard for Household and Similar Electrical Appliances, Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition
M1402.1, M1403.1

ULC

ULC
13775 Commerce Parkway
Richmond, BC V6V 2V4

CAN/ULC S 102.2—2018: Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials and Assemblies
R302.10.1, R302.10.2

WDMA

Window and Door Manufacturers Association
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
R308.6.9, R609.3

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
N1102.4.3

I.S. 11—18: Industry Standard Analytical Method for Design Pressure (DP) Ratings of Fenestration Products
R308.6.9.1, R609.3.1

WMA World Millwork Alliance (formerly Association of Millwork Distributors Standards AMD)
10047 Robert Trent Parkway
New Port Richey, FL 34655-4649

ANSI WMA 100—2018: Standard Method of Determining Structural Performance Ratings of Side-Hinged Exterior Door Systems and Procedures for Component Substitution
R609.3

CHAPTER 45

HIGH WIND ZONES

This chapter is a North Carolina addition and not part of the 2021 International Residential Code.
There will be no marginal markings added.

SECTION R4501
GENERAL

R4501.1 General. The provisions of this chapter shall be applicable to buildings constructed in high wind zones as noted by the text. These provisions shall be in addition to or in lieu of previous chapters.

R4501.2 Alternate construction. In lieu of specific code requirements for structures in the 130, 140, and 150 miles per hour (58 m/s, 63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones, compliance with International Code Council ICC 600 *Standard for Residential Construction in High-Wind Regions* or AF&PA *Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings* is acceptable.

SECTION R4502
DESIGN PRESSURE FOR DOORS AND WINDOWS

R4502.1 Performance. Exterior windows and doors shall be designed to resist the design wind pressures specified in Table R4502(a) through Table R4502(c). Garage door shall be designed to resist the design wind pressures specified in Table R4502(d) through Table R4502(f).

TABLE R4502(a)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR DOORS AND WINDOWS[a, b, c, d, e, f]
POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IN PSF; EXPOSURE B

VELOCITY (mph)	MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)			
	15	20	30	40
130	21	22	25	27
140	24	26	29	31
150	27	29	33	36

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Alternative pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building C*ode, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
b. If window or door is more than 4 feet from a corner, the pressure from this table shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.81. This adjustment does not apply to garage doors.
c. For effective area between those given, the load shall be interpolated, or the load associated with the lower effective areas shall be used.
d. For windows or doors in structures with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal, the pressure from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
e. Design pressure ratings based on the standards listed in Section R609 are adequate documentation of capacity to resist pressures from the table.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

TABLE R4502(b)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR DOORS AND WINDOWS[a, b, c, d, e, f]
POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IN PSF; EXPOSURE C

VELOCITY (mph)	MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)			
	15	20	30	40
130	30	32	35	37
140	35	37	40	43
150	40	42	46	49

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Alternative pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building C*ode, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
b. If window or door is more than 4 feet from a corner, the pressure from this table shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.81. This adjustment does not apply to garage doors.
c. For effective area between those given, the load shall be interpolated, or the load associated with the lower effective areas shall be used.
d. For windows or doors in structures with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal, the pressure from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
e. Design pressure ratings based on the standards listed in Section R609 are adequate documentation of capacity to resist pressures from the table.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

TABLE R4502(c)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR DOORS AND WINDOWS[a, b, c, d, e, f]
POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IN PSF; EXPOSURE D

VELOCITY (mph)	MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)			
	15	20	30	40
130	36	38	41	43
140	42	44	47	50
150	48	51	54	57

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Alternative pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building C*ode, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
b. If window or door is more than 4 feet from a corner, the pressure from this table shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.81. This adjustment does not apply to garage doors.
c. For effective area between those given, the load shall be interpolated, or the load associated with the lower effective areas shall be used.
d. For windows or doors in structures with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal, the pressure from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
e. Design pressure ratings based on the standards listed in Section R609 are adequate documentation of capacity to resist pressures from the table.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

**TABLE R4502(d)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR GARAGE DOORS IN PSF;
EXPOSURE B[a, b, c, d, e, f]**

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)	DOOR SIZE	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
		130	140	150
15	Single (8' x 7')	17	20	23
	Double (16' x 7')	16	19	21
20	Single (8' x 7')	19	22	25
	Double (16' x 7')	17	20	23
30	Single (8' x 7')	21	24	28
	Double (16' x 7')	19	22	26
40	Single (8' x 7')	23	27	30
	Double (16' x 7')	21	24	28

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Alternative pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building C*ode, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
b. If window or door is more than 4 feet from a corner, the pressure from this table shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.81. This adjustment does not apply to garage doors.
c. For effective area between those given, the load shall be interpolated, or the load associated with the lower effective areas shall be used.
d. For windows or doors in structures with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal, the pressure from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
e. Design pressure ratings based on the standards listed in Section R609 are adequate documentation of capacity to resist pressures from the table.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

**TABLE R4502(e)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR GARAGE DOORS IN PSF;
EXPOSURE C[a, b, c, d, e, f]**

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)	DOOR SIZE	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
		130	140	150
15	Single (8' × 7')	25	29	34
	Double (16' × 7')	23	27	31
20	Single (8' × 7')	27	31	36
	Double (16' × 7')	25	29	33
30	Single (8' × 7')	29	34	39
	Double (16' × 7')	27	31	36
40	Single (8' × 7')	31	36	41
	Double (16' × 7')	29	33	38

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Alternative pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building C*ode, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
b. If window or door is more than 4 feet from a corner, the pressure from this table shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.81. This adjustment does not apply to garage doors.
c. For effective area between those given, the load shall be interpolated, or the load associated with the lower effective areas shall be used.
d. For windows or doors in structures with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal, the pressure from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
e. Design pressure ratings based on the standards listed in Section R609 are adequate documentation of capacity to resist pressures from the table.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

**TABLE R4502(f)
DESIGN PRESSURES FOR GARAGE DOORS IN PSF;
EXPOSURE D[a, b, c, d, e, f]**

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (feet)	DOOR SIZE	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
		130	140	150
15	Single (8' × 7')	31	36	41
	Double (16' × 7')	28	33	38
20	Single (8' × 7')	32	38	43
	Double (16' × 7')	30	35	40
30	Single (8' × 7')	35	40	46
	Double (16' × 7')	32	37	42
40	Single (8' × 7')	36	42	48
	Double (16' × 7')	34	39	44

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. For door sizes or wind speeds between those given above the load may be interpolated, otherwise use the load associated with the smaller door size.
b. Alternative design pressures may be determined by using the *North Carolina Building Code*, ASCE-7, or the *International Building Code*.
c. For doors in a structure with a roof slope of 10 degrees (2:12) or less from the horizontal the pressures from this table may be multiplied by 0.90.
d. Garage door design pressure ratings based on tests in accordance with ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108.
e. Garage doors on the ground level of a structure in a flood zone do not have to meet the above design pressures provided all of the following conditions are met:
   1. Structure is anchored to the girders and top of the piling to resist the forces given in Chapter 45.
   2. The garage door occurs below the top of the piling.
   3. Provide openings at the garage level that comply with either of the following options:
      i. Design all exterior walls at the garage level to break away at 20 psf or less; or
      ii. Provide openings (in walls at the garage level without the garage level without the garage door) equal to at least 20 percent of the total wall area from the ground to the roof.
f. Where the mean roof height exceeds this table, values shall be determined by a design professional.

SECTION R4503
FOOTINGS

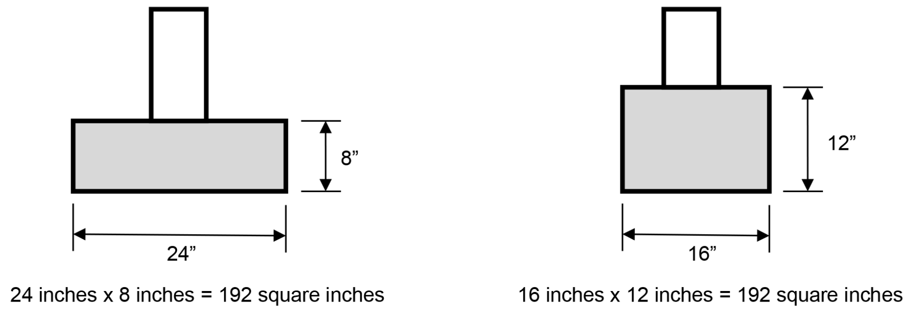
R4503.1 General. All exterior walls shall be supported on continuous concrete footings in the 140 and 150 mph (63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones. Exterior wall footings in the 130 mph (58 m/s) wind zone shall be constructed in accordance with Section R403.1.

Exception: Pile foundations shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 46.

R4503.1.1 Footing size. Footings shall be a minimum of 8 inches by 24 inches (203 mm by 610 mm) for houses two and one-half stories and less. The footings for a three-story building shall be 10 inches by 24 inches (254 mm by 610 mm).

Exception: Alternative footing sizes are permitted when a footing mass equivalent is provided to resist uplift forces. See Figure R4503.1.1.

R4503.1.2 Footing reinforcement. Footings shall be reinforced with three #4 bars or two #5 bars at 3 inches (76 mm) above the bottom of the footing. The bars shall be equally spaced with 3 inches (76 mm) clear minimum



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R4503.1.1
ALTERNATIVE FOOTING SIZE

TABLE R4503.2.1
FOOTINGS TO RESIST UPLIFT FROM PIERS IN 140 AND 150 MPH WIND ZONES SUPPORTING GIRDERS IN EXTERIOR WALLS

	FOOTING SIZE GIRDER SPAN		
VELOCITY (mph)	4′-0″	6′-0″	8′-0″
140	2′-0″ × 2′-0″ × 10″	2′-4″ × 2′-4″ × 10″	2′-8″ × 2′-8″ × 10″
150	3′-0″ × 3′-0″ × 10″	3′-4″ × 3′-4″ × 12″	3′-8″ × 3′-8″ × 12″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

from the side of the footing. The bars shall be continuous or lapped 25 inches at all splices.

R4503.1.3 Interior piers and pier footings. The dimensions for the interior piers and pier footings shall comply with Table R403.1(2).

R4503.1.4 Interior thickened slabs. Monolithic slabs with integral footings resisting uplift shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R4503.1.2.

R4503.1.5 Interior foundation walls. Interior foundation walls resisting uplift shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R4503.1.2.

R4503.2 Pier and curtain wall footings. Pier and curtain walls in the 140 and 150 mph (63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones shall be constructed in accordance with Sections R4503.2.1 and R4503.2.2 and Figures R4503.2(a) through R4503.2(d).

R4503.2.1 Enlarged footings at piers. The curtain wall footing must meet the minimum projection requirements in Figure R403.1(1) and footing dimensions for the pier footings shall comply with Table R4503.2.1.

R4503.2.2 Continuous width footings. Uniform continuous width footings for pier and curtain wall foundations shall be a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) thick and 24 inches (60 mm) wide. Footings shall be reinforced with three #4 bars (or two #5 bars) at 3 inches (76 mm) above the bottom of the footing. The bars shall be continuous or lapped 25 inches (635 mm) at all splices.

R4503.3 Footing dowels. All footings shall have reinforcing dowel bars to match the vertical reinforcing bars in the foundation wall above. Dowels or threaded rods shall have a standard hook length of 12 times the bar diameter embedded in the footing and shall lap the wall or pier reinforcing at least 25 inches (635 mm).

R4503.4 Footing anchor bolts. All anchor bolts shall have a standard hook length of 12 times the bolt diameter embedded in the footing or foundation wall. They shall not be permitted to be lapped.

Exceptions:

1. Anchor bolts in bond beams as permitted by Section R4504.2.1.1
2. Anchor bolts in slabs on grade as permitted by Section R4504.2.2

SECTION R4504
WALL AND FOUNDATION ANCHORAGE

R4504.1 Anchorage in the 130 mph wind zone. Exterior walls of structures in the 130 mph (58 m/s) wind zone shall be anchored to the foundation wall or slab on grade with $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (13 mm) anchor bolts, 4 feet (1219 mm) on center extended 15 inches (381 mm) into masonry and 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete and are exempt from the other requirements of this section.

R4504.2 Anchorage in the 140 and 150 mph wind zones. Exterior walls of structures in the 140 and 150 mph (63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones shall be anchored to the footing to resist the forces specified in Section R4508.2, by the prescriptive requirements of this section and Figures R4504.2(a) through R4504.2(f), or as allowed by Section R4508.4.

R4504.2.1 Exterior foundation walls. Vertical reinforcement bars shall be installed not more than 2 feet (51 mm) from each corner and at intervals not to exceed Table R4504.2.1 with all reinforced cells grouted solid. The reinforcement bars shall terminate in a bond beam in accordance with Section R4504.2.1.1 or continuous anchorage bolts shall terminate at the sill plate or exterior wall framing in accordance with Section R4504.2.1.2.

TABLE R4504.2.1
WALL REINFORCEMENT BARS OR CONTINUOUS ANCHORAGE BOLTS[a, b, c, d]

BAR/BOLT SIZE (inches)	$^5/_8$	$^1/_2$	$^3/_8$
MAXIMUM SPACING (inches)	96	72	42

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Applies to 140 and 150 mph wind zones.

b. Continuous anchorage from footing to girder or wall framing.

c. Applies to footing dowel bars, vertical reinforcement and anchor bolts.

d. Spacing may exceed the tabulated values by up to 8 inches provided the total number of required bars is installed.

R4504.2.1.1 Bond beams. The top of a concrete or masonry foundation wall shall have a bond beam in accordance with Figure R4504.2(a). The bond beam shall be reinforced with one #5 bar. The bar shall be continuous or lapped 25 inches (635 mm) at all splices.

R4504.2.1.1.1 Bond beam plate anchorage. A minimum of two 2 × 6 sill plates shall be anchored with $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) anchor bolts with 2 × 2 × $^1/_8$ inch (51 × 51 × 3 mm) washers at intervals not to exceed Table R4504.2.1.1. An approved anchor from the sill plate to the wall framing shall be installed to resist the forces specified in Table R4508.2 or sheathing shall be fastened in accordance with Figure R4508.4(b). See Figure R4504.2(a).

TABLE R4504.2.1.1
ANCHOR BOLT SPACING[a]

WIND SPEED (mph)	140	150
MAXIMUM SPACING (inches)	21	18

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Required spacing of $^1/_2$-inch anchor bolts where a bond beam is required and for slab on grade with a single sole plate. See Figure R403.1(1) for 130 mph or less.

R4504.2.1.2 Continuous anchorage bolts. A minimum of two 2 × 6 sill plates shall be anchored with continuous anchor bolts in accordance with Table R4504.2.1 with 2 × 2 × $^1/_8$ inch (51 × 51 × 3 mm) washers. Where the vertical anchorage bolts terminate at the sill plate, an approved anchor from the sill plate to the wall framing shall be installed to resist the forces specified in Table R4508.2 or sheathing shall be fastened in accordance with Figure R4508.4(b). See Figure R4504.2(b).

Exception: Where the uplift anchorage bolts from Table R4504.2.1 are continuous from the footing to the exterior wall framing, a single 2 × 6 sill plate is permitted. See Figure R4504.2(c).

R4504.2.2 Exterior concrete slab-on-grade footings. Anchorage shall be installed at intervals not to exceed Table R4504.2.1 and shall terminate in a minimum 2 × 4 double sole plate. See Figure 4504.2(d).

Exceptions:

1. Where the bolts terminate in a single sole plate, anchorage shall be installed at intervals not to exceed Table R4504.2.1.1. See Figure R4504.2(e).
2. Foundation anchorage spaced and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions that provides equivalent anchorage to resist the forces in Table R4508.2 shall be installed to provide continuous load path from the single sole plate to the wall.

R4504.2.3 Ground supported slab with masonry stem wall. A minimum of two 2× sill plates shall be anchored with $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) continuous anchor bolts with 2 × 2 × $^1/_8$ inch (51 × 51 × 3 mm) washers at intervals not to exceed Table R4504.2.1. An approved anchor from the sill plate to the wall framing shall be installed to resist the forces specified in Table R4508.2 or sheathing shall be fastened in accordance with Figure R4508.4(b). See Figure R4504.2(f).

SECTION R4505
WALL CONSTRUCTION

R4505.1 Construction. Exterior walls of wood frame construction shall be in accordance with Figures R602.3(1) and R602.3(2). Components of exterior walls shall be fastened in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Walls of wood frame construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI AWC *National Design Specification for Wood Construction*, listed in Chapter 44.

Exterior walls subject to wind speeds of 130 mph (58 m/s) or greater as established in Table R301.2(1) shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. See Tables R4505(a) and R4505(c).

In bearing walls, studs which are not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length shall be spaced not more than is specified in Table R4505(d) for the corresponding stud size.

SECTION R4506
STRUCTURAL BRACING

R4506.1 Structural bracing in 130 mph wind zone. Structural bracing in the 130 mph (58 m/s) wind zone shall comply with Section R602.10.

R4506.2 Structural bracing in 140 and 150 mph wind zones. All stories shall be continuously sheathed with wood structural panels. All panels shall be fastened in accordance with Table R4506.2. Where sheathing is used to resist uplift, see Section R4508.4 for blocking requirements. Otherwise, blocking shall be installed if less than 50 percent of the wall length is sheathed. If a wall is sheathed less than 25 percent of its length, then that wall shall be designed in accordance with approved engineering practice.

TABLE R4506.2
PANEL FASTENER SPACING[a]

	BLOCKING REQUIRED	NO BLOCKING REQUIRED
Center of Panel	6″	12″
Vertical Edge of Panel	6″	6″
Horizontal Edge of Panel	3″	3″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Table based on 8d nails.

TABLE R4505(a)
MINIMUM LUMBER GRADE, SIZE, AND SPACING FOR EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING STUDS USING SOUTHERN PINE (SP)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="2"></th><th colspan="6">EXPOSURE B</th><th colspan="6">EXPOSURE C</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="12">ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="2">STUD LENGTH</th><th rowspan="2">STUD SPACING (IN.)</th><th colspan="2">130</th><th colspan="2">140</th><th colspan="2">150</th><th colspan="2">130</th><th colspan="2">140</th><th colspan="2">150</th></tr>
<tr><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td>12</td><td rowspan="8">No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="8">No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">9</td><td>12</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">10</td><td>12</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 1</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
</table>

TABLE R4505(b)
MINIMUM LUMBER GRADE, SIZE, AND SPACING FOR EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING STUDS USING SPRUCE-PINE-FUR (SPF)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="2"></th><th colspan="6">EXPOSURE B</th><th colspan="6">EXPOSURE C</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="12">ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="2">STUD LENGTH</th><th rowspan="2">STUD SPACING (IN.)</th><th colspan="2">130</th><th colspan="2">140</th><th colspan="2">150</th><th colspan="2">130</th><th colspan="2">140</th><th colspan="2">150</th></tr>
<tr><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th><th>2 x 4</th><th>2 x 6</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td>12</td><td rowspan="8">No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="8">No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td rowspan="9">No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">9</td><td>12</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>SS</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">10</td><td>12</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 3/Stud</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>No. 2</td><td>No. 2</td><td>SS</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table>

**TABLE R4505(c)
MAXIMUM STUD LENGTHS FOR EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING STUDS (ft)
(APPLIED TO STUDS USING SOUTHERN PINE (SP) AND SPRUCE-PINE-FIR (SPF))**

STUD SPACING (IN.)	EXPOSURE B						EXPOSURE C					
	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)											
	130		140		150		130		140		150	
	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 4	2 x 6
12	13	20	13	20	12	19	12	19	11	18	11	17
16	12	19	11	18	11	17	11	17	10	16	10	15
24	10	16	10	15	9	15	9	14	9	13	8	12

**TABLE R4505(d)
SIZE, HEIGHT, AND SPACING LIMITS FOR WOOD STUDS (BASED ON DEAD AND LIVE LOAD)**

LOADING BEARING STUDS SUPPORTING	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8
	MAXIMUM STUD SPACING (in. o.c.)		
Roof & ceiling only	24	24	24
1 floor only	24	24	24
Roof & ceiling & 1 floor only	16	24	24
2 floor only	16	24	24
Roof, ceiling, & 2 floors	—	16	24
Non-loading bearing studs	MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED STUD LENGTH (ft)		
	14	20	20
	MAXIMUM STUD SPACING (in. o.c.)		
	24	24	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

SP = Southern Pine, SPF = Spruce-Pine Fir,

"—" Lumber Grade not available.

a. Maximum mean roof height = 33 feet. (Per 2018 WFCM Section 2.1.3.1.)

b. Total roof span shall not exceed 36 feet. (Per 2018 WFCM Section 3.1.3.4.)

c. Exterior wall stud deflection limit = H/180.

d. $^3/_8$ inch thick wood structural sheathing shall be attached with 8d common nails (2.5″ x 0.131″) at 6 inches at perimeter and 12 inches at intermediate support.

e. Wind exposure category D is not covered by the tables and shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. (See 2018 NCRC Section R301.2.1.4 for definition of Exposure Category.)

f. Load bearing wall shall not exceed 10 feet in height. (Per 2018 NCRC Table R602.3(5).)

g. To address additional end zone loading requirements, end zone stud spacings shall be multiplied by 0.80 for framing located within 4 feet of corners.

R4506.3 Gable endwalls. Gable endwalls in the 130, 140 and 150 mph (58 m/s, 63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones shall either be supported by lateral bracing at the ceiling or have continuous studs from the floor to the roof. Non bearing studs in gable wall shall be limited to a height in accordance with Table 4505(c).

Where open web trusses are installed, wood structural panel sheathing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) beyond horizontal construction joints. Where the horizontal joint occurs over minimum 1 inch (25 mm) thick OSB or plywood or 2× rimboard, a minimum $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) overlap is required.

R4506.4 Lateral support at ceiling. Where studs are not continuous, the ceiling must be used to support the endwall. 2 × 4 lateral bracing shall be installed on the top of ceiling joists or truss bottom chords at 8 feet (2438 mm) on center and extend 8 feet (2438 mm) inward from the gable endwall. See Figure R4506.4.

R4506.5 Full height studs. Full height studs may be sized using the bracing at the ceiling to limit the stud length. See Figure R4506.5.

R4506.6 Cathedral endwalls. Studs shall be continuous from the uppermost floor to either the ceiling or the roof.

R4506.7 Overhang at endwalls. The overhang is limited to 12 inches (305 mm) where a laddered soffit is installed. The overhang may be increased to 24 inches (610 mm) where outlookers are framed over a dropped endwall into the first rafter or truss. See Figures R4506.7(a) and R4506.7(b). If the overhang exceeds 24 inches (610 mm), then the overhang shall be designed in accordance with approved engineering practice.

R4506.8 Roof sheathing attachment. The roof sheathing panel edges shall be blocked and nailed at the end two rafter or truss spaces. See Figure R4506.8.

Exception: The panel edges need not be blocked where 2 × 4 diagonal braces are framed from the top of the endwall to the lateral bracing at the ceiling.

SECTION R4507
MASONRY WALL CONSTRUCTION

R4507.1 Reinforcement. Masonry walls subject to wind speeds of 140 mph (63 m/s) or greater, as established in Table R301.2(1), shall be constructed in accordance with Table R4507.1 or the requirements of Figures R4507.1(a) and R4507.1(b) and this section. Additionally, the minimum area of reinforcement shall not be less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area wall, not more than two-thirds of which may be used in either direction. No required vertical reinforcement shall be less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) in diameter. Principal wall reinforcement shall have a maximum spacing of 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

For 130 mph (58 m/s) wind zones, see Figure R606.11(1) and Table R606.6.4.

SECTION R4508
ROOF TIE DOWN

R4508.1 Roof tie down. Roof assemblies in the 130, 140 and 150 mph (58 m/s, 63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones as established in Table R301.2(1) shall have rafter or truss ties provided in accordance with either Tables R4508.2 through R4508.3 or the prescriptive requirements of Section R4508. Anchorage in the 130 mph (58 m/s) wind zone shall be continuous from the roof to the foundation wall or pier. Anchorage in the 140 and 150 mph (63 m/s and 67 m/s) wind zones shall be continuous from the roof to the footing. See Section R4504.

R4508.2 Considerations. For trusses, the nailing requirements from Table R4508.2 shall include the nailing requirements for both rafters and ceiling joists. As an alternative to the anchorage requirements of Tables R602.3(1), R4508.2 and R4508.3, the anchorage for roof members may be based on a designed connection taking into account all horizontal and vertical forces. Forces for alternative anchorage design may result from wind uplift; wind lateral on roof; wind lateral on walls to be transferred to the top plate of the wall; roof/ceiling loads; and other loads depending on the specific building design. If roof members align with the studs, the connection may be made from the roof member directly to the studs. If the connection is from the roof member to the top plate, a double top plate is required and both connections must meet the requirements of Table R4508.2. Where ceiling joists are not parallel with and connect to the roof members, the anchorage requirements for each roof member shall be increased by 110 pound (50 kg). Hip end walls and hip rafters shall be anchored in accordance with this section.

R4508.3 Anchorage from roof to wall. One and one-half inch (38 mm) by 18 gage fabricated metal ties at 24 inches (610 mm) on center with five 8d nails at each end may be used to resist the uplift loads from the roof to the double top plate. Install one tie at each end of each rafter in 130 mph (58 m/s) and two ties at each end of each rafter in 140 mph (63 m/s) and 150 mph (67 m/s) wind zones. Truss anchorage shall be in accordance with design specifications. See Figure R4508.3.

R4508.4 Anchorage using wood structural panels. Wood structural panel sheathing may be used to resist both lateral load and uplift simultaneously. Panels shall be installed as follows:

1. Panels may be installed parallel or perpendicular to studs.
2. Panels shall be $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm) minimum thickness.
3. Nail spacing shall be 8d at 6 inches (152 mm) on center along vertical edges of panel and 12 inches (305 mm) at intermediate vertical framing.
4. At double edge panel locations, the horizontal nail spacing shall be 8d staggered at 3 inches (76 mm) on center. See Figure R4508.4(b).
5. Where open web trusses are installed, panel shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) beyond horizontal construction joints and shall overlap girders their full depth. Where the horizontal joint occurs over minimum 1 inch (25 mm) thick OSB or plywood or 2× rimboard, a minimum $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) overlap is required. See Figure R4508.4(a).
6. Panel attachment to framing shall be as illustrated in Figure R4508.4(b).
7. Blocking shall be required at all joints if sheathing is used to resist uplift.

TABLE R4508.5
UPLIFT CAPACITY OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING USED TO RESIST BOTH LATERAL LOAD AND UPLIFT[a]

VERTICAL NAIL SPACING	8D COMMON NAIL 6″ PANEL EDGE SPACING 12″ FIELD SPACING		
Alternate nail spacing at top and bottom edges	6″	4″	3″
Uplift capacity (plf) nails—double row	216	432	648

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Tabulated values are for Spruce-Pine-Fir framing.

b. Tabulated values are modified by the ASD reduction factor of 2.0.

TABLE R4507.1
H/T LATERAL SUPPORT RATIOS FOR
UNREINFORCED EXTERIOR MASONRY WALLS[a, b, d, e]

	ULTIMATE WIND SPEED, MPH[c]	
Wall Construction	**140**	**150**
Solid masonry units	13	11
Hollow concrete masonry units or masonry bonded hollow walls	9	8
Cavity walls identical wythes	The *H*/*t* ratio shall be 0.70 of the *H*/*t* ratio for single wythe walls. The *t*-value shall be the sum of the nominal thickness of the individual wythes.	
Cavity walls with wythes of different types or size masonry	The wall shall be designed based on ACI-530 or the *H*/*t* ratio may be 0.70 of the *H*/*t* ratio of a single wythe hollow wall. The *t*-value shall be the sum of the nominal thickness of the individual wythes.	

a. *H* = clear height or length between lateral supports.
t = nominal wall thickness.
b. All masonry units shall be laid in Type M, S or N mortar. Where Type N mortar is used and the wall spans in the vertical direction, the ratios shall be reduced by 10 percent.
c. Design based on partially enclosed building.
d. These values are based on using masonry cement mortar. If nonair-entrained Portland cement/lime mortar is used, the values in the table may be increased by 1.25. Larger *H*/*t* ratios may be used if the design is done in accordance with ACI-530.
e. Larger *H*/*t* ratios may be used if the design is done in accordance with ACI-530.

TABLE R4508.2
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLFT CONNECTION FORCE FROM WIND (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE B		
		ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
		130	140	150
12" o.c.	12	96	123	151
	16	113	146	181
	20	131	170	211
	24	149	193	241
	28	167	217	271
	32	186	241	301
	36	204	265	331
16" o.c.	12	128	164	202
	16	151	195	241
	20	175	226	281
	24	199	258	321
	28	223	290	361
	32	248	322	401
	36	272	354	441
24" o.c.	12	192	245	303
	16	227	292	362
	20	263	339	421
	24	299	387	481
	28	335	434	541
	32	371	482	602
	36	408	530	662

(continued)

TABLE R4508.2—continued
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLFT CONNECTION FORCE FROM WIND (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE C		
		ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
		130	140	150
12" o.c.	12	161	198	238
	16	193	238	286
	20	224	278	335
	24	256	318	383
	28	289	358	432
	32	321	398	481
	36	353	438	530
16" o.c.	12	215	264	318
	16	257	317	382
	20	299	370	446
	24	342	423	511
	28	385	477	576
	32	428	531	641
	36	471	584	706
24" o.c.	12	322	397	477
	16	385	475	572
	20	449	555	669
	24	513	635	766
	28	577	715	864
	32	642	796	962
	36	706	877	1059

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2, 1 pound per linear foot = 14.6 N/m.

a. The uplift connection forces are based on a maximum 33-foot mean roof height and Wind Exposure Category B or C.
b. The uplift connection forces include an allowance for roof and ceiling assembly dead load of 15 psf and the tabulated uplift loads reduced with 0.6 factor.
c. The tabulated uplift connection forces are limited to a maximum roof overhang of 24 inches.
d. The tabulated uplift connection forces shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.75 for connections not located within 8 feet of building corners.
e. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the uplift connection force shall be permitted to be reduced by 60 pounds per linear foot for each full wall above.
f. Linear interpolation between tabulated roof spans and wind speeds shall be permitted.
g. The tabulated forces for a 12-inch on-center spacing shall be permitted to be used to determine the uplift load in pounds per linear foot.
h. Tabulated value limited from roof pitch 2:12 to 12:12

TABLE R4508.3
RAFTER OR TRUSS LATERAL CONNECTION FORCE FROM WIND

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	EXPOSURE B					
	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)					
	130		140		150	
	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners
12" o.c.	111	2	129	2	148	2
16" o.c.	148	2	171	2	197	2
24" o.c.	222	3	257	3	295	3
RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	EXPOSURE C					
	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)					
	130		140		150	
	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners	Pounds per connector	Number of fasteners
12" o.c.	154	2	179	2	205	3
16" o.c.	205	3	238	3	273	3
24" o.c.	308	4	357	4	410	5

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2, 1 pound per linear foot = 14.6 N/m.

a. Number of Fasteners = 8d common nails or 10d Box Nail (toenailed).

b. To avoid splitting, no more than 2 toenails shall be installed in each side of a rafter when fastened to a 2 × 4 top plate or 3 toenails in each side when fastened to a 2 × 6 top plate.

c. Tabular lateral connections covered up to 36 feet roof span.

TABLE R4508.4
TOP AND BOTTOM PLATE TO STUD LATERAL CONNECTION FOR WIND LOAD
REQUIRED NUMBER OF 16d COMMON NAILS (END NAIL) PER CONNECTION

STUD SPACING (inch)	EXPOSURE B			EXPOSURE C		
	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)					
	130	140	150	130	140	150
12" o.c.	2	2	2	2	2	2
16" o.c.	2	2	2	2	2	2
24" o.c.	2	2	2	3	3	3

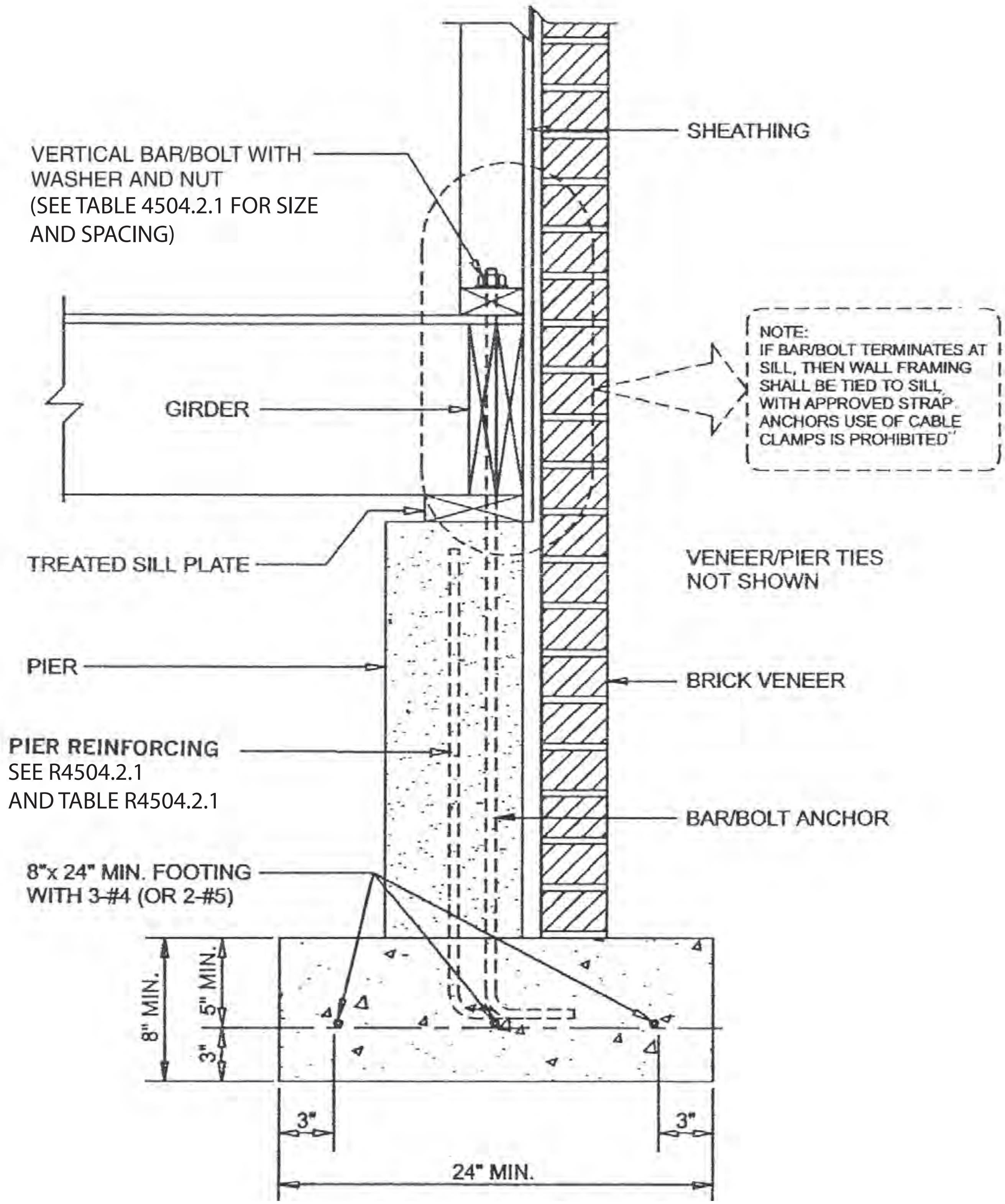


FIGURE R4503.2(a)
CONTINUOUS VENEER PIER/CURTAIN WALL

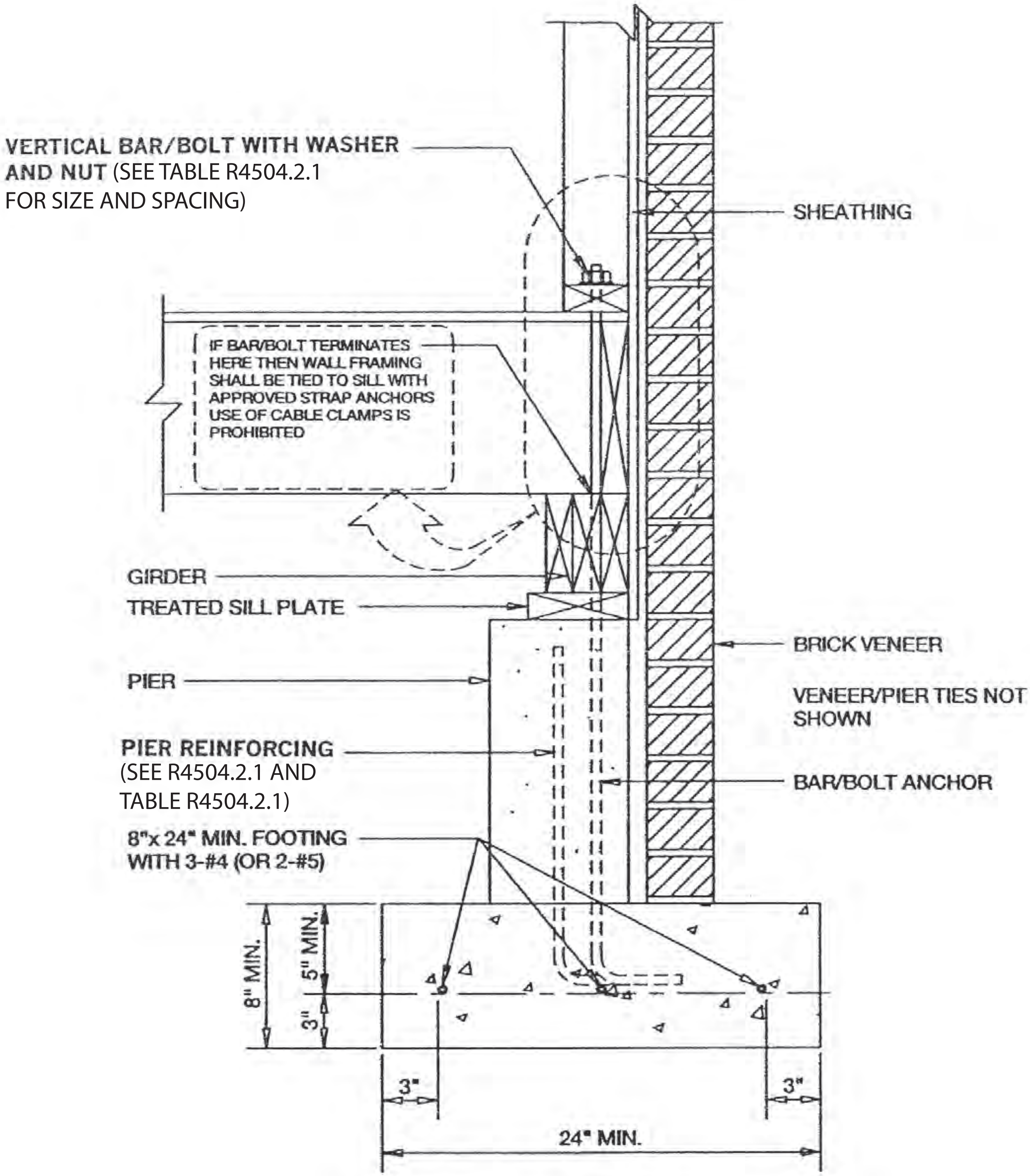


FIGURE R4503.2(b)
CONTINUOUS VENEER PIER/CURTAIN WALL

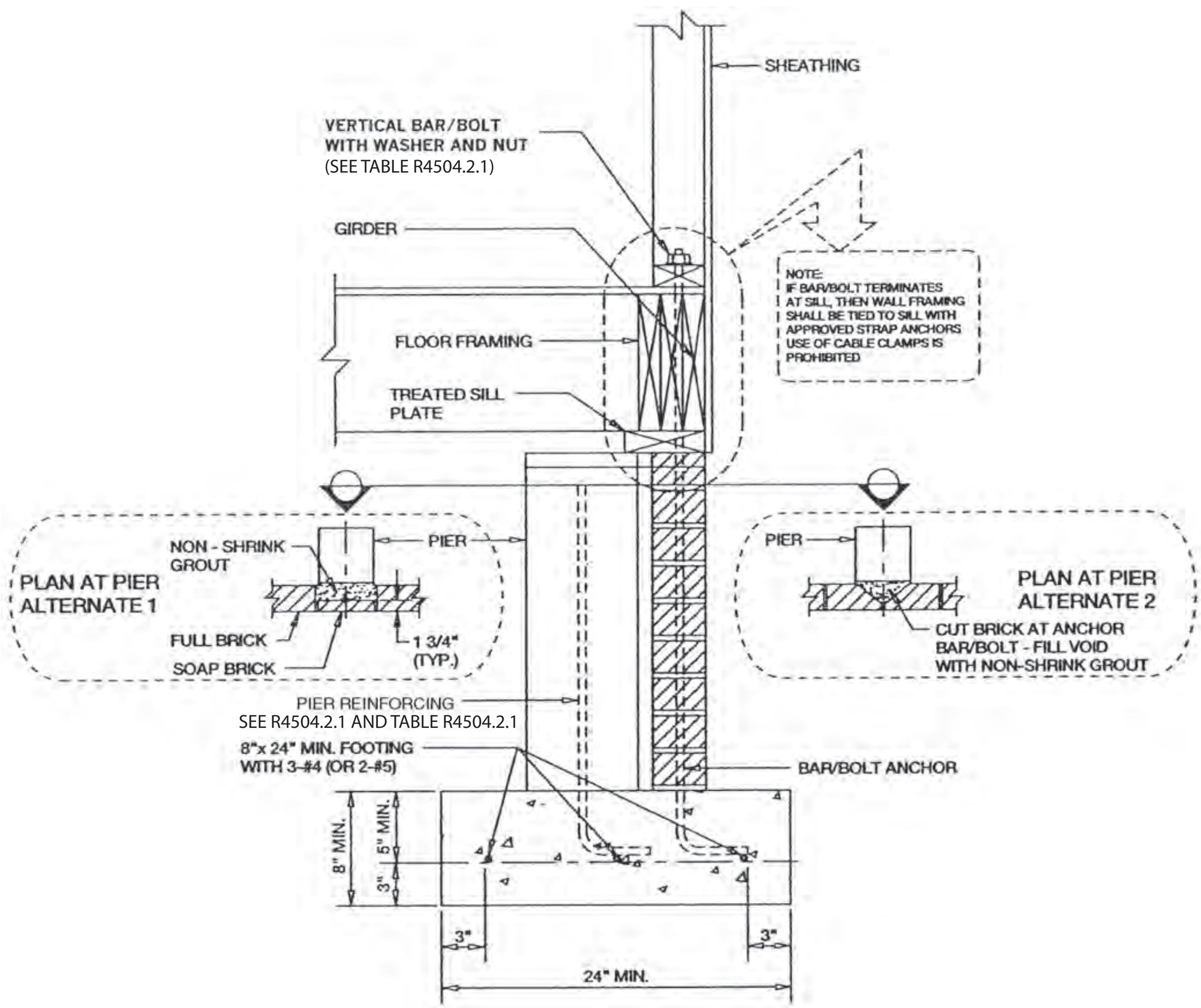


FIGURE R4503.2(c)
VENEER SHIRT WALL
PIER/CURTAIN WALL

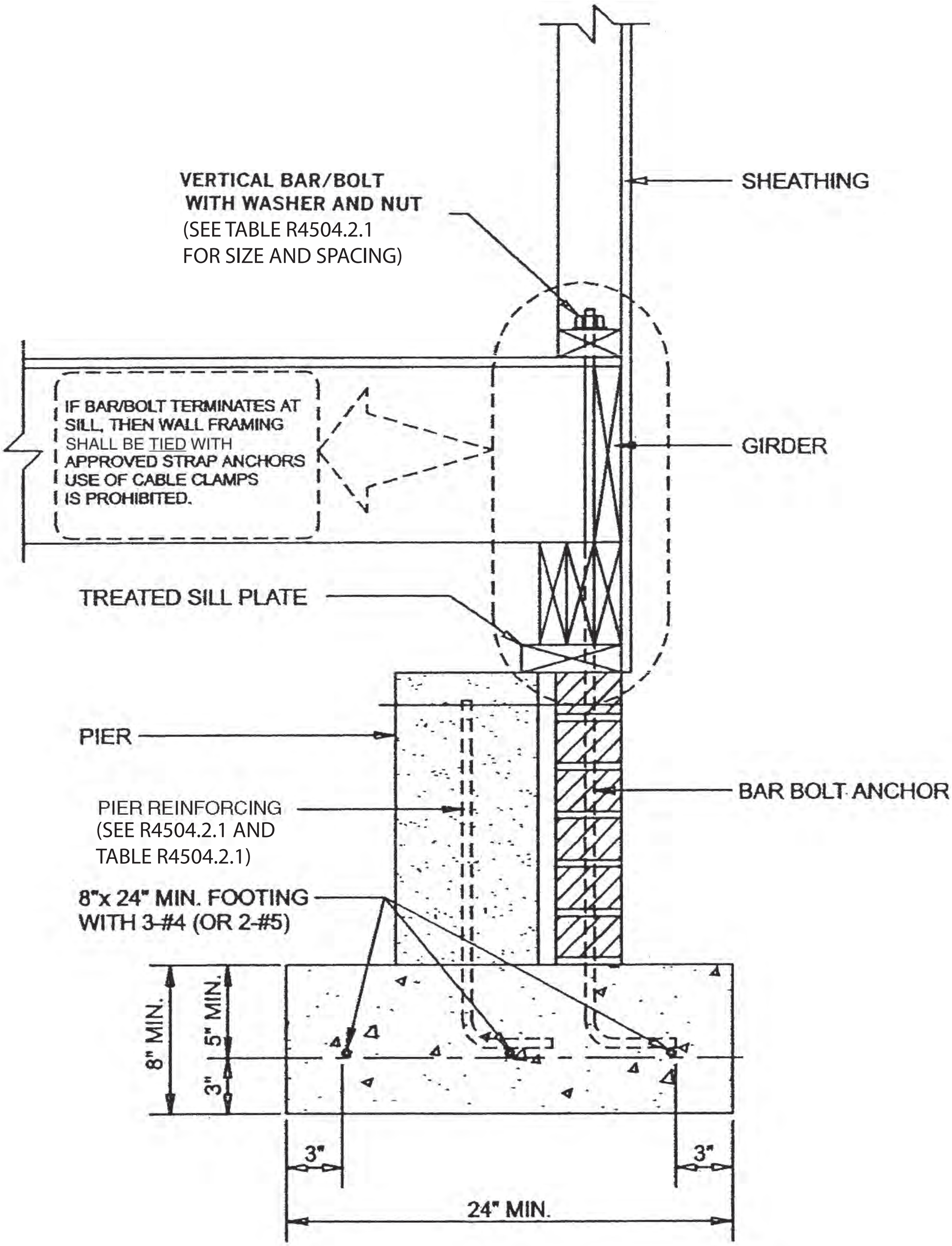


FIGURE R4503.2(d)
VENEER SHIRT WALL PIER/CURTAIN WALL

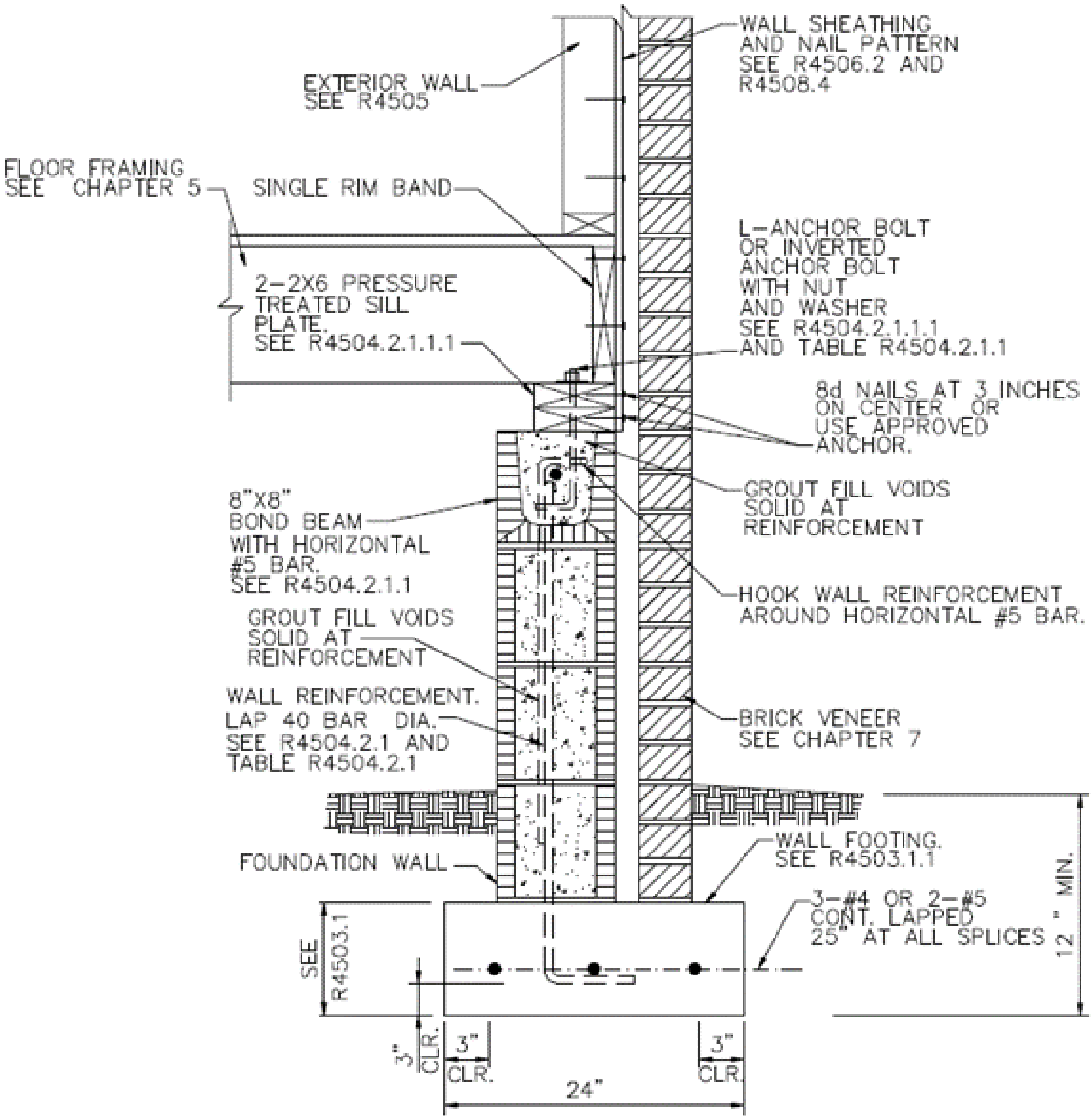


FIGURE R4504.2(a)
FOUNDATION WALL WITH BOND BEAM

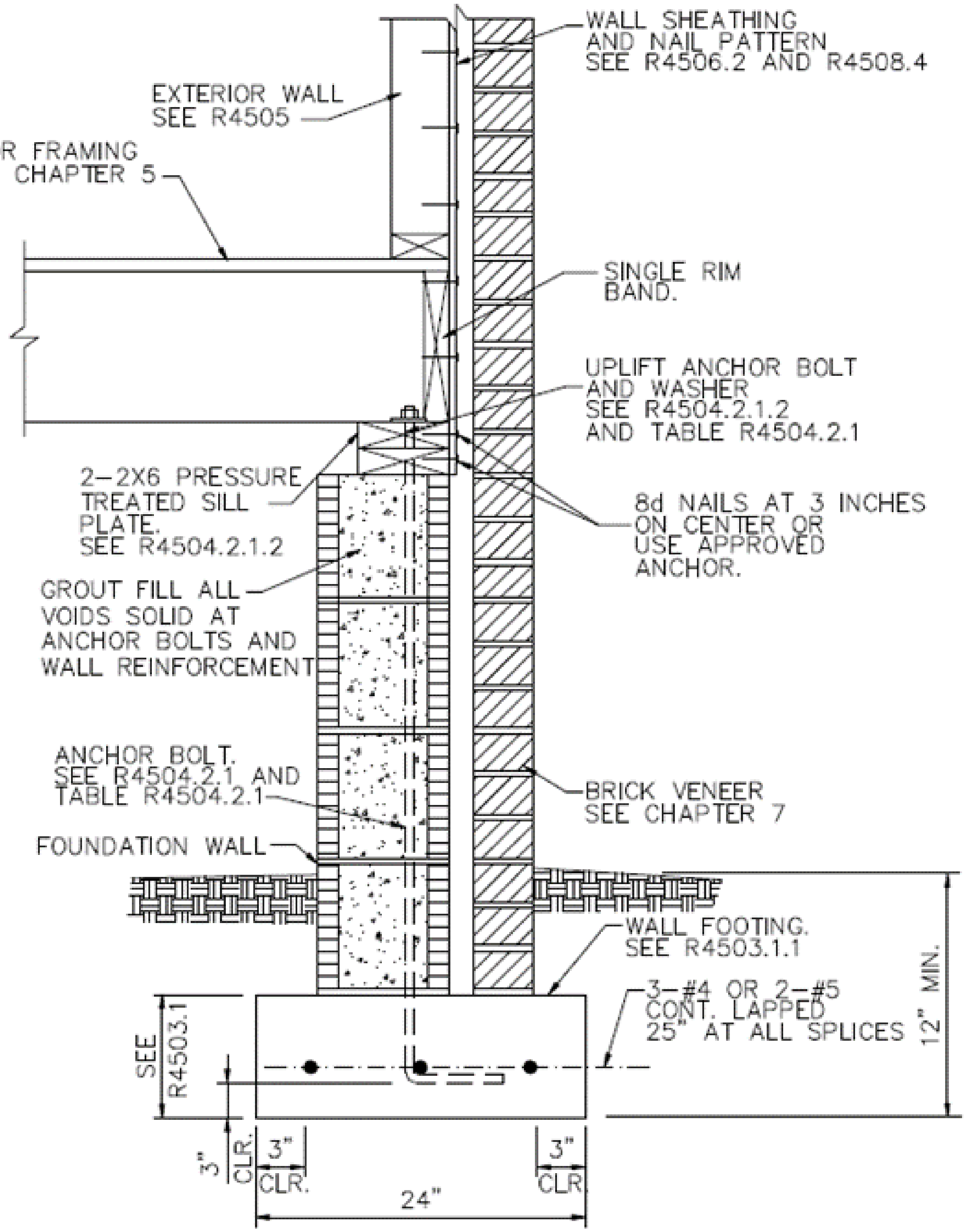


FIGURE R4504.2(b)
FOUNDATION WALL WITH UPLIFT ANCHOR BOLTS FROM FOOTING TO SILL PLATE

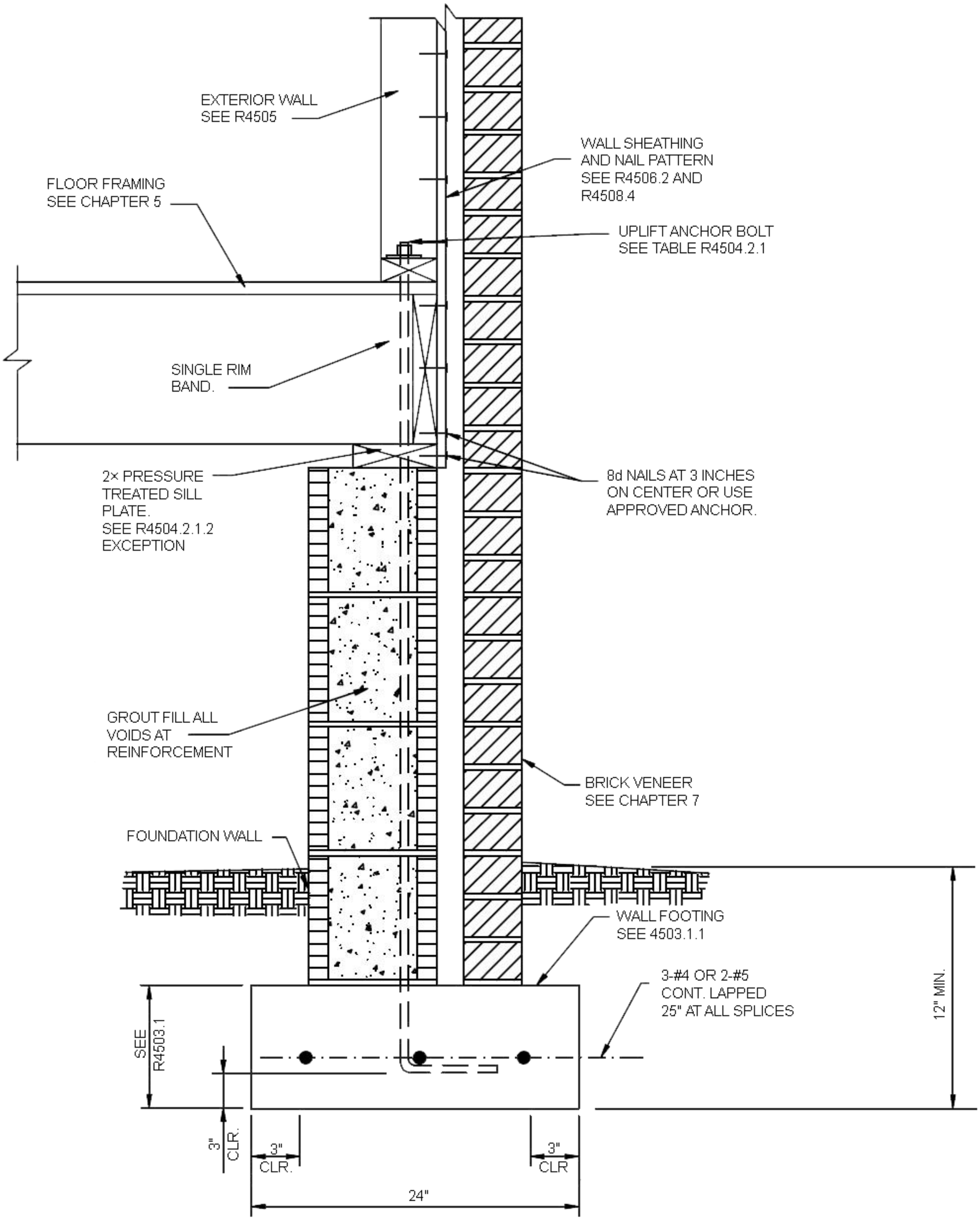


FIGURE R4504.2(c)
FOUNDATION WALL WITH UPLIFT ANCHOR BOLTS
CONTINUOUS FROM FOOTING TO EXTERIOR WALL FRAMING

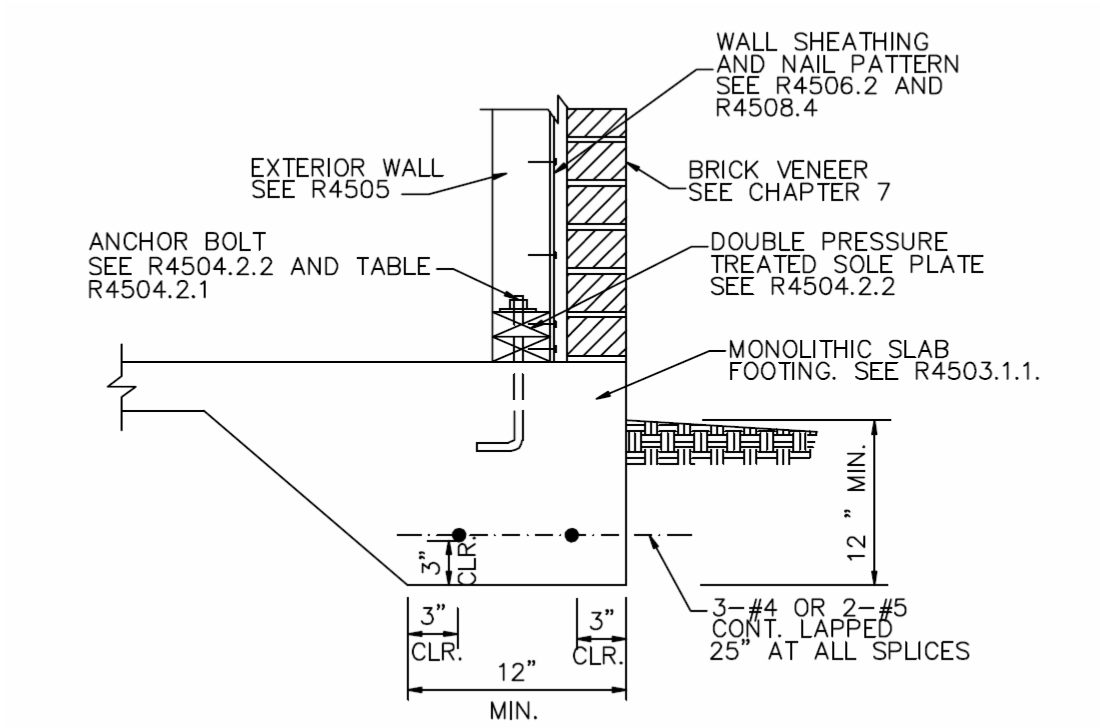


FIGURE R4504.2(d)
EXTERIOR CONCRETE SLAB ON GRADE FOOTING—
DOUBLE SOLE PLATE

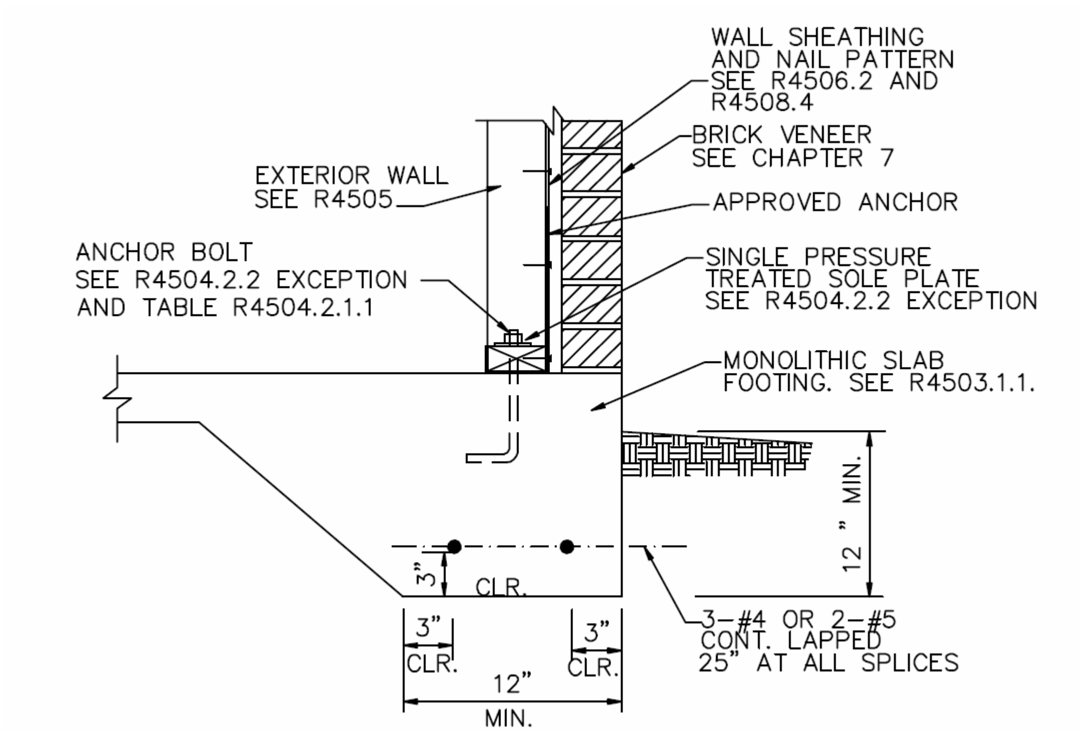


FIGURE R4504.2(e)
EXTERIOR CONCRETE SLAB ON GRADE FOOTING—
SINGLE SOLE PLATE

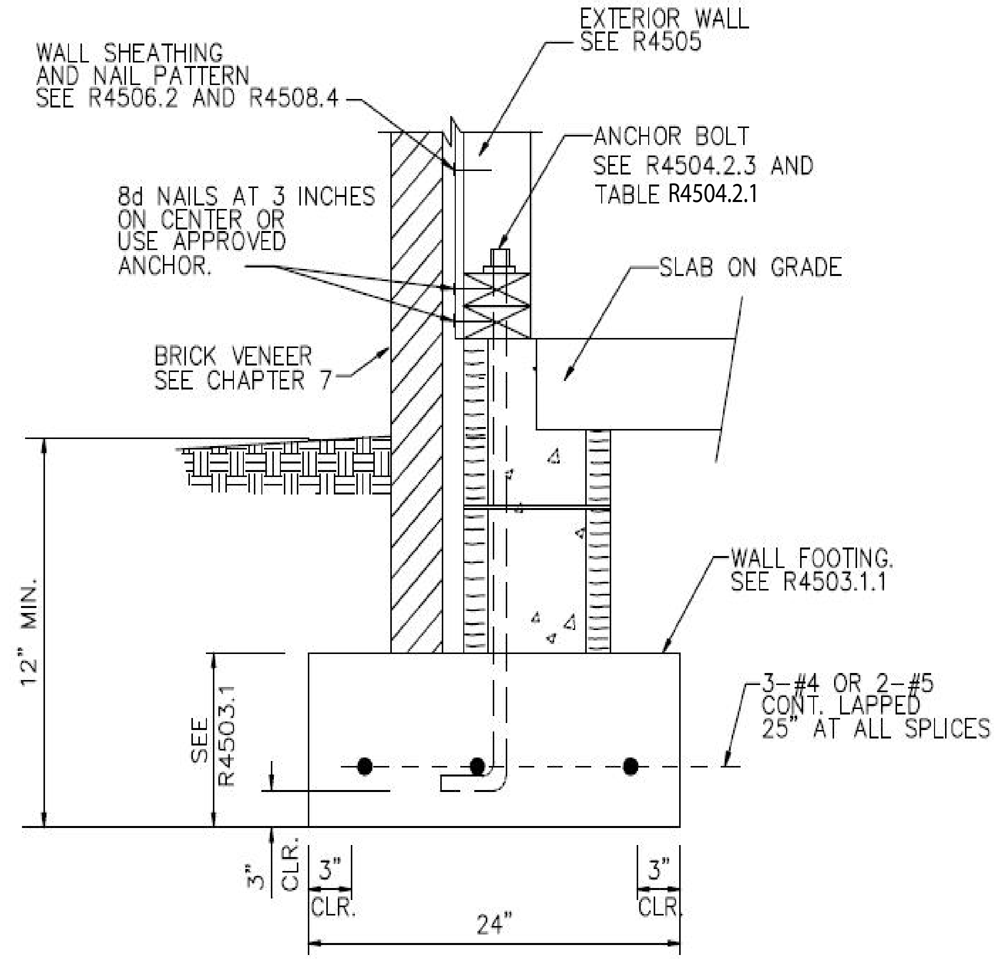


FIGURE R4504.2(f)
GROUND SUPPORTED SLAB WITH MASONRY STEM WALL

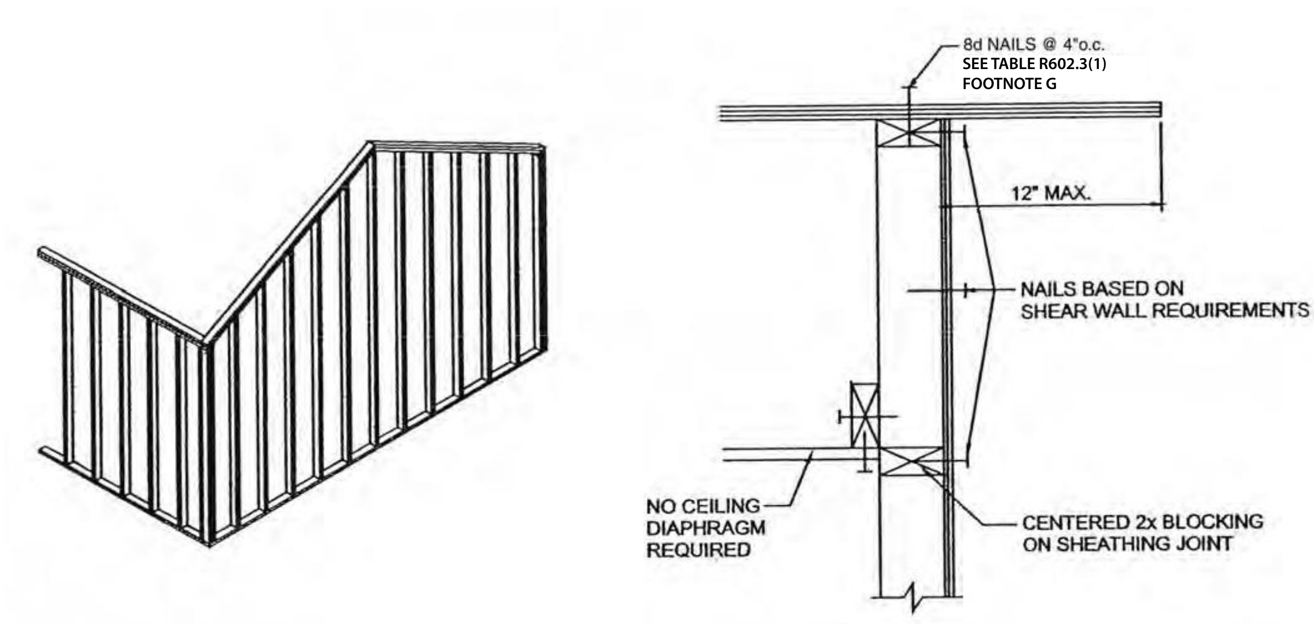


FIGURE R4506.5
GABLE ENDWALL BALLOON FRAMING PREFERRED METHOD

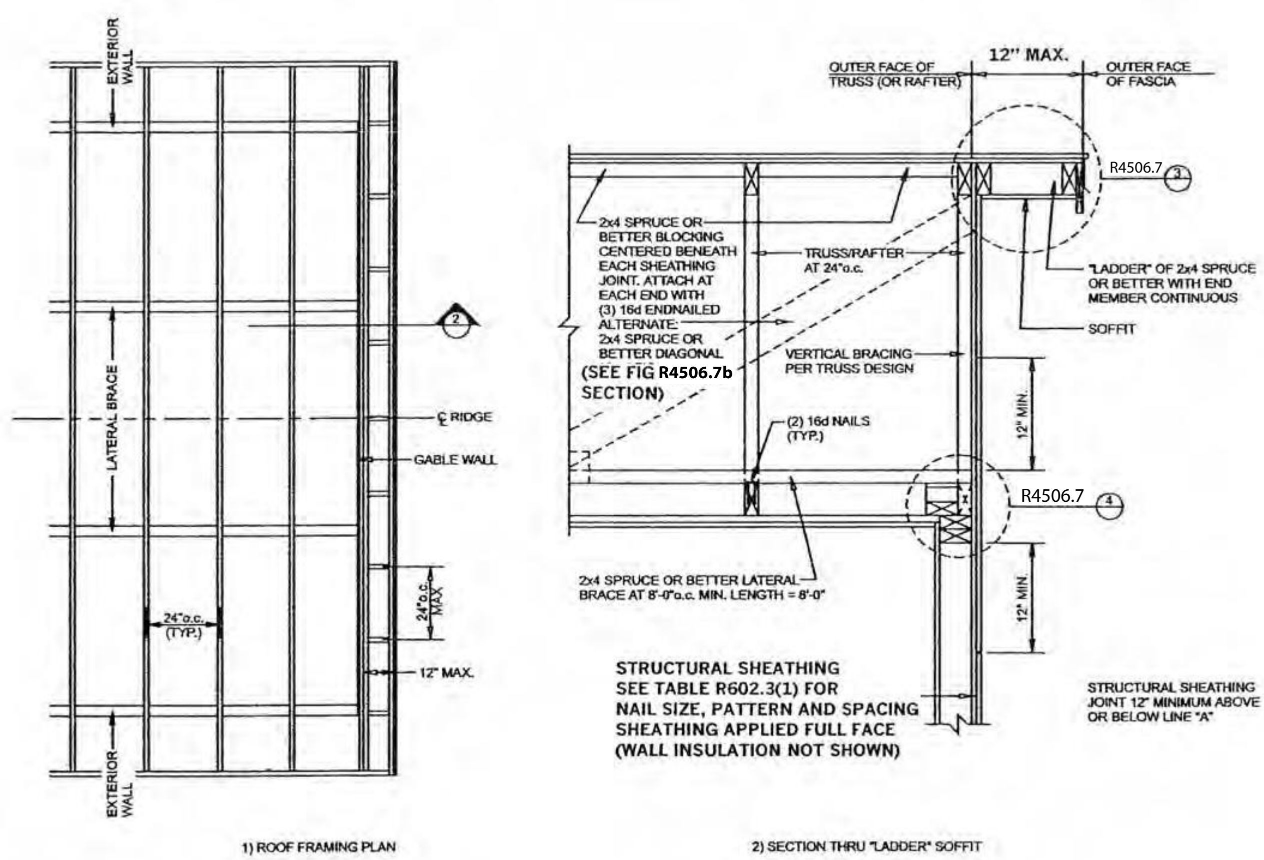
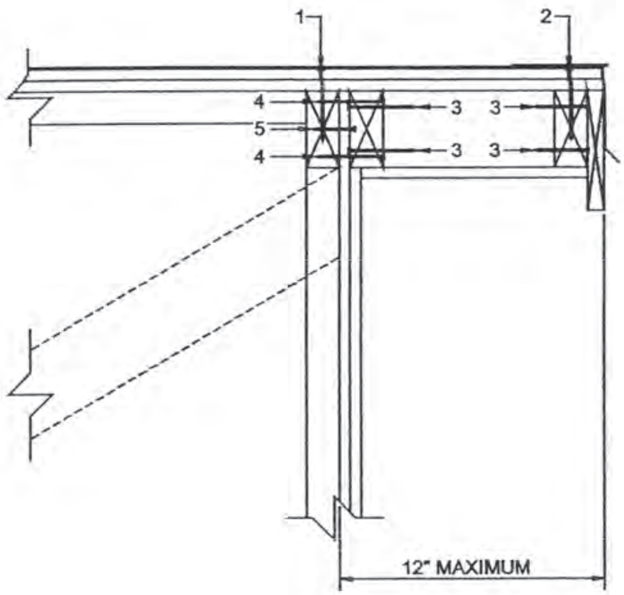
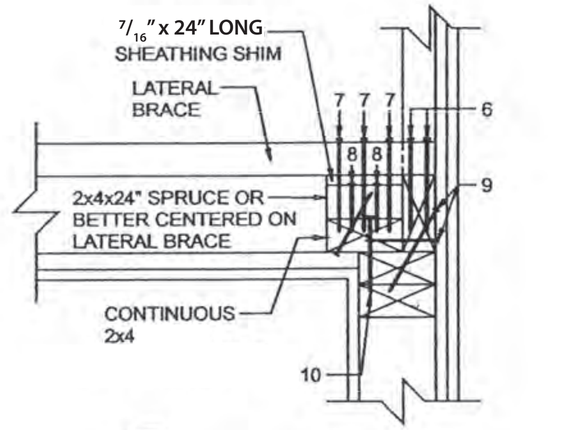


FIGURE R4506.7(a)
OVERHANG AT ENDWALLS



3 R4506.7a "LADDER" ATTACHMENT
NAILING DETAIL AT TOP OF GABLE



4 R4506.7a
NAILING DETAIL AT LATERAL BRACE

NAIL SCHEDULE			
MARK	No. & SIZE	SPACING	REMARKS
1	8d	4"o.c.	
2	8d	6"o.c.	
3	(2) 16d		EACH SIDE
4	(2) 16d	24"o.c.	
5	8d	6"o.c.	
6	(2) 16d		EACH TRUSS
7	(5) 16d		TYPICAL
8	(6) 16d (* TO 2x4 BELOW)		ALTERNATE: (8) 8d
9	16d	8"o.c.	ALTERNATE TOENAIL & ENDNAIL
10	16d	8"o.c.	

FIGURE R4506.7a—continued
OVERHANG AT ENDWALLS

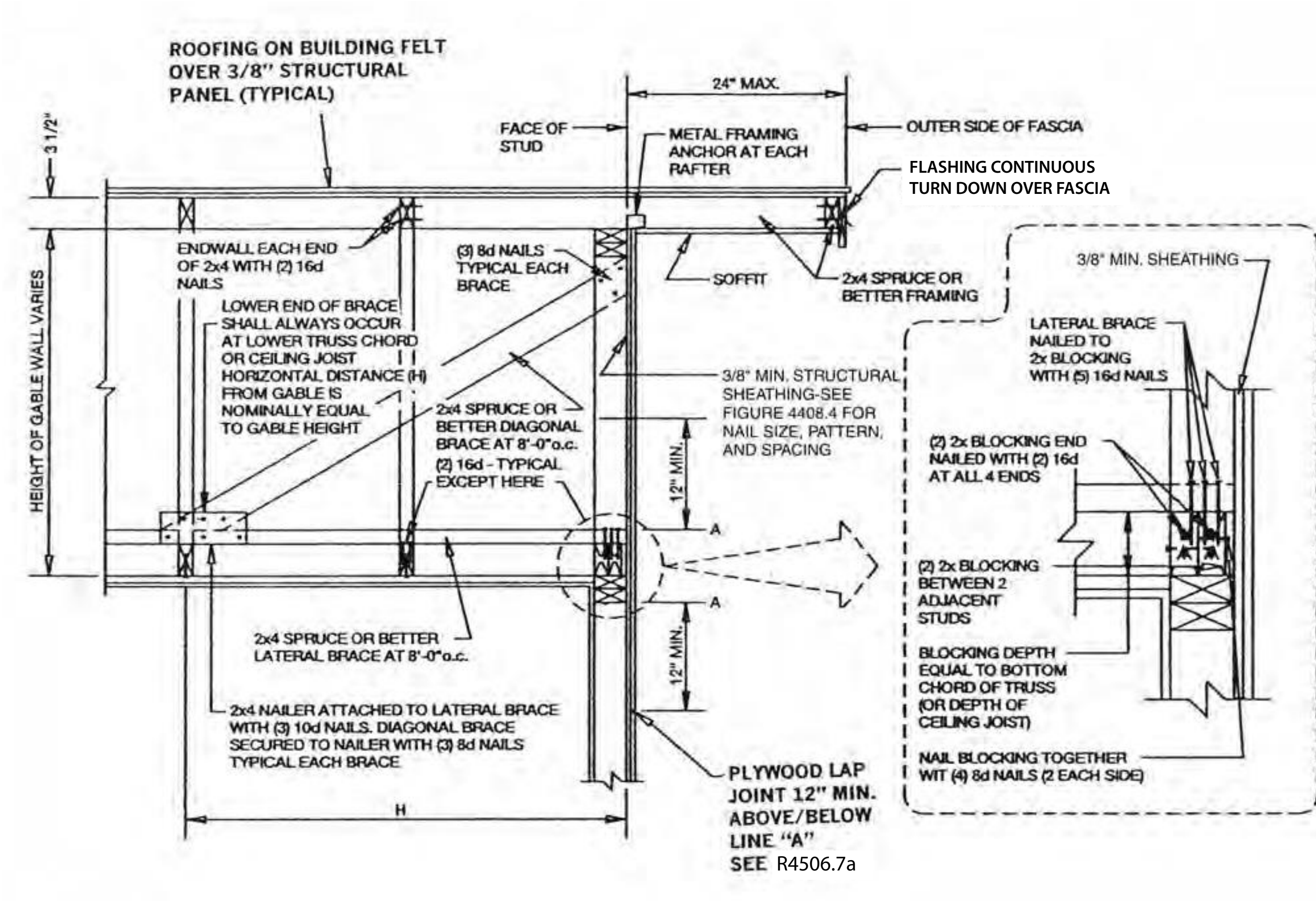


FIGURE R4506.7(b)
GABLE END OVERHANG

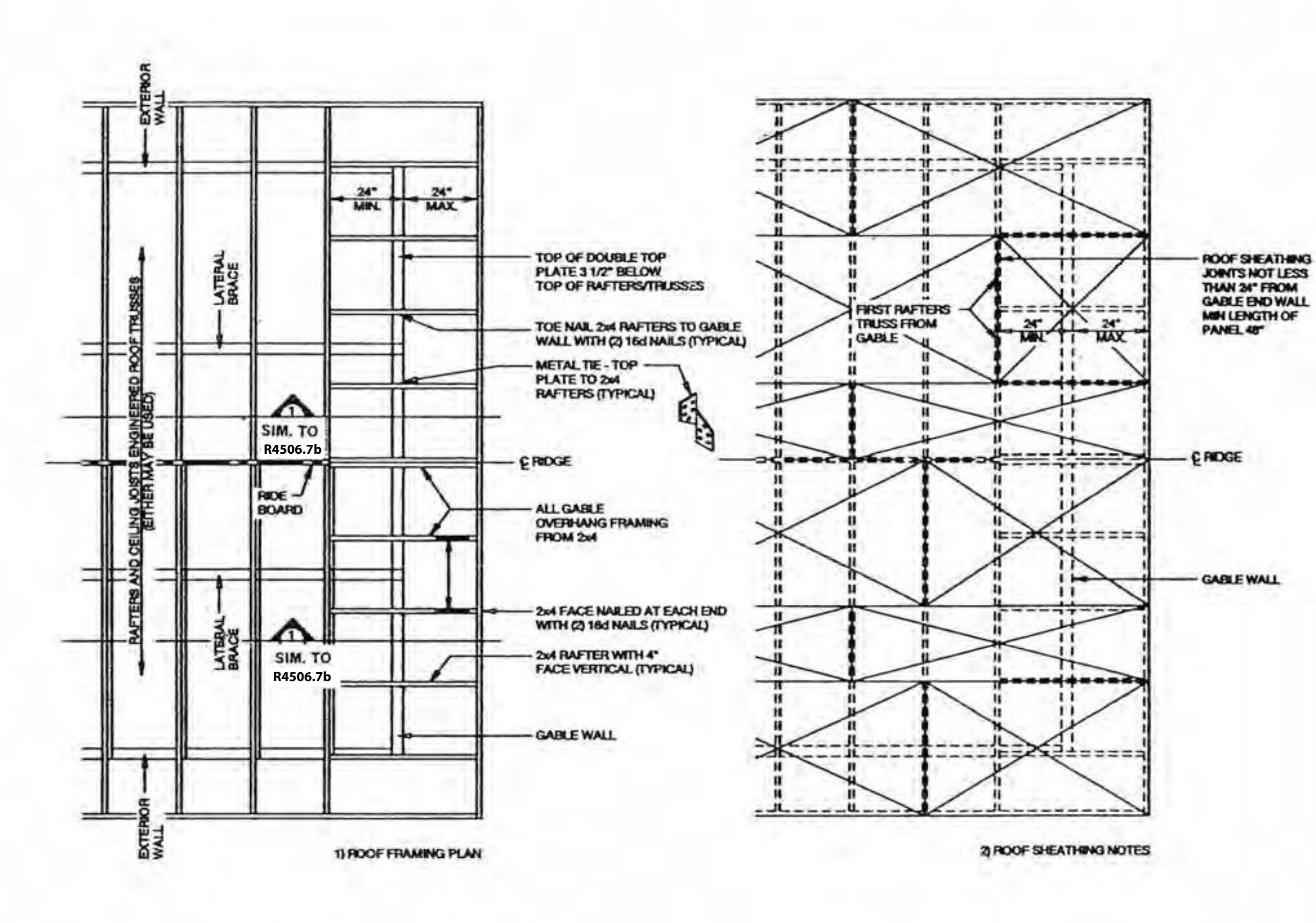


FIGURE R4506.7(c)
GABLE END OVERHANG

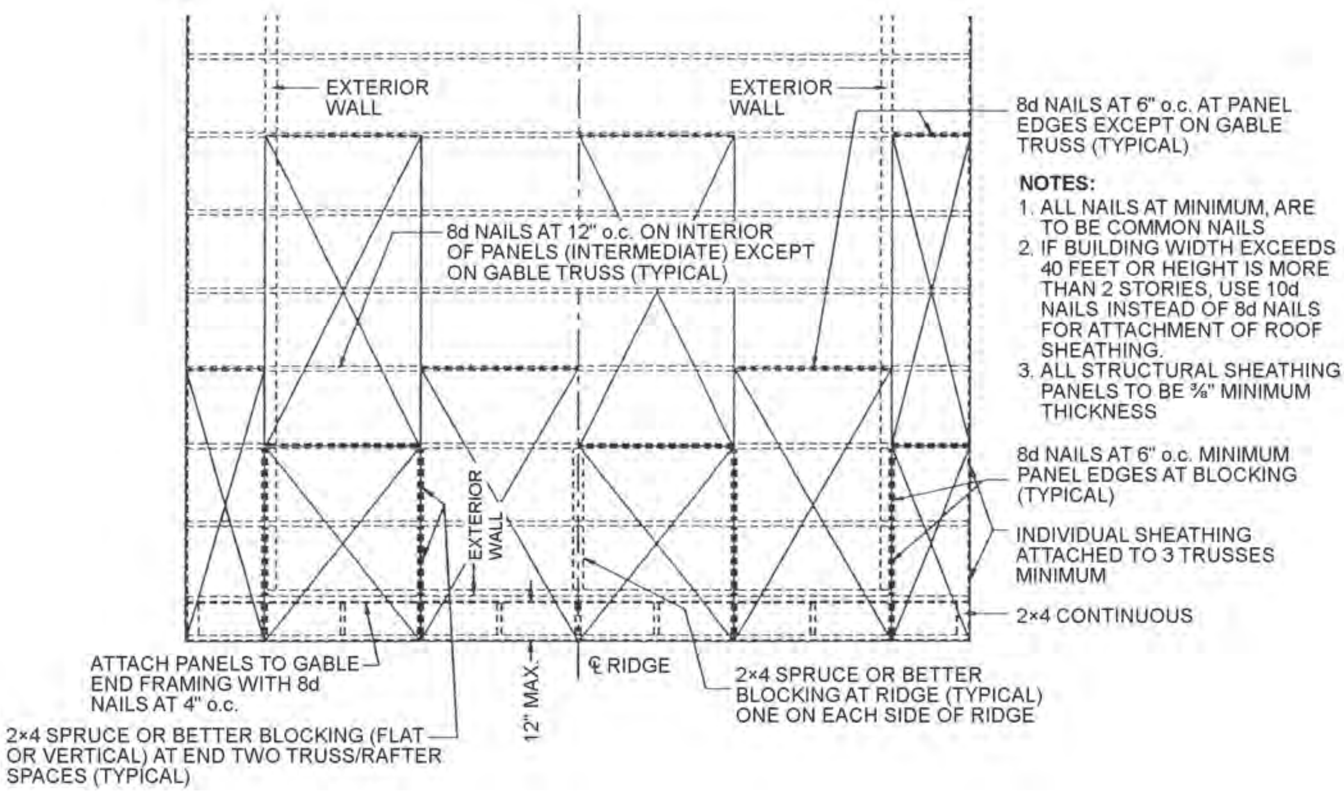


FIGURE R4506.8
ROOF SHEATHING ATTACHMENT PLAN

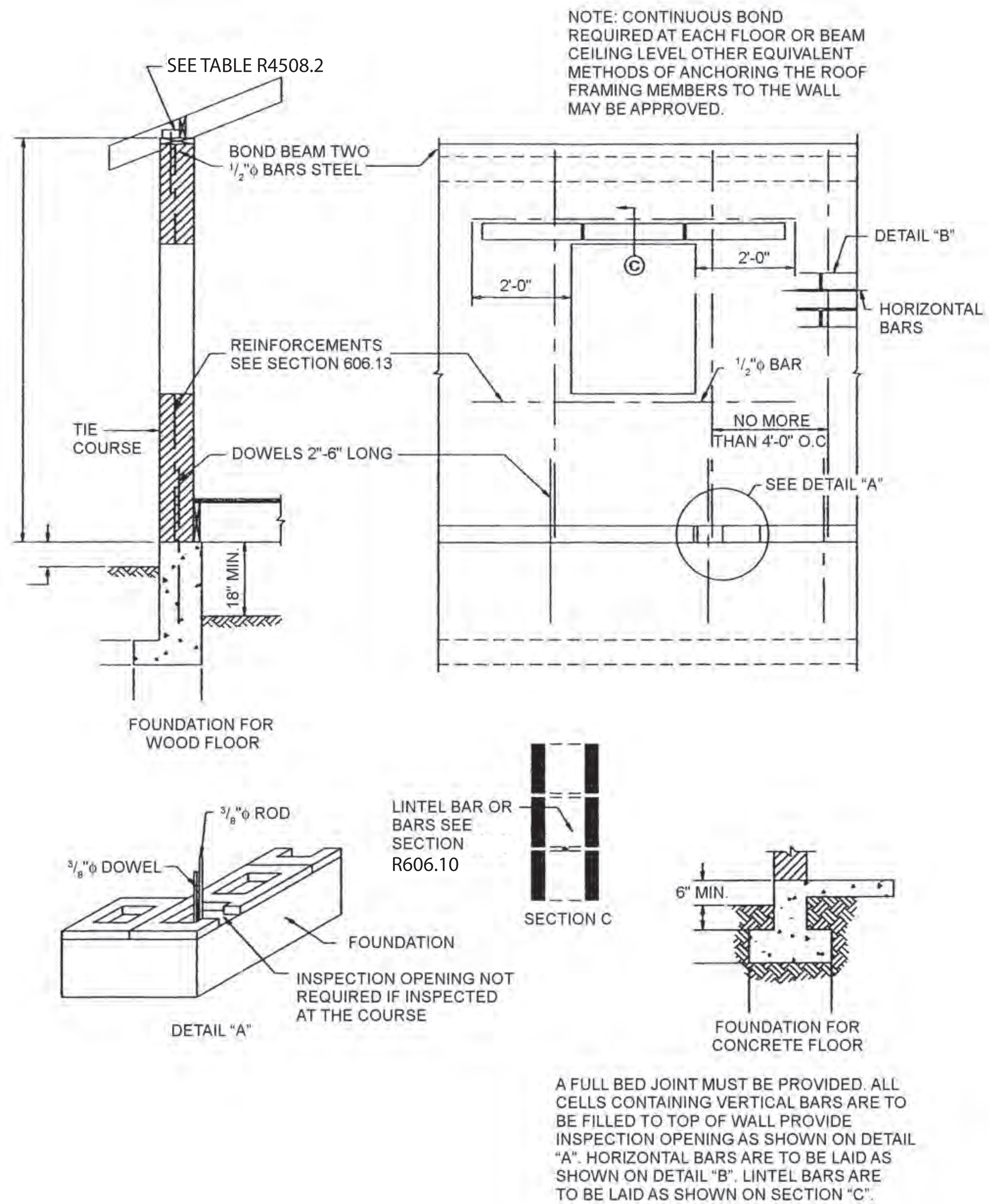


FIGURE R4507.1(a)
REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED GROUTED MASONRY CONSTRUCTION WHERE WIND ZONES ARE 140 MPH OR GREATER

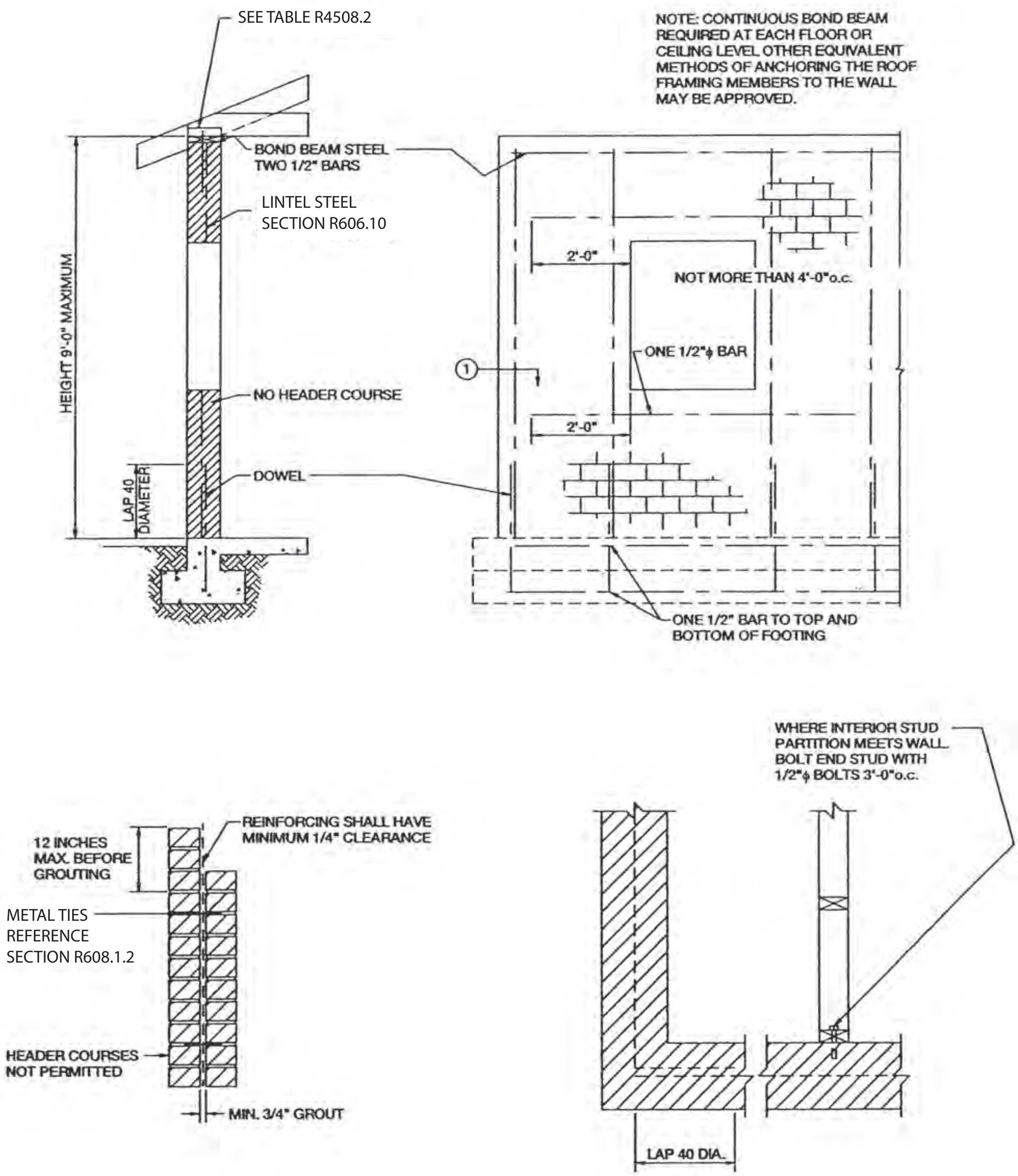


FIGURE R4507.1(b)
REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED HOLLOW-UNIT MASONRY CONSTRUCTION WHERE WIND ZONES ARE 140 MPH OR GREATER

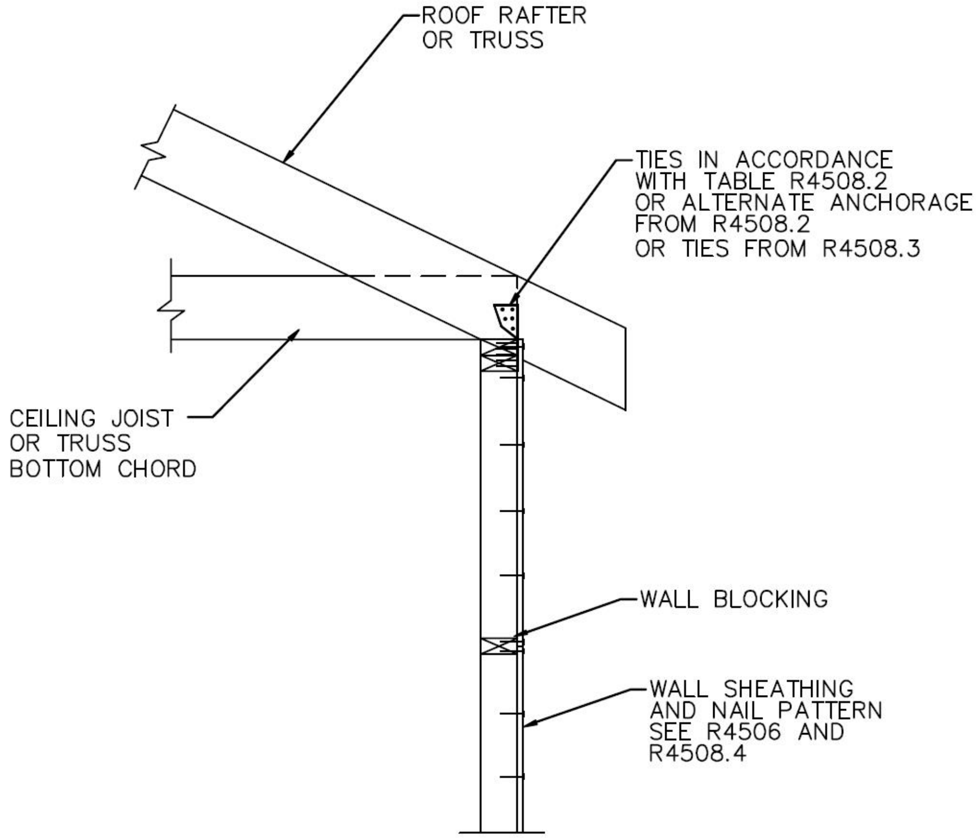


FIGURE R4508.3
ROOF RAFTER/TRUSS ANCHORAGE

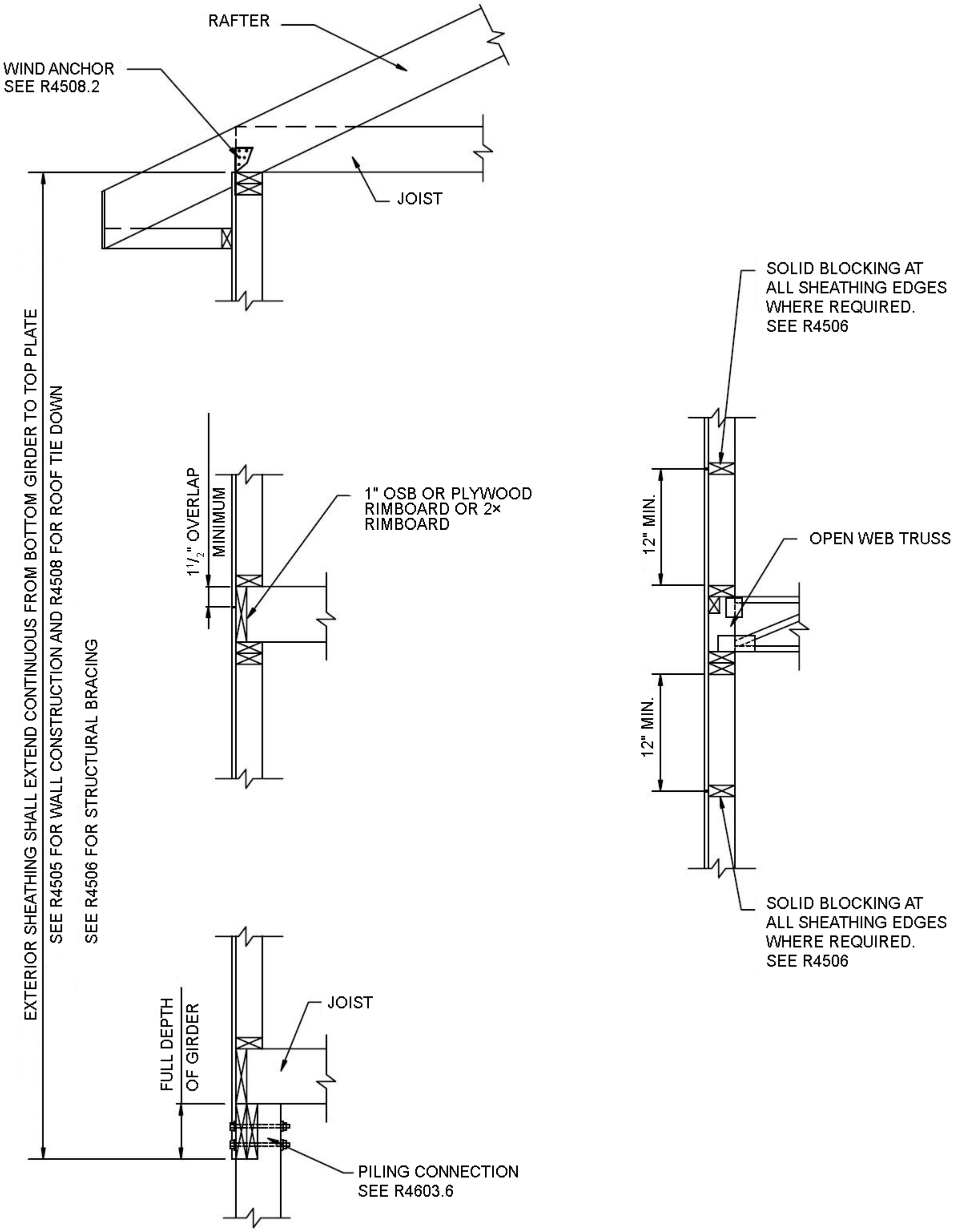


FIGURE R4508.4(a)
TWO STORY WALL SECTION—PANEL ATTACHMENT

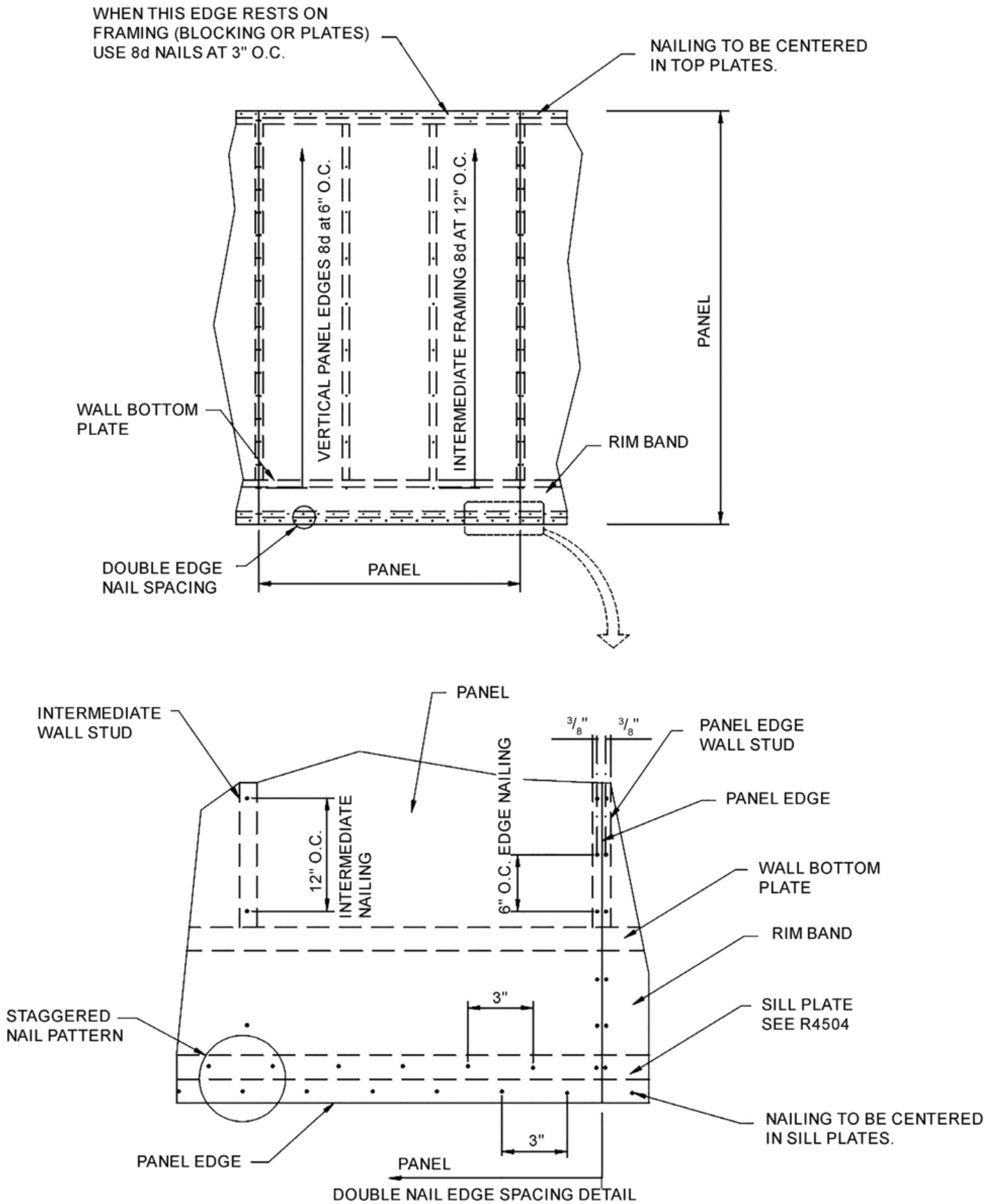


FIGURE R4508.4(b)
PANEL ATTACHMENT TO COUNTER UPLIFT HORIZONTAL OR VERTICAL

CHAPTER 46

COASTAL AND FLOOD PLAIN CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS

This chapter is a North Carolina addition and not part of the 2021 International Residential Code.
There will be no margin markings added.

SECTION R4601 PURPOSE, APPLICATION AND SCOPE

R4601.1 General. The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to all construction located within areas identified by governmental agency (state and federal) as coastal high hazard areas, ocean hazard areas, the regulatory flood plain areas, and all areas designated as 150 mph (67 m/s) wind zone. See Table R301.2(1).

SECTION R4602 DEFINITIONS

See Chapter 2 for definitions.

SECTION R4603 PILING STANDARDS

R4603.1. General. All one- and two-family dwellings in areas identified as coastal high hazard areas or ocean hazard areas shall be constructed on a pile foundation of wood or concrete.

R4603.2 Concrete piles. Concrete piles are permitted to be used if made and installed in accordance with the *North Carolina Building Code*, Chapter 18.

R4603.3 Size of wood piles. Round timber piles shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter at building level and have a minimum tip diameter of 6 inches (152 mm). Square timber piles shall not be less than 8 inches square (0.005 m^2), nominal. Piles supporting uncovered stairs, uncovered walkways and uncovered decks shall be 6 inches × 6 inches (153 mm × 153 mm) minimum, or if round, have a minimum tip diameter of 6 inches (153 mm). Piles supporting uncovered stairs, uncovered walkways and uncovered decks less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above grade are permitted to be 4 inches × 4 inches (102 mm × 102 mm) minimum.

R4603.4 Required depth of piles. Pile tip shall extend to a depth of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) below the natural grade or finished grade of the lot, whichever is lower. All pilings within the ocean hazard area shall have a tip penetration of at least 5 feet (1524 mm) below mean sea level or 16 feet (4877 mm) below average original grade, whichever is least. Structures within ocean hazard areas that are placed upon the site behind a line 60 times the annual erosion rate away from the most seaward line of stable natural vegetation are exempt from this additional tip penetration requirement.

R4603.5 Spacing of wood piles. The maximum center-to-center spacing of wood piles shall not be more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center under load-bearing sills, beams, or girders. For dwellings having more than two stories above piles or where the piling spacing exceeds 8 feet (2438 mm) on center, the pile foundation shall be designed by a *registered design professional*. Pile spacing in the nonload-bearing direction are permitted to be 12 feet (305 mm).

R4603.6 Tying and bracing of wood piles. Beams and girders shall fully bear on pilings and butt joints shall occur over pilings. Sills, beams or girders shall be attached to the piling, using either bolts or screws at each piling connection in accordance with Table 4603.6 and Figure R4603.6(1). When the piling is notched so that the cross-section is reduced below 50 percent or the girder is top bearing, sills, beams or girders shall be attached using $^3/_{16}$ × 4 × 18-inch (5 × 102 × 467 mm) hot-dipped galvanized straps, one each side, fastened top and bottom with either bolts or screws in accordance with Table R4603.6 and Figure R4603.6(b) and Figure R4603.6(c). Where butt joints occur over the piling and screws are used, there shall be two straps on each side of the piling, having a minimum size of $^3/_{16}$ × 2 × 18 inches (5 × 51 × 467 mm), with four self-drilling screws as described below in each end.

Bracing of pile foundations is required where the clear height from ground to sill, beam or girder exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm) or the dwelling is more than one story above piles. A line of X-bracing is defined as a row of piles with X-bracing provided in at least two bays. A line of X-bracing shall be provided at all exterior pile lines. Where the perimeter lines of X-bracing exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm), an additional line of X-bracing shall be provided near the center of the building. See Figure R4603.6(e). X-bracing shall be with 2 × 10s through bolted with two $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) bolts at each end. The *code*

TABLE R4603.6
MINIMUM FASTENING OF CORNER BEAMS AND GIRDER TO PILINGS

AMOUNT PILING IS NOTCHED	BEAM/GIRDER CONTINUOUS		BEAM/GIRDER BUTT JOINT	
	Bolts	Screws	Bolts	Screws
≤ 50%	two $^5/_8$″ bolts[b]	four screws[c]	four $^5/_8$″ bolts[b]	eight screws[c]
> 50%[a]	two $^5/_8$″ bolts[b]	four screws[c]	four $^5/_8$″ bolts[b]	eight screws[c]

For SI:

a. Where piling is notched over 50%, use strap as required in Section R4603.6. Install the specified number of bolts or screws in each end of the strap.

b. Bolts shall be $^5/_8$ inch diameter hot-dipped galvanized through bolts with nuts and washers.

c. Screws shall be 0.270 inch (6.9 mm) minimum in diameter, hot-dipped galvanized to a minimum of A153, Class C, and having a minimum length of 4 inches, and also shall be long enough to penetrate at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) through the remaining pile and into the girder.

official is permitted to accept alternative bracing designs if they bear the seal of a *registered design professional*.

R4603.6.1 Tying at corners. At corners, girders shall be connected to the pile with a minimum $^3/_{16}$ × 4 × 18-inch (5 × 102 × 467 mm) hot-dipped galvanized strap bolted with two $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) galvanized through bolts on the exterior and a minimum L4 × 4 × $^3/_{16}$ × 1 foot 6 inches (102 × 5 × 467 mm) galvanized steel angle bolted with two $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) galvanized through bolts on the interior in accordance with Figure R4603.6(d), or with a minimum of (2) $^3/_{16}$ inch × 4 inch × 18 inch (5 × 102 × 467 mm) hot-dipped galvanized straps installed on the outside of the girders with fasteners per Table R4603.6.1 and in accordance with Figure R4603.6(e).

R4603.6.2 Bracing of pilings. Bracing of pile foundations is required where the clear height from ground to sill, beam or girder exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm) or the dwelling is more than one story above piles. A line of X-bracing is defined as a row of piles with X-bracing provided in at least two bays. A line of X-bracing shall be provided at all exterior pile lines. Where the perimeter lines of X-bracing exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm), an additional line of X-bracing shall be provided near the center of the building. See Figure R4603.6(f). X-bracing shall be with 2 × 10s through bolted with two $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) bolts at each end. The code official is permitted to accept alternative bracing designs if they bear the seal of a registered design professional.

R4603.7. Protection against decay. The minimum net retention of preservatives shall be in accordance with AWPA U1.

R4603.8 Piling may be placed by auger, jetting or drop hammer. Piling shall receive a final set by drop hammer or other approved methods, acceptable to the *code official* to ensure compaction of material at end bearing.

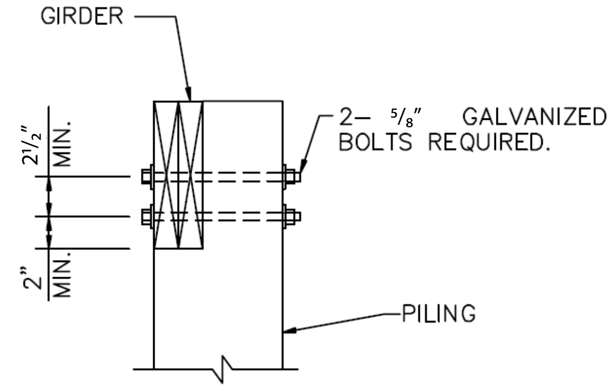


FIGURE R4603.6(a)
PILING NOTCHED LESS THAN 50%

TABLE R4603.6.1
MINIMUM FASTENING OF CORNER BEAMS AND GIRDER TO PILINGS

AMOUNT PILING IS NOTCHED	ASSOCIATED FIGURE	HARDWARE	FASTENERS
> 50%[a]	R4603.6(d)	one $^3/_{16}$" × 4" × 18"	six $^5/_8$" bolts[b]
		one L 4 × 4 × $^3/_{16}$" × 18"	
	R4603.6(e)	two $^3/_{16}$" × 4" × 18"	eight 0.27"x4" each strap[c]

For SI:

a. Where piling is notched over 50%, use strap as required in Section R4603.6. Install the specified number of bolts or screws in each end of the strap.

b. Bolts shall be $^5/_8$ inch diameter hot-dipped galvanized through bolts with nuts and washers.

c. Screws shall be 0.270 inch (6.9 mm) minimum in diameter, hot-dipped galvanized to a minimum of A153, Class C, and have a minimum length of 4 inches or shall be long enough to penetrate through the girder and a minimum of 1 inch (25.4 mm) into the remaining pile, whichever is greater.

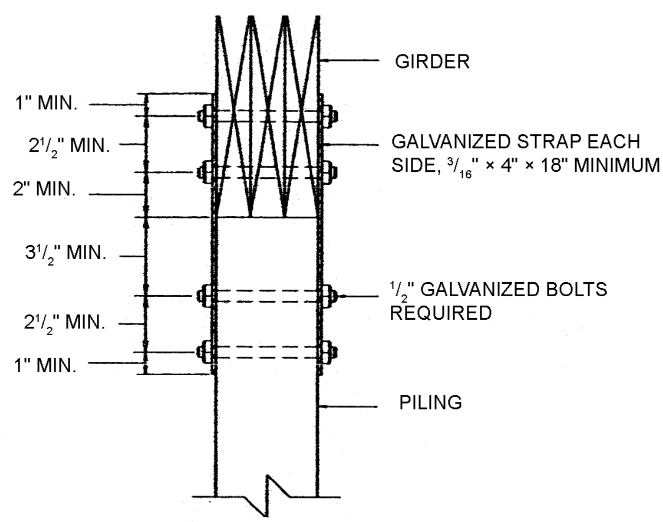


FIGURE R4603.6(b)
TOP MOUNTED GIRDER

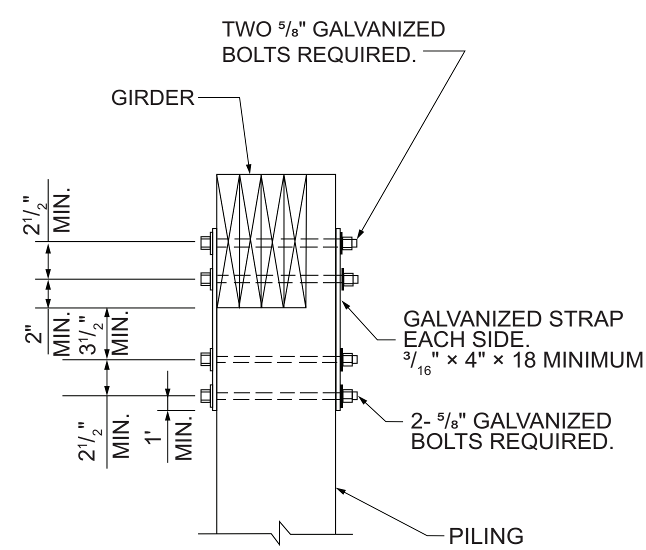


FIGURE R4603.6(c)
PILING NOTCHED MORE THAN 50%

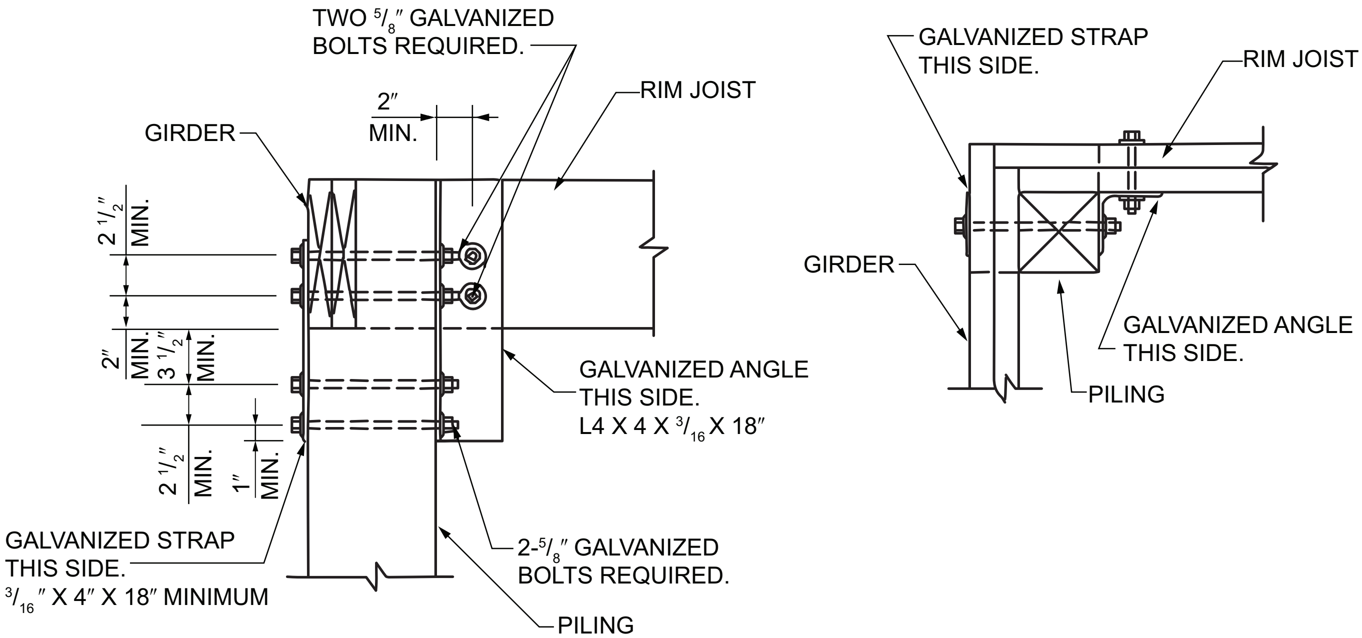


FIGURE R4603.6(d)
CORNER PILE CONNECTION

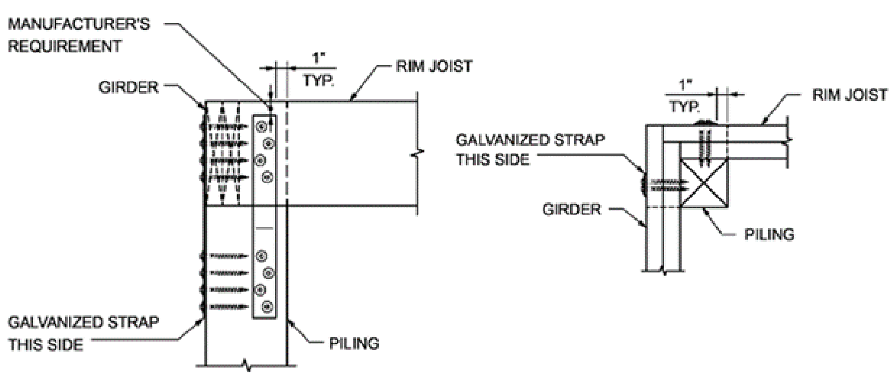


FIGURE R4603.6(e)
CORNER PILE CONNECTION

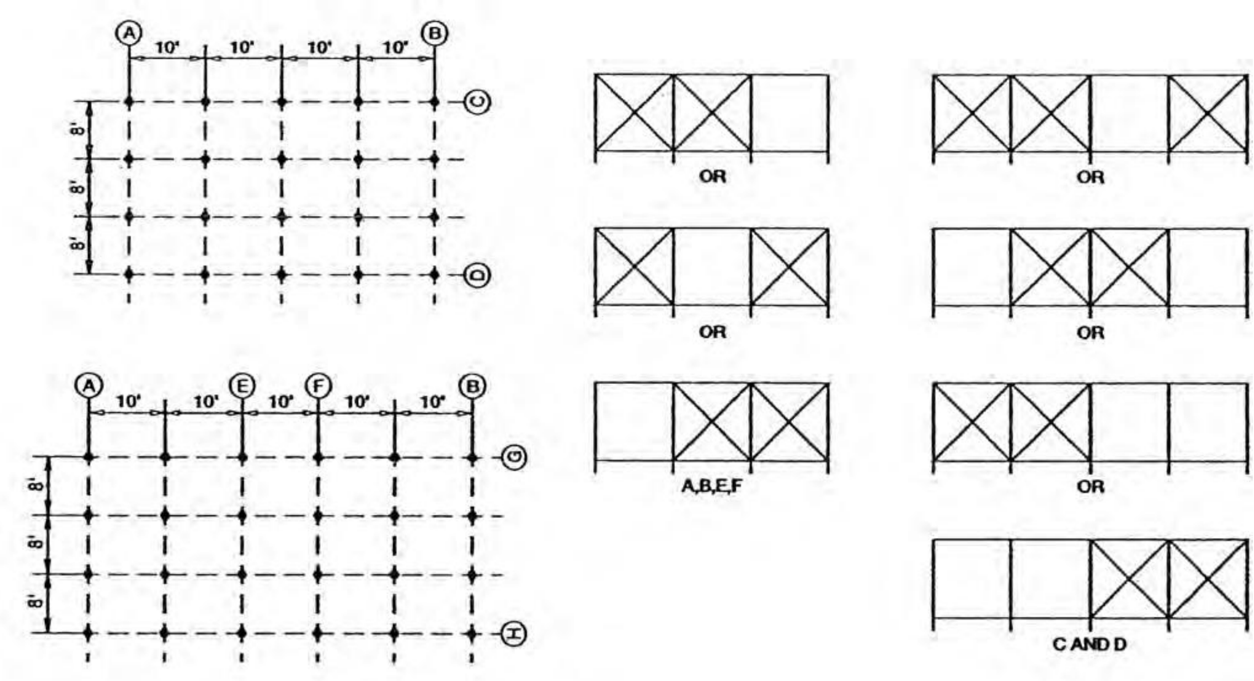


FIGURE R4603.6(f)
ELEVATIONS
(SHOWING POSSIBLE ARRANGEMENT OF X-BRACING IN LINE) (G AND H SIMILAR)

SECTION R4604
ELEVATION STANDARDS

R4604.1. Lowest structural member. The lowest structural member, excluding pilings and bracing supporting the lowest habitable floor in the coastal high hazard area and ocean hazard area, shall be elevated above the base flood elevation.

R4604.2. First habitable floor. The elevation of the first habitable floor of all structures in the regulatory flood plain except in the coastal high hazard areas shall be above the base flood elevation.

> **Exception:** This requirement does not apply to the addition, renovation or reconstruction to any building that was constructed prior to the initial Flood Insurance Study for that area if the addition, renovation or reconstruction does not exceed 50 percent of the present market value of the structure.

R4604.3. Walls below flood elevation. Where walls are constructed below flood elevation in coastal high hazard area and ocean hazard area, they shall be constructed in a manner to eliminate wave forces on the piling.

SECTION R4605
CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS AND METHODS STANDARDS

R4605.1. General. The requirements of Sections R4605.2 through R4605.8 are applicable in the coastal high-hazard area, the ocean hazard area, and all areas defined as 150 mph (67 m/s) wind zone.

R4605.2. Roof anchorage. Every rafter or roof truss shall be anchored to the bearing wall as required by Section R4508. At the ridges, rafters shall have a minimum 1 × 6 or 2 × 4 collar or wind beam. Every third rafter not to exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) on center shall be anchored vertically with minimum 1 × 6 or 2 × 4 from its midpoint to ceiling joists below.

R4605.3 Wood frame wall construction. Maximum stud spacing shall be 16 inches o.c. (406 mm) for 2 × 4s and 24 inches (610 mm) for 2 × 6s. See Section R4505 for wall construction requirements. See Section R4508 for uplift anchorage requirements.

R4605.4. Design by registered design professional. Equal or better methods of tying structures together and to foundations designed for a specific building by a *registered design professional* shall be accepted by the *code official*.

R4605.5 Building anchorage.

1. For masonry buildings, the roof structure, including rafters and joists, shall be anchored to the wall in accordance with Section R606.11. All mortar used for masonry walls shall be Type M or S.
2. For masonry or wood frame buildings, all sills, beams or girders that resist uplift (including interior sills, beams, girders, and joists where the perimeter is unenclosed) shall be anchored to the footing in accordance with Section R4504. Footing dowel bars shall have an 8-inch (203 mm) hook.
3. Where wood partitions and masonry walls join, the stud abutting the masonry shall be double and bolted to the masonry with three $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) galvanized bolts.

4. Steel and wooden columns and posts, including porch columns, shall be anchored with metal ties and bolts to their foundations and to the members that they support.

R4605.6 Insulation. Insulation installed in floors in exposed areas under buildings elevated on pilings shall be held in place with plywood with exterior glue or other material approved by the *code official*.

R4605.7 Accessory structures. Detached *accessory structures* and out buildings shall be bolted to their foundation or otherwise constructed so as to prevent overturning.

SECTION R4606
FASTENER CORROSION RESISTANCE

R4606.1 Fastener corrosion resistance. In the Coastal High Hazard Area, the Corrosion Resistance Area and the Ocean Hazard Area, all metal connectors and fasteners outside of conditioned spaces shall be hot-dipped galvanized steel after fabrication and meet ASTM A153. Exposed metal connectors, such as tie-down straps on porches, decks, and areas under the structure, shall be a minimum $^{3}/_{16}$-inch (5 mm) thick, and shall be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication and meet ASTM A123 or ASTM A153. Stainless steel light-gage metal connectors shall be permitted in exposed or partially exposed locations. Metal connectors of approved equivalent corrosion-resistant material are permitted to be accepted. See Table R4606.1.

TABLE R4606.1[a]
CORROSION RESISTANCE

	OPEN (exterior, porches, under house)	EXPOSURE LEVEL VENTED/ENCLOSED (attic, floor trusses, enclosed crawl spaces and stud cavity)	CONDITIONED (heated/cooled living areas)
Nails, staples, screws	Hot-dipped galvanized	Hot-dipped galvanized	—
Nuts, bolts, washers, tie rods	Hot-dipped galvanized	Hot-dipped galvanized	—
Steel connection plates & straps ($^{3}/_{16}''$ minimum thickness)	Hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication	Hot-dipped galvanized	—
Sheet metal connectors, wind anchors, joists hangers, steel joists and beams	Stainless steel or hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication	Hot-dipped galvanized after plate fabrication or triple galvanized[b]	Hot-dipped galvanized or triple galvanized[b]
Truss plates	Stainless steel or hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication	Hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication, stainless steel, triple galvanized[b] or in accordance with TPI-1 of the Truss Plate Institute within 6′-0″ of a gable louver, ridge or soffit vent. Otherwise, standard galvanized[b].	Standard galvanized

For SI:
a. Applies only to structures located in Coastal High-Hazard Area, Corrosion-Resistance Area and Ocean Hazard Area.
b. Triple galvanizing—G185, standard galvanizing—G60, both per ASTM A653/A653M.

CHAPTER 47

WOOD DECKS

SECTION R4701 GENERAL

R4701.1 Decks. Wood-framed decks shall be in accordance with this section. Decks shall be designed for the live load required in Section R301.

R4701.2 Deck design. Computer deck design programs are permitted to be accepted by the *building official*.

SECTION R4702 MATERIALS

R4702.1 Wood materials. Wood materials shall be No. 2 grade or better *pressure-preservative treated wood*, or *approved*, *naturally durable lumber*. Wood structural members shall be designed using the wet service factor defined in AWC NDS. All *pressure-preservative treated wood* products in contact with the ground shall be *labeled* for such usage.

R4702.2 Plastic composites. *Plastic composite* exterior deck boards, stair treads, *guards* and *handrails* containing wood, cellulosic or other biodegradable materials shall comply with the requirements of ASTM D7032.

R4702.3 Flashing. Flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of nominal thickness not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) or *approved* nonmetallic material that is compatible with the substrate of the structure and the decking materials.

SECTION R4703 FASTENERS AND CONNECTORS

R4703.1 Fasteners and connectors in contact with pressure-preservative treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, and connectors in contact with *pressure-preservative treated wood* shall be in accordance with this section. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153. Stainless steel driven fasteners shall be in accordance with the material requirements of ASTM F1667.

R4703.2 Fasteners for pressure-preservative treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for *pressure-preservative treated wood* shall be of hot-dipped, zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Staples shall be of stainless steel. Coating types and weights for connectors in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be in accordance with the connector manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, not less than ASTM A653 type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel, or equivalent, shall be used.

Exceptions:

1. $^1/_2$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) or greater steel bolts.
2. Fasteners other than nails, staples and timber rivets shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.
3. Plain carbon steel fasteners in SBX/DOT and zinc borate preservative-treated wood in an interior, dry environment shall be permitted.

R4703.3 Fastenings for wood foundations. Fastenings, including nuts and washers, for wood foundations shall be as specified in this code and Table R4703.3.

SECTION R4704 FOOTINGS

R4704.1 Minimum size. Support posts shall be supported by a minimum concrete masonry or concrete footings in accor-

TABLE R4703.3
FASTENER AND CONNECTOR SPECIFICATIONS[a, b]

ITEM	MATERIAL	MINIMUM FINISH/COATING	ALTERNATE FINISH/COATING[e]
Nails and glulam rivets	In accordance with ASTM F1667	Hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A153, Class D for $^3/_8$-inch diameter and less	Stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper
Bolts[c] Lag screws[d] (including nuts and washers)	In accordance with ASTM A307 (bolts), ASTM A563 (nuts), ASTM F844 (washers)	Hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A153, Class C (Class D for $^3/_8$-inch diameter and less) or mechanically galvanized per ASTM B695, Class 55 or 410 stainless steel	Stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper
Metal connectors	Per manufacturer's specification	ASTM A653 type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel or post hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A123 providing a minimum average coating weight of 2.0 oz./ft^2 (total both sides)	Stainless steel

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Equivalent materials, coatings and finishes shall be permitted.

b. Holes for bolts shall be drilled a minimum $^1/_{32}$ inch and a maximum $^1/_{16}$ inch larger than the bolt.

c. Stainless-steel-driven fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM F1667.

dance with Figure R4704.1 and Table R4704.1. Tributary area is calculated as shown in Figure R4704.2. Post footings in wind zones of 120 mph or higher shall be concrete.

R4704.2 Minimum depth. The bottom of the footing shall be 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade but not less than the frost line as determined by the local building official.

SECTION R4705
POSTS

R4705.1 Height. Maximum height of deck support posts shall be in accordance with Table R4705.1.

TABLE R4705.1
DECK SUPPORT POST HEIGHT

POST SIZE[a]	MAXIMUM POST HEIGHT[b, c, d]
4″ × 4″	8'-0″
6″ × 6″	20'-0″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. This table is based on No. 2 Southern Pine posts.

b. From top of footing to bottom of girder.

c. Decks with post heights exceeding these requirements shall be designed by a registered design professional.

d. Bracing shall be provided as required by Section R4711.

TABLE R4704.1
FOOTING TABLE[a, b, c]

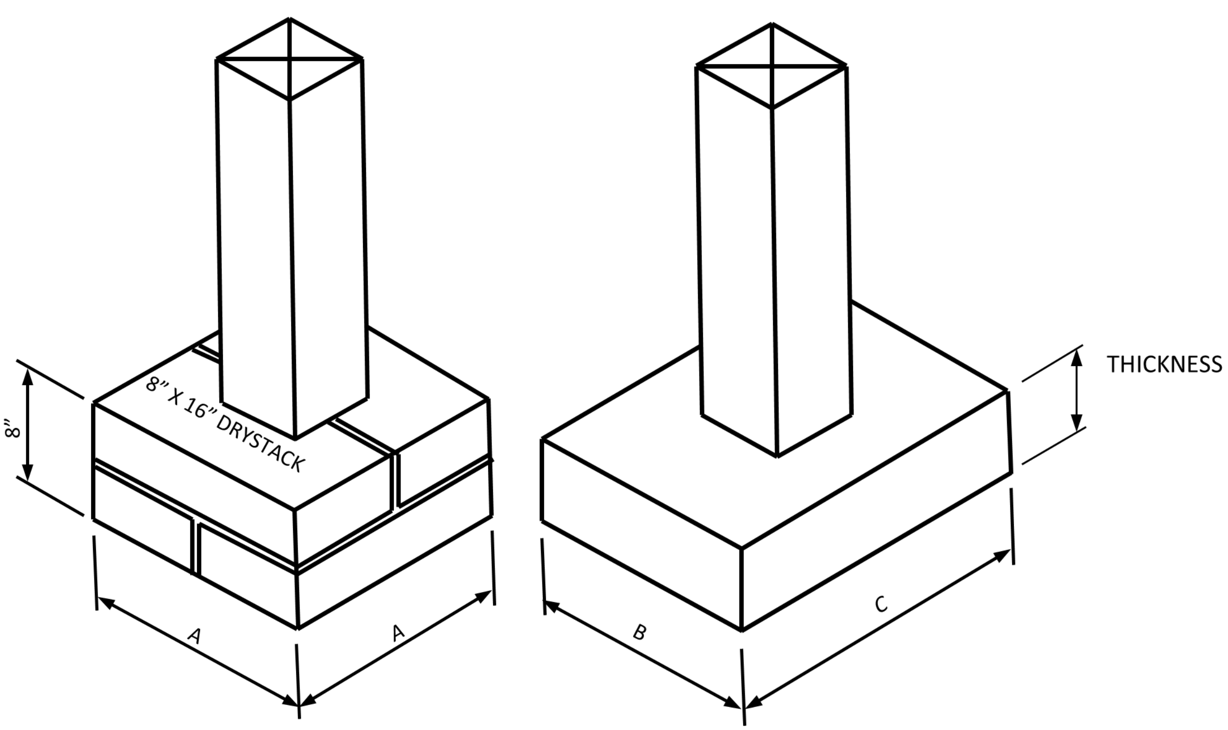
SIZE (inches)		TRIBUTARY AREA	THICKNESS (inches)	
A x A	B x C	(sq. ft.)	Precast	Cast-In-Place
8 × 16	8 × 16	35	4	6
12 × 12	12 × 12	40	4	6
16 × 16	16 × 16	70	8	8
—	16 × 24	100	—	8
—	24 × 24	150	—	8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

a. Footing values are based on single floor loads.

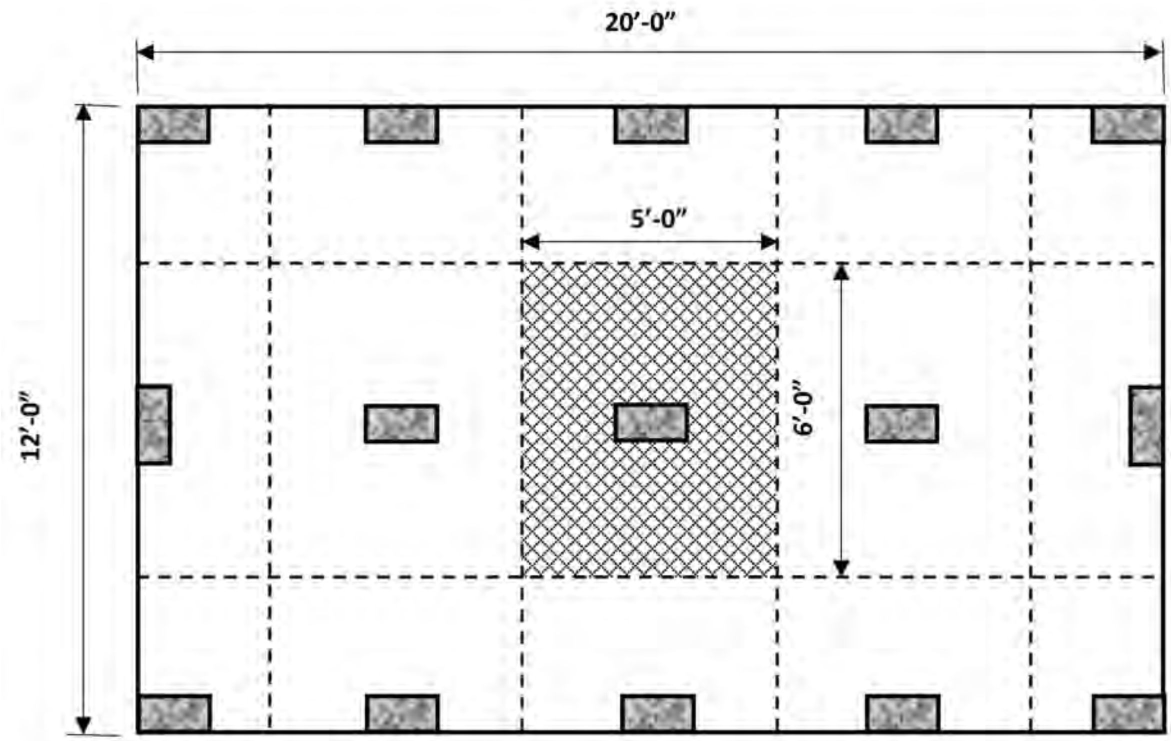
b. Support post must rest in center 1/3 of footing.

c. Top of footing shall be level for full bearing support of post.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

FIGURE R4704.1
SUPPORT POST FOOTINGS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

Note: Tributary area of shaded section on the free standing *deck* shown is 5' × 6' = 30 sq. ft.(2.79 m^2). Code will require a minimum footing of 8″ × 16″ (203 mm × 406 mm) in accordance with Table R401.1.

FIGURE R4704.2
CALCULATED TRIBUTARY AREA

R4705.2 Anchorage. Each post shall be anchored to the footing with one $^1/_2$ inch galvanized anchor or equivalent in winds speeds of 120 mph and 130 mph. The center hole for the anchor shall be located in the center $^1/_3$ of the post not less than 4 inches from the bottom end of the post and not less than $3^1/_2$ inches below the top of the footing. The anchor shall extend not less than $^1/_2$ of the larger footing width. Anchors in 140 mph and 150 mph wind zones shall be designed by a North Carolina design professional.

Exception: Mechanical fasteners meeting the manufacturer's installation instructions for the applicable wind zone is acceptable.

SECTION R4706
DECK ATTACHMENT TO DWELLING

R4706.1 Weatherproofing. When attached to a *dwelling* or accessory building, the building to which attached shall have a treated wood band for the length of the *deck*, or corrosion-resistant flashing shall be used to prevent moisture from coming in contact with the untreated framing of the *dwelling*. Aluminum flashing shall not be used in conjunction with *deck* construction. The *deck* band and the *dwelling* band shall be constructed in contact with each other except on brick veneer structures and where structural sheathing is required and properly flashed. Siding shall not be installed between the structure and the *deck* band. If attached to a brick structure, neither the flashing nor a treated band for brick structure is required. In addition, the treated *deck* band shall be constructed in contact with the brick veneer. Flashing shall be installed in accordance with Figure R4706.1.

SECTION R4707
SUPPORT BY DWELLING

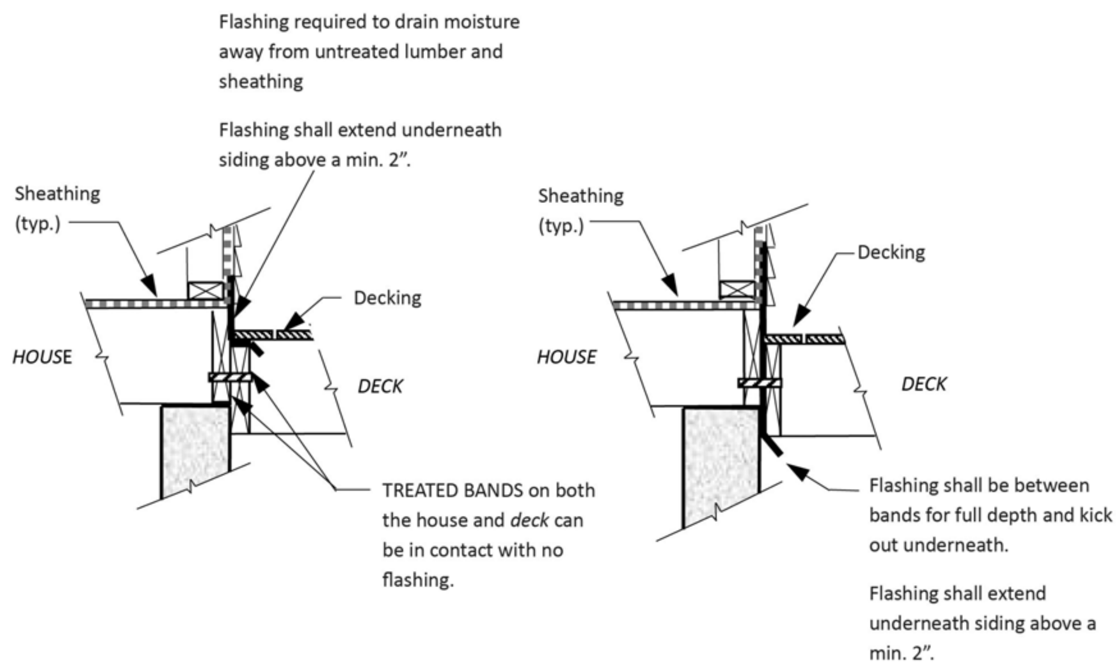
R4707.1 Attachment. When a deck is supported at the structure by attaching the deck to the structure, Tables R4707.1(1) and R4707.1(2) shall apply for attaching the deck band to the structure.

R4707.2 Masonry ledge support. A deck band supported on a minimum $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) masonry ledge along the foundation wall attached with $^5/_8$ inch (16 mm) hot-dipped galvanized bolts with washers spaced a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. shall be permitted.

R4707.3 Other means of support. Joist hangers or other means of attachment are permitted to be connected to the dwelling band and shall be properly flashed.

SECTION R4708
GIRDER SUPPORT AND SPAN

R4708.1 Girder to post bearing and connection. Girders shall bear directly on the support post with the post attached



NO FLASHING BETWEEN TREATED BANDS

FLASHING FOR TREATED DECK BAND TO UNTREATED HOUSE BAND

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

FIGURE R4706.1
FLASHING FOR DECK ATTACHED TO STRUCTURE

TABLE R4707.1(1)
DECK ATTACHMENT FOR ALL STRUCTURES EXCEPT BRICK VENEER

FASTENERS	8′ MAX JOIST SPAN[a]	16′ MAX JOIST SPAN[a]
$^{5}/_{8}$″ Hot-dipped galvanized bolts with nut and washer[b] and 16d Common hot-dipped galvanized nails[c]	1 @ 3′-6″ o.c. and 2 @ 8″ o.c.	1 @ 1′-8″ o.c. and 3 @ 6″ o.c.
OR		
Self-drilling screw fastener[d]	12″ o.c. staggered	6″ o.c. staggered

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Attachment interpolation between 8 foot and 16 foot joists span is allowed.

b. Minimum edge distance for bolts is $2^{1}/_{2}$ inches.

c. Nails must penetrate the supporting structure band a minimum of $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches.

d. Self-drilling screw fastener having a minimum shank diameter of 0.195 inches and a length long enough to penetrate through the supporting structure band. The structure band shall have a minimum depth of $1^{1}/_{8}$ inches. Screw shall be evaluated by an approved testing agency for allowable shear load for Southern Pine to Southern Pine lumber of 250 pounds and shall have a corrosion-resistant finish equivalent to hot dip galvanized. Minimum edge distance for screws is $1^{7}/_{16}$ inches. A maximum of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch thick wood structural panel is permitted to be located between the deck ledger and the structure band.

TABLE R4707.1(2)
DECK ATTACHMENT FOR BRICK VENEER STRUCTURES

FASTENERS	8′ MAX JOIST SPAN[a]	16′ MAX JOIST SPAN[a]
$^{5}/_{8}$″ Hot-dipped galvanized bolts with nut and washer[b]	1 @ 2′-4″ o.c.	1 @ 1′-4″ o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Attachment interpolation between 8 foot and 16 foot joist span is allowed.

b. Minimum edge distance for bolts is $2^{1}/_{2}$ inches.

TABLE R4708.1
GIRDER CONNECTION TO SIDE OF POST[c]

MAXIMUM GIRDER THICKNESS		
Any	3″ (Double 2×)	$1^{1}/_{2}$″ (Single 2×)
Two $^{5}/_{8}$″ diameter bolts[a]	Four 6″ long screws[b]	Three 4″ long screws[b]

a. Bolts shall be hot-dipped galvanized through bolts and nuts.

b. Screws shall be hot-dipped galvanized self-drilling screw fastener having a minimum diameter of 0.270”, staggered so that the screws are not in a line, and having a minimum edge distance of $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches.

c. Hot-dipped galvanized washers shall be provided at the head and nut of each through bolt and the head of each screw.

at top to prevent lateral displacement or be connected to the side of the posts with one of the methods shown in Table R4708.1. Girder support is permitted to be installed in accordance with Figure R4708.1(1) for top mount, Figure R4708.1(2) for side mount, Figure R4708.1(3) for split girders, and Figure R4708.1(4) for cantilevered girders.

R4708.2 Girder spans for uncovered decks. Maximum allowable spans for wood deck girders, as shown in Figure R4708.2, shall be in accordance with Table R4708.2. Girder plies shall be fastened with two rows of 10d (3-inch × 0.128-inch) nails minimum at 16 inches (406 mm) on center along each edge. Girders shall be permitted to cantilever at each end up to one-fourth of the actual beam span. Splices of multi-span beams shall be located at interior post locations.

R4708.3 Girder span for roofed porches and decks. Girder spans for covered *decks* shall be in accordance with Tables R602.7(1) and (2).

SECTION R4709 ALLOWABLE JOIST SPANS AND CANTILEVERS

R4709.1 Joist spans for uncovered decks. Maximum allowable spans for wood *deck* joists, as shown in Figure R4709.1, shall be in accordance with Table R4709.1 or with the 2021 edition or later of American Wood Council online span calculator. *Deck* joists shall be permitted to cantilever not greater than one-fourth of the actual, adjacent joist span.

R4709.2 Lateral restraint at supports. Joist ends and bearing locations shall be provided with lateral restraint to prevent rotation. Where lateral restraint is provided by joist hangers or blocking between joists, their depth shall equal not less than 60 percent of the joist depth. Where lateral restraint is provided by rim joists, they shall be secured to the end of each joist with not less than (3) 10d (3-inch × 0.128-inch) nails or (3) No. 10 × 3-inch (76 mm) long wood screws.

SECTION R4710 FLOOR DECKING

R4710.1 Wood. Floor decking shall be No. 2 grade pressure preservative treated Southern Pine or equivalent. The minimum floor decking thickness shall be in accordance with Table R4710.1.

TABLE R4710.1
FLOOR DECKING THICKNESS

SUPPORT SPACING	DECKING (nominal)
12″ o.c.	1″ S4S
16″ o.c.	1″ T&G
19.2″ o.c.	$1^1/_4$″ S4S
24″–36″ o.c.	2″ S4S

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm

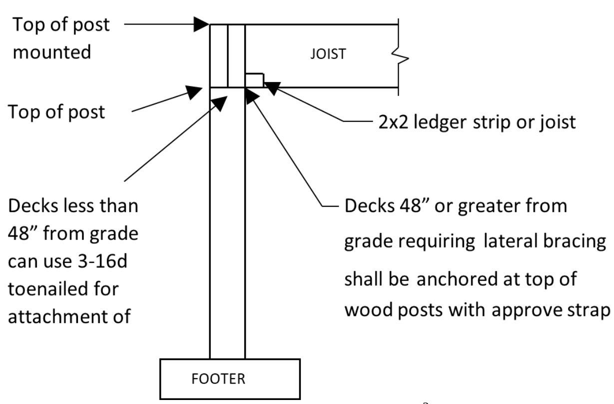
R4710.2 Plastic composites. *Plastic composite* shall comply with Section R4702.2 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION R4711 BRACING

R4711.1 General. Decks shall be braced to provide lateral stability. Lateral stability shall be provided in accordance with one of the methods in Sections R4711.2 through R4711.6.

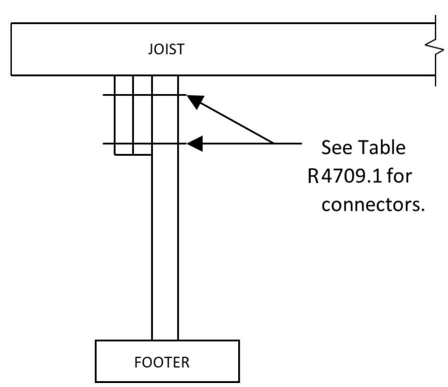
R4711.2 Lateral bracing not required. When any of the following apply additional lateral bracing is not required:

1. When the deck floor height is less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above finished grade as shown in Figure R4711.2 and the deck is attached to the structure in accordance with Chapter 6, lateral bracing is not required.
2. Lateral bracing is not required for freestanding decks with a deck floor height 30 inches (762 mm) or less above finished grade.
3. Lateral bracing is not required when the deck complies with Section R4711.5.
4. Lateral bracing is not required when the deck complies with Section R4711.6.



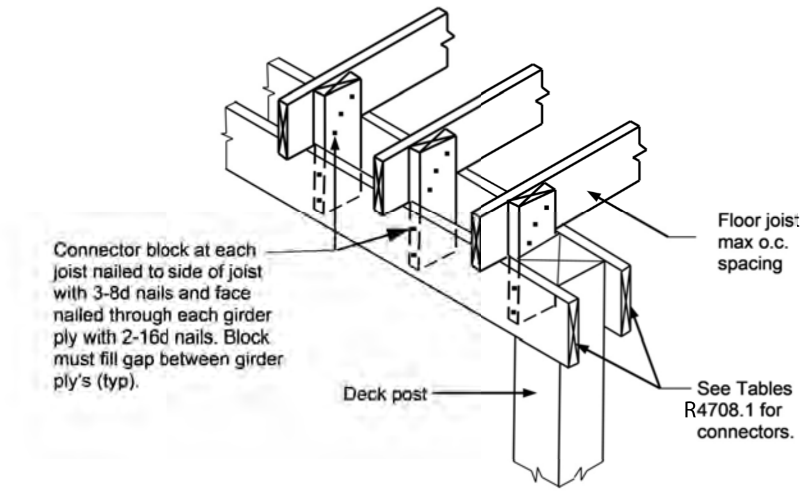
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

FIGURE R4708.1(1)
TOP MOUNT/FLUSH GIRDER



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

FIGURE R4708.1(2)
SIDE MOUNT DROPPED GIRDER



Split girder limited to floor loads only and cantilever girder ends allowed per Figure R4708.1(4)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R4708.1(3)
SPLIT GIRDER

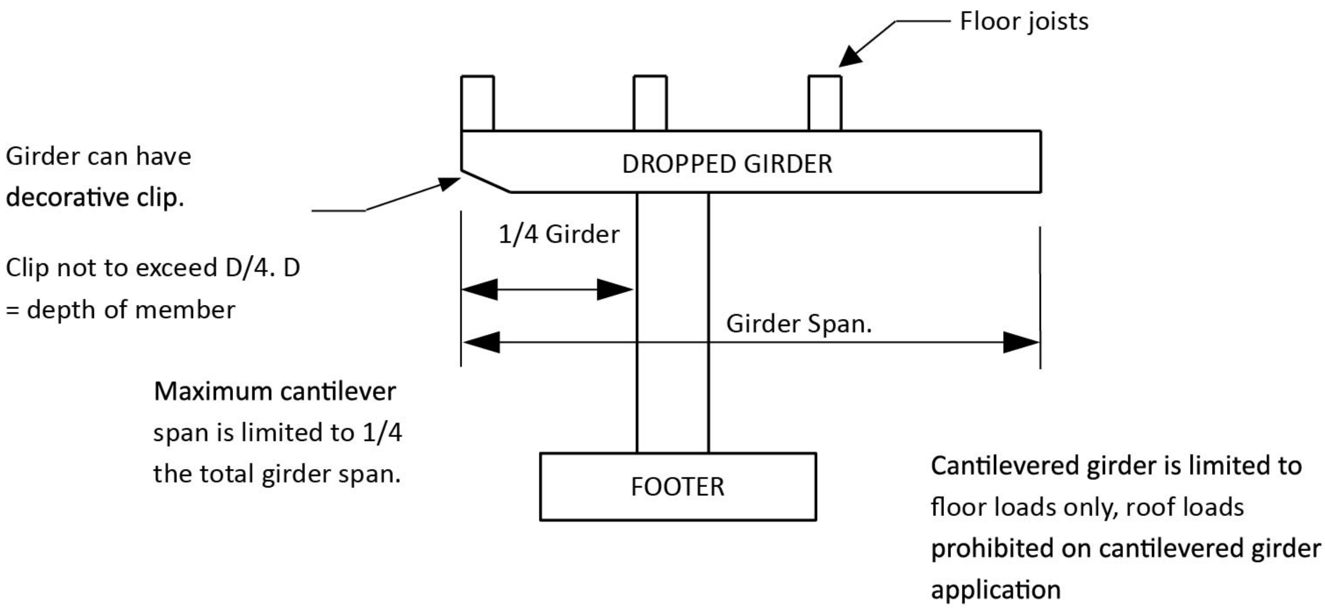


FIGURE R4708.1(4)
CANTILIEVERED DROPPED GIRDER

TABLE R4708.2
DECK GIRDER SPANS LENGTHS[a, b]
(feet-inches)

SPECIES[c]	SIZE[d]	DECK JOIST SPAN LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (feet)						
		6	8	10	12	14	16	18
Southern pine	2 – 2 × 6	6-11	5-11	5-4	4-10	4-6	4-3	4-0
	2 – 2 × 8	8-9	7-7	6-9	6-2	5-9	5-4	5-0
	2 – 2 × 10	10-4	9-0	8-0	7-4	6-9	6-4	6-0
	2 – 2 × 12	12-2	10-7	9-5	8-7	8-0	7-6	7-0
	3 – 2 × 6	8-2	7-5	6-8	6-1	5-8	5-3	5-0
	3 – 2 × 8	10-10	9-6	8-6	7-9	7-2	6-8	6-4
	3 – 2 × 10	13-0	11-3	10-0	9-2	8-6	7-11	7-6
	3 – 2 × 12	15-3	13-3	11-10	10-9	10-0	9-4	8-10
Douglas fir-larch[e], hem-fir[e], spruce-pine-fir[e], redwood, western cedars, ponderosa pine[f], red pine[f]	3 × 6 or 2 – 2 × 6	5-5	4-8	4-2	3-10	3-6	3-1	2-9
	3 × 8 or 2 – 2 × 8	6-10	5-11	5-4	4-10	4-6	4-1	3-8
	3 × 10 or 2 – 2 × 10	8-4	7-3	6-6	5-11	5-6	5-1	4-8
	3 × 12 or 2 – 2 × 12	9-8	8-5	7-6	6-10	6-4	5-11	5-7
	4 × 6	6-5	5-6	4-11	4-6	4-2	3-11	3-8
	4 × 8	8-5	7-3	6-6	5-11	5-6	5-2	4-10
	4 × 10	9-11	8-7	7-8	7-0	6-6	6-1	5-8
	4 × 12	11-5	9-11	8-10	8-1	7-6	7-0	6-7
	3 – 2 × 6	7-4	6-8	6-0	5-6	5-1	4-9	4-6
	3 – 2 × 8	9-8	8-6	7-7	6-11	6-5	6-0	5-8
	3 – 2 × 10	12-0	10-5	9-4	8-6	7-10	7-4	6-11
	3 – 2 × 12	13-11	12-1	10-9	9-10	9-1	8-6	8-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, L/D = 360 at main span, L/D = 180 at cantilever with a 220-pound point load applied at the end.
b. Girders supporting deck joists from one side only.
c. No. 2 grade, wet service factor.
d. Girder depth shall be greater than or equal to depth of joists with a flush beam condition.
e. Includes incising factor.
f. Northern species. Incising factor not included.

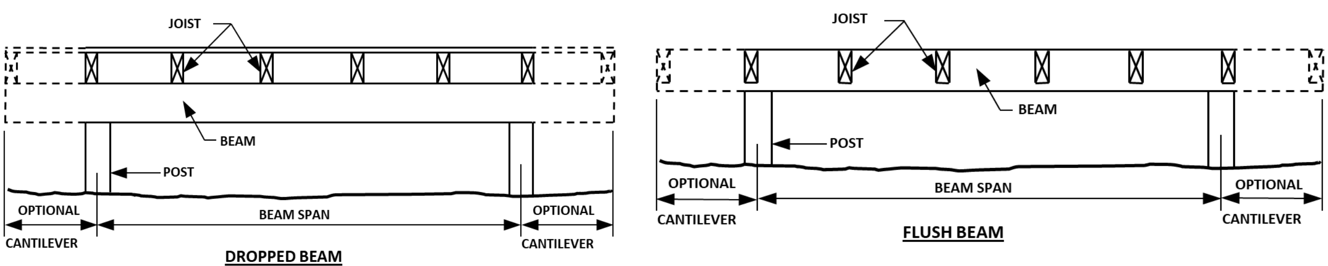


FIGURE R4708.2
TYPICAL DECK GIRDER SPANS

TABLE R4709.1
JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES[f]
(feet-inches)

SPECIES[a]	SIZE	SPACING OF DECK JOISTS WITH NO CANTILEVER[b] (inches)			SPACING OF DECK JOISTS WITH CANTILEVERS[c] (inches)		
		12	16	24	12	16	24
Southern pine	2 × 6	9-11	9-0	7-7	6-8	6-8	6-8
	2 × 8	13-1	11-10	9-8	10-1	10-1	9-8
	2 × 10	16-2	14-0	11-5	14-6	14-0	11-5
	2 × 12	18-0	16-6	13-6	18-0	16-6	13-6
Douglas fir-larch[d], hem-fir[d] spruce-pine-fir[d]	2 × 6	9-6	8-8	7-2	6-3	6-3	6-3
	2 × 8	12-6	11-1	9-1	9-5	9-5	9-1
	2 × 10	15-8	13-7	11-1	13-7	13-7	11-1
	2 × 12	18-0	15-9	12-10	18-0	15-9	12-10
Redwood, western cedars, ponderosa pine[e], red pine[e]	2 × 6	8-10	8-0	7-0	5-7	5-7	5-7
	2 × 8	11-8	10-7	8-8	8-6	8-6	8-6
	2 × 10	14-11	13-0	10-7	12-3	12-3	10-7
	2 × 12	17-5	15-1	12-4	16-5	15-1	12-4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. No. 2 grade with wet service factor.
b. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, L/D = 360.
c. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, L/D = 360 at main span, L/D = 180 at cantilever with a 220-pound point load applied to end.
d. Includes incising factor.
e. Northern species with no incising factor
f. Cantilevered spans not exceeding the nominal depth of the joist are permitted.

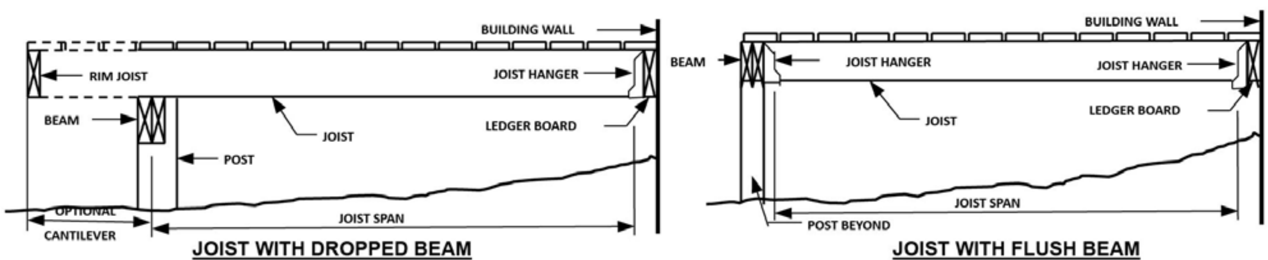
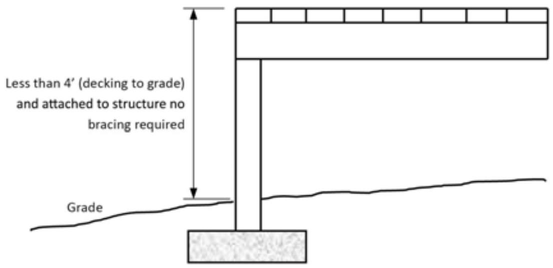


FIGURE R4709.1
TYPICAL DECK JOIST SPANS



For SI:1 inch= 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm

FIGURE R4711.2
NO LATERAL BRACING

R4711.3 Knee bracing. 4 × 4 wood knee braces are permitted to be provided on each column in both directions for freestanding decks or parallel to the structure at the exterior column line for attached decks. The knee braces shall attach to each post at a point not less than $^1/_3$ of the post length from the top of the post, and the braces shall be angled between 45 degrees (0.79 rad) and 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from the horizontal. Knee braces shall be fastened to the post and the girder/double band in accordance with Table R4711.3 and Figures R4711.3(1), (2), and (3).

TABLE R4711.3
FASTENING OF BRACE TO POST AND GIRDER/BAND (CHOOSE ONE)

FASTENER	INSTALLATION	MINIMUM DISTANCES
One $^5/_8$″ diameter hot-dipped galvanized through bolt with nut and washer	Perpendicular to post or girder/band	$2^3/_{16}$″ end distance
Two hot-dipped galvanized (ASTM A153, Class C, minimum) screws having minimum diameter of 0.270″ and long enough to achieve 3″ penetration into the post or girder/band.	Perpendicular to post or girder/band	1″ edge distance, $1^1/_2$″ horizontal spacing, minimum 3″ end distance

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

R4711.4 Cross bracing. 2 × 6 diagonal vertical cross bracing is permitted to be provided in two perpendicular directions for free standing decks or parallel to the structure at the exterior column line for attached decks in accordance with Figures R4711.4(3), and R4711.4(4). The 2 × 6 bracing shall be attached to the posts with one of the methods in Table R4711.4 at each end of each bracing member in accordance with Figures R4711.4(1). Bracing members shall extend to within 6 inches of the top and bottom of the posts. Where more than one cross brace is installed between posts a 2 × 6 horizontal strut is required as shown in Figure R4711.4(2) and shall be fastened per Table R4711.4.

TABLE R4711.4
FASTENING OF BRACE (CHOOSE ONE)

FASTENER TYPE	DIAMETER (inches)	QTY	LENGTH
Bolt	$^5/_8$[a]	1	As required
Screws	0.27[b]	2	Long enough to achieve a $1^1/_2$″ thread penetration of structural member opposite head of screw

For SI:

a. Bolts shall be hot dip galvanized through bolts with nut and washer.

b. Screws shall be hot dip galvanized (ASTM A153, Class C, minimum) self drilling screw fastener having a minimum diameter of 0.27 inch, and installed in the center of the post with a minimum of 1 inch space between screws.

R4711.5 Post embedment bracing. For free standing decks without knee braces or cross bracing, lateral stability is permitted to be provided by embedding the post in accordance with Figure R4711.5 and Table R4711.5.

R4711.6 Piles bracing in coastal regions. Pile tip shall extend to a depth of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) below the natural grade or finished grade of the lot, whichever is lower. All pilings within the *ocean hazard area* shall have a tip penetration of at least 5 feet (1524 mm) below mean sea level or 16 feet (4877 mm) below average original grade, whichever is least. Structures within *ocean hazard areas* which are placed upon the site behind a line 60 times the annual erosion rate away from the most seaward line of stable natural vegetation are exempt from this additional tip penetration requirement.

R4711.7 Pile bracing in coastal regions. Additional bracing is not required where pile tips extend to a depth of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) below the natural grade or finished grade of the lot, whichever is lower. All pilings within the *ocean hazard area* shall have a tip penetration of at least 5 feet (1524 mm) below mean sea level or 16 feet (4877 mm) below average original grade, whichever is least.

Exception: Structures within *ocean hazard areas* which are placed on a site behind a line 60 times the annual erosion rate away from the most seaward line of stable natural vegetation are allowed to comply with Table R4711.5.

TABLE R4711.5
POST EMBEDMENT FOR FREE STANDING DECKS

POST SIZE	MAXIMUM TRIBUTARY AREA	MAXIMUM POST HEIGHT	EMPEDMENT DEPTH	CONCRETE DIAMETER
4″ × 4″	48 SF	4′-0″	2′-6″	1′-0″
6″ × 6″	120 SF	6′-0″	3′-6″	1′-8″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

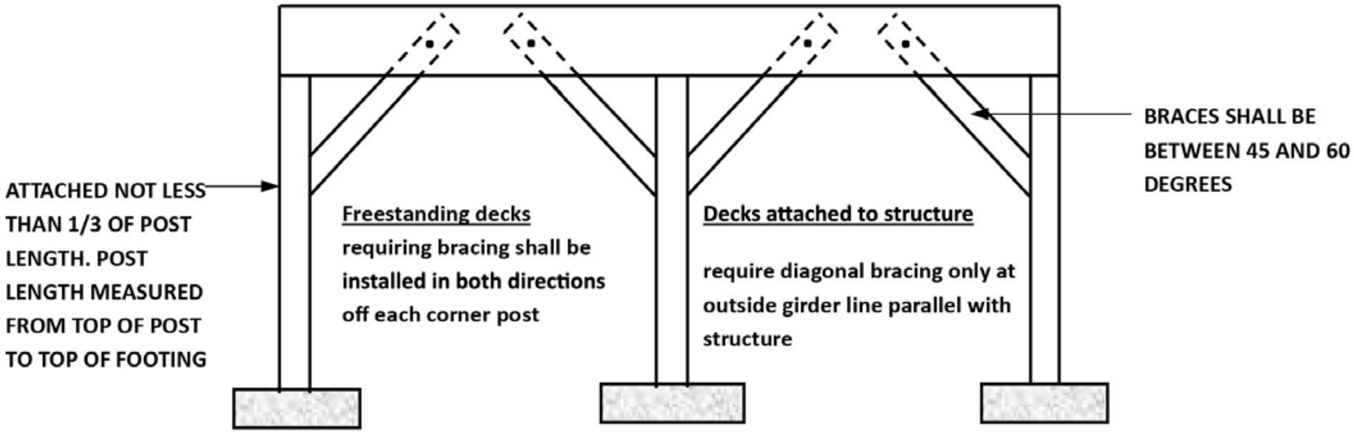


FIGURE R4711.3(1)
KNEE BRACING

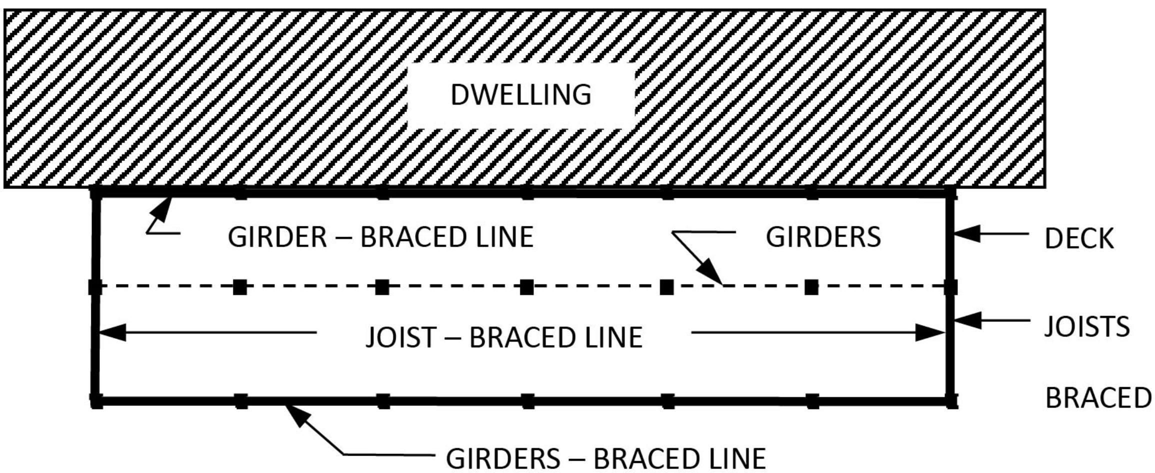


FIGURE R4711.3(2)
FREESTANDING DECK KNEE BRACING LINE (plan view)

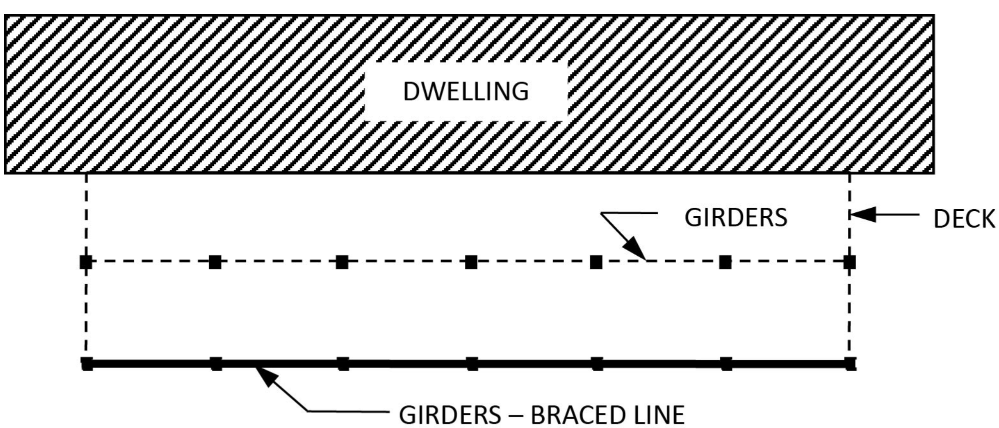


FIGURE R4711.3(3)
DWELLING ATTACHED DECK KNEE BRACING LINE (plan view)

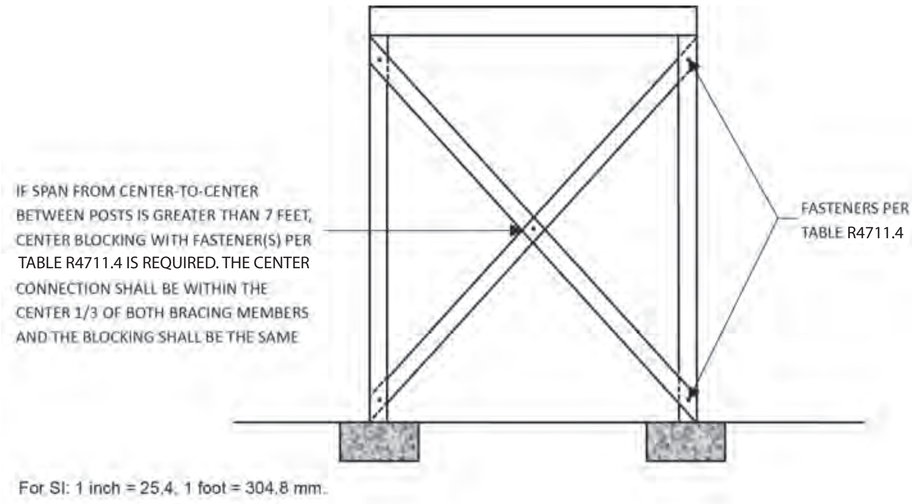


FIGURE R4711.4(1)
CROSS BRACING

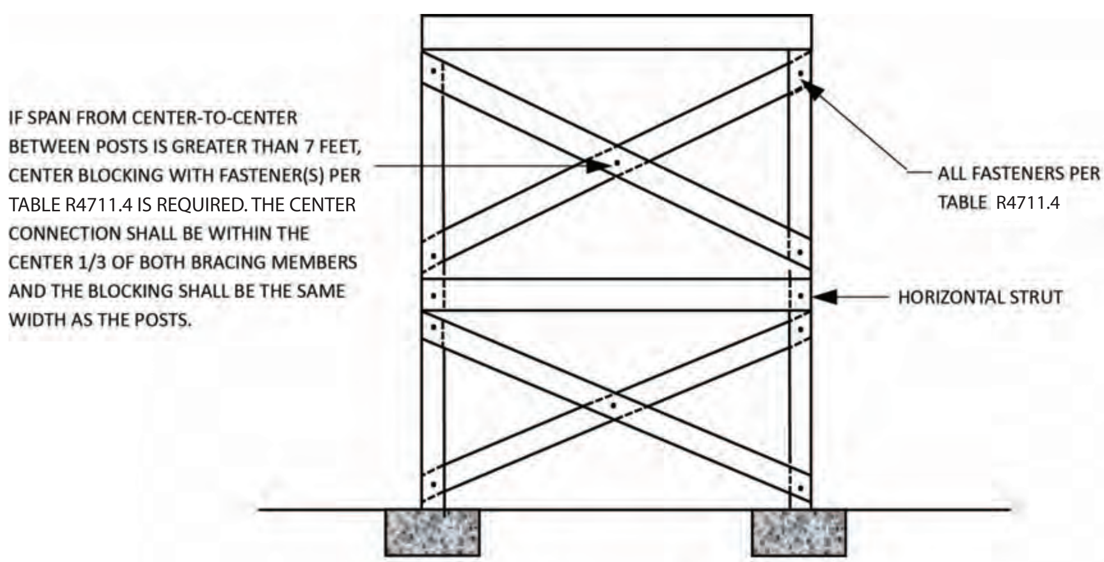


FIGURE R4711.4(2)
CROSS BRACING

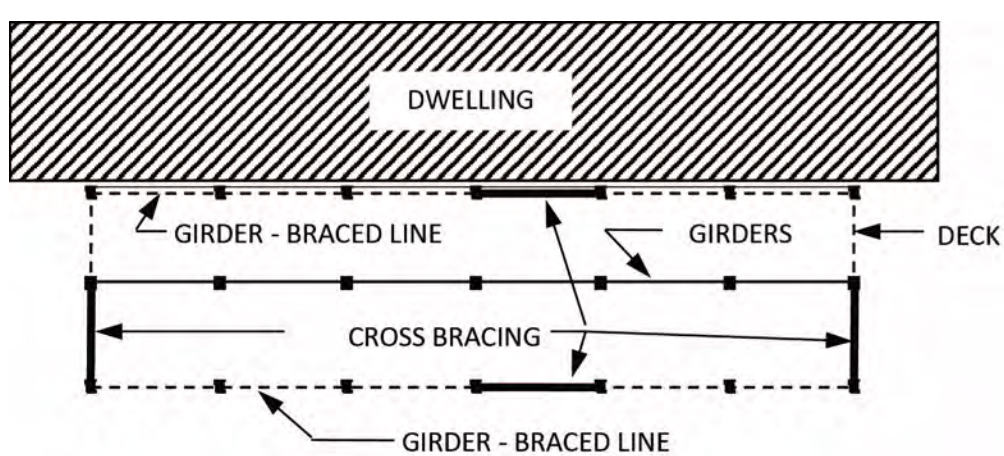


FIGURE R4711.4(3)
FREESTANDING DECK CROSS BRACING LINE (plan view)

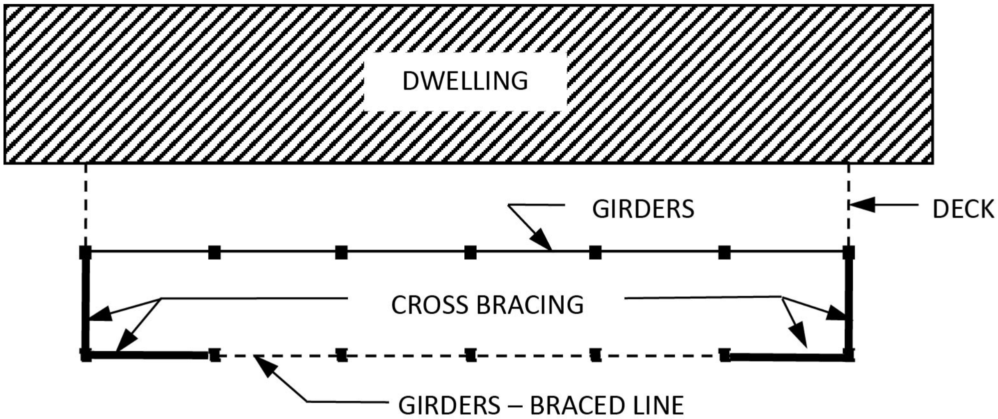
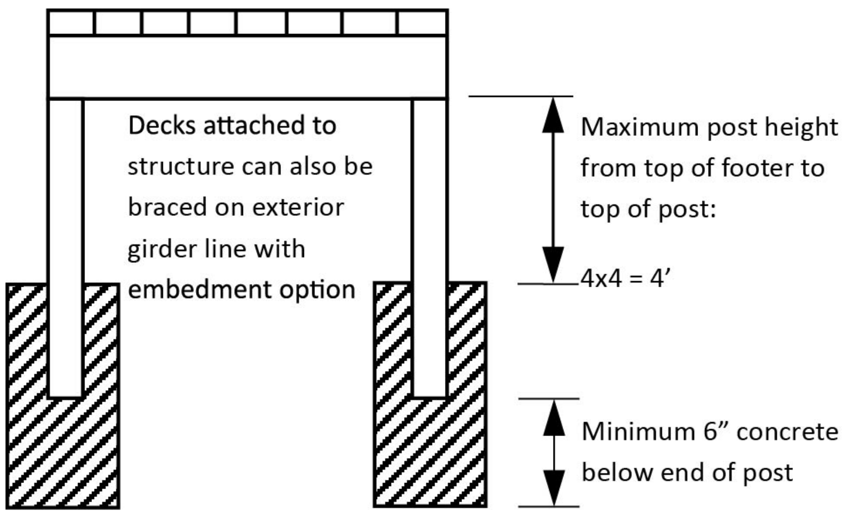


FIGURE R4711.4(4)
DWELLING ATTACHED DECK CROSS BRACING LINE
(plan view)



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm

FIGURE R4711.5
POST EMBEDMENT

SECTION R4712
STAIRS

R4712.1 Construction. Stair shall comply with Sections R311.7 and R4712.1.1

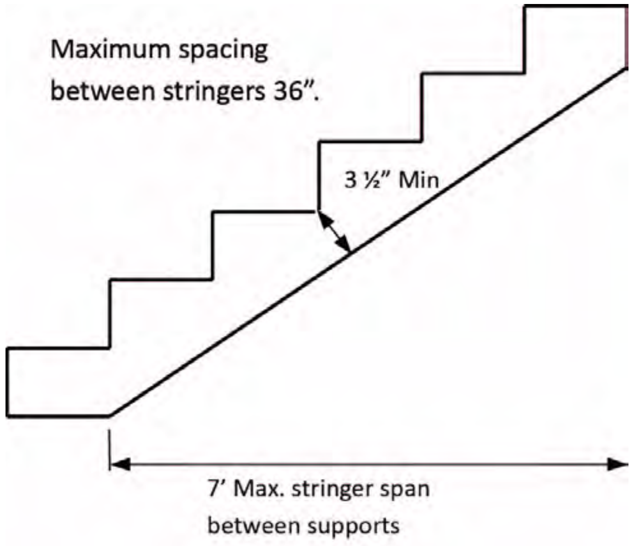
R4712.1.1 Stringers. Stringer spans shall be no greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) between supports. Spacing between stringers shall be based upon decking material used in accordance with Section R4710. Each stringer shall have a minimum of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) between step cut and back of stringer. If used, suspended headers shall be attached with $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) galvanized bolts with nuts and washers to securely support stringers at the top. See Figure R4712.1.1.

SECTION R4713
HANDRAILS, GUARDS AND GENERAL

R4713.1 Handrails, guards and general. Deck handrails, guards and general construction shall be as shown in Figure R4713.1.

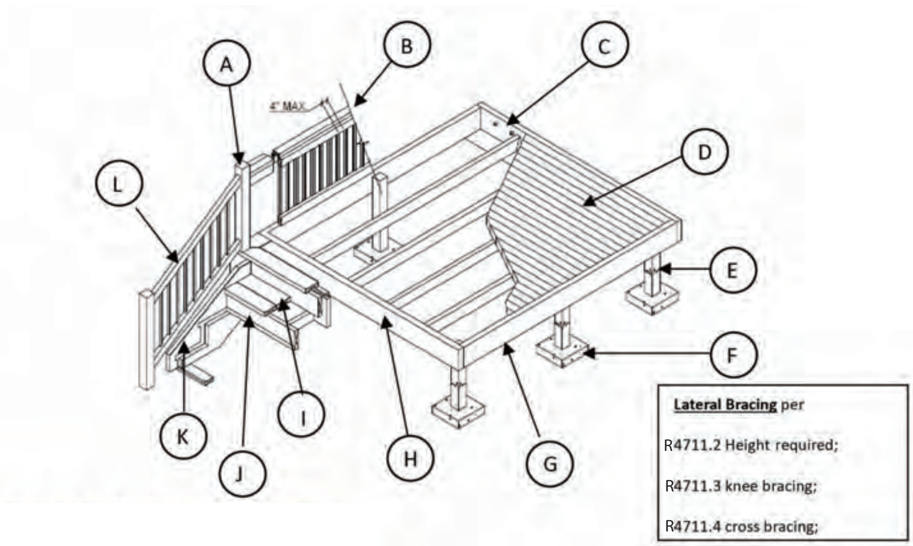
SECTION R4714
WALKWAYS OVER DUNES IN OCEAN HAZARD AREAS

R4714.1 Construction. Walkways over dunes in *ocean hazard areas* shall be constructed as shown in Figure R4714.1.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

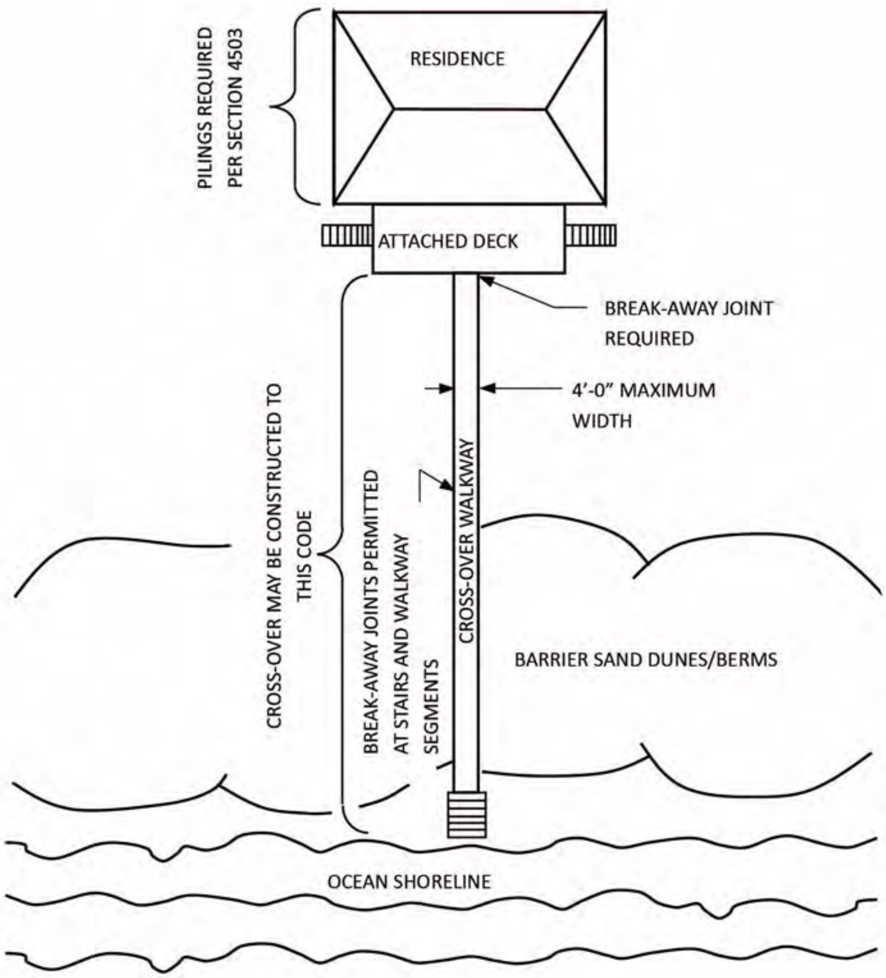
FIGURE 4712.1.1
STAIR STRINGER



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. **Rail posts** shall be located a maximum of 8 feet o.c. Posts shall be attached to outer girder and joist bands with $2^3/_8$ inches galvanized bolts with nut and washer to outer bands.
b. **Guards** at a minimum 36 inch height required with 30 inch drop and opening limits, top rail and post to support 200 pounds with infill to meet 50 pounds.
c. **Attachment** to structure shall comply with Section R4707.
d. **Decking** in accordance with Section R4710.
e. **Deck post** in accordance with Sections R4705 and R4711.5.
f. **Shallow footers** in accordance with Section R4704.
g. **Floor joist cantilevers** allowed in accordance with Sections R4709.1 and R4709.2.
h. **Exterior girder clear spans** in accordance with Sections R4708.2 and R4708.3.
i. **Stairs treads and risers** in accordance with Section R4712.
j. **Riser openings** for stairs with a 30" or more vertical rise must have solid risers or opening restricted to prevent passage of a 4 inch sphere in accordance with Section R311.7.5.1.
k. **Stair guard at risers.** The triangle openings at the open side of stairs, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail of a guard, shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches in diameter in accordance with Section R312.1.3.
l. **Stair handrail/guard.** Height between 34 to 38 inches in accordance with Section R312.1.2. Openings on side of stairs requiring guards shall not allow a sphere $4^3/_8$ inch to pass in accordance with Section R312.1.3.

FIGURE R4713.1
DECK CONSTRUCTION



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Posts for walkways over dunes or berms shall be embedded a minimum depth of 4 feet 0 inches and post heights shall be limited to 5 feet 0 inches above grade for 4 × 4 and 10 feet 0 inches above grade for 6 × 6. Walkways or portions of walkways over 4 feet 0 inches in width shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 45 and 46. Maximum walkway surface height is 30 inches above grade without guard rails.
b. Walkway stair runs from walkway down to ocean shoreline grade are permitted to be greater than 12 inches without a landing.
c. Open risers permitted on ocean shoreline stair.
d. Horizontal guards permitted to have maximum 18-inch opening on cross-over walkway and ocean shoreline stair.

FIGURE R4714.1
WALKWAYS OVER DUNES OR BERMS IN OCEAN HAZARD AREAS

APPENDIX AA

SIZING AND CAPACITIES OF GAS PIPING

This appendix is an excerpt from the 2021 International Fuel Gas Code® *informative Appendix A. Table references in the text, other than AA tables, are as numbered in the* International Fuel Gas Code *(*IFGC*). For related table references in this code, you can find the* IFGC *table number in brackets adjacent to the table number in Chapter 24 of this code. For example, Table 402.4(2) in the* IFGC *is related to Table G2413.4(1) [402.4(2)] in this code.*

SECTION AA101 GENERAL PIPING CONSIDERATIONS

The first goal of determining the pipe sizing for a fuel gas *piping* system is to make sure that there is sufficient gas pressure at the inlet to each *appliance*. The majority of systems are residential and the *appliances* will all have the same, or nearly the same, requirement for minimum gas pressure at the *appliance* inlet. This pressure will be about 5-inch water column (w.c.) (1.25 kPa), which is enough for proper operation of the *appliance* regulator to deliver about 3.5-inches water column (w.c.) (875 kPa) to the burner itself. The pressure drop in the *piping* is subtracted from the source delivery pressure to verify that the minimum is available at the *appliance*.

There are other systems, however, where the required inlet pressure to the different appliances is quite varied. In such cases, the greatest inlet pressure required must be satisfied, as well as the farthest *appliance*, which is almost always the critical *appliance* in small systems.

There is an additional requirement to be observed besides the capacity of the system at 100-percent flow. That requirement is that at minimum flow, the pressure at the inlet to any *appliance* does not exceed the pressure rating of the *appliance* regulator. This would seldom be of concern in small systems if the source pressure is $^1/_2$ psi (14-inch w.c.) (3.5 kPa) or less but it should be verified for systems with greater gas pressure at the point of supply.

To determine the size of *piping* used in a gas *piping* system, the following factors must be considered:

1. Allowable loss in pressure from *point of delivery* to *appliance*.
2. Maximum gas demand.
3. Length of *piping* and number of fittings.
4. Specific gravity of the gas.
5. Diversity factor.

For any gas *piping* system or special *appliance*, or for conditions other than those covered by the tables provided in this code such as longer runs, greater gas demands or greater pressure drops, the size of each gas *piping* system should be determined by standard engineering practices acceptable to the code official.

SECTION AA102 DESCRIPTION OF TABLES

AA102.1 General. The quantity of gas to be provided at each *outlet* should be determined, whenever possible, directly from the manufacturer's gas input Btu/h rating of the *appliance* that will be installed.

To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the total Btu/h input of all *appliances* by the average Btu heating value per cubic feet of the gas. The average Btu per cubic feet of the gas in the area of the installation can be obtained from the serving gas supplier.

AA102.2 Low pressure natural gas tables. Capacities for gas at low pressure [less than 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa gauge)] in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Tables 402.4(1) and 402.4(2) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe; in Tables 402.4(8) through 402.4(11) for smooth wall semirigid tubing; and in Tables 402.4(15) through 402.4(17) for corrugated stainless steel tubing. Tables 402.4(1) and 402.4(8) are based on a pressure drop of 0.3-inch w.c. (75 Pa), whereas Tables 402.4(2), 402.4(9) and 402.4(15) are based on a pressure drop of 0.5- inch w.c. (125 Pa). Tables 402.4(3), 402.4(4), 402.4(10), 402.4(11), 402.4(16) and 402.4(17) are special low-pressure applications based on pressure drops greater than 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any *piping* run with four or more fittings (see Table AA102.2).

AA102.3 Undiluted liquefied petroleum tables. Capacities in thousands of Btu per hour of undiluted liquefied petroleum gases based on a pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table 402.4(28) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe, in Table 402.4(30) for smooth wall semi-rigid tubing, in Table 402.4(32) for corrugated stainless steel tubing, and in Tables 402.4(35) and 402.4(37) for polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing. Tables 402.4(33) and 402.4(34) for corrugated stainless steel tubing and Table 402.4(36) for polyethylene plastic pipe are based on operating pressures greater than $1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch (psi) (3.5 kPa) and pressure drops greater than 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any *piping* run with four or more fittings [see Table AA102.2].

AA102.4 Natural gas specific gravity. Gas *piping* systems that are to be supplied with gas of a specific gravity of 0.70 or less can be sized directly from the tables provided in this

TABLE AA102.2
EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES

		SCREWED FITTINGS[1]				90° WELDING ELBOWS AND SMOOTH BENDS[2]					
		45°/Ell	90°/Ell	180° close return bends	Tee	R/d = 1	R/d = 1 1/3	R/d = 2	R/d = 4	R/d = 6	R/d = 8
k factor =		0.42	0.90	2.00	1.80	0.48	0.36	0.27	0.21	0.27	0.36
L/d' ratio[4] *n* =		14	30	67	60	16	12	9	7	9	12
Nominal pipe size, inches	Inside diameter *d*, inches, Schedule 40[6]	*L* = Equivalent Length in Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-weight) Straight Pipe[6]									
1/2	0.622	0.73	1.55	3.47	3.10	0.83	0.62	0.47	0.36	0.47	0.62
3/4	0.824	0.96	2.06	4.60	4.12	1.10	0.82	0.62	0.48	0.62	0.82
1	1.049	1.22	2.62	5.82	5.24	1.40	1.05	0.79	0.61	0.79	1.05
1 1/4	1.380	1.61	3.45	7.66	6.90	1.84	1.38	1.03	0.81	1.03	1.38
1 1/2	1.610	1.88	4.02	8.95	8.04	2.14	1.61	1.21	0.94	1.21	1.61
2	2.067	2.41	5.17	11.5	10.3	2.76	2.07	1.55	1.21	1.55	2.07
2 1/2	2.469	2.88	6.16	13.7	12.3	3.29	2.47	1.85	1.44	1.85	2.47
3	3.068	3.58	7.67	17.1	15.3	4.09	3.07	2.30	1.79	2.30	3.07
4	4.026	4.70	10.1	22.4	20.2	5.37	4.03	3.02	2.35	3.02	4.03
5	5.047	5.88	12.6	28.0	25.2	6.72	5.05	3.78	2.94	3.78	5.05
6	6.065	7.07	15.2	33.8	30.4	8.09	6.07	4.55	3.54	4.55	6.07
8	7.981	9.31	20.0	44.6	40.0	10.6	7.98	5.98	4.65	5.98	7.98
10	10.02	11.7	25.0	55.7	50.0	13.3	10.0	7.51	5.85	7.51	10.0
12	11.94	13.9	29.8	66.3	59.6	15.9	11.9	8.95	6.96	8.95	11.9
14	13.13	15.3	32.8	73.0	65.6	17.5	13.1	9.85	7.65	9.85	13.1
16	15.00	17.5	37.5	83.5	75.0	20.0	15.0	11.2	8.75	11.2	15.0
18	16.88	19.7	42.1	93.8	84.2	22.5	16.9	12.7	9.85	12.7	16.9
20	18.81	22.0	47.0	105.0	94.0	25.1	18.8	14.1	11.0	14.1	18.8
24	22.63	26.4	56.6	126.0	113.0	30.2	22.6	17.0	13.2	17.0	22.6

(continued)

TABLE AA102.2—continued
EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES

		MITER ELBOWS[3] (No. of miters)					WELDING TEES		VALVES (screwed, flanged, or welded)			
		1-45°	1-60°	1-90°	2-90°[5]	3-90°[5]	Forged	Miter[3]	Gate	Globe	Angle	Swing Check
k factor =		0.45	0.90	1.80	0.60	0.45	1.35	1.80	0.21	10	5.0	2.5
L/d' ratio[4] *n* =		15	30	60	20	15	45	60	7	333	167	83
Nominal pipe size, inches	Inside diameter *d*, inches, Schedule 40[6]	*L* = Equivalent Length in Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-weight) Straight Pipe[6]										
1/2	0.622	0.78	1.55	3.10	1.04	0.78	2.33	3.10	0.36	17.3	8.65	4.32
3/4	0.824	1.03	2.06	4.12	1.37	1.03	3.09	4.12	0.48	22.9	11.4	5.72
1	1.049	1.31	2.62	5.24	1.75	1.31	3.93	5.24	0.61	29.1	14.6	7.27
1 1/4	1.380	1.72	3.45	6.90	2.30	1.72	5.17	6.90	0.81	38.3	19.1	9.58
1 1/2	1.610	2.01	4.02	8.04	2.68	2.01	6.04	8.04	0.94	44.7	22.4	11.2
2	2.067	2.58	5.17	10.3	3.45	2.58	7.75	10.3	1.21	57.4	28.7	14.4
2 1/2	2.469	3.08	6.16	12.3	4.11	3.08	9.25	12.3	1.44	68.5	34.3	17.1
3	3.068	3.84	7.67	15.3	5.11	3.84	11.5	15.3	1.79	85.2	42.6	21.3
4	4.026	5.04	10.1	20.2	6.71	5.04	15.1	20.2	2.35	112.0	56.0	28.0
5	5.047	6.30	12.6	25.2	8.40	6.30	18.9	25.2	2.94	140.0	70.0	35.0
6	6.065	7.58	15.2	30.4	10.1	7.58	22.8	30.4	3.54	168.0	84.1	42.1
8	7.981	9.97	20.0	40.0	13.3	9.97	29.9	40.0	4.65	222.0	111.0	55.5
10	10.02	12.5	25.0	50.0	16.7	12.5	37.6	50.0	5.85	278.0	139.0	69.5
12	11.94	14.9	29.8	59.6	19.9	14.9	44.8	59.6	6.96	332.0	166.0	83.0
14	13.13	16.4	32.8	65.6	21.9	16.4	49.2	65.6	7.65	364.0	182.0	91.0
16	15.00	18.8	37.5	75.0	25.0	18.8	56.2	75.0	8.75	417.0	208.0	104.0
18	16.88	21.1	42.1	84.2	28.1	21.1	63.2	84.2	9.85	469.0	234.0	117.0
20	18.81	23.5	47.0	94.0	31.4	23.5	70.6	94.0	11.0	522.0	261.0	131.0
24	22.63	28.3	56.6	113.0	37.8	28.3	85.0	113.0	13.2	629.0	314.0	157.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Values for welded fittings are for conditions where bore is not obstructed by weld spatter or backing rings. If appreciably obstructed, use values for "Screwed Fittings."

1. Flanged fittings have three-fourths the resistance of screwed elbows and tees.
2. Tabular figures give the extra resistance due to curvature alone to which should be added the full length of travel.
3. Small size socket-welding fittings are equivalent to miter elbows and miter tees.
4. Equivalent resistance in number of diameters of straight pipe computed for a value of (f – 0.0075) from the relation (n – $k/4f$).
5. For condition of minimum resistance where the centerline length of each miter is between d and $2^1/_2 d$.
6. For pipe having other inside diameters, the equivalent resistance can be computed from the n values.

Source: Crocker, S. *Piping Handbook*, 4th ed., Table XIV, pp. 100–101. Copyright 1945 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. Used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company.

code, unless the code official specifies that a gravity factor be applied. Where the specific gravity of the gas is greater than 0.70, the gravity factor should be applied.

Application of the gravity factor converts the figures given in the tables provided in this code to capacities for another gas of different specific gravity. Such application is accomplished by multiplying the capacities given in the tables by the multipliers shown in Table AA102.4. In case the exact specific gravity does not appear in the table, choose the next higher value specific gravity shown.

AA102.5 Higher pressure natural gas tables. Capacities for gas at pressures 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa) or greater in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Tables 402.4(5) through 402.4(7) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe; Tables 402.4(12) to 402.4(14) for semirigid tubing; Tables 402.4(18) and 402.4(19) for corrugated stainless steel tubing; and Table 402.4(22) for polyethylene plastic pipe.

TABLE AA102.4
MULTIPLIERS TO BE USED WITH TABLES 402.4(1) THROUGH 402.4(22) WHERE THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF THE GAS IS OTHER THAN 0.60

SPECIFIC GRAVITY	MULTIPLIER
0.35	1.31
0.40	1.23
0.45	1.16
0.50	1.10
0.55	1.04
0.60	1.00
0.65	0.96
0.70	0.93
0.75	0.90
0.80	0.87
0.85	0.84
0.90	0.82
1.00	0.78
1.10	0.74
1.20	0.71
1.30	0.68
1.40	0.66
1.50	0.63
1.60	0.61
1.70	0.59
1.80	0.58
1.90	0.56
2.00	0.55
2.10	0.54

SECTION AA103
USE OF CAPACITY TABLES

AA103.1 Longest length method. This sizing method is conservative in its approach by applying the maximum operating conditions in the system as the norm for the system and by setting the length of pipe used to size any given part of the *piping* system to the maximum value.

To determine the size of each section of gas *piping* in a system within the range of the capacity tables, proceed as follows (also see sample calculations included in this Appendix):

1. Divide the *piping* system into appropriate segments consistent with the presence of tees, branch lines and main runs. For each segment, determine the gas load (assuming all *appliances* operate simultaneously) and its overall length. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table AA102.2 shall be considered for *piping* segments that include four or more fittings.
2. Determine the gas demand of each *appliance* to be attached to the *piping* system. Where Tables 402.4(1) through 402.4(24) are to be used to select the *piping* size, calculate the gas demand in terms of cubic feet per hour for each *piping* system *outlet*. Where Tables 402.4(25) through 402.4(37) are to be used to select the *piping* size, calculate the gas demand in terms of thousands of Btu per hour for each *piping* system *outlet*.
3. Where the *piping* system is for use with other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gases, determine the design system pressure, the allowable loss in pressure (pressure drop), and specific gravity of the gas to be used in the *piping* system.
4. Determine the length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* in the building/*piping* system.
5. In the appropriate capacity table, select the row showing the measured length or the next longer length if the table does not give the exact length. This is the only length used in determining the size of any section of gas *piping*. If the gravity factor is to be applied, the values in the selected row of the table are multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table AA102.4.
6. Use this horizontal row to locate ALL gas demand figures for this particular system of *piping*.
7. Starting at the most remote *outlet*, find the gas demand for that *outlet* in the horizontal row just selected. If the exact figure of demand is not shown, choose the next larger figure left in the row.
8. Opposite this demand figure, in the first row at the top, the correct size of gas *piping* will be found.
9. Proceed in a similar manner for each *outlet* and each section of gas *piping*. For each section of *piping*, determine the total gas demand supplied by that section.

Where a large number of *piping* components (such as elbows, tees and valves) are installed in a pipe run, additional pressure loss can be accounted for by the use of equivalent lengths. Pressure loss across any *piping* component can be equated to the pressure drop through a length of pipe. The equivalent length of a combination of only four elbows/tees can result in a jump to the next larger length row, resulting in a significant reduction in capacity. The equivalent lengths in feet shown in Table AA102.2 have been computed on a basis that the inside diameter corresponds to that of Schedule 40 (standard-weight) steel pipe, which is close enough for most purposes involving other schedules of pipe. Where a more specific solution for equivalent length is desired, this can be made by multiplying the actual inside diameter of the pipe in inches by $n/12$, or the actual inside diameter in feet by n (n can be read from the table heading). The equivalent length values can be used with reasonable accuracy for copper or brass fittings and bends although the resistance per foot of copper or brass pipe is less than that of steel. For copper or brass valves, however, the equivalent length of pipe should be taken as 45 percent longer than the values in the table, which are for steel pipe.

AA103.2 Branch length method. This sizing method reduces the amount of conservatism built into the traditional Longest Length Method. The longest length as measured from the meter to the farthest remote *appliance* is only used to size the initial parts of the overall *piping* system. The Branch Length Method is applied in the following manner:

1. Determine the gas load for each of the connected *appliances*.
2. Starting from the meter, divide the *piping* system into a number of connected segments, and determine the length and amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all *appliances* were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table AA102.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.
3. Determine the distance from the *outlet* of the gas meter to the *appliance* farthest removed from the meter.
4. Using the longest distance (found in Step 3), size each *piping* segment from the meter to the most remote *appliance outlet*.
5. For each of these *piping* segments, use the longest length and the calculated gas load for all of the connected *appliances* for the segment and begin the sizing process in Steps 6 through 8.
6. Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating conditions and *piping* material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the next larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures or pressure drops will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures or pressure drops will require the approval of both the code official and the local gas serving utility.
7. Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.
8. Read up the table column and select the appropriate pipe size in the top row. Repeat Steps 6, 7 and 8 for each pipe segment in the longest run.
9. Size each remaining section of branch *piping* not previously sized by measuring the distance from the gas meter location to the most remote *outlet* in that branch, using the gas load of attached *appliances* and following the procedures of Steps 2 through 8.

AA103.3 Hybrid pressure method. The sizing of a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) gas *piping* system is performed using the traditional Longest Length Method but with modifications. The 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system consists of two independent pressure zones, and each zone is sized separately. The Hybrid Pressure Method is applied as follows:

The sizing of the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section (from the meter to the line regulator) is as follows:

1. Calculate the gas load (by adding up the name plate ratings) from all connected *appliances*. (In certain circumstances the installed gas load can be increased up to 50 percent to accommodate future addition of *appliances*.) Ensure that the line regulator capacity is adequate for the calculated gas load and that the required pressure drop (across the regulator) for that capacity does not exceed $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa) for a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system. If the pressure drop across the regulator is too high (for the connected gas load), select a larger regulator.
2. Measure the distance from the meter to the line regulator located inside the building.
3. If there are multiple line regulators, measure the distance from the meter to the regulator farthest removed from the meter.
4. The maximum allowable pressure drop for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section is 1 psi (6.9 kPa).
5. Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on piping material) for 2 psi (13.8 kPa) systems with a 1 psi (6.9 kPa) pressure drop, find this distance in the first column, or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed.
6. Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.
7. Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.
8. If there are multiple regulators in this portion of the *piping* system, each line segment must be sized for its actual gas load, but using the longest length previously determined in steps 2 and 3.

The low pressure section (all *piping* downstream of the line regulator) is sized as follows:

1. Determine the gas load for each of the connected *appliances*.

2. Starting from the line regulator, divide the piping system into a number of connected segments or independent parallel piping segments, and determine the amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all *appliances* were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table AA102.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.
3. For each piping segment, use the actual length or longest length (if there are sub-branchlines) and the calculated gas load for that segment and begin the sizing process as follows:
   a. Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating pressure and piping material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures or pressure drops will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures or pressure drops can require the approval of the code official.
   b. Trace across this row until the *appliance* gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.
   c. Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.
   d. Repeat this process for each segment of the piping system.

AA103.4 Pressure drop per 100 feet method. This sizing method is less conservative than the others, but it allows the designer to immediately see where the largest pressure drop occurs in the system. With this information, modifications can be made to bring the total drop to the critical *appliance* within the limitations that are presented to the designer.

Follow the procedures described in the Longest Length Method for Steps 1 through 4 and 9.

For each *piping* segment, calculate the pressure drop based on pipe size, length as a percentage of 100 feet (30 480 mm) and gas flow. Table AA103.4 shows pressure drop per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for pipe sizes from $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) through 2 inches (51 mm). The sum of pressure drops to the critical *appliance* is subtracted from the supply pressure to verify that sufficient pressure will be available. If not, the layout can be examined to find the high drop section(s) and sizing selections modified.

Note: Other values can be obtained by using the following equation:

$$\text{Desired Value} = MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{Desired Drop}}{\text{Table Drop}}}$$

For example, if it is desired to get flow through $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) pipe at 2 inches/100 feet, multiply the capacity of $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) pipe at 1 inch/100 feet by the square root of the pressure ratio:

$$147\ MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{2''\text{ w.c.}}{1''\text{ w.c.}}} = 147 \times 1.414 = 208\ MBH$$

$$(MBH = 1000\text{ Btu/h})$$

SECTION AA104
USE OF SIZING EQUATIONS

Capacities of smooth wall pipe or tubing can be determined by using the following formulae:

1. High Pressure [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$Q = 181.6\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \times (P_1^2 - P_2^2) \times Y}{C_r \times fba \times L}}$$

$$= 2237\ D^{2.623}\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \times Y}{C_r \times L}\right]^{0.541}$$

2. Low Pressure [Less than 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa)]:

$$Q = 187.3\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \times \Delta H}{C_r \times fba \times L}}$$

$$= 2313D^{2.623}\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \times L}\right)^{0.541}$$

where:

Q = Rate, cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column

D = Inside diameter of pipe, in.

P_1 = Upstream pressure, psia

P_2 = Downstream pressure, psia

Y = Superexpansibility factor = 1/supercompressibility factor

TABLE AA103.4
THOUSANDS OF BTU/H (MBH) OF NATURAL GAS PER 100 FEET OF PIPE AT VARIOUS PRESSURE DROPS AND PIPE DIAMETERS

PRESSURE DROP PER 100 FEET IN INCHES W.C.	PIPE SIZES (inch)					
	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2
0.2	31	64	121	248	372	716
0.3	38	79	148	304	455	877
0.5	50	104	195	400	600	1,160
1.0	71	147	276	566	848	1,640

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W.

C_r = Factor for viscosity, density and temperature*

$= 0.00354\ ST\left(\frac{Z}{S}\right)^{0.152}$

*Note: See Table 402.4 for Y and C_r for natural gas and propane.

S = Specific gravity of gas at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column (0.60 for natural gas, 1.50 for propane), or = 1488μ

T = Absolute temperature, °F or = t + 460

t = Temperature, °F

Z = Viscosity of gas, centipoise (0.012 for natural gas, 0.008 for propane), or = 1488μ

fba = Base friction factor for air at 60°F (CF = 1)

L = Length of pipe, ft

ΔH = Pressure drop, in. w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi)

(For SI, see Section 402.4)

SECTION AA105
PIPE AND TUBE DIAMETERS

Where the internal diameter is determined by the formulas in Section 402.4, Tables AA105.1 and AA105.2 can be used to select the nominal or standard pipe size based on the calculated internal diameter.

TABLE AA105.1
SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE STANDARD SIZES

NOMINAL SIZE (inch)	INTERNAL DIAMETER (inch)
$^1/_4$	0.364
$^3/_8$	0.493
$^1/_2$	0.622
$^3/_4$	0.824
1	1.049
$1^1/_4$	1.380
$1^1/_2$	1.610
2	2.067
$2^1/_2$	2.469
3	3.068
$3^1/_2$	3.548
4	4.026

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE AA105.2
COPPER TUBE STANDARD SIZES

TUBE TYPE	NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches)	INTERNAL DIAMETER (inches)
K	$^1/_4$	0.305
L	$^1/_4$	0.315
ACR (D)	$^3/_8$	0.315
ACR (A)	$^3/_8$	0.311
K	$^3/_8$	0.402
L	$^3/_8$	0.430
ACR (D)	$^1/_2$	0.430
ACR (A)	$^1/_2$	0.436
K	$^1/_2$	0.527
L	$^1/_2$	0.545
ACR (D)	$^5/_8$	0.545
ACR (A)	$^5/_8$	0.555
K	$^5/_8$	0.652
L	$^5/_8$	0.666
ACR (D)	$^3/_4$	0.666
ACR (A)	$^3/_4$	0.680
K	$^3/_4$	0.745
L	$^3/_4$	0.785
ACR	$^7/_8$	0.785
K	1	0.995
L	1	1.025
ACR	$1^1/_8$	1.025
K	$1^1/_4$	1.245
L	$1^1/_4$	1.265
ACR	$1^3/_8$	1.265
K	$1^1/_2$	1.481
L	$1^1/_2$	1.505
ACR	$1^5/_8$	1.505
K	2	1.959
L	2	1.985
ACR	$2^1/_8$	1.985
K	$2^1/_2$	2.435
L	$2^1/_2$	2.465
ACR	$2^5/_8$	2.465
K	3	2.907
L	3	2.945
ACR	$3^1/_8$	2.945

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION AA106 EXAMPLES OF PIPING SYSTEM DESIGN AND SIZING

AA106.1 Example 1: Longest length method. Determine the required pipe size of each section and *outlet* of the *piping* system shown in Figure AA106.1, with a designated pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the Longest Length Method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution:

1. Maximum gas demand for *Outlet* A:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption (rating plate input)}}{\text{Btu of gas}} =$$

$$\frac{\text{35,000 Btu per hour rating}}{\text{1,000 Btu per cubic foot}} = \text{35 cubic feet per hour} = \text{35 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demand for *Outlet* B:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{75{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{75 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demand for *Outlet* C:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{35{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{35 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demand for *Outlet* D:

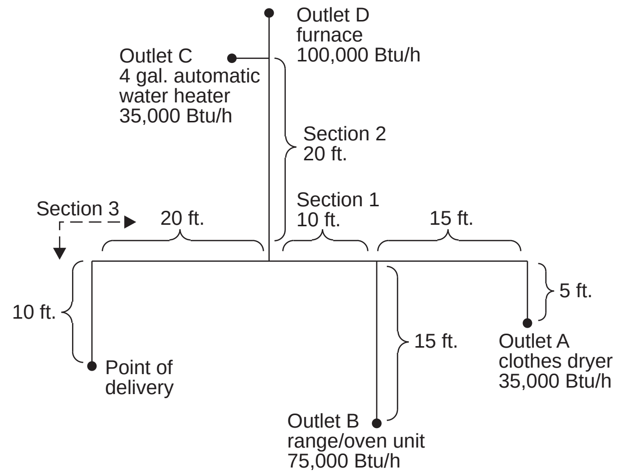
$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{100{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{100 cfh}$$

2. The length of pipe from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *Outlet* (A) is 60 feet (18 288 mm). This is the only distance used.
3. Using the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) in Table 402.4(2):
   a. *Outlet* A, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr), requires $^1/_2$-inch pipe.
   b. *Outlet* B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.
   c. Section 1, supplying *Outlets* A and B, or 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.
   d. Section 2, supplying *Outlets* C and D, or 135 cfh (3.82 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.
   e. Section 3, supplying *Outlets* A, B, C and D, or 245 cfh (6.94 m^3/hr), requires 1-inch pipe.
4. If a different gravity factor is applied to this example, the values in the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) of Table 402.4(2) would be multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table AA102.4 and the resulting cubic feet per hour values would be used to size the *piping*.

AA106.2 Example 2: Hybrid or dual pressure systems. Determine the required CSST size of each section of the *piping* system shown in Figure AA106.2, with a designated pressure drop of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section and 3-inch w.c. (0.75 kPa) pressure drop for the 13-inch w.c. (2.49 kPa) section. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/ m^3).

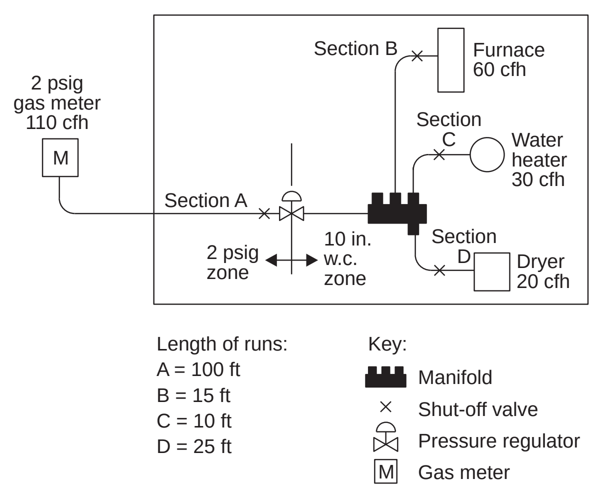
Solution:

1. Size 2 psi (13.8 kPa) line using Table 402.4(18).
2. Size 10-inch w.c. (2.5 kPa) lines using Table 402.4(16).
3. Using the following, determine if sizing tables can be used.
   a. Total gas load shown in Figure AA106.2 equals 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr).
   b. Determine pressure drop across regulator [see notes in Table 402.4(18)].
   c. If pressure drop across regulator exceeds $^3/_4$ psig (5.2 kPa), Table 402.4(18) cannot be used. Note: If pressure drop exceeds $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa), then a larger regulator must be selected or an alternative sizing method must be used.
   d. Pressure drop across the line regulator [for 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr)] is 4-inch w.c. (0.99 kPa) based on manufacturer's performance data.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon = 3.79 liters, 1 Btu = 1055 J.

FIGURE AA106.1 PIPING PLAN SHOWING A STEEL PIPING SYSTEM



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.028 m^3/hr.

FIGURE AA106.2 PIPING PLAN SHOWING A CSST SYSTEM

   e. Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.

4. Section A [2 psi (13.8 kPa) zone]
   a. Distance from meter to regulator = 100 feet (30 480 mm).
   b. Total load supplied by A = 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr) (furnace + water heater + dryer).
   c. Table 402.4(18) shows that EHD size 18 should be used.

   Note: It is not unusual to oversize the supply line by 25 to 50 percent of the as-installed load. EHD size 18 has a capacity of 189 cfh (5.35 m^3/hr).

5. Section B (low pressure zone)
   a. Distance from regulator to furnace is 15 feet (4572 mm).
   b. Load is 60 cfh (1.70 m^3/hr).
   c. Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

6. Section C (low pressure zone)
   a. Distance from regulator to water heater is 10 feet (3048 mm).
   b. Load is 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr).
   c. Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

7. Section D (low pressure zone)
   a. Distance from regulator to dryer is 25 feet (7620 mm).
   b. Load is 20 cfh (0.57 m^3/hr).
   c. Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

AA106.3 Example 3: Branch length method. Determine the required semirigid copper tubing size of each section of the *piping* system shown in Figure AA106.3, with a designated pressure drop of 1-inch w.c. (250 Pa) (using the Branch Length Method). The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution:

1. Section A
   a. The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *appliance* is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.
   b. Use this longest length to size Sections A and C.
   c. Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section A, supplying 220 cfh (6.2 m^3/hr) for four *appliances* requires 1-inch tubing.

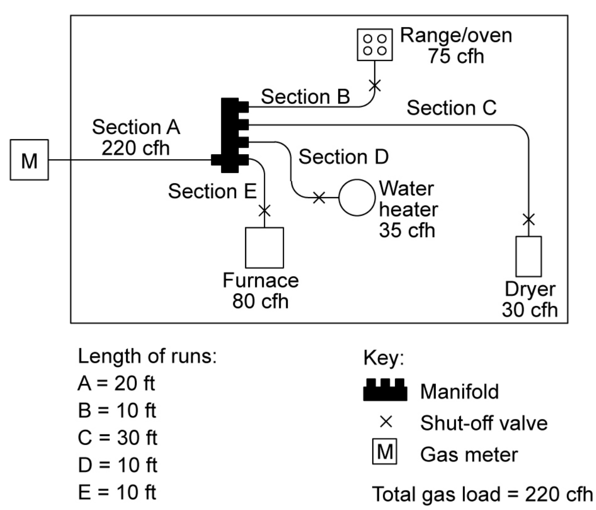
2. Section B
   a. The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the range/oven at the end of Section B is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + B.
   b. Use this branch length to size Section B only.
   c. Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr) for the range/oven requires $^1/_2$-inch tubing.

3. Section C
   a. The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the dryer at the end of Section C is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.
   b. Use this branch length to size Section C.
   c. Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section C, supplying 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr) for the dryer requires $^3/_8$-inch tubing.

4. Section D
   a. The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the water heater at the end of Section D is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + D.
   b. Use this branch length to size Section D only.
   c. Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section D, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr) for the water heater requires $^3/_8$-inch tubing.

5. Section E
   a. The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the furnace at the end of Section E is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + E.
   b. Use this branch length to size Section E only.
   c. Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section E, supplying 80 cfh (2.26 m^3/hr) for the furnace requires $^1/_2$-inch tubing.

AA106.4 Example 4: Modification to existing piping system. Determine the required CSST size for Section G (retrofit application) of the *piping* system shown in Figure



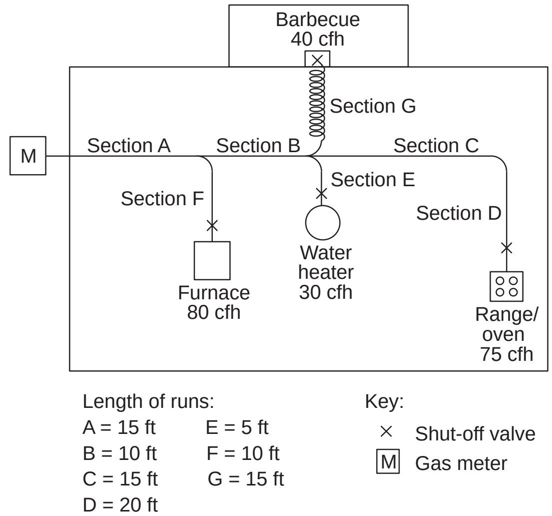
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.028 m^3/hr.

FIGURE AA106.3
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A COPPER TUBING SYSTEM

AA106.4, with a designated pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the branch length method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution:

1. The length of pipe and CSST from the *point of delivery* to the retrofit *appliance* (barbecue) at the end of Section G is 40 feet (12 192 mm), A + B + G.
2. Use this branch length to size Section G.
3. Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.
4. Using the row marked 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Table 402.4(15), Section G, supplying 40 cfh (1.13 m^3/hr) for the barbecue requires EHD 18 CSST.
5. The sizing of Sections A, B, F and E must be checked to ensure adequate gas carrying capacity since an *appliance* has been added to the *piping* system (see Section AA106.1 for details).



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.028 m^3/hr.

FIGURE AA106.4
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A MODIFICATION TO EXISTING PIPING SYSTEM

AA106.5 Example 5: Calculating pressure drops due to temperature changes. A test *piping* system is installed on a warm autumn afternoon when the temperature is 70°F (21°C). In accordance with local custom, the new *piping* system is subjected to an air pressure test at 20 psig (138 kPa). Overnight, the temperature drops and when the inspector shows up first thing in the morning the temperature is 40°F (4°C).

If the volume of the *piping* system is unchanged, then the formula based on Boyle's and Charles' law for determining the new pressure at a reduced temperature is as follows:

$$\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{P_1}{P_2}$$

where:

T_1 = Initial temperature, absolute (T_1 + 459)

T_2 = Final temperature, absolute (T_2 + 459)

P_1 = Initial pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7)

P_2 = Final pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7)

$$\frac{(70 + 459)}{(40 + 459)} = \frac{(20 + 14.7)}{(P_2 + 14.7)}$$

$$\frac{529}{499} = \frac{34.7}{(P_2 + 14.7)}$$

$$(P_2 + 14.7) \times \frac{529}{499} = 34.7$$

$$(P_2 + 14.7) = \frac{34.7}{1.060}$$

$$P_2 = 32.7 - 14.7$$

$$P_2 = 18 \text{ psig}$$

Therefore, the gauge could be expected to register 18 psig (124 kPa) when the ambient temperature is 40°F (4°C).

AA106.6 Example 6: Pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe method. Using the layout shown in Figure AA106.1 and ΔH = pressure drop, in w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi), proceed as follows:

1. Length to A = 20 feet, with 35,000 Btu/hr.

   For $^1/_2$-inch pipe, ΔH = $^{20\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}}$ × 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.06 in w.c.
2. Length to B = 15 feet, with 75,000 Btu/hr.

   For $^3/_4$-inch pipe, ΔH = $^{15\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}}$ × 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.045 in w.c.
3. Section 1 = 10 feet, with 110,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

   For 1-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{10\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}}$ × 0.2 inch w.c. = 0.02 in w.c.

   For $^3/_4$-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{10\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}}$ × [0.5 inch w.c. + $^{(110{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}-104{,}000\text{ Btu/hr})}/_{(147{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}-104{,}000\text{ Btu/hr})}$ × (1.0 inches w.c. - 0.5 inch w.c.)] = 0.1 × 0.57 inch w.c.≈ 0.06 inch w.c.

   Note that the pressure drop between 104,000 Btu/hr and 147,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 110,000 Btu/hr.
4. Section 2 = 20 feet, with 135,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

   For 1-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{20\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}}$ × [0.2 inch w.c. + $^{(14{,}000\text{ Btu/hr})}/_{(27{,}000\text{ Btu/hr})}$ × 0.1 inch w.c.] = 0.05 inch w.c.

For $^3/_4$-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{20\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 1.0 inch w.c. = 0.2 inch w.c.

Note that the pressure drop between 121,000 Btu/hr and 148,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 135,000 Btu/hr, but interpolation for the ¾-inch pipe (trivial for 104,000 Btu/hr to 147,000 Btu/hr) was not used.

5. Section 3 = 30 feet, with 245,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

   For 1-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{30\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 1.0 inches w.c. = 0.3 inch w.c.

   For $1^1/_4$ -inch pipe: ΔH = $^{30\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 0.2 inch w.c. = 0.06 inch w.c.

   Note that interpolation for these options is ignored since the table values are close to the 245,000 Btu/hr carried by that section.

6. The total pressure drop is the sum of the section approaching A, Sections 1 and 3, or either of the following, depending on whether an absolute minimum is needed or the larger drop can be accommodated.

   Minimum pressure drop to farthest *appliance*:

   ΔH = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.02 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. = 0.14 inch w.c.

   Larger pressure drop to the farthest *appliance*:

   ΔH = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.42 inch w.c.

   Notice that Section 2 and the run to B do not enter into this calculation, provided that the appliances have similar input pressure requirements.

   For SI units: 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 foot = 0.305 m, 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa.

APPENDIX AB

SIZING OF VENTING SYSTEMS SERVING APPLIANCES EQUIPPED WITH DRAFT HOODS, CATEGORY I APPLIANCES AND APPLIANCES LISTED FOR USE WITH TYPE B VENTS

This appendix is an excerpt from the 2021 International Fuel Gas Code® *informative Appendix B. Section and table references in the text, other than AB sections and tables, are as numbered in the* International Fuel Gas Code *(IFGC). For related table references in this code, you can find the IFGC table number in brackets adjacent to the table number in Chapter 24 of this code. For example, Table 504.2(2) in the IFGC is related to Table G2428.2(2) [504.2(2)] in this code.*

SECTION AB101 EXAMPLES USING SINGLE-APPLIANCE VENTING TABLES

AB101.1 Example 1: Single draft hood-equipped appliance. An installer has a 120,000 British thermal unit (Btu) per hour input *appliance* with a 5-inch-diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 10-foot-high Type B vent system. What size vent should be used assuming:

1. A 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with two 90-degree elbows, or
2. A 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with three 90-degree elbows in the vent system.

Solution:

Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* should be used to solve this problem because single-wall metal vent connectors are being used with a Type B vent.

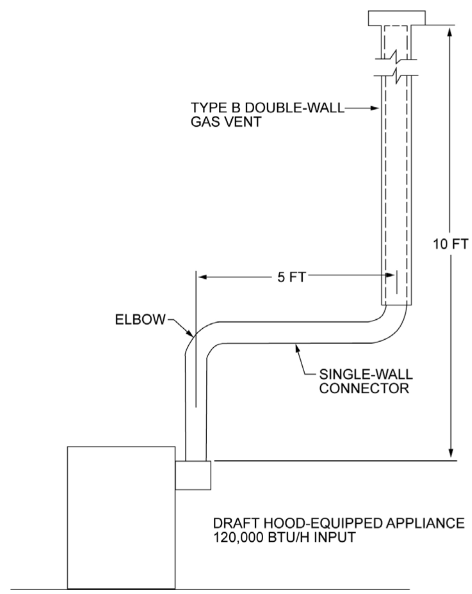
1. Read down the first column in Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* until the row associated with a 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral is found. Read across this row until a vent capacity greater than 120,000 Btu per hour is located in the shaded columns labeled "NAT Max" for draft hood-equipped appliances. In this case, a 5-inch-diameter vent has a capacity of 122,000 Btu per hour and can be used for this application.
2. If three 90-degree elbows are used in the vent system, then the maximum vent capacity listed in the tables must be reduced by 10 percent (see Section 504.2.3 of the *International Fuel Gas Code* for single-appliance vents). This implies that the 5-inch-diameter vent has an adjusted capacity of only 110,000 Btu per hour. In this case, the vent system must be increased to 6 inches in diameter (see the following calculations).

   122,000(0.90) = 110,000 for 5-inch vent

   From Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, select 6-inch vent.

   186,000(0.90) = 167,000; This is greater than the required 120,000. Therefore, use a 6-inch vent and connector where three elbows are used.

See Figure AB101.1 for an example.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE AB101.1 EXAMPLE 1: SINGLE DRAFT HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE

AB101.2 Example 2: Single fan-assisted appliance. An installer has an 80,000 Btu per hour input fan-assisted *appliance* that must be installed using 10 feet of lateral connector attached to a 30-foot-high Type B vent. Two 90-degree elbows are needed for the installation. Can a single-wall metal vent connector be used for this application?

Solution:

Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* refers to the use of single-wall metal vent connectors with Type B vent. In the first column find the row associated with a 30-foot height and a 10-foot lateral. Read across this row, looking at the FAN Min and FAN Max columns, to find that a 3-inch-diameter single-wall metal vent connector is not recommended. Moving to the next larger size single wall connector (4 inches), note that a 4-inch-diameter single-wall metal connector has a recommended minimum vent capacity of 91,000 Btu per hour and a recommended maximum vent capacity of 144,000 Btu per hour. The 80,000 Btu per hour fan-assisted *appliance* is outside this range, so the conclusion is that a single-wall metal vent connector cannot be used to vent this *appliance* using 10 feet of lateral for the connector.

However, if the 80,000 Btu per hour input *appliance* could be moved to within 5 feet of the vertical vent, then a 4-inch single-wall metal connector could be used to vent the *appliance*. Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* shows the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch vent with 5 feet of lateral to be between 72,000 Btu per hour and 157,000 Btu per hour.

If the *appliance* cannot be moved closer to the vertical vent, then Type B vent could be used as the connector material. In this case, Table 504.2(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* shows that for a 30-foot-high vent with 10 feet of lateral, the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch-diameter vent attached to a fan-assisted *appliance* is between 37,000 Btu per hour and 150,000 Btu per hour.

See Figure AB101.2 for an example.

AB101.3 Example 3: Interpolating between table values. An installer has an 80,000 Btu per hour input *appliance* with a 4-inch-diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 12-foot-high Type B vent. The vent connector has a 5-foot lateral length and is also Type B. Can this *appliance* be vented using a 4-inch-diameter vent?

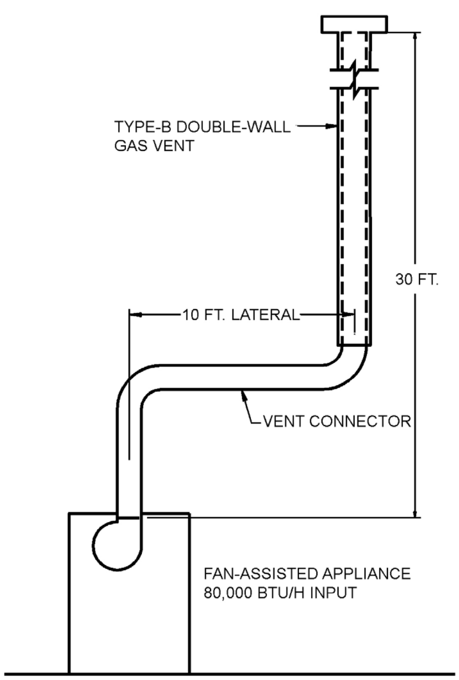
Solution:

Table 504.2(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used in the case of an all Type B vent system. However, since there is no entry in Table 504.2(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* for a height of 12 feet, interpolation must be used. Read down the 4-inch diameter NAT Max column to the row associated with 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral to find the capacity value of 77,000 Btu per hour. Read further down to the 15-foot height, 5-foot lateral row to find the capacity value of 87,000 Btu per hour. The difference between the 15-foot height capacity value and the 10-foot height capacity value is 10,000 Btu per hour. The capacity for a vent system with a 12-foot height is equal to the capacity for a 10-foot height plus $^2/_5$ of the difference between the 10-foot and 15-foot height values, or 77,000 + $^2/_5$(10,000) = 81,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 4-inch-diameter vent can be used in the installation.

AB101.4 Figures. See Figures AB101.4(1) through AB101.4(5) for examples of single-appliance venting.

SECTION AB102 EXAMPLES USING COMMON VENTING TABLES

AB102.1 Example 4: Common venting two draft hood-equipped appliances. A 35,000 Btu per hour water heater is to be common vented with a 150,000 Btu per hour furnace using a common vent with a total height of 30 feet. The connector rise is 2 feet for the water heater with a horizontal length of 4 feet. The connector rise for the furnace is 3 feet



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE AB101.2 EXAMPLE 2: SINGLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE

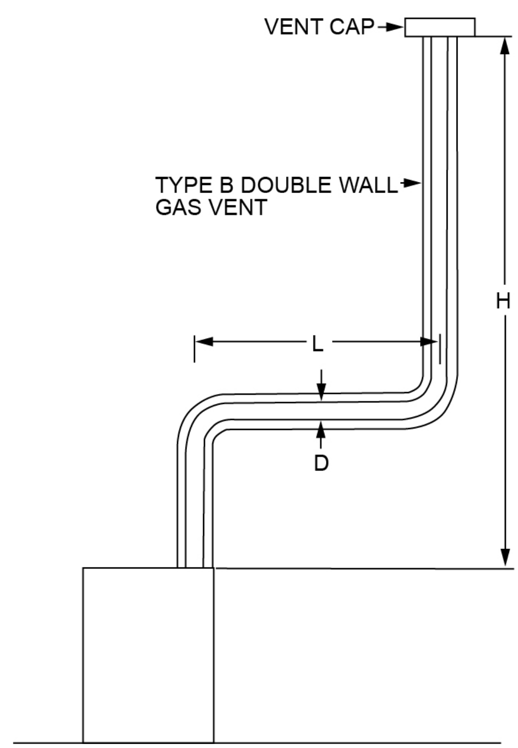


Table 504.2(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connected directly to the appliance.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE AB101.4(1) TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

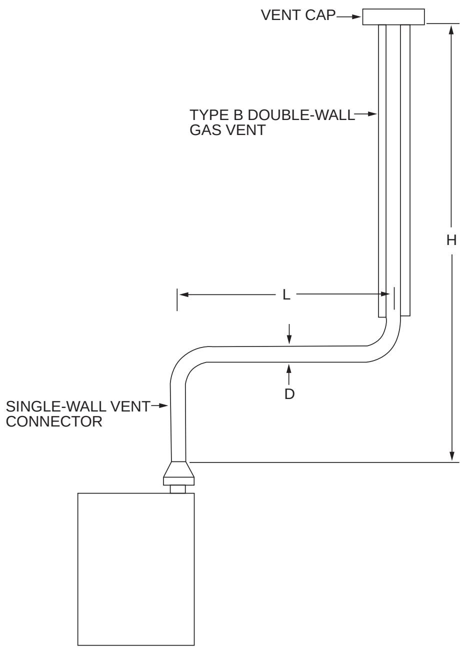


Table 504.2(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing a single-wall metal vent connector attached to a Type B double-wall gas vent.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE AB101.4(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM
SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH
A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR**

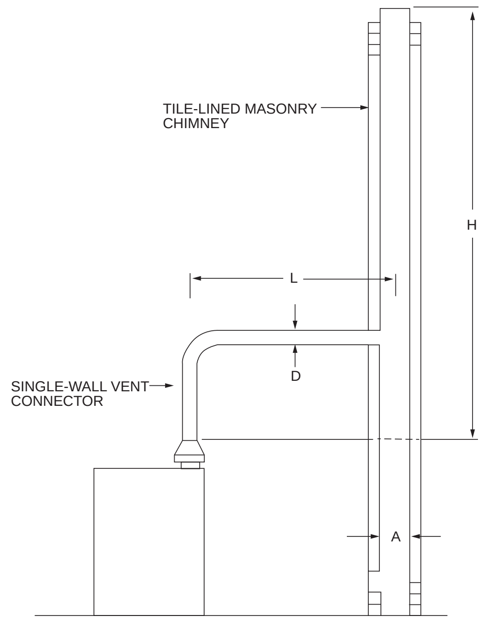


Table 504.2(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing a single-wall vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE AB101.4(4)
VENT SYSTEM SERVING A
SINGLE APPLIANCE USING A MASONRY CHIMNEY
AND A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR**

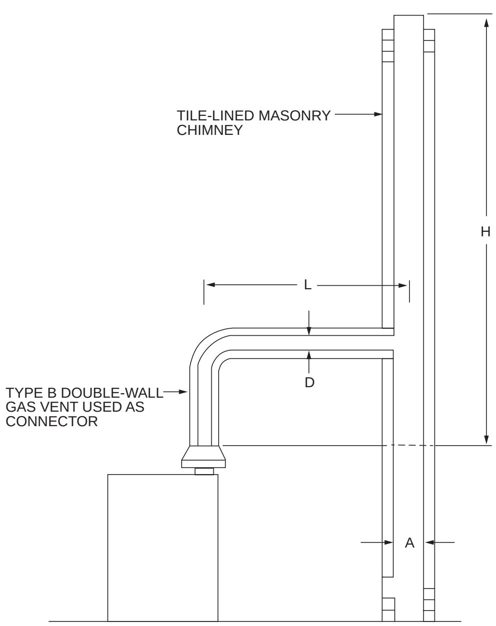
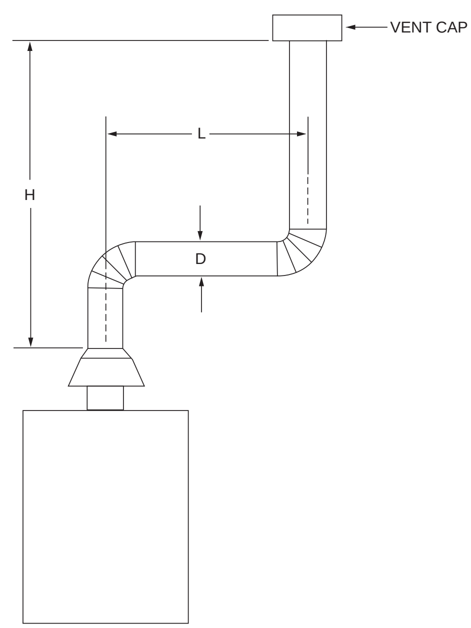


Table 504.2(3) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing a Type B double-wall gas vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE AB101.4(3)
VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE
APPLIANCE WITH A MASONRY CHIMNEY WITH
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR**



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal vent serving a single draft hood-equipped appliance [see Table 504.2(5) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*].

**FIGURE AB101.4(5)
ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR
SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING
A SINGLE DRAFT HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE**

with a horizontal length of 8 feet. Assume single-wall metal connectors will be used with Type B vent. What size connectors and combined vent should be used in this installation?

Solution:

Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* should be used to size single-wall metal vent connectors attached to Type B vertical vents. In the vent connector capacity portion of Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height. For a 2-foot rise on the vent connector for the water heater, read the shaded columns for draft hood-equipped appliances to find that a 3-inch-diameter vent connector has a capacity of 37,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 3-inch single-wall metal vent connector can be used with the water heater. For a draft hood-equipped furnace with a 3-foot rise, read across the appropriate row to find that a 5-inch-diameter vent connector has a maximum capacity of 120,000 Btu per hour (which is too small for the furnace) and a 6-inch-diameter vent connector has a maximum vent capacity of 172,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 6-inch-diameter vent connector should be used with the 150,000 Btu per hour furnace. Since both vent connector horizontal lengths are less than the maximum lengths listed in Section 504.3.2 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, the table values can be used without adjustments.

In the common vent capacity portion of Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height and read over to the NAT + NAT portion of the 6-inch-diameter column to find a maximum combined capacity of 257,000 Btu per hour. Since the two appliances total only 185,000 Btu per hour, a 6-inch common vent can be used.

See Figure AB102.1 for an example.

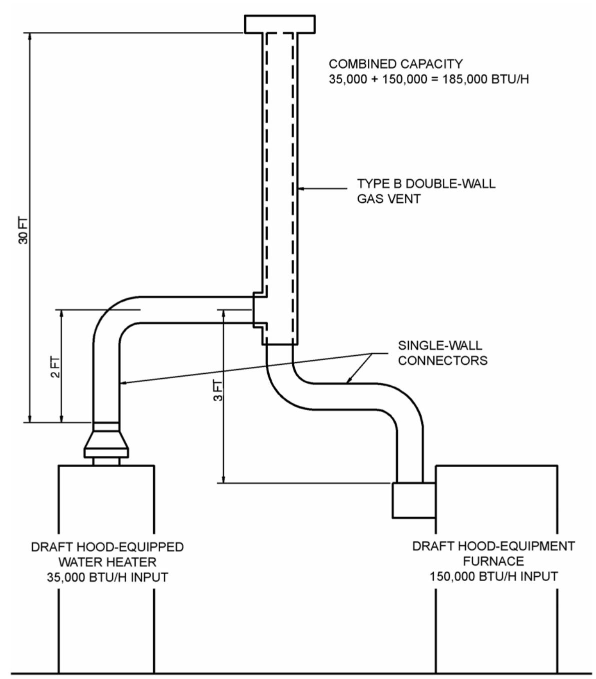
AB102.2 Example 5a: Common venting a draft hood-equipped water heater with a fan-assisted furnace into a Type B vent. In this case, a 35,000 Btu per hour input draft hood-equipped water heater with a 4-inch-diameter draft hood *outlet*, 2 feet of connector rise, and 4 feet of horizontal length is to be common vented with a 100,000 Btu per hour fan-assisted furnace with a 4-inch-diameter flue collar, 3 feet of connector rise, and 6 feet of horizontal length. The common vent consists of a 30-foot height of Type B vent. What are the recommended vent diameters for each connector and the common vent? The installer would like to use a single-wall metal vent connector.

Solution: [Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*].

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Since the water heater vent connector horizontal length of 4 feet is less than the maximum value listed in Section 504.3.2 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, the venting table values can be used without adjustments. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu per hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 37,000 Btu per hour. Although this is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by Section 504.3.21 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*. A 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of not more than 67,000 Btu per hour and is equal to the draft hood *outlet* diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected. Since the water heater is equipped with a draft hood, there are no minimum input rating restrictions.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row. Since the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu per hour rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 119,000 Btu per hour and a minimum input rating of 85,000 Btu per hour. The 100,000 Btu per hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate. Since the furnace vent connector horizontal length of 6 feet does not exceed the maximum value listed in Section 504.3.2 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, the venting table values can be used without adjustment. If the furnace had an input rating of 80,000 Btu per hour, then a Type B vent connector [see Table 504.3(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*] would be needed in order to meet the minimum capacity limit.

Common Vent Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a Btu per hour rating equal to or greater than 135,000 Btu per hour. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 132,000 Btu per hour and the



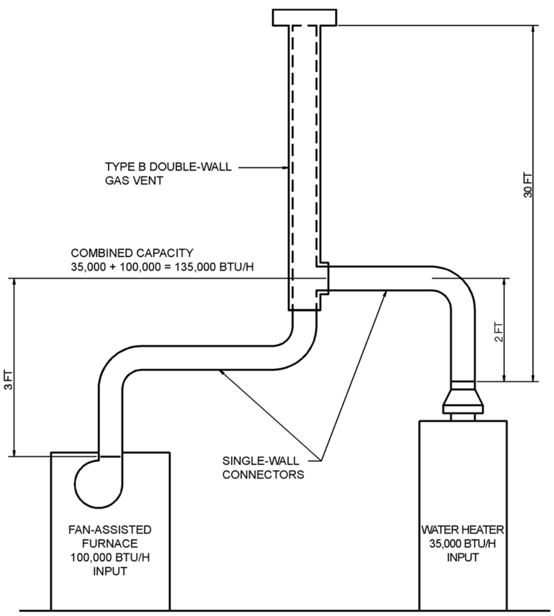
For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE AB102.1
EXAMPLE 4: COMMON VENTING
TWO DRAFT HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES

5-inch common vent has a capacity of 202,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, the 5-inch common vent should be used in this example.

Summary. In this example, the installer can use a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the water heater and a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the furnace. The common vent should be a 5-inch-diameter Type B vent.

See Figure AB102.2 for an example.



For SI: British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**FIGURE AB102.2
EXAMPLE 5a: COMMON VENTING A
DRAFT HOOD WITH A FAN-ASSISTED FURNACE
INTO A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT**

AB102.3 Example 5b: Common venting into a masonry chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Example 5a are to be common vented into a clay tile-lined *masonry chimney* with a 30-foot height. The chimney is not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. The internal dimensions of the clay tile liner are nominally 8 inches by 12 inches. Assuming the same vent connector heights, laterals and materials found in Example 5a, what are the recommended vent connector diameters, and is this an acceptable installation?

Solution:

Table 504.3(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used to size common venting installations involving single-wall connectors into masonry chimneys.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (R) row to the first Btu-per-hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input of only 31,000 Btu per hour while a 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input of 57,000 Btu per hour. A 4-inch vent connector must therefore be used.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (R) row. Since the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu-per-hour rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 127,000 Btu per hour and a minimum input rating of 95,000 Btu per hour. The 100,000 Btu-per-hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Masonry Chimney. From Table AB102.3, the equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 8 inches by 12 inches is 63.6 square inches. Using Table 504.3(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, Common Vent Capacity, read down the FAN + NAT column under the Minimum Internal Area of Chimney value of 63 to the row for 30-foot height to find a capacity value of 739,000 Btu per hour. The combined input rating of the furnace and water heater, 135,000 Btu per hour, is less than the table value, so this is an acceptable installation.

Section 504.3.17 of the *International Fuel Gas Code* requires the common vent area to be not greater than seven times the smallest *listed appliance* categorized vent area, flue collar area or draft hood outlet area. Both *appliances* in this installation have 4-inch-diameter outlets. From Table AB102.3, the equivalent area for an inside diameter of 4 inches is 12.2 square inches. Seven times 12.2 equals 85.4, which is greater than 63.6, so this configuration is acceptable.

AB102.4 Example 5c: Common venting into an exterior masonry chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Examples 5a and 5b are to be common vented into an exterior *masonry chimney*. The chimney height, clay tile liner dimensions, and vent connector heights and laterals are the same as in Example 5b. This system is being installed in Charlotte, North Carolina. Does this exterior *masonry chimney* need to be relined? If so, what corrugated metallic liner size is recommended? What vent connector diameters are recommended?

Solution:

In accordance with Section 504.3.20 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, Type B vent connectors are required to be used with exterior masonry chimneys. Use Tables 504.3(7a) and (7b) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* to size FAN+NAT common venting installations involving Type-B double wall connectors into exterior masonry chimneys.

The local 99-percent winter design temperature needed to use Table 504.3(7b) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* can be found in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals.* For Charlotte, North Carolina, this design temperature is 19°F.

Chimney Liner Requirement. As in Example 5b, use the 63 square inch Internal Area columns for this size clay tile liner. Read down the 63 square inch column of Table

**TABLE AB102.3
MASONRY CHIMNEY LINER
DIMENSIONS WITH CIRCULAR EQUIVALENTS[a]**

NOMINAL LINER SIZE (inches)	INSIDE DIMENSIONS OF LINER (inches)	INSIDE DIAMETER OR EQUIVALENT DIAMETER (inches)	EQUIVALENT AREA (square inches)
4 × 8	$2^1/_2 \times 6^1/_2$	4	12.2
		5	19.6
		6	28.3
		7	38.3
8 × 8	$6^3/_4 \times 6^3/_4$	7.4	42.7
		8	50.3
8 × 12	$6^1/_2 \times 10^1/_2$	9	63.6
		10	78.5
12 × 12	$9^3/_4 \times 9^3/_4$	10.4	83.3
		11	95
12 × 16	$9^1/_2 \times 13^1/_2$	11.8	107.5
		12	113.0
		14	153.9
16 × 16	$13^1/_4 \times 13^1/_4$	14.5	162.9
		15	176.7
16 × 20	13 × 17	16.2	206.1
		18	254.4
20 × 20	$16^3/_4 \times 16^3/_4$	18.2	260.2
		20	314.1
20 × 24	$16^1/_2 \times 20^1/_2$	20.1	314.2
		22	380.1
24 × 24	$20^1/_4 \times 20^1/_4$	22.1	380.1
		24	452.3
24 × 28	$20^1/_4 \times 20^1/_4$	24.1	456.2
28 × 28	$24^1/_4 \times 24^1/_4$	26.4	543.3
		27	572.5
30 × 30	$25^1/_2 \times 25^1/_2$	27.9	607
		30	706.8
30 × 36	$25^1/_2 \times 31^1/_2$	30.9	749.9
		33	855.3
36 × 36	$31^1/_2 \times 31^1/_2$	34.4	929.4
		36	1017.9

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 m^2.

a. Where liner sizes differ dimensionally from those shown in Table AB102.3, equivalent diameters can be determined from published tables for square and rectangular ducts of equivalent carrying capacity or by other engineering methods.

504.3(7a) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* to the 30-foot height row to find that the combined *appliance* maximum input is 747,000 Btu per hour. The combined input rating of the *appliances* in this installation, 135,000 Btu per hour, is less than the maximum value, so this criterion is satisfied. Table 504.3(7b) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, at a 19°F design temperature, and at the same vent height and internal area used above, shows that the minimum allowable input rating of a space-heating *appliance* is 470,000 Btu per hour. The furnace input rating of 100,000 Btu per hour is less than this minimum value. So this criterion is not satisfied, and an alternative venting design needs to be used, such as a Type B vent shown in Example 5a or a *listed* chimney liner system shown in the remainder of the example.

In accordance with Section 504.3.19, Table 504.3(1) or Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used for sizing corrugated metallic liners in masonry chimneys, with the maximum common vent capacities reduced by 20 percent. This example will be continued assuming Type B vent connectors.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(1), Vent Connector Capacity, of the *International Fuel Gas Code* read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu/h rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum capacity of 39,000 Btu/h. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by Section 504.3.21 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*. A 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 70,000 Btu/h and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(1), Vent Connector Capacity, of the *International Fuel Gas Code* read down the Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu per hour rating in the FAN Max column that is equal to or greater than the furnace input rating. The 100,000 Btu per hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Chimney Liner Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 504.3(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, read down the Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN+NAT column that has a Btu per hour rating greater than 135,000 Btu per hour. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 138,000 Btu per hour. Reducing the maximum capacity by 20 percent (Section 504.3.19 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*) results in a maximum capacity for a 4-inch corrugated liner of 110,000 Btu per hour, less than the total input of 135,000 Btu per hour. So a larger liner is needed. The 5-inch common vent capacity *listed* in Table 504.3(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is 210,000 Btu per hour, and after reducing by 20 percent is 168,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 5-inch corrugated metal liner should be used in this example.

Single-Wall Connectors. Once it has been established that relining the chimney is necessary, Type B double-wall vent connectors are not specifically required. This example could be redone using Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* for single-wall vent connectors. For this case, the vent connector and liner diameters would be the same as found above with Type B double-wall connectors.

AB102.5 Figures. See Figures AB102.5(1) through AB102.5(9) for examples of common venting. See Figure AB102.5(10) for the 99% Winter Design Temperatures for the Contiguous United States.

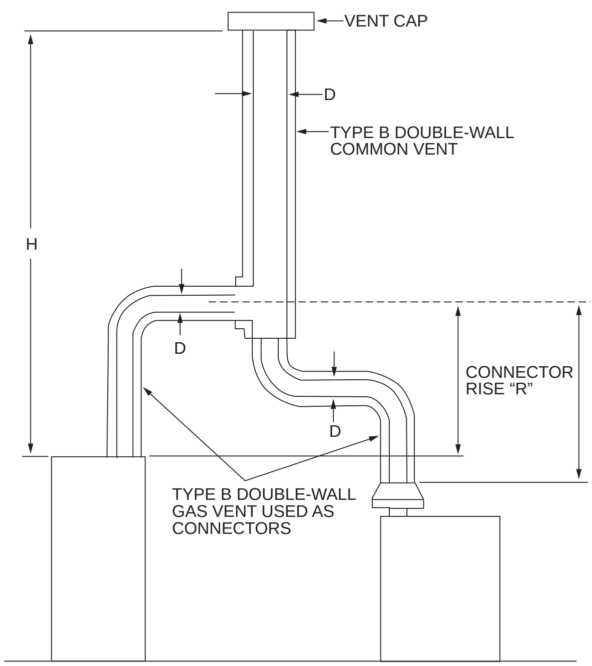


Table 504.3(1) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE AB102.5(1)
VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR

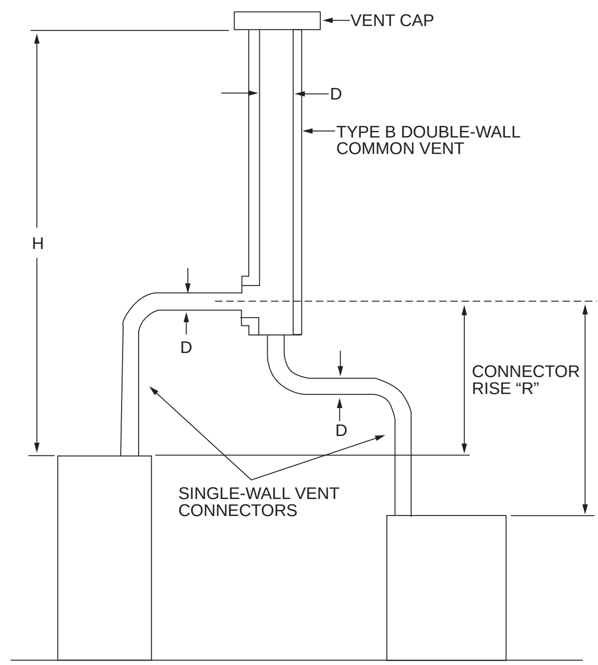


Table 504.3(2) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing single-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE AB102.5(2)
VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS

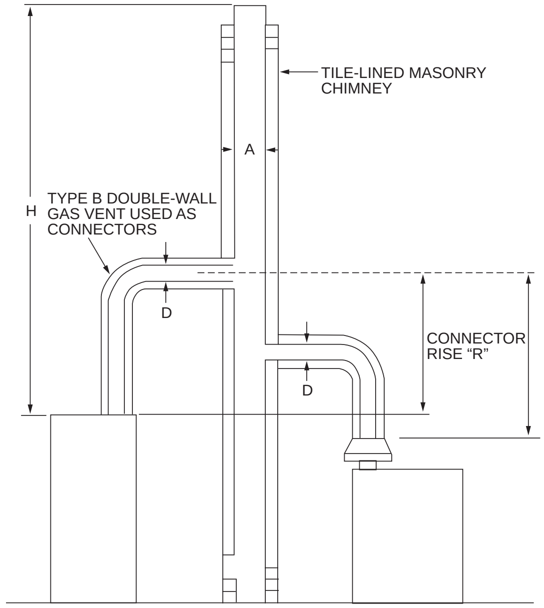


Table 504.3(3) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: “A” is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE AB102.5(3)
MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR

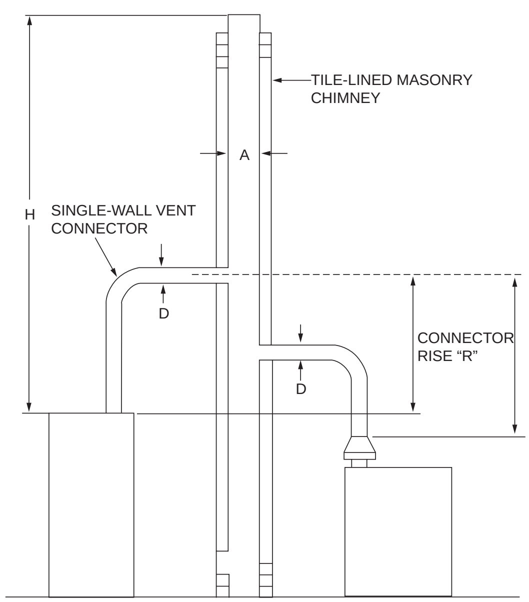
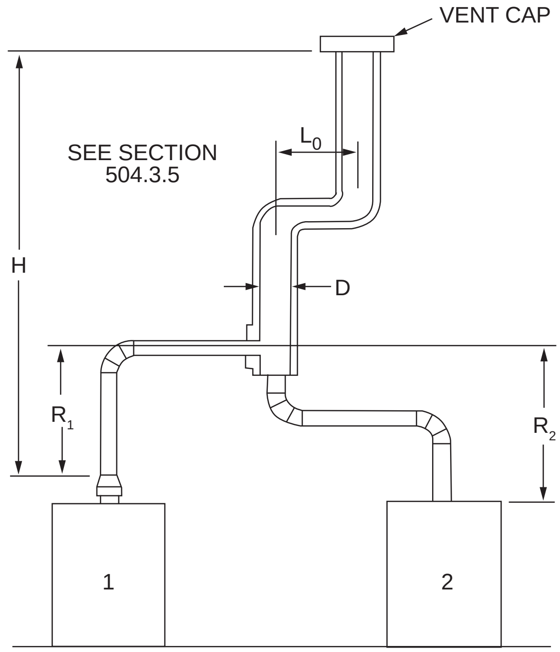


Table 504.3(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used where sizing single-wall metal vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: “A” is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

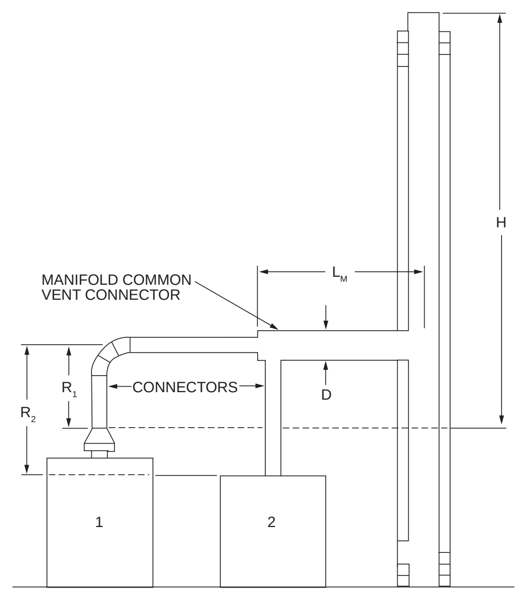
Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE AB102.5(4)
MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal pipe vent serving two or more draft hood-equipped appliances [see Table 504.3(5) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*].

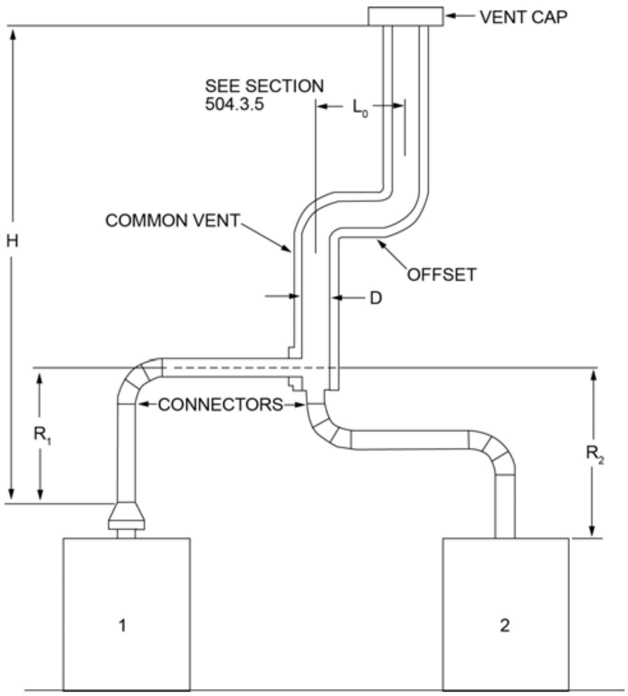
FIGURE AB102.5(5)
ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE DRAFT HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES



Example: Manifolded Common Vent Connector L_M shall be no greater than 18 times the common vent connector manifold inside diameter; i.e., a 4-inch (102 mm) inside diameter common vent connector manifold shall not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) in length (see Section 504.3.4 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*).

Note: This is an illustration of a typical manifolded vent connector. Different appliance, vent connector or common vent types are possible. Consult Section 502.3 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

FIGURE AB102.5(6)
USE OF MANIFOLD COMMON VENT CONNECTOR



Example: Offset Common Vent

Note: This is an illustration of a typical offset vent. Different appliance, vent connector, or vent types are possible. Consult Sections 504.2 and 504.3 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

FIGURE AB102.5(7)
USE OF OFFSET COMMON VENTS WITH SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS

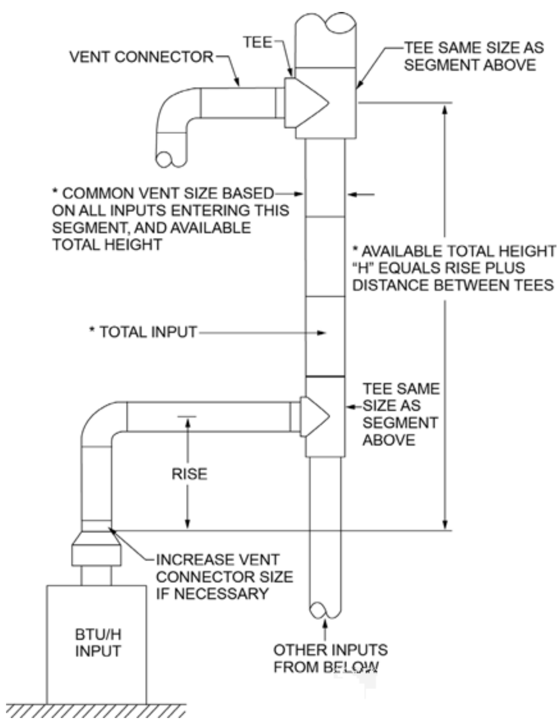
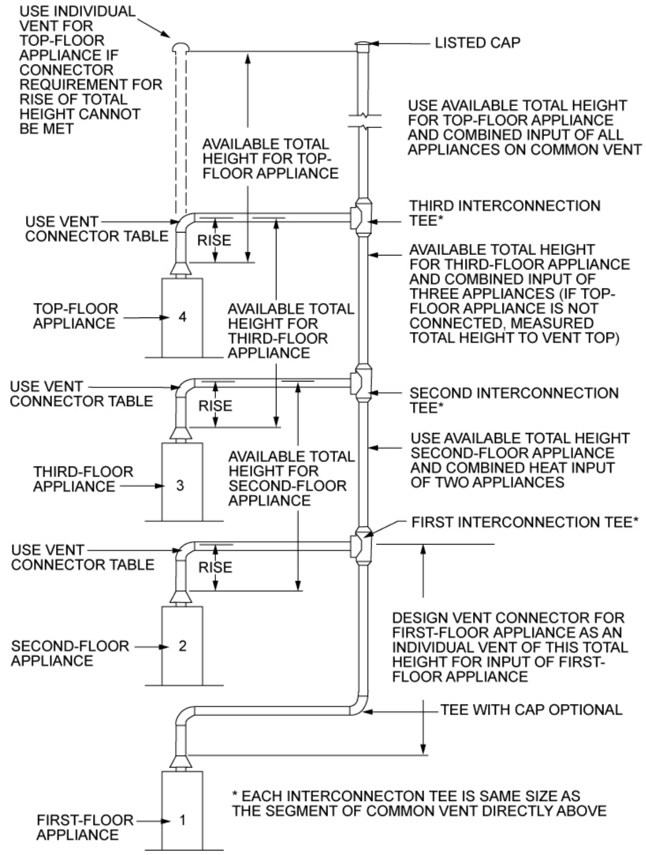


FIGURE AB102.5(8)
MULTISTORY GAS VENT DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR EACH SEGMENT OF SYSTEM



Principles of design of multistory vents using vent connector and common vent design tables (see Sections 504.3.11 through 504.3.17 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*).

FIGURE AB102.5(9)
MULTISTORY VENT SYSTEMS

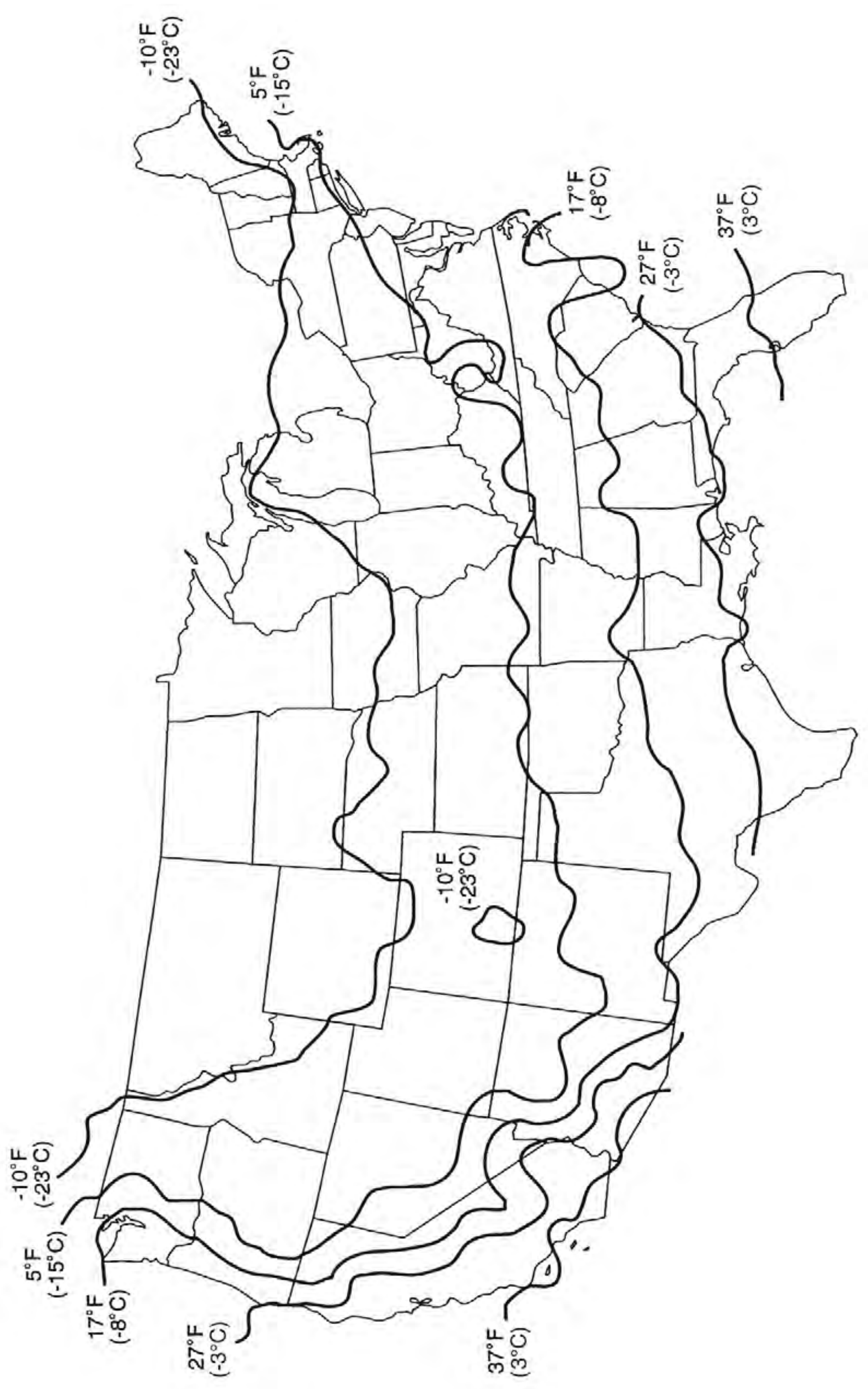


FIGURE AB102.5(10)
99% WINTER DESIGN TEMPERATURES FOR THE CONTIGUOUS UNITED STATES

APPENDIX AC (IFGS)

EXIT TERMINALS OF MECHANICAL DRAFT AND DIRECT-VENT VENTING SYSTEMS

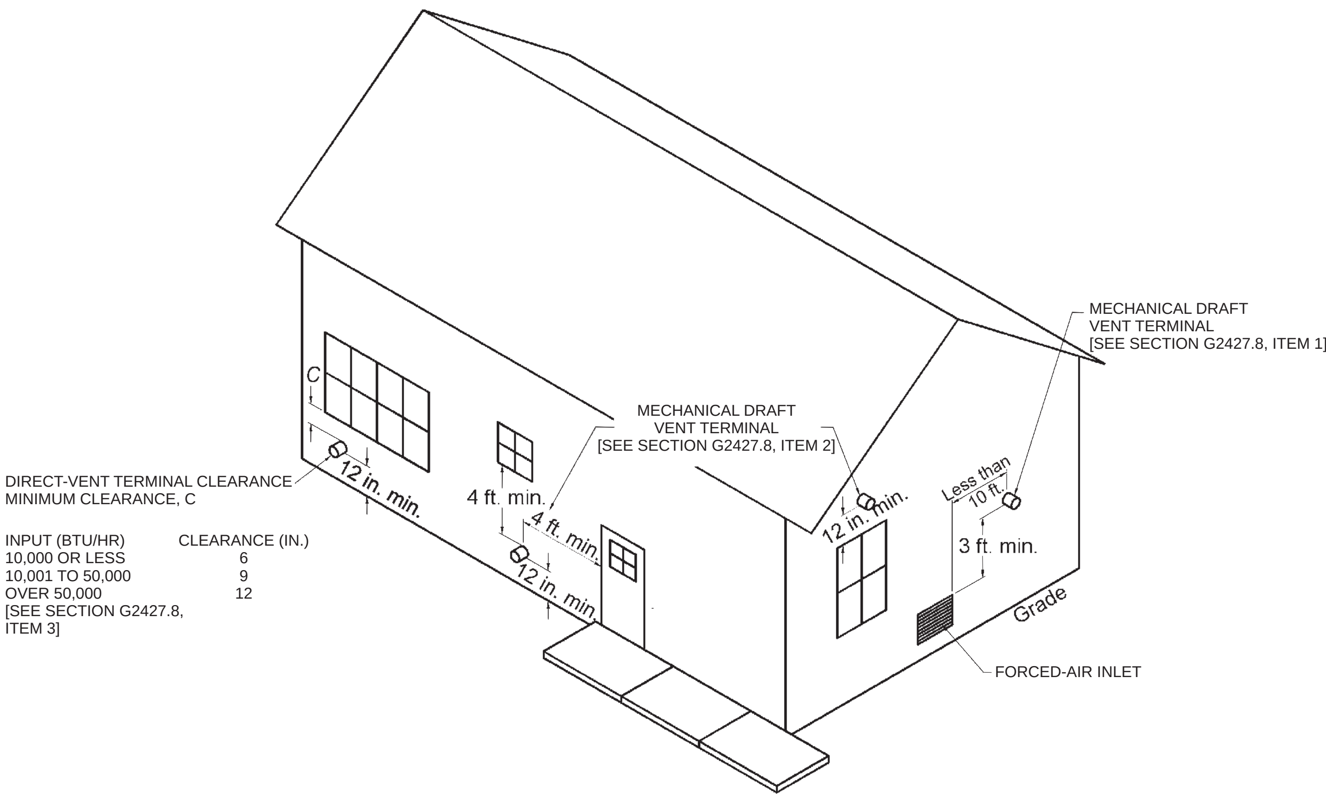
This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.

User note:

About this appendix: *Appendix AC provides a graphic depiction of the venting terminal location requirements of the code.*

SECTION AC101 GENERAL

AC101.1 Exit terminals. Location requirements of exit terminals of mechanical draft and direct-vent venting systems are provided in Figure AC101.1.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE AC101.1
EXIT TERMINALS OF MECHANICAL DRAFT AND DIRECT-VENT VENTING SYSTEMS

APPENDIX AD
RECOMMENDED PROCEDURE FOR SAFETY INSPECTION OF AN EXISTING APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

This appendix is an excerpt from the 2021 International Fuel Gas Code® *informative Appendix D, coordinated with the section numbering of the* International Residential Code.

SECTION AD101 GENERAL

The following procedure is intended as a guide to aid in determining that an appliance is properly installed and is in a safe condition for continued use. Where a gas supplier performs an inspection, their written procedures should be followed.

AD101.1 Application. This procedure is intended for existing residential installations of a furnace, boiler, room heater, water heater, cooking appliance, fireplace appliance and clothes dryer. This procedure should be performed prior to any attempt to modify the appliance installation or building envelope.

AD101.2 Weatherization programs. Before a building envelope is to be modified as part of a weatherization program, the existing appliance installation should be inspected in accordance with these procedures. After all unsafe conditions are repaired, and immediately after the weatherization is complete, the appliance inspections in Section AD105.2 are to be repeated.

AD101.3 Inspection procedure. The safety of the building occupant and inspector are to be determined as the first step as described in Section AD102. Only after the ambient environment is found to be safe should inspections of gas piping and appliances be undertaken. It is recommended that all inspections described in Sections AD103, AD104, and AD106, where the appliance is in the off mode, be completed and any unsafe conditions repaired or corrected before continuing with inspections of an operating appliance described in Sections AD105 and AD106.

AD101.4 Manufacturer instructions. Where available, the manufacturer's installation and operating instructions for the installed appliances should be used as part of these inspection procedures to determine if it is installed correctly and is operating properly.

AD101.5 Instruments. The inspection procedures include measuring for fuel gas and carbon monoxide (CO) and will require the use of a combustible gas detector (CGD) and a CO detector. It is recommended that both types of detectors be *listed*. Prior to any inspection, the detectors should be calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In addition, it is recommended that the detectors have the following minimum specifications.

1. Gas Detector: The CGD should be capable of indicating the presence of the type of fuel gas for which it is to be used, for example, natural gas or propane. The combustible gas detector should be capable of the following:
   a. *PPM:* Numeric display with a parts per million (ppm) scale from 1ppm to 900 ppm in 1 ppm increments.
   b. *LEL:* Numeric display with a percent lower explosive limit (% LEL) scale from 0 percent to 100 percent in 1 percent increments.
   c. *Audio:* An audio sound feature to locate leaks.
2. CO Detector: The CO detector should be capable of the following functions and have a numeric display scale as follows:
   a. *PPM:* For measuring ambient room and appliance emissions a display scale in parts per million (ppm) from 0 to 1,000 ppm in 1 ppm increments.
   b. *Alarm:* A sound alarm function where hazardous levels of ambient CO is found (see AD102 for alarm levels).
   c. *Air Free:* Capable of converting CO measurements to an air free level in ppm. Where a CO detector is used without an air free conversion function, the CO air free can be calculated in accordance with Note 3 in Table AD106.

SECTION AD102 OCCUPANT AND INSPECTOR SAFETY

Prior to entering a building, the inspector should have both a combustible gas detector (CGD) and CO detector turned on, calibrated, and operating. Immediately upon entering the building, a sample of the ambient atmosphere should be taken. Based on CGD and CO detector readings, the inspector should take the following actions:

1. The CO detector indicates a carbon monoxide level of 70 ppm or greater.[1] The inspector should immediately notify the occupant of the need for themselves and any building occupant to evacuate; the inspector shall immediately evacuate and call 911.
2. Where the CO detector indicates a reading between 30 ppm and 70 ppm.[1] The inspector should advise the occupant that high CO levels have been found and recommend that all possible sources of CO should be turned off immediately and windows and doors opened. Where it appears that the source of CO is a permanently installed appliance, advise the occupant

to keep the appliance off and have the appliance serviced by a qualified servicing agent.

3. Where CO detector indicates CO below 30 ppm[1], the inspection can continue.
4. The CGD indicates a combustible gas level of 20-percent LEL or greater. The inspector should immediately notify the occupant of the need for themselves and any building occupant to evacuate; the inspector shall immediately evacuate and call 911.
5. The CGD indicates a combustible gas level below 20-percent LEL, the inspection can continue.

If during the inspection process it is determined a condition exists that could result in unsafe appliance operation, shut off the appliance and advise the *owner* of the unsafe condition. Where a gas leak is found that could result in an unsafe condition, advise the owner of the unsafe condition and call the gas supplier to turn off the gas supply. The inspector should not continue a safety inspection on an operating appliance, venting system, and piping system until repairs have been made.

SECTION AD103 GAS PIPING AND CONNECTIONS INSPECTIONS

1. *Leak Checks*. Conduct a test for gas leakage using either a noncorrosive leak detection solution or a CGD confirmed with a leak detection solution.

   The preferred method for leak checking is by use of gas leak detection solution applied to all joints. This method provides a reliable visual indication of significant leaks.

   The use of a CGD in its audio sensing mode can quickly locate suspect leaks but can be overly sensitive indicating insignificant and false leaks. Suspect leaks found through the use of a CGD should be confirmed using a leak detection solution.

   Where gas leakage is confirmed, the *owner* should be notified that repairs must be made. The inspection should include the following components:

   a. Gas piping fittings located within the appliance space.
   b. Appliance connector fittings.
   c. Appliance gas valve/regulator housing and connections.

2. *Appliance Connector*. Verify that the appliance connection type is compliant with Section G2422. Inspect flexible appliance connections to determine if they are free of cracks, corrosion and signs of damage. Verify that there are no uncoated brass connectors. Where connectors are determined to be unsafe or where an uncoated brass connector is found, the appliance shutoff valve should be placed in the off position and the *owner* notified that the connector must be replaced.
3. *Piping Support*. Inspect piping to determine that it is adequately supported, that there is no undue stress on the piping, and if there are any improperly capped pipe openings.
4. *Bonding*. Verify that the electrical bonding of gas piping is compliant with Section G2411.

SECTION AD104 INSPECTIONS TO BE PERFORMED WITH THE APPLIANCE NOT OPERATING

The following safety inspection procedures are performed on appliances that are not operating. These inspections are applicable to all appliance installations.

1. *Preparing for Inspection*. Shut off all gas and electrical power to the appliances located in the same room being inspected. For gas supply, use the shutoff valve in the supply line or at the manifold serving each appliance. For electrical power, place the circuit breaker in the off position or remove the fuse that serves each appliance. A lock type device or tag should be installed on each gas shutoff valve and at the electrical panel to indicate that the service has been shut off for inspection purposes.
2. *Vent System Size and Installation*. Verify that the existing venting system size and installation are compliant with Chapter 5 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*. The size and installation of venting systems for other than natural draft and Category I appliances should be in compliance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Inspect the venting system to determine that it is free of blockage, restriction, leakage, corrosion, and other deficiencies that could cause an unsafe condition. Inspect masonry chimneys to determine if they are lined. Inspect plastic venting system to determine that it is free of sagging and it is sloped in an upward direction to the outdoor vent termination.
3. *Combustion Air Supply*. Inspect provisions for *combustion air* as follows:

   a. *Nondirect-vent Appliances*. Determine that nondirect-vent appliance installations are compliant with the *combustion air* requirements in Section G2407. Inspect any interior and exterior *combustion air* openings and any connected *combustion air* ducts to determine that there is no blockage, restriction, corrosion or damage. Inspect to determine that the upper horizontal *combustion air* duct is not sloped in a downward direction toward the air supply source.
   b. *Direct-vent Appliances*. Verify that the *combustion air* supply ducts and pipes are securely fastened to the direct-vent appliance and determine that there are no separations, blockage, restriction, corrosion or other

[1] US Consumer Product Safety Commission, *Responding to Residential Carbon Monoxide Incidents, Guidelines For Fire and Other Emergency Response Personnel*, Approved 7/23/02

damage. Determine that the combustion air source is located in the outdoors or to areas that freely communicate to the outdoors.

c. *Unvented Appliances*. Verify that the total input of all unvented room heaters and gas-fired refrigerators installed in the same room or rooms that freely communicate with each other does not exceed 20 Btu/hr/ft^3.

4. *Flooded Appliances*. Inspect for flood damage to the appliance. Signs of flooding include a visible water submerge line on the appliance housing, excessive surface or component rust, deposited debris on internal components, and mildew-like odor. Inform the owner that any part of the appliance control system and any appliance gas control that has been under water must be replaced. Flood-damaged plumbing, heating, cooling and electrical appliances should be replaced.

5. *Flammable Vapors*. Inspect the room/space where the appliance is installed to determine if the area is free of the storage of gasoline or any flammable products such as oil-based solvents, varnishes or adhesives. Where the appliance is installed where flammable products will be stored or used, such as a garage, verify that the appliance burner(s) is not less than 18 inches above the floor unless the appliance is *listed* as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

6. *Clearances to Combustibles*. Inspect the immediate location where the appliance is installed to determine if the area is free of rags, paper or other combustibles. Verify that the appliance and venting system are compliant with clearances to combustible building components in accordance with Sections G2408.5, G2425.15.4, G2426.5, G2427.6.2, G2427.10.5 and other applicable sections of Section G2427.

7. *Appliance Components.* Inspect internal components by removing access panels or other components for the following:

    a. Inspect burners and crossovers for blockage and corrosion. The presence of soot, debris, and signs of excessive heating are potential indicators of incomplete combustion caused by blockage or improper burner adjustments.

    b. Metallic and nonmetallic hoses for signs of cracks, splitting, corrosion, and loose connections.

    c. Signs of improper or incomplete repairs.

    d. Modifications that override controls and safety systems.

    e. Electrical wiring for loose connections; cracks, missing or worn electrical insulation; and indications of excessive heat or electrical shorting. Appliances requiring an external electrical supply should be inspected for proper electrical connection in accordance with the *National Electrical Code*.

8. *Placing Appliances Back in Operation*. Return all inspected appliances and systems to their preexisting state by reinstalling any removed access panels and components. Turn on the gas supply and electricity to each appliance found in safe condition. Proceed to the operating inspections in Sections AD105 through AD106.

SECTION AD105 INSPECTIONS TO BE PERFORMED WITH THE APPLIANCE OPERATING

The following safety inspection procedures are to be performed on appliances that are operating where there are no unsafe conditions or where corrective repairs have been completed.

AD105.1 General appliance operation.

1. *Initial Startup*. Adjust the thermostat or other control device to start the *appliance*. Verify that the *appliance* starts up normally and is operating properly.

    Determine that the pilot(s), where provided, is burning properly and that the main burner ignition is satisfactory, by interrupting and re-establishing the electrical supply to the *appliance* in any convenient manner. If the *appliance* is equipped with a continuous pilot(s), test all pilot safety devices to determine whether they are operating properly by extinguishing the pilot(s) when the main burner(s) is off and determining, after 3 minutes, that the main burner gas does not flow upon a call for heat. If the *appliance* is not provided with a pilot(s), test for proper operation of the ignition system in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's lighting and operating instructions.

2. *Flame Appearance*. Visually inspect the flame appearance for proper color and appearance. Visually determine that the main burner gas is burning properly (i.e., without floating, lifting or flashback). Adjust the primary air shutter as required. If the *appliance* is equipped with high and low flame controlling or flame modulation, check for proper main burner operation at low flame.

3. *Appliance Shutdown*. Adjust the thermostat or other control device to shut down the *appliance*. Verify that the appliance shuts off properly.

AD105.2 Test for combustion air and vent drafting for natural draft and Category I appliances. *Combustion air* and vent draft procedures are for natural draft and Category I appliances equipped with a draft hood and connected to a natural draft venting system.

1. *Preparing for Inspection*. Close all exterior building doors and windows and all interior doors between the space in which the *appliance* is located and other spaces of the building that can be closed. Turn on any clothes dryer. Turn on any exhaust fans, such as range hoods and bathroom exhausts, so they will operate at maximum speed. Do not operate a summer exhaust fan. Close fireplace dampers and any fireplace doors.

2. *Placing the Appliance in Operation*. Place the *appliance* being inspected in operation. Adjust the thermostat or control so the *appliance* will operate continuously.
3. *Spillage Test*. Verify that all *appliances* located within the same room are in their standby mode and ready for operation. Follow lighting instructions for each *appliance* as necessary. Test for spillage at the draft hood relief opening as follows:
    a. After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage using smoke.
    b. Immediately after the first check, turn on all other fuel gas burning *appliances* within the same room so they will operate at their full inputs and repeat the spillage test.
    c. Shut down all *appliances* to their standby mode and wait for 15 minutes.
    d. Repeat the spillage test steps a through c on each *appliance* being inspected.
4. Additional Spillage Tests: Determine if the *appliance* venting is impacted by other door and air handler settings by performing the following tests.
    a. Set initial test condition in accordance with Section AD105.2, Item 1.
    b. Place the appliance(s) being inspected in operation. Adjust the thermostat or control so the appliance(s) will operate continuously.
    c. Open the door between the space in which the appliance(s) is located and the rest of the building. After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage at each *appliance* using smoke.
    d. Turn on any other central heating or cooling air handler fan that is located outside of the area where the *appliances* are being inspected. After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage at each *appliance* using smoke. The test should be conducted with the door between the space in which the appliance(s) is located and the rest of the building in the open and in the closed position.
5. Return doors, windows, exhaust fans, fireplace dampers, and any other fuel gas burning *appliance* to their previous conditions of use.
6. If, after completing the spillage test it is believed sufficient *combustion air* is not available, the *owner* should be notified that an alternative *combustion air* source is needed in accordance with Section G2407. Where it is believed that the venting system does not provide adequate natural draft, the *owner* should be notified that alternative vent sizing, design or configuration is needed in accordance with Chapter 24. If spillage occurs, the *owner* should be notified as to its cause, be instructed as to which position of the door (open or closed) would lessen its impact, and that corrective action by a HVAC professional should be taken.

SECTION AD106 APPLIANCE-SPECIFIC INSPECTIONS

The following *appliance*-specific inspections are to be performed as part of a complete inspection. These inspections are performed either with the *appliance* in the off or standby mode (indicated by "OFF") or on an *appliance* that is operating (indicated by "ON"). The CO measurements are to be undertaken only after the *appliance* is determined to be properly venting. The CO detector should be capable of calculating CO emissions in ppm air free.

1. Forced Air Furnaces:
    a. OFF. Verify that an air filter is installed and that it is not excessively blocked with dust.
    b. OFF. Inspect visible portions of the furnace combustion chamber for cracks, ruptures, holes, and corrosion. A heat exchanger leakage test should be conducted.
    c. ON. Verify both the limit control and the fan control are operating properly. Limit control operation can be checked by blocking the circulating air inlet or temporarily disconnecting the electrical supply to the blower motor and determining that the limit control acts to shut off the main burner gas.
    d. ON. Verify that the blower compartment door is properly installed and can be properly resecured if opened. Verify that the blower compartment door safety switch operates properly.
    e. ON. Check for flame disturbance before and after blower comes on which can indicate heat exchanger leaks.
    f. ON. Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.
2. Boilers:
    a. OFF and ON. Inspect for evidence of water leaks around boiler and connected piping.
    b. ON. Verify that the water pumps are in operating condition. Test low water cutoffs, automatic feed controls, pressure and temperature limit controls, and relief valves in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to determine that they are in operating condition.
    c. ON. Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.
3. Water Heaters:
    a. OFF. Verify that the pressure-temperature relief valve is in operating condition. Water in the heater should be at operating temperature.
    b. OFF. Verify that inspection covers, glass, and gaskets are intact and in place on a flammable vapor ignition resistant (FVIR) type water heater.

c. ON. Verify that the thermostat is set in accordance with the manufacturer's operating instructions and measure the water temperature at the closest tub or sink to verify that it is not greater than 120°F.

d. OFF. Where required by the local building code in earthquake prone locations, inspect that the water heater is secured to the wall studs in two locations (high and low) using appropriate metal strapping and bolts.

e. ON. Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

4. Cooking Appliances

a. OFF. Inspect oven cavity and range-top exhaust vent for blockage with aluminum foil or other materials.

b. OFF. Inspect cook top to verify that it is free from a build-up of grease.

c. ON. Measure the CO above each burner and at the oven exhaust vents after 5 minutes of burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

5. Vented Room Heaters

a. OFF. For built-in room heaters and wall furnaces, inspect that the burner compartment is free of lint and debris.

b. OFF. Inspect that furnishings and combustible building components are not blocking the heater.

c. ON. Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

6. Vent-Free (unvented) Heaters

a. OFF. Verify that the heater input is not more than 40,000 Btu input, but not more than 10,000 Btu where installed in a bedroom, and 6,000 Btu where installed in a bathroom.

b. OFF. Inspect the ceramic logs provided with gas log type vent free heaters that they are properly located and aligned.

c. OFF. Inspect the heater that it is free of excess lint build-up and debris.

d. OFF. Verify that the oxygen depletion safety shutoff system has not been altered or bypassed.

e. ON. Verify that the main burner shuts down within 3 minutes by extinguishing the pilot light. The test is meant to simulate the operation of the oxygen depletion system (ODS).

f. ON. Measure the CO after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

7. Gas Log Sets and Gas Fireplaces

a. OFF. For gas logs installed in wood burning fireplaces equipped with a damper, verify that the fireplace damper is in a fixed open position.

b. ON. Measure the CO in the firebox (log sets installed in wood burning fireplaces or in the vent (gas fireplace) after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

8. Gas Clothes Dryer

a. OFF. Where installed in a closet, verify that a source of make-up air is provided and inspect that any make-up air openings, louvers, and ducts are free of blockage.

b. OFF. Inspect for excess amounts of lint around the dryer and on dryer components. Inspect that there is a lint trap properly installed and it does not have holes or tears. Verify that it is in a clean condition.

c. OFF. Inspect visible portions of the exhaust duct and connections for loose fittings and connections, blockage, and signs of corrosion. Verify that the duct termination is not blocked and that it terminates in an outdoor location. Verify that only approved metal vent ducting material is installed (plastic and vinyl materials are not approved for gas dryers).

d. ON. Verify mechanical components including drum and blower are operating properly.

e. ON. Operate the clothes dryer and verify that exhaust system is intact and exhaust is exiting the termination.

f. ON. Measure the CO at the exhaust duct or termination after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table AD106.

TABLE AD106
CO THRESHOLDS

Boilers (all categories)	400 ppm air free
Central Furnace (all categories)	400 ppm[1] air free[2, 3]
Floor Furnace	400 ppm air free
Gravity Furnace	400 ppm air free
Wall Furnace (BIV)	200 ppm air free
Wall Furnace (Direct Vent)	400 ppm air free
Vented Room Heater	200 ppm air free
Vent-Free Room Heater	200 ppm air free
Water Heater	200 ppm air free
Oven/Broiler	225 ppm as measured
Top Burner	25 ppm as measured (per burner)
Clothes Dryer	400 ppm air free
Refrigerator	25 ppm as measured
Gas Log (gas fireplace)	25 ppm as measured in vent
Gas Log (installed in wood burning fireplace)	400 ppm air free in firebox

1. Parts per million.
2. Air-free emission levels are based on a mathematical equation (involving carbon monoxide and oxygen or carbon dioxide readings) to convert an actual diluted flue gas carbon monoxide testing sample to an undiluted air-free flue gas carbon monoxide level utilized in the appliance certification standards. For natural gas or propane, using as-measured CO ppm and O_2 percentage:

$$CO_{AFppm} = \left(\frac{20.9}{20.9 - O_2}\right) \times CO_{ppm}$$

where:

CO_{AFppm} = Carbon monoxide, air-free ppm

CO_{ppm} = As-measured combustion gas carbon monoxide ppm

O_2 = Percentage of oxygen in combustion gas, as a percentage

3. An alternate method of calculating the CO air-free when access to an oxygen meter is not available:

$$CO_{AFppm} = \left(\frac{UCO_2}{CO_2}\right) \times CO$$

where:

UCO_2 = Ultimate concentration of carbon dioxide for the fuel being burned in percent for natural gas (12.2 percent) and propane (14.0 percent)

CO_2 = Measured concentration of carbon dioxide in combustion products in percent

CO = Measured concentration of carbon monoxide in combustion products in percent

APPENDIX AE

MANUFACTURED HOUSING USED AS DWELLINGS

DELETED

APPENDIX AF

RADON CONTROL METHODS

If a sub-soil exhaust system is provided, the system shall conform to the requirements of this appendix.

SECTION AF101 SCOPE

AF101.1 General. This appendix contains requirements for new construction where radon-control-systems are provided.

SECTION AF102 DEFINITIONS

AF102.1 General. For the purpose of these requirements, the terms used shall be defined as follows:

DRAIN TILE LOOP. A continuous length of drain tile or perforated pipe extending around all or part of the internal or external perimeter of a *basement* or *crawl space* footing.

RADON GAS. A naturally occurring, chemically inert, radioactive gas that is not detectable by human senses. As a gas, it can move readily through particles of soil and rock, and can accumulate under the slabs and foundations of homes where it can easily enter into the living space through construction cracks and openings.

SOIL-GAS-RETARDER. A continuous membrane of 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene or other equivalent material used to retard the flow of soil gases into a building.

SUBMEMBRANE DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM. A system designed to achieve lower submembrane air pressure relative to *crawl space* air pressure by use of a vent drawing air from beneath the soil-gas-retarder membrane.

SUBSLAB DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM (Active). A system designed to achieve lower subslab air pressure relative to indoor air pressure by use of a fan-powered vent drawing air from beneath the slab.

SUBSLAB DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM (Passive). A system designed to achieve lower subslab air pressure relative to indoor air pressure by use of a vent pipe routed through the *conditioned space* of a building and connecting the subslab area with outdoor air, thereby relying on the convective flow of air upward in the vent to draw air from beneath the slab.

SECTION AF103 REQUIREMENTS

AF103.1 General. The following construction techniques are intended to resist radon entry and prepare the building for post-construction radon mitigation.

AF103.2 Subfloor preparation. A layer of gas-permeable material shall be placed under all concrete slabs and other floor systems that directly contact the ground and are within the walls of the living spaces of the building, to facilitate future installation of a subslab depressurization system, if needed. The gas-permeable layer shall consist of one of the following:

1. A uniform layer of clean aggregate, not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick. The aggregate shall consist of material that will pass through a 2-inch (51 mm) sieve and be retained by a $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) sieve.
2. A uniform layer of sand (native or fill), not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick, overlain by a layer or strips of geotextile drainage matting designed to allow the lateral flow of soil gases.
3. Other materials, systems or floor designs with demonstrated capability to permit depressurization across the entire subfloor area.

AF103.3 Soil-gas-retarder. A minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) [or 3-mil (0.075 mm) cross-laminated] polyethylene or equivalent flexible sheeting material shall be placed on top of the gas-permeable layer prior to casting the slab or placing the floor assembly to serve as a soil-gas-retarder by bridging any cracks that develop in the slab or floor assembly, and to prevent concrete from entering the void spaces in the aggregate base material. The sheeting shall cover the entire floor area with separate sections of sheeting lapped not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The sheeting shall fit closely around any pipe, wire or other penetrations of the material. Punctures or tears in the material shall be sealed or covered with additional sheeting.

AF103.4 Entry routes. Potential radon entry routes shall be closed in accordance with Sections AF103.4.1 through AF103.4.10.

AF103.4.1 Floor openings. Openings around bathtubs, showers, water closets, pipes, wires or other objects that penetrate concrete slabs, or other floor assemblies, shall be filled with a polyurethane caulk or equivalent sealant applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

AF103.4.2 Concrete joints. Control joints, isolation joints, construction joints, and any other joints in concrete slabs or between slabs and foundation walls shall be sealed with a caulk or sealant. Gaps and joints shall be cleared of loose material and filled with polyurethane caulk or other elastomeric sealant applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

AF103.4.3 Condensate drains. Condensate drains shall be trapped or routed through nonperforated pipe to daylight.

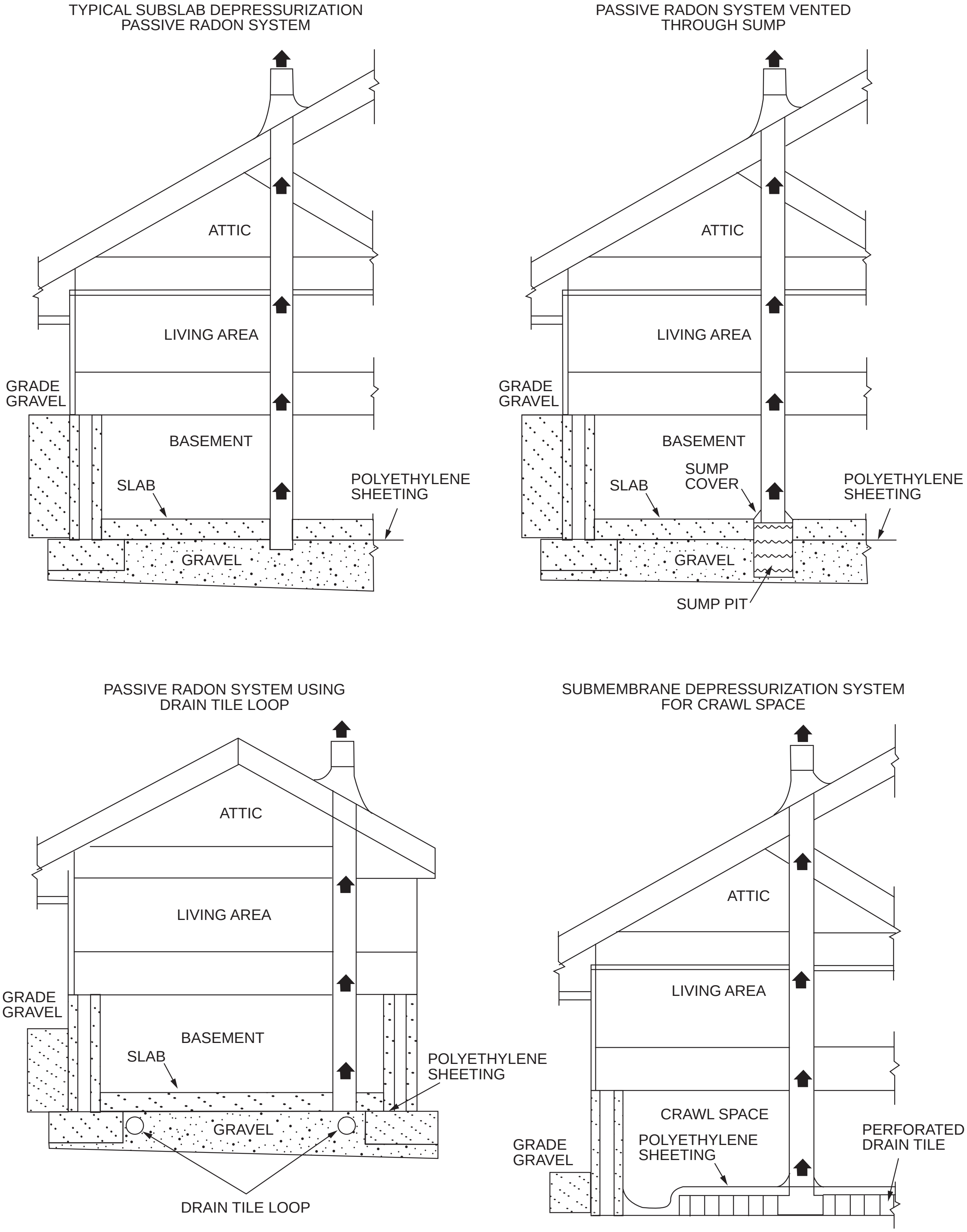


FIGURE AF103.1
RADON-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION DETAILS FOR FOUR FOUNDATION TYPES

AF103.4.4 Sumps. Sump pits open to soil or serving as the termination point for subslab or exterior drain tile loops shall be covered with a gasketed or otherwise sealed lid. Sumps used as the suction point in a subslab depressurization system shall have a lid designed to accommodate the vent pipe. Sumps used as a floor drain shall have a lid equipped with a trapped inlet.

AF103.4.5 Foundation walls. Hollow block masonry foundation walls shall be constructed with either a continuous course of *solid masonry*, one course of masonry grouted solid, or a solid concrete beam at or above finished ground surface to prevent the passage of air from the interior of the wall into the living space. Where a brick veneer or other masonry ledge is installed, the course immediately below that ledge shall be sealed. Joints, cracks or other openings around all penetrations of both exterior and interior surfaces of masonry block or wood foundation walls below the ground surface shall be filled with polyurethane caulk or equivalent sealant. Penetrations of concrete walls shall be filled.

AF103.4.6 Dampproofing. The exterior surfaces of portions of concrete and masonry block walls below the ground surface shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section R406.

AF103.4.7 Air-handling units. Air-handling units in crawl spaces shall be sealed to prevent air from being drawn into the unit.

Exception: Units with gasketed seams or units that are otherwise sealed by the manufacturer to prevent leakage.

AF103.4.8 Ducts. Ductwork passing through or beneath a slab shall be of seamless material unless the air-handling system is designed to maintain continuous positive pressure within such ducting. Joints in such ductwork shall be sealed to prevent air leakage.

Ductwork located in crawl spaces shall have seams and joints sealed by closure systems in accordance with Section M1601.4.1.

AF103.4.9 Crawl space floors. Openings around all penetrations through floors above crawl spaces shall be caulked or otherwise filled to prevent air leakage.

AF103.4.10 Crawl space access. Access doors and other openings or penetrations between *basements* and adjoining crawl spaces shall be closed, gasketed or otherwise filled to prevent air leakage.

AF103.5 Passive submembrane depressurization system. In buildings with *crawl space* foundations, the following components of a passive submembrane depressurization system shall be installed during construction.

Exception: Buildings in which an *approved* mechanical *crawl space* ventilation system or other equivalent system is installed.

AF103.5.1 Ventilation. Crawl spaces shall be provided with vents to the exterior of the building. The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall comply with Section R408.1.

AF103.5.2 Soil-gas-retarder. The soil in crawl spaces shall be covered with a continuous layer of minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene soil-gas-retarder. The ground cover shall be lapped not less than 12 inches (305 mm) at joints and shall extend to all foundation walls enclosing the *crawl space* area.

AF103.5.3 Vent pipe. A plumbing tee or other *approved* connection shall be inserted horizontally beneath the sheeting and connected to a 3- or 4-inch-diameter (76 or 102 mm) fitting with a vertical vent pipe installed through the sheeting. The vent pipe shall be extended up through the building floors, and terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the roof in a location not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) away from any window or other opening into the *conditioned spaces* of the building that is less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the exhaust point, and 10 feet (3048 mm) from any window or other opening in adjoining or adjacent buildings.

AF103.6 Passive subslab depressurization system. In *basement* or slab-on-grade buildings, the following components of a passive subslab depressurization system shall be installed during construction.

AF103.6.1 Vent pipe. A minimum 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) ABS, PVC or equivalent gastight pipe shall be embedded vertically into the subslab aggregate or other permeable material before the slab is cast. A "T" fitting or equivalent method shall be used to ensure that the pipe opening remains within the subslab permeable material. Alternatively, the 3-inch (76 mm) pipe shall be inserted directly into an interior perimeter drain tile loop or through a sealed sump cover where the sump is exposed to the subslab aggregate or connected to it through a drainage system.

The pipe shall be extended up through the building floors, and terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the surface of the roof in a location not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) away from any window or other opening into the *conditioned spaces* of the building that is less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the exhaust point, and 10 feet (3048 mm) from any window or other opening in adjoining or adjacent buildings.

AF103.6.2 Multiple vent pipes. In buildings where interior footings or other barriers separate the subslab aggregate or other gas-permeable material, each area shall be fitted with an individual vent pipe. Vent pipes shall connect to a single vent that terminates above the roof or each individual vent pipe shall terminate separately above the roof.

AF103.7 Vent pipe drainage. Components of the radon vent pipe system shall be installed to provide positive drainage to the ground beneath the slab or soil-gas-retarder.

AF103.8 Vent pipe accessibility. Radon vent pipes shall be accessible for future fan installation through an attic or other area outside the *habitable space*.

Exception: The radon vent pipe need not be accessible in an attic space where an *approved* roof-top electrical supply is provided for future use.

AF103.9 Vent pipe identification. Exposed and visible interior radon vent pipes shall be identified with not less than one *label* on each floor and in accessible *attics*. The *label* shall read: “Radon Reduction System.”

AF103.10 Combination foundations. Combination *basement*/*crawl space* or slab-on-grade/*crawl space* foundations shall have separate radon vent pipes installed in each type of foundation area. Each radon vent pipe shall terminate above the roof or shall be connected to a single vent that terminates above the roof.

AF103.11 Building depressurization. Joints in air ducts and plenums in un*conditioned spaces* shall meet the requirements of Section M1601. Thermal envelope air infiltration requirements shall comply with the energy conservation provisions in Chapter 11. Fireblocking shall meet the requirements contained in Section R302.11.

AF103.12 Power source. To provide for future installation of an active submembrane or subslab depressurization system, an electrical circuit terminated in an *approved* box shall be installed during construction in the attic or other anticipated location of vent pipe fans. An electrical supply shall be accessible in anticipated locations of system failure alarms.

SECTION AF104 TESTING

AF104.1 Testing. Where radon-resistant construction is performed, radon testing shall be as specified in Items 1 through 11:

1. Testing shall be performed after the dwelling passes its air tightness test.
2. Testing shall be performed after the radon control system and HVAC installations are complete. The HVAC system shall be operating during the test. Where the radon system has an installed fan, the dwelling shall be tested with the radon fan operating.
3. Testing shall be performed at the lowest occupied floor level, whether or not that space is finished. Spaces that are physically separated and served by different HVAC systems shall be tested separately.
4. Testing shall not be performed in a closet, hallway, stairway, laundry room, furnace room, bathroom or kitchen.
5. Testing shall be performed with a commercially available radon test kit or testing shall be performed by an approved third party with a continuous radon monitor. Testing with test kits shall include two tests, and the test results shall be averaged. Testing shall be in accordance with this section and the testing laboratory kit manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Testing shall be performed with the windows closed. Testing shall be performed with the exterior doors closed, except when being used for entrance or exit. Windows and doors shall be closed for not fewer than 12 hours prior to the testing.
7. Testing shall be performed by the builder, a registered design professional or an approved third party.
8. Testing shall be conducted over a period of not less than 48 hours or not less that the period specified by the testing device manufacturer, whichever is longer.
9. Written radon test results shall be provided by the test lab or testing party.
10. Where the radon test result is 4 pCi/L or greater, the fan for the radon vent pipe shall be installed as specified in Sections AF103.9 and AF103.12.
11. Where the radon test result is 4 pCi/L or greater, the system shall be modified and retested until the test result is less than 4 pCi/L.

Exception: Testing is not required where the occupied space is located above an unenclosed open space.

APPENDIX AG

PIPING STANDARDS FOR VARIOUS APPLICATIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.

SECTION AG101
PLASTIC PIPING STANDARDS

AG101.1 Plastic piping. Table AG101.1 provides a list of plastic piping product standards for various applications.

SECTION AG102
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AG102.1 General. See Table AG102.1 for standards that are referenced in this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the table that references the standard.

TABLE AG101.1
PLASTIC PIPING STANDARDS FOR VARIOUS APPLICATIONS[a, b]

APPLICATION	LOCATION	TYPE OF PLASTIC PIPING								
		ABS	CPVC	PE	PE-AL-PE	PE-RT	PEX	PEX-AL-PEX	PP	PVC
Central vacuum	System piping	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ASTM F2158
Foundation drainage	System piping	ASTM F628	—	ASTM F405	—	—	—	—	—	ASTM D2665; ASTM D2729; ASTM D3034
Geothermal ground loop	System piping	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855; CSA B137.6	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; CSA B137.3
	Loop piping	—	—	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; NSF 358-1	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	—	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	—
Graywater	Nonpressure distribution/ collection	ASTM F628	—	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F2306	—	—	—	—	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2729; ASTM D2949; ASTM D3034; ASTM F891; ASTM F1760; CSA B137.3
	Pressure/ distribution	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855; CSA B137.6	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; CSA B137.3
Radiant cooling	Loop piping	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	—

(continued)

TABLE AG101.1—continued
PLASTIC PIPING STANDARDS FOR VARIOUS APPLICATIONS[a, b]

APPLICATION	LOCATION	TYPE OF PLASTIC PIPING								
		ABS	CPVC	PE	PE-AL-PE	PE-RT	PEX	PEX-AL-PEX	PP	PVC
Radiant heating	Loop piping	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855	—	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	—
Rainwater harvesting	Nonpressure/ collection	ASTM F628	—	ASTM F1901	—	—	—	—	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2729; ASTM D2949; ASTM F891; ASTM F1760; CSA B137.3
	Pressure/ distribution	—	ASTM D2846/ D2846M; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855; CSA B137.6	ASTM D2239 ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; CSA B137.3
Radon venting	System piping	ASTM F628	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ASTM D1785; ASTM F891; ASTM F1760
Reclaimed water	Main to building service	—	ASTM D2846/ D2846M; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855; CSA B137.6	ASTM D3035; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; AWWA C904; CSA B137.5	—	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; AWWA C905; CSA B137.3
	Pressure/ distribution/ irrigation	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855; CSA B137.6	ASTM D2239; ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035	ASTM F1282	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; AWWA C900; CSA B137.11	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; AWWA C900

(continued)

TABLE AG101.1—continued
PLASTIC PIPING STANDARDS FOR VARIOUS APPLICATIONS[a, b]

APPLICATION	LOCATION	TYPE OF PLASTIC PIPING								
		ABS	CPVC	PE	PE-AL-PE	PE-RT	PEX	PEX-AL-PEX	PP	PVC
Residential fire sprinklers[c]	Sprinkler piping	—	ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6; UL 1821	—	—	ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5; UL 1821	—	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	—
Solar heating	Pressure/ distribution	—	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; ASTM F2855	—	—	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18	ASTM F876; CSA B137.5	ASTM F1281	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11	—

a. This table indicates manufacturing standards for plastic piping materials that are suitable for use in the applications indicated. Such applications support green and sustainable building practices. The system designer or the installer of piping shall verify that the piping chosen for an application complies with local codes and the recommendations of the manufacturer of the piping.
b. Fittings applicable for the piping shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the piping.
c. Piping systems for fire sprinkler applications shall be listed for the application.

TABLE AG102.1
REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	TABLE HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM D1785—15E1	*Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2239—12A	*Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2241—15	*Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2665—14	*Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2729—17	*Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2737—2012A	*Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2846/ D2846M—2017BE1	*Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D2949—10	*Specification for 3.25-in. Outside Diameter Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D3034—2016	*Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM D3035—15	*Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F405—05	*Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F441/F441M—15	*Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F442/F442M—13E1	*Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F628—2012E2	*Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F876—2017	*Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F891—2016	*Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F1281—2017	*Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/ Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F1282—2017	*Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F1760—01 (2011)	*Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F1901—10	*Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings for Roof Drain Systems*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2158—08 (2016)	*Standard for Residential Central-vacuum Tube and Fittings*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2306/ F2306M—2018	*Standard Specification for 12" to 60" Annular Corrugated Profile-wall Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings for Gravity Flow Storm Sewer and Sub-surface Drainage Applications*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2389—2017A	*Standard for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2623—14	*Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDRG Tubing*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2769—18	*Polyethylene or Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot and Cold-Water Tubing and Distribution Systems*	Table AG101.1
ASTM F2855—12	*Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride)/ Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC AL CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing*	Table AG101.1

(continued)

TABLE AG102.1—continued
REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	TABLE HEREIN REFERENCED
AWWA C900—07	*Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 4 in. through 12 in. (350 mm through 1200 mm), for Water Transmission and Distribution*	Table AG101.1
AWWA C901—16	*Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service*	Table AG101.1
AWWA C904—16	*Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pressure Tubing, $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service*	Table AG101.1
AWWA C905—10	*Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 14 in. through 48 in. (100 mm through 300 mm)*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.1—17	*Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold Water Pressure Services*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.3—17	*Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.5—17	*Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.6—17	*Chlorinated polyvinylchloride CPVC Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.11—17	*Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications*	Table AG101.1
CSA B137.18—17	*Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications*	Table AG101.1
NSF 358-1—2017	*Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground Source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems*	Table AG101.1
UL 1821—2011	*Standard for Thermoplastic Sprinkler Pipe and Fittings for Fire Protection Service—with revisions through August 2015*	Table AG101.1

APPENDIX AH
PATIO COVERS
DELETED

APPENDIX AI

PRIVATE SEWAGE DISPOSAL

DELETED

APPENDIX AJ

EXISTING BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

DELETED

See *North Carolina Existing Building Code*.

APPENDIX AK
SOUND TRANSMISSION

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.

SECTION AK101
GENERAL

AK101.1 General. Wall and floor-ceiling assemblies separating *dwelling units*, including those separating adjacent *townhouse units*, shall provide airborne sound insulation for walls, and both airborne and impact sound insulation for floor-ceiling assemblies.

SECTION AK102
AIRBORNE SOUND

AK102.1 General. Airborne sound insulation for wall and floor-ceiling assemblies shall meet a sound transmission class (STC) rating of 45 where tested in accordance with ASTM E90 or a Normalized Noise Isolation Class (NNIC) rating of 42 where tested in accordance with ASTM E336. Penetrations or openings in construction assemblies for piping; electrical devices; recessed cabinets; bathtubs; soffits; or heating, ventilating or exhaust ducts shall be sealed, lined, insulated or otherwise treated to maintain the required ratings. *Dwelling unit* entrance doors, which share a common space, shall be tight fitting to the frame and sill.

AK102.1.1 Masonry. The sound transmission class of *concrete masonry* and *clay masonry* assemblies shall be calculated in accordance with TMS 0302 or determined through testing in accordance with ASTM E90.

SECTION AK103
STRUCTURAL-BORNE SOUND

AK103.1 General. Floor/ceiling assemblies between *dwelling units*, or between a *dwelling unit* and a public or service area within a structure, shall have an impact insulation class (IIC) rating of not less than 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E492 or a Normalized Impact Sound Rating (NISR) of 42 where tested in accordance with ASTM E1007.

SECTION AK104
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AK104.1 General. See Table AK104.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, the standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that references the standard.

TABLE AK104.1
REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM E90—09	*Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements*	AK102.1, AK102.1.1
ASTM E336—17a	*Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Attenuation between Rooms in Buildings*	AK102.1
ASTM E492—09	*Specification for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission through Floor-ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine*	AK103.1
ASTM E1007—16	*Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Tapping Machine Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies and Associated Support Structures*	AK103.1
TMS 0302—12	*Standard for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls*	AK102.1.1

APPENDIX AL

PERMIT FEES

DELETED

APPENDIX AM

HOME DAY CARE—R-3 OCCUPANCY

DELETED

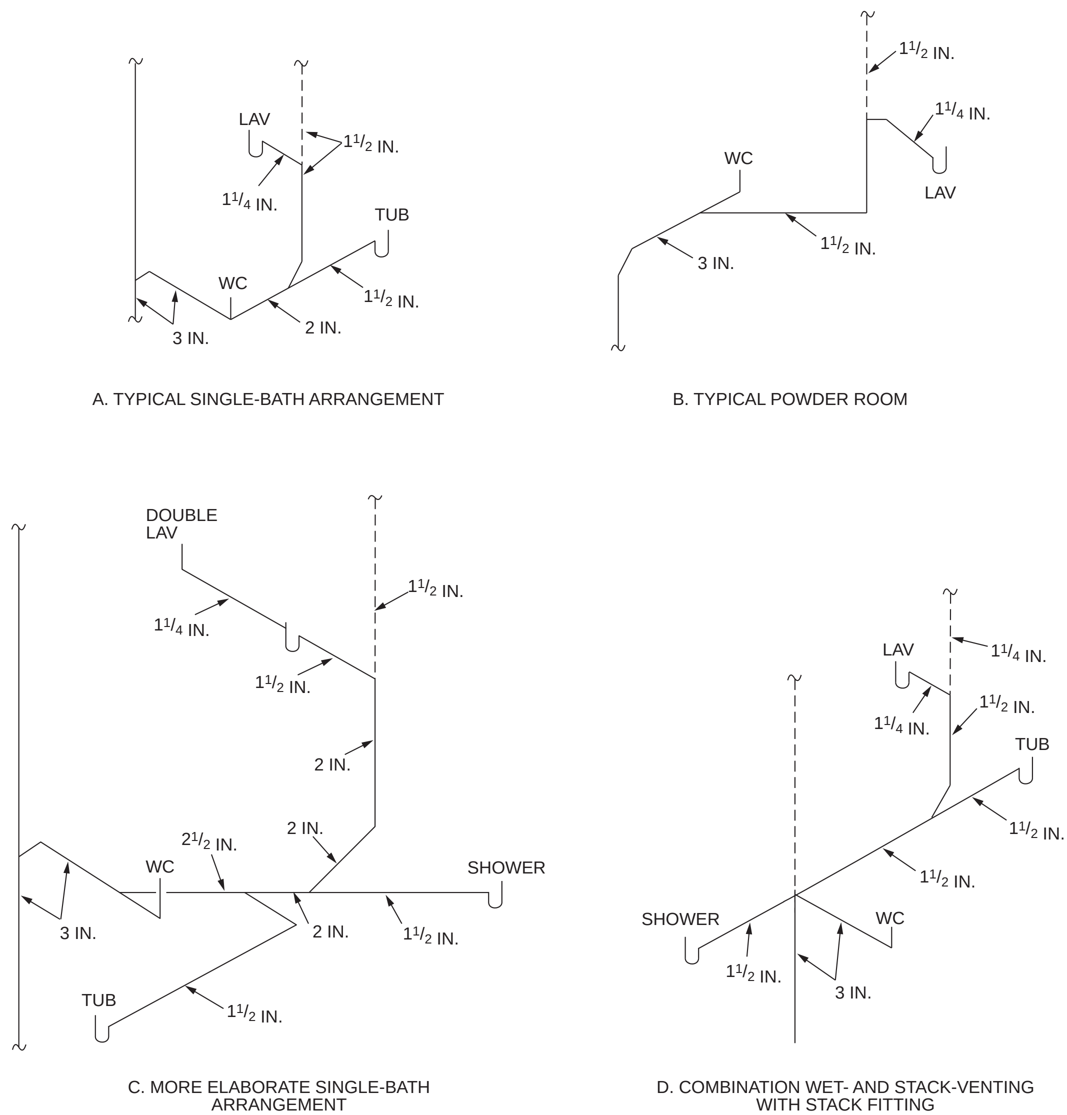
APPENDIX AN

VENTING METHODS

This appendix is informative and is not part of the code. This appendix provides examples of various venting methods.

SECTION AN101
VENTING METHODS

AN101.1 General. Venting methods are illustrated in Figures AN101.1(1) through AN101.1(7).



A. TYPICAL SINGLE-BATH ARRANGEMENT

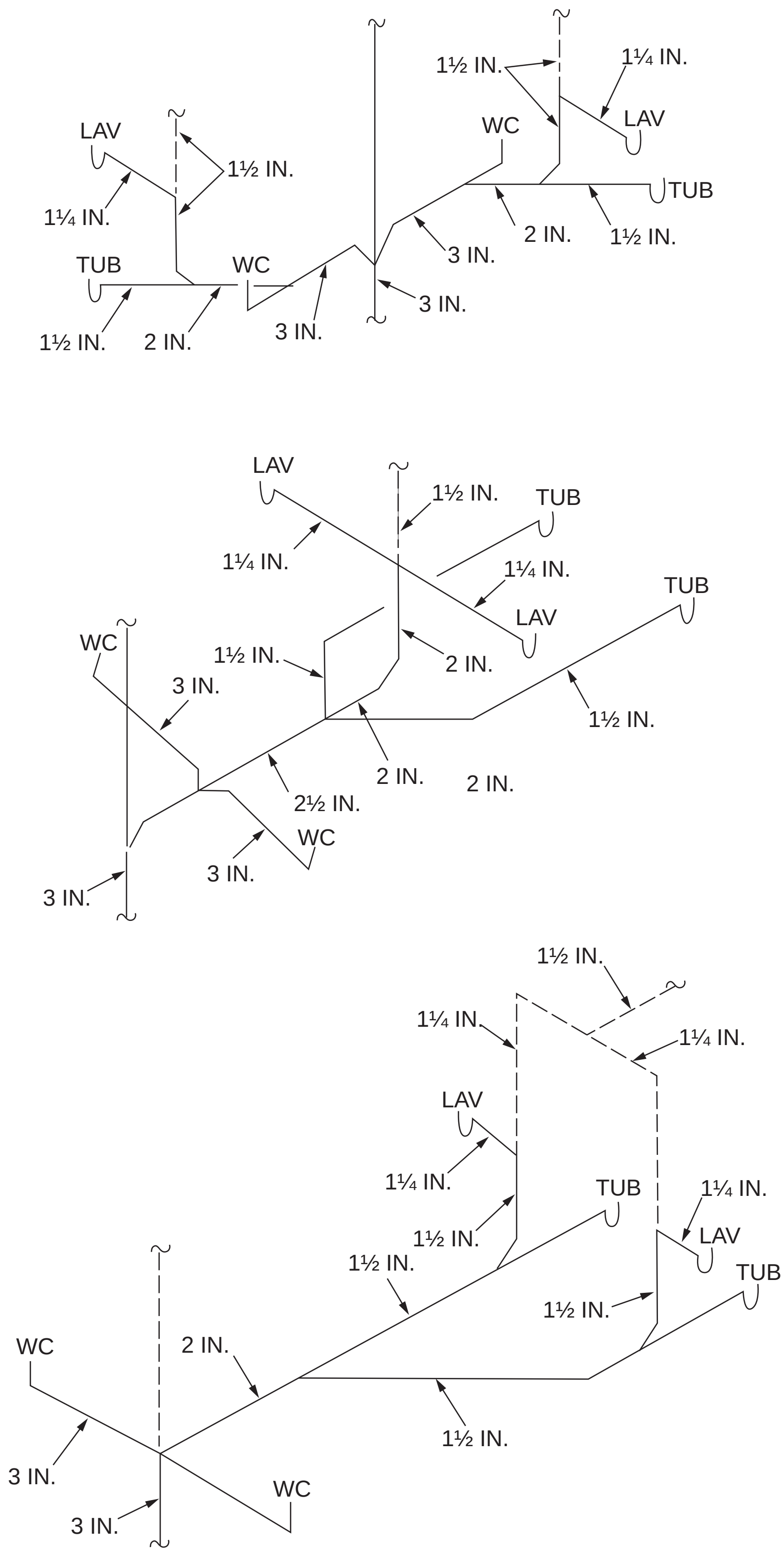
B. TYPICAL POWDER ROOM

C. MORE ELABORATE SINGLE-BATH ARRANGEMENT

D. COMBINATION WET- AND STACK-VENTING WITH STACK FITTING

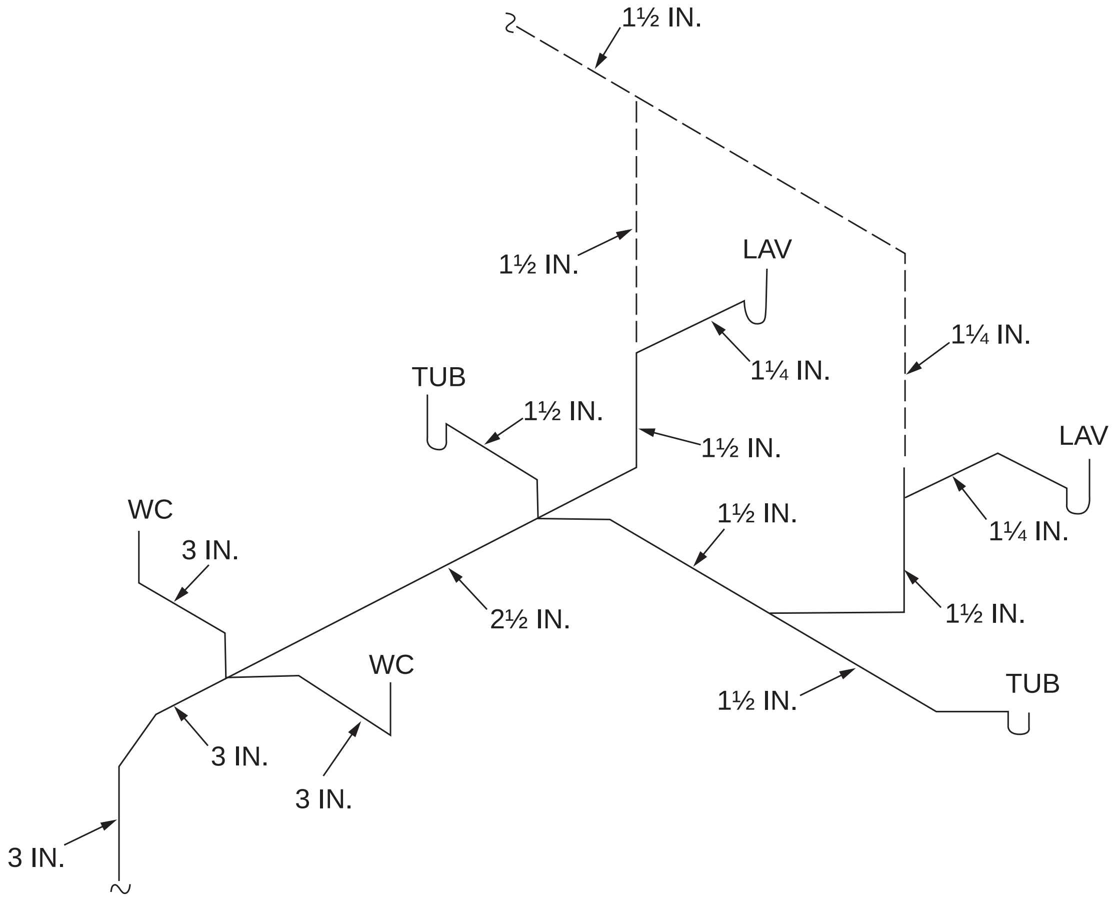
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE AN101.1(1)
TYPICAL SINGLE-BATH WET-VENT ARRANGEMENTS



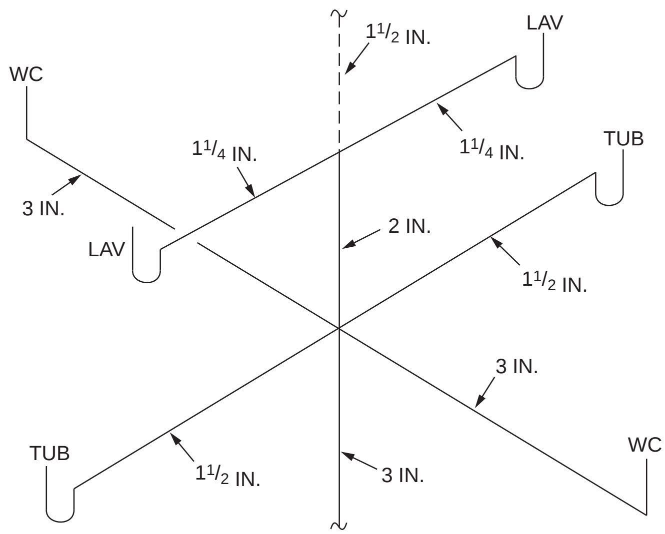
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE AN101.1(2)
TYPICAL DOUBLE-BATH WET-VENT ARRANGEMENTS

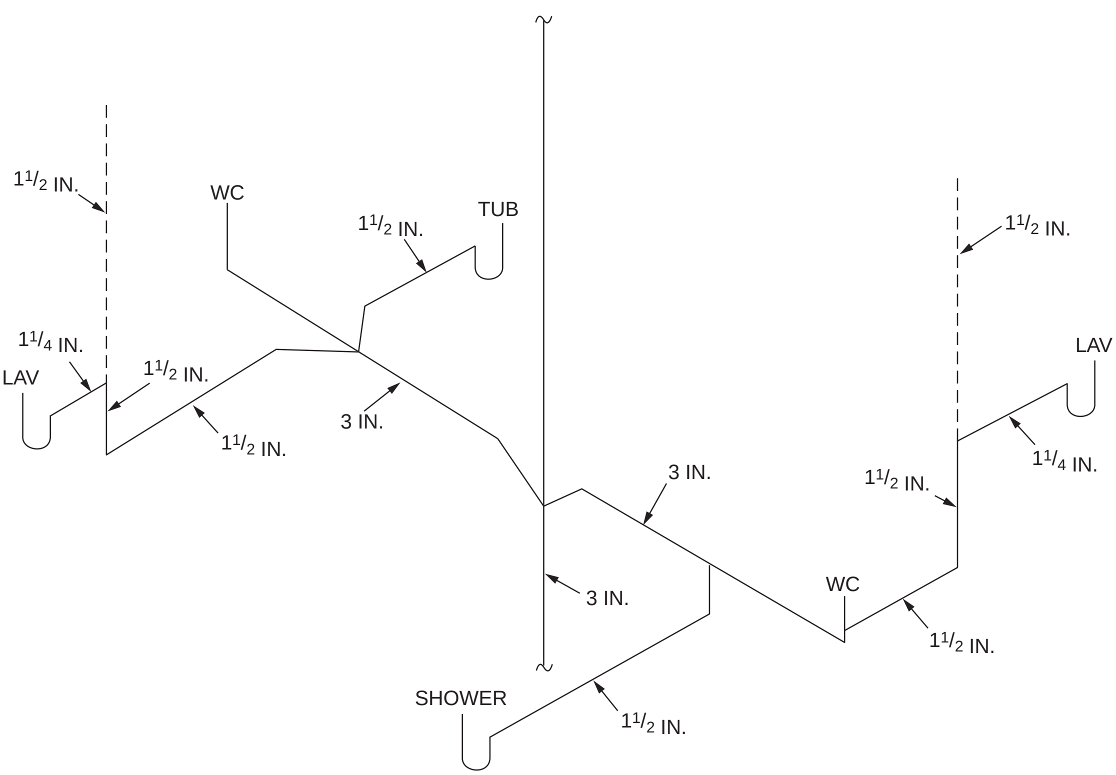


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE AN101.1(3)
TYPICAL HORIZONTAL WET VENTING



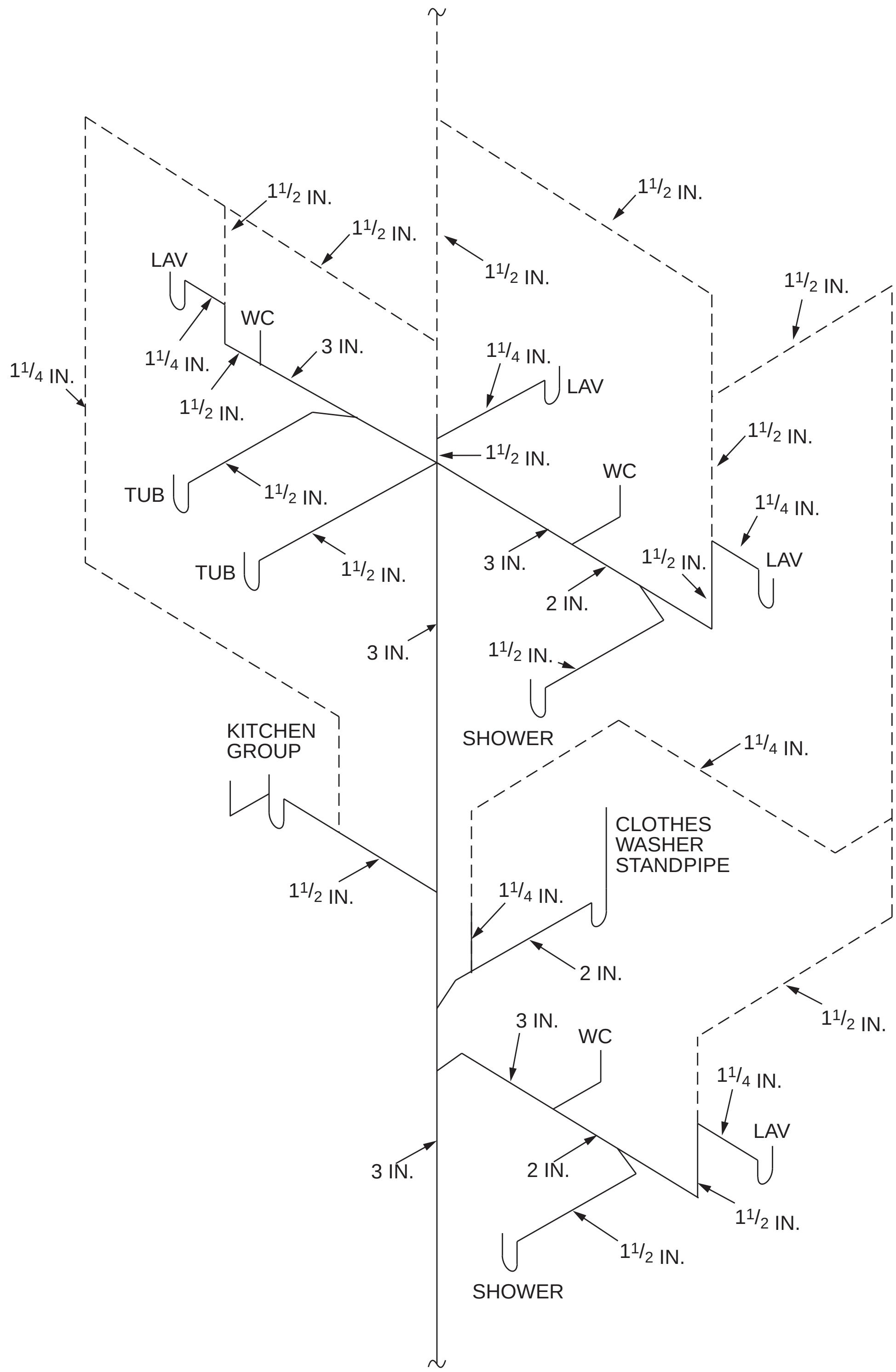
A. VERTICAL WET VENTING



B. HORIZONTAL WET VENTING

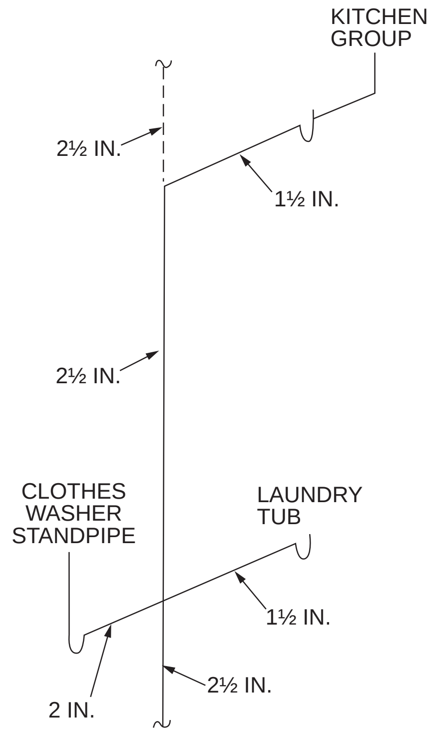
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE AN101.1(4)
TYPICAL METHODS OF WET VENTING



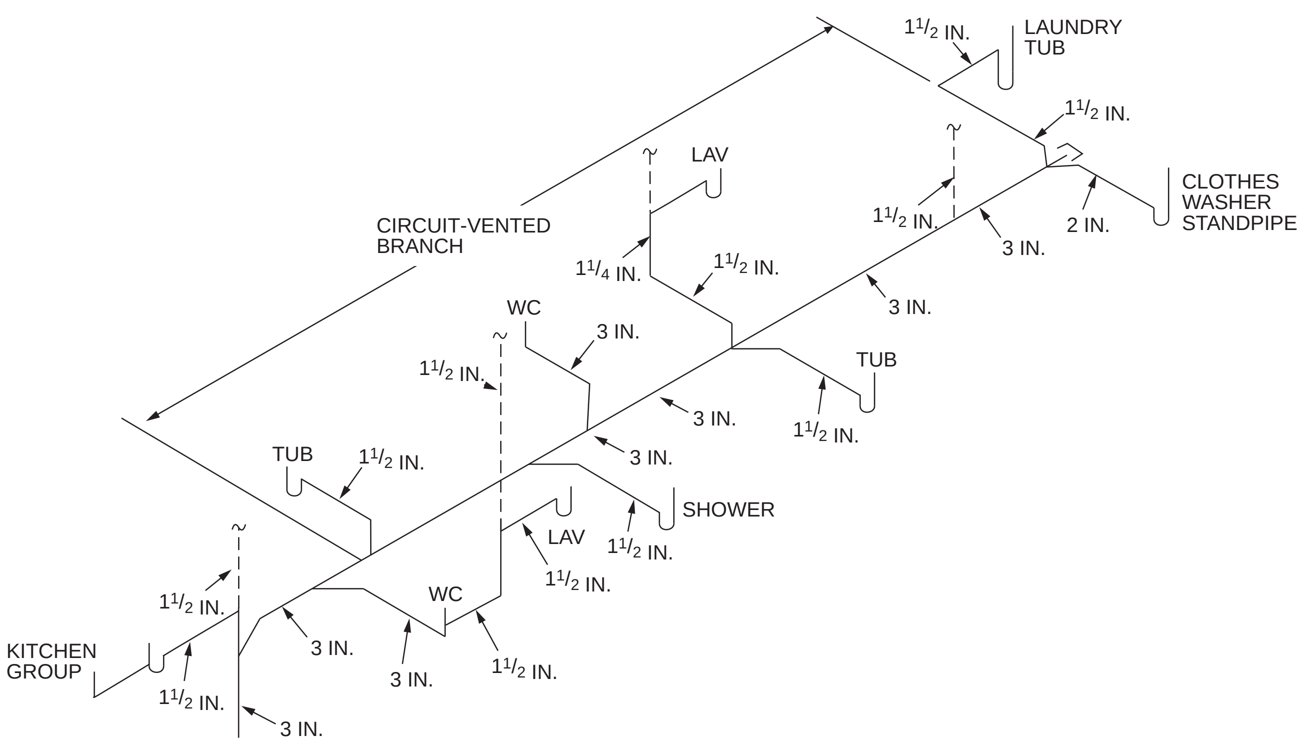
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE AN101.1(5)
SINGLE-STACK SYSTEM FOR A TWO-STORY DWELLING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE AN101.1(6)
WASTE STACK VENTING**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE AN101.1(7)
CIRCUIT VENT WITH ADDITIONAL NONCIRCUIT-VENTED BRANCH**

APPENDIX AO

AUTOMATIC VEHICULAR GATES

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.

SECTION AO101 GENERAL

AO101.1 General. The provisions of this appendix shall control the design and construction of automatic vehicular gates installed on the lot of a one- or two-family dwelling.

SECTION AO102 DEFINITION

AO102.1 General. The following term shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meaning shown herein.

VEHICULAR GATE. A gate that is intended for use at a vehicular entrance or exit to the lot of a one- or two-family dwelling, and that is not intended for use by pedestrian traffic.

SECTION AO103 AUTOMATIC VEHICULAR GATES

AO103.1 Vehicular gates intended for automation. Vehicular gates intended for automation shall be designed, constructed and installed to comply with the requirements of ASTM F2200.

AO103.2 Vehicular gate openers. Vehicular gate openers, where provided, shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 325.

SECTION AO104 REFERENCED STANDARDS

AO104.1 General. See Table AO104.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, the standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

TABLE AO104.1 REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM F2200—14	*Standard Specification for Automated Vehicular Gate Construction*	AO103.1
UL 325—02	*Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems—with revisions through May 2015*	AO103.2

APPENDIX AP

SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION AP101 GENERAL

AP101.1 Scope.

AP101.1.1 Two procedures. This appendix outlines two procedures for sizing a water piping system (see Sections AP103.3 and AP201.1). The design procedures are based on the minimum static pressure available from the supply source, the head changes in the system caused by friction and elevation, and the rates of flow necessary for operation of various fixtures.

AP101.1.2 Variable conditions. Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Accordingly, other sizing or design methods conforming to good engineering practice standards are acceptable alternatives to those presented herein.

SECTION AP102 INFORMATION REQUIRED

AP102.1 Preliminary. Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes likely to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from most manufacturers of water meters.

AP102.2 Demand load.

AP102.2.1 Fixture demand. Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table AP103.3(3).

AP102.2.2 Continuous demand. Estimate continuous supply demands, in gallons per minute (gpm) (L/m) such as for lawn sprinklers and air conditioners, and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply.

SECTION AP103 SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

AP103.1 General. Decide from Table P2903.1 what is the desirable minimum residual pressure that should be maintained at the highest fixture in the supply system. If the highest group of fixtures contains flushometer valves, the pressure for the group should be not less than 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4 kPa) flowing. For flush tank supplies, the available pressure should be not less than 8 psi (55.2 kPa) flowing, except blowout action fixtures must not be less than 25 psi (172.4 kPa) flowing.

AP103.2 Pipe sizing.

AP103.2.1 Pipe size selection. Pipe sizes can be selected using the following procedure or by use of other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice that are *approved* by the *building official*. The sizes selected must not be less than the minimum required by this code.

AP103.2.2 Pressures and losses. Water pipe sizing procedures are based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

1. Pressure required at fixture to produce required flow. See Section P2903.1 of this code and Section 604.3 of the *International Plumbing Code*.
2. Static pressure loss or gain (due to head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.

   Example: Assume that the highest fixture supply outlet is 20 feet (6096 mm) above or below the supply source. This produces a static pressure differential of 8.66 psi (59.8 kPa) loss [20 feet by 0.433 psi per foot (2096 mm by 9.8 kPa/m)].
3. Loss through water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from meter manufacturers.
4. Loss through taps in water main.
5. Loss through special devices, such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturer.
6. Loss through valves and fittings. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to the *equivalent length* of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated where the pipe size, pipe length and flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations.
8. For the purposes of all examples, the following metric conversions are applicable:

   1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s.

   1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

AP103.3 Segmented loss method. The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers by the segmented loss method, must be determined by knowing the water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including the *equivalent length* of fittings. This design procedure is based on the following parameters:

- The calculated friction loss through each length of pipe.
- A system of pressure losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the street main or other source of supply.
- Pipe sizing based on estimated peak demand, total pressure losses caused by difference in elevation, equipment, *developed length* and pressure required at the most remote fixture; loss through taps in water main; losses through fittings, filters, backflow prevention devices, valves and pipe friction.

Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for the sizing of the water piping system. Current sizing methods do not address the differences in the probability of use and flow characteristics of fixtures between types of occupancies. Creating an exact model of predicting the demand for a building is impossible and final studies assessing the impact of water conservation on demand are not yet complete. The following steps are necessary for the segmented loss method.

1. **Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from manufacturers of water meters. Enough pressure must be available to overcome all system losses caused by friction and elevation so that plumbing fixtures operate properly. Section 604.6 of the *International Plumbing Code* requires that the water distribution system be designed for the minimum pressure available taking into consideration pressure fluctuations. The lowest pressure must be selected to guarantee a continuous, adequate supply of water. The lowest pressure in the public main usually occurs in the summer because of lawn sprinkling and supplying water for air-conditioning cooling towers. Future demands placed on the public main as a result of large growth or expansion should be considered. The available pressure will decrease as additional loads are placed on the public system.

2. **Demand load.** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table AP103.3(3). When estimating peak demand, sizing methods typically use water supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.) [see Table AP103.3(2)]. This numerical factor measures the load-producing effect of a single plumbing fixture of a given kind. The use of fixture units can be applied to a single basic probability curve (or table), found in the various sizing methods [see Table AP103.3(3)]. The fixture units are then converted into a gpm (L/m) flow rate for estimating demand.

   2.1. Estimate continuous supply demand in gpm (L/m) such as for lawn sprinklers, air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply. Fixture units cannot be applied to constant-use fixtures, such as hose bibbs, lawn sprinklers and air conditioners. These types of fixtures must be assigned the gpm (L/m) value.

3. **Selection of pipe size.** This water pipe sizing procedure is based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

   3.1. Pressure required at the fixture to produce required flow. See Section P2903.1 of this code and Section 604.3 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

   3.2. Static pressure loss or gain (because of head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.

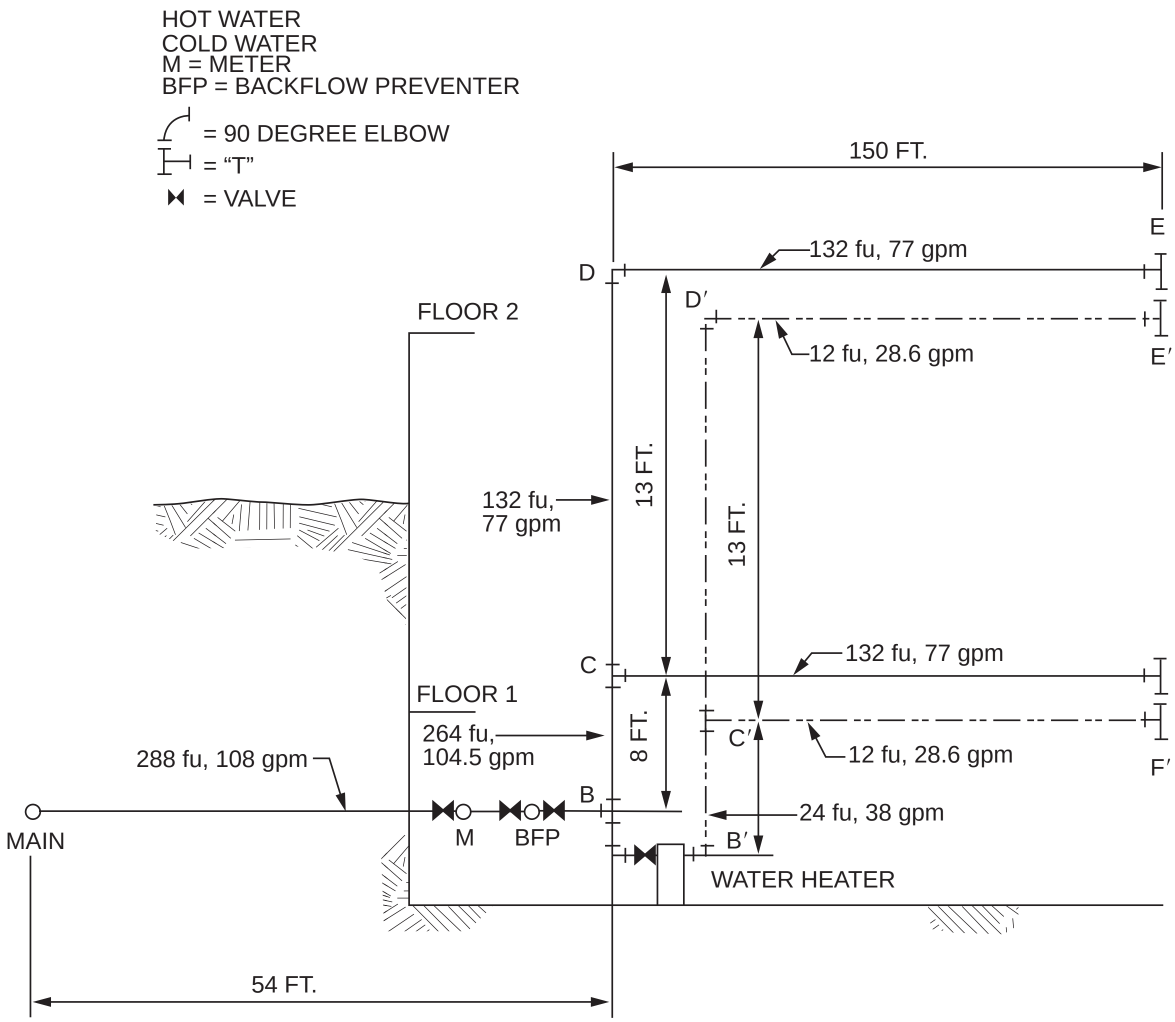
   3.3. Loss through a water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from the manufacturer.

   3.4. Loss through taps in water main [see Table AP103.3(4)].

   3.5. Loss through special devices, such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.

   3.6. Loss through valves and fittings [see Tables AP103.3(5) and AP103.3(6)]. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to the *equivalent length* of piping and adding to the total pipe length.

   3.7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated where the pipe size, pipe length and flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined using Figures AP103.3(2) through AP103.3(7). Where using charts, use pipe inside diameters. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations. Before attempting to size any water supply system, it is necessary to gather preliminary information including available pressure, piping material, select design velocity, elevation differences and *developed length* to the most remote fixture. The water supply system is divided into sections at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. The peak demand must be determined in each part of the hot and cold water supply system. The expected flow through each section is determined in w.s.f.u. and converted to gpm (L/m) flow rate. Sizing methods require determination of the "most hydraulically remote" fixture to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings. The hydraulically remote fixture represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the most available pressure to operate properly. Consideration must be given to all pressure demands and losses, such as friction caused by pipe, fittings and equipment; elevation; and the residual pressure required by Table P2903.1. The two most common and frequent complaints about water supply system operation are lack of adequate pressure and noise.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

FIGURE AP103.3(1)
EXAMPLE—SIZING

TABLE AP103.3(1)
RECOMMENDED TABULAR ARRANGEMENT FOR USE IN SOLVING PIPE SIZING PROBLEMS

COLUMN	1		2		3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Line	Description			Pounds per square inch	Gallons per min through section	Length of section (feet)	Trial pipe size (inches)	Equivalent length of fittings and valves (feet)	Total equivalent length [(Col. 4 + Col. 6)/ 100 feet)]	Friction loss per 100 feet of trial size pipe (psi)	Friction loss in equivalent length Column 8 x Column 7 (psi)	Excess pressure over friction losses (psi)
A	Service and cold water distribution piping[a]	Minimum pressure available at main		55.00	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
B		Highest pressure required at a fixture (see Table P2903.1)		15.00								
C		Meter loss 2″ meter		11.00								
D		Tap in main loss 2″ tap [see Table AP103.3(4)]		1.61								
E		Static head loss 21 ft × 0.43 psi/ft		9.03								
F		Special fixture loss backflow preventer		9.00								
G		Special fixture loss—Filter		0.00								
H		Special fixture loss—Other		0.00								
I		Total overall losses and requirements (Sum of Lines B through H)		45.64								
J		Pressure available to overcome pipe friction (Line A minus Line I)		9.36								
	Pipe section (from diagram) Cold water distribution piping		A-B	288	108.0	54	$2^1/_2$	15.00	0.69	3.2	2.21	—
			B-C	264	104.5	8	$2^1/_2$	0.5	0.085	3.1	0.26	—
			C-D	132	77.0	13	$2^1/_2$	7.00	0.20	1.9	0.38	—
			C-F[b]	132	77.0	150	$2^1/_2$	12.00	1.62	1.9	3.08	—
			D-E[b]	132	77.0	150	$2^1/_2$	12.00	1.62	1.9	3.08	—
K	Total pipe friction losses (cold)				—	—	—	—	—	—	5.93	—
L	Difference (Line J minus Line K)				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	3.43
	Pipe section (from diagram) Hot water distribution piping		A′B′	288	108.0	54	$2^1/_2$	12.00	0.69	3.3	2.21	—
			B′C′	24	38.0	8	2	7.5	0.16	1.4	0.22	—
			C′D′	12	28.6	13	$1^1/_2$	4.0	0.17	3.2	0.54	—
			C′F′[b]	12	28.6	150	$1^1/_2$	7.00	1.57	3.2	5.02	—
			D′E′[b]	12	28.6	150	$1^1/_2$	7.00	1.57	3.2	5.02	—
K	Total pipe friction losses (hot)				—	—	—	—	—	—	7.99	—
L	Difference (Line J minus Line K)				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1.37

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. To be considered as pressure gain for fixtures below main (to consider separately, omit from “I” and add to “J”).

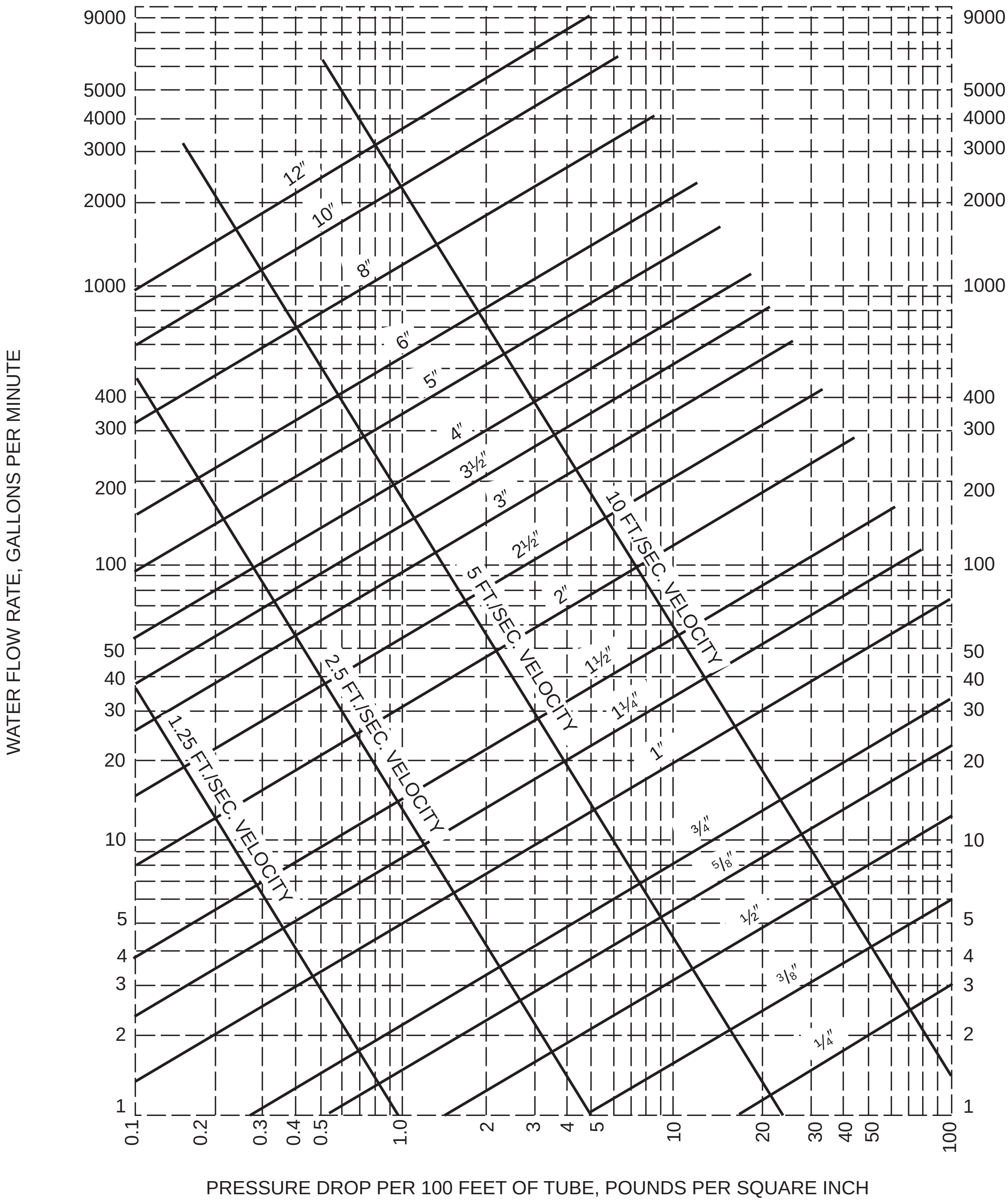
b. To consider separately, in Line K use Section C-F only if greater loss than the loss in Section D-E.

TABLE AP103.3(2)
LOAD VALUES ASSIGNED TO FIXTURES[a]

FIXTURE	OCCUPANCY	TYPE OF SUPPLY CONTROL	LOAD VALUES, IN WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNITS (w.s.f.u.)		
			Cold	Hot	Total
Bathroom group	Private	Flush tank	2.7	1.5	3.6
Bathroom group	Private	Flushometer valve	6.0	3.0	8.0
Bathtub	Private	Faucet	1.0	1.0	1.4
Bathtub	Public	Faucet	3.0	3.0	4.0
Bidet	Private	Faucet	1.5	1.5	2.0
Combination fixture	Private	Faucet	2.25	2.25	3.0
Dishwashing machine	Private	Automatic	—	1.4	1.4
Drinking fountain	Offices, etc.	$^3/_8$″ valve	0.25	—	0.25
Kitchen sink	Private	Faucet	1.0	1.0	1.4
Kitchen sink	Hotel, restaurant	Faucet	3.0	3.0	4.0
Laundry trays (1 to 3)	Private	Faucet	1.0	1.0	1.4
Lavatory	Private	Faucet	0.5	0.5	0.7
Lavatory	Public	Faucet	1.5	1.5	2.0
Service sink	Offices, etc.	Faucet	2.25	2.25	3.0
Shower head	Public	Mixing valve	3.0	3.0	4.0
Shower head	Private	Mixing valve	1.0	1.0	1.4
Urinal	Public	1″ flushometer valve	10.0	—	10.0
Urinal	Public	$^3/_4$″ flushometer valve	5.0	—	5.0
Urinal	Public	Flush tank	3.0	—	3.0
Washing machine (8 lb)	Private	Automatic	1.0	1.0	1.4
Washing machine (8 lb)	Public	Automatic	2.25	2.25	3.0
Washing machine (15 lb)	Public	Automatic	3.0	3.0	4.0
Water closet	Private	Flushometer valve	6.0	—	6.0
Water closet	Private	Flush tank	2.2	—	2.2
Water closet	Public	Flushometer valve	10.0	—	10.0
Water closet	Public	Flush tank	5.0	—	5.0
Water closet	Public or private	Flushometer tank	2.0	—	2.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For fixtures not listed, loads should be assumed by comparing the fixture to one listed using water in similar quantities and at similar rates. The assigned loads for fixtures with both hot and cold water supplies are given for separate hot and cold water loads, and for total load. The separate hot and cold water loads are three-fourths of the total load for the fixture in each case.



Note: Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet per second are not usually recommended.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This figure applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE AP103.3(2)
FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE K, ASTM B88 COPPER TUBING)

TABLE AP103.3(3)
TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND

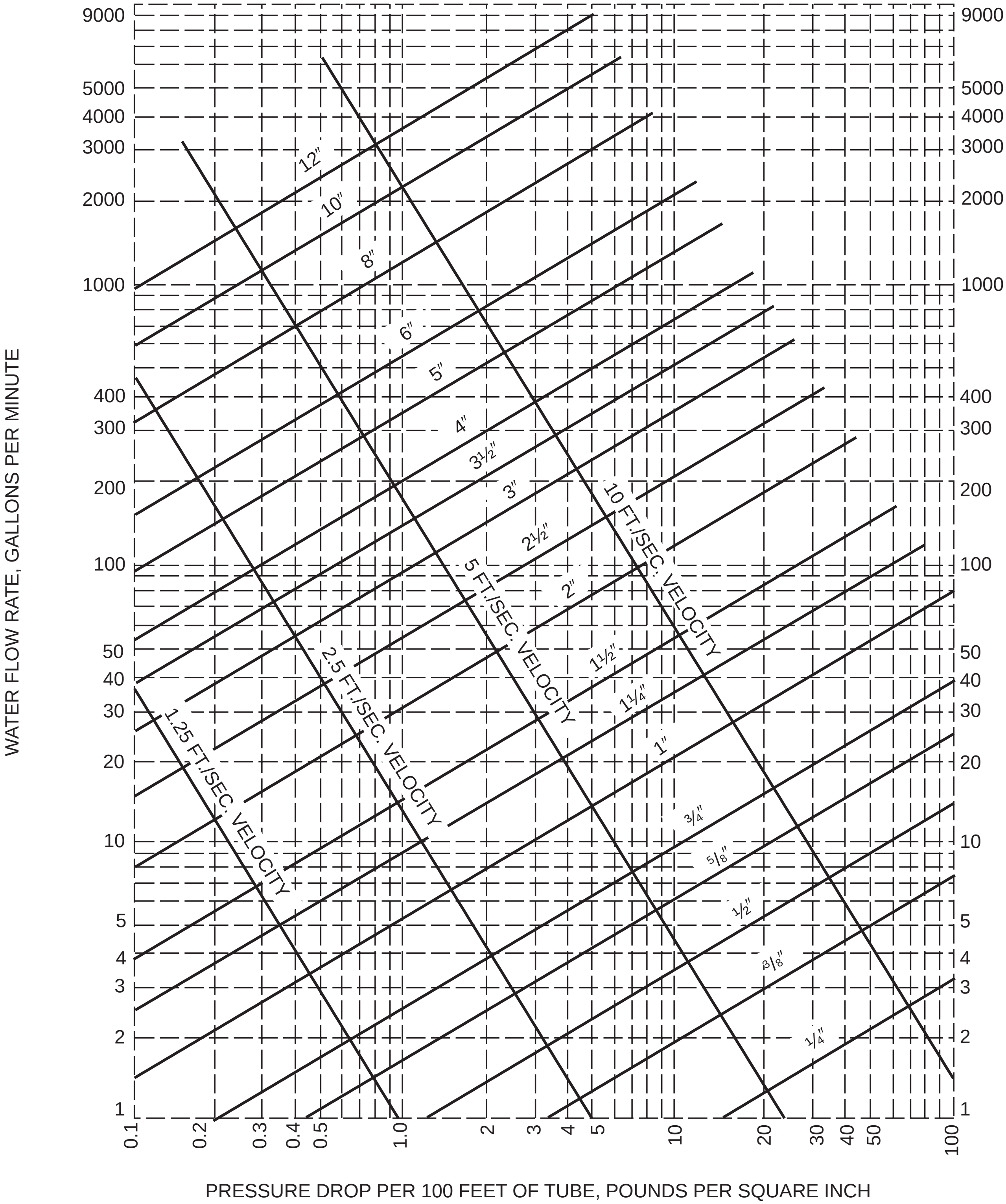
SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS			SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETERS		
Load	Demand		Load	Demand	
(w.s.f.u.)	(gpm)	(cfm)	(w.s.f.u.)	(gpm)	(cfm)
1	3.0	0.04104	—	—	—
2	5.0	0.0684	—	—	—
3	6.5	0.86892	—	—	—
4	8.0	1.06944	—	—	—
5	9.4	1.256592	5	15.0	2.0052
6	10.7	1.430376	6	17.4	2.326032
7	11.8	1.577424	7	19.8	2.646364
8	12.8	1.711104	8	22.2	2.967696
9	13.7	1.831416	9	24.6	3.288528
10	14.6	1.951728	10	27.0	3.60936
11	15.4	2.058672	11	27.8	3.716304
12	16.0	2.13888	12	28.6	3.823248
13	16.5	2.20572	13	29.4	3.930192
14	17.0	2.27256	14	30.2	4.037136
15	17.5	2.3394	15	31.0	4.14408
16	18.0	2.90624	16	31.8	4.241024
17	18.4	2.459712	17	32.6	4.357968
18	18.8	2.513184	18	33.4	4.464912
19	19.2	2.566656	19	34.2	4.571856
20	19.6	2.620128	20	35.0	4.6788
25	21.5	2.87412	25	38.0	5.07984
30	23.3	3.114744	30	42.0	5.61356
35	24.9	3.328632	35	44.0	5.88192
40	26.3	3.515784	40	46.0	6.14928
45	27.7	3.702936	45	48.0	6.41664
50	29.1	3.890088	50	50.0	6.684
60	32.0	4.27776	60	54.0	7.21872
70	35.0	4.6788	70	58.0	7.75344
80	38.0	5.07984	80	61.2	8.181216
90	41.0	5.48088	90	64.3	8.595624
100	43.5	5.81508	100	67.5	9.0234
120	48.0	6.41664	120	73.0	9.75864
140	52.5	7.0182	140	77.0	10.29336
160	57.0	7.61976	160	81.0	10.82808
180	61.0	8.15448	180	85.5	11.42964
200	65.0	8.6892	200	90.0	12.0312
225	70.0	9.3576	225	95.5	12.76644
250	75.0	10.026	250	101.0	13.50168
275	80.0	10.6944	275	104.5	13.96956
300	85.0	11.3628	300	108.0	14.43744
400	105.0	14.0364	400	127.0	16.97736
500	124.0	16.57632	500	143.0	19.11624

(continued)

TABLE AP103.3(3)—continued
TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND

SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS			SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETERS		
Load	Demand		Load	Demand	
(w.s.f.u.)	(gpm)	(cfm)	(w.s.f.u.)	(gpm)	(cfm)
750	170.0	22.7256	750	177.0	23.66136
1,000	208.0	27.80544	1,000	208.0	27.80544
1,250	239.0	31.94952	1,250	239.0	31.94952
1,500	269.0	35.95992	1,500	269.0	35.95992
1,750	297.0	39.70296	1,750	297.0	39.70296
2,000	325.0	43.446	2,000	325.0	43.446
2,500	380.0	50.7984	2,500	380.0	50.7984
3,000	433.0	57.88344	3,000	433.0	57.88344
4,000	535.0	70.182	4,000	525.0	70.182
5,000	593.0	79.27224	5,000	593.0	79.27224

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.000471 m^3/s.



Note: Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet per second are not usually recommended.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

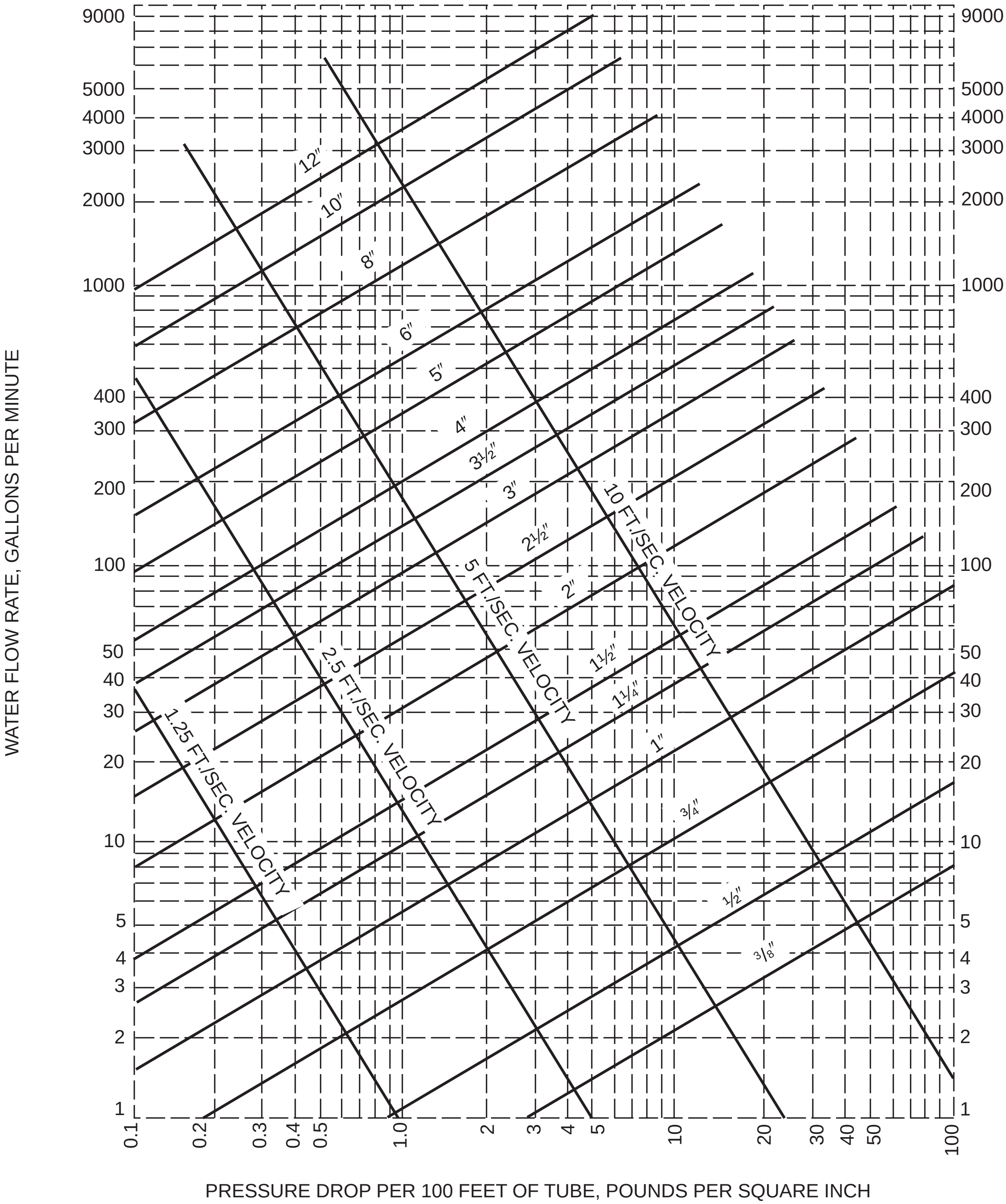
a. This figure applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE AP103.3(3)
FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE L, ASTM B88 COPPER TUBING)

**TABLE AP103.3(4)
LOSS OF PRESSURE THROUGH TAPS AND TEES IN POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH (psi)**

GALLONS PER MINUTE	SIZE OF TAP OR TEE (inches)						
	$^5/_8$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2	3
10	1.35	0.64	0.18	0.08	—	—	—
20	5.38	2.54	0.77	0.31	0.14	—	—
30	12.10	5.72	1.62	0.69	0.33	0.10	—
40	—	10.20	3.07	1.23	0.58	0.18	—
50	—	15.90	4.49	1.92	0.91	0.28	—
60	—	—	6.46	2.76	1.31	0.40	—
70	—	—	8.79	3.76	1.78	0.55	0.10
80	—	—	11.50	4.90	2.32	0.72	0.13
90	—	—	14.50	6.21	2.94	0.91	0.16
100	—	—	17.94	7.67	3.63	1.12	0.21
120	—	—	25.80	11.00	5.23	1.61	0.30
140	—	—	35.20	15.00	7.12	2.20	0.41
150	—	—	—	17.20	8.16	2.52	0.47
160	—	—	—	19.60	9.30	2.92	0.54
180	—	—	—	24.80	11.80	3.62	0.68
200	—	—	—	30.70	14.50	4.48	0.84
225	—	—	—	38.80	18.40	5.60	1.06
250	—	—	—	47.90	22.70	7.00	1.31
275	—	—	—	—	27.40	7.70	1.59
300	—	—	—	—	32.60	10.10	1.88

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.



Note: Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet per second are not usually recommended.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

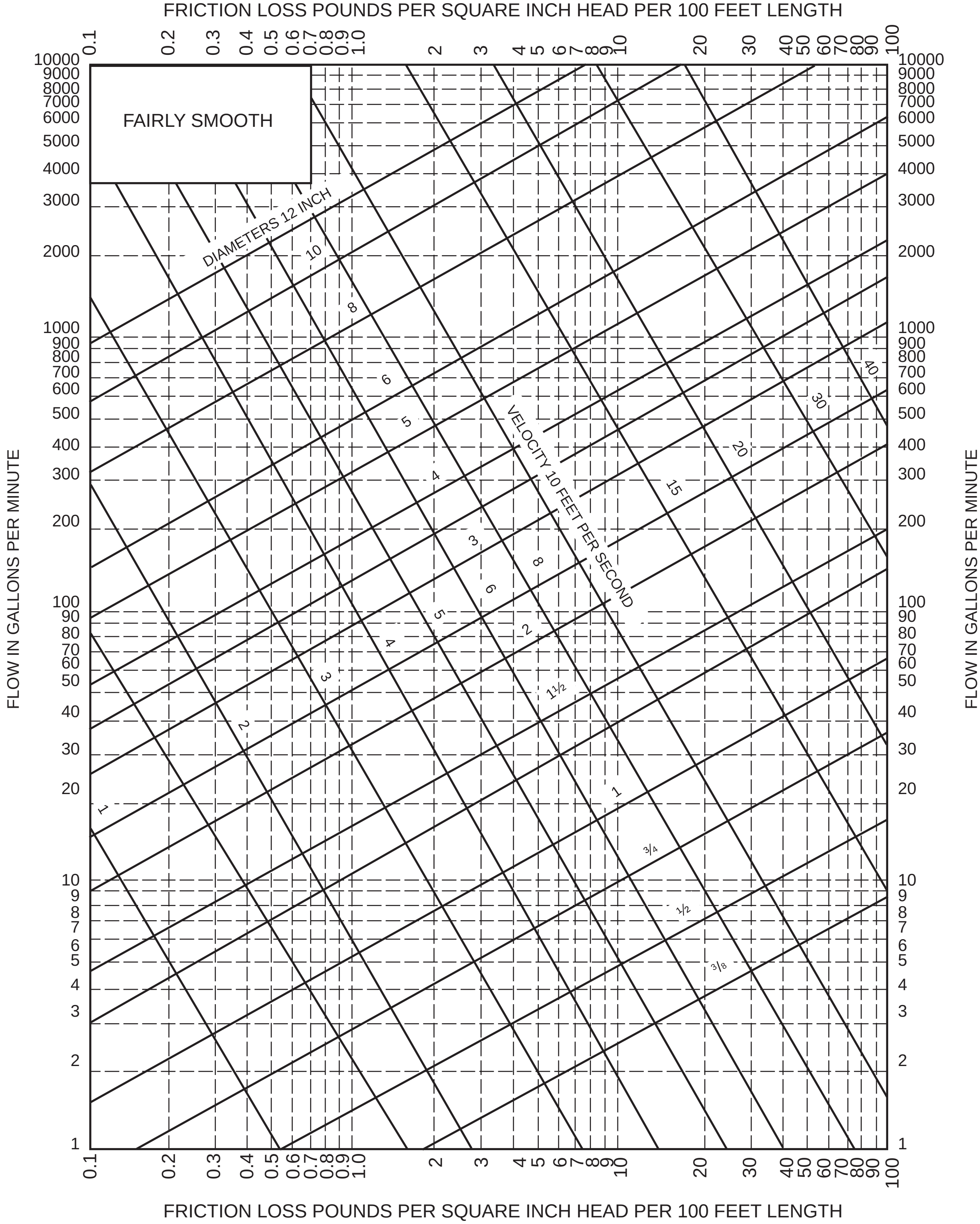
a. This figure applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE AP103.3(4)
FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE M, ASTM B88 COPPER TUBING)

TABLE AP103.3(5)
ALLOWANCE IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FOR FRICTION LOSS IN VALVES AND THREADED FITTINGS (feet)

FITTING OR VALVE	PIPE SIZE (inches)							
	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2	$2^1/_2$	3
45-degree elbow	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.4	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.0
90-degree elbow	2.0	2.5	3.0	4.0	5.0	7.0	8.0	10.0
Tee, run	0.6	0.8	0.9	1.2	1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0
Tee, branch	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.0	7.0	10.0	12.0	15.0
Gate valve	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.8	1.0	1.3	1.6	2.0
Balancing valve	0.8	1.1	1.5	1.9	2.2	3.0	3.7	4.5
Plug-type cock	0.8	1.1	1.5	1.9	2.2	3.0	3.7	4.5
Check valve, swing	5.6	8.4	11.2	14.0	16.8	22.4	28.0	33.6
Globe valve	15.0	20.0	25.0	35.0	45.0	55.0	65.0	80.0
Angle valve	8.0	12.0	15.0	18.0	22.0	28.0	34.0	40.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This figure applies to smooth new steel (fairly smooth) pipe and to actual diameters of standard-weight pipe.

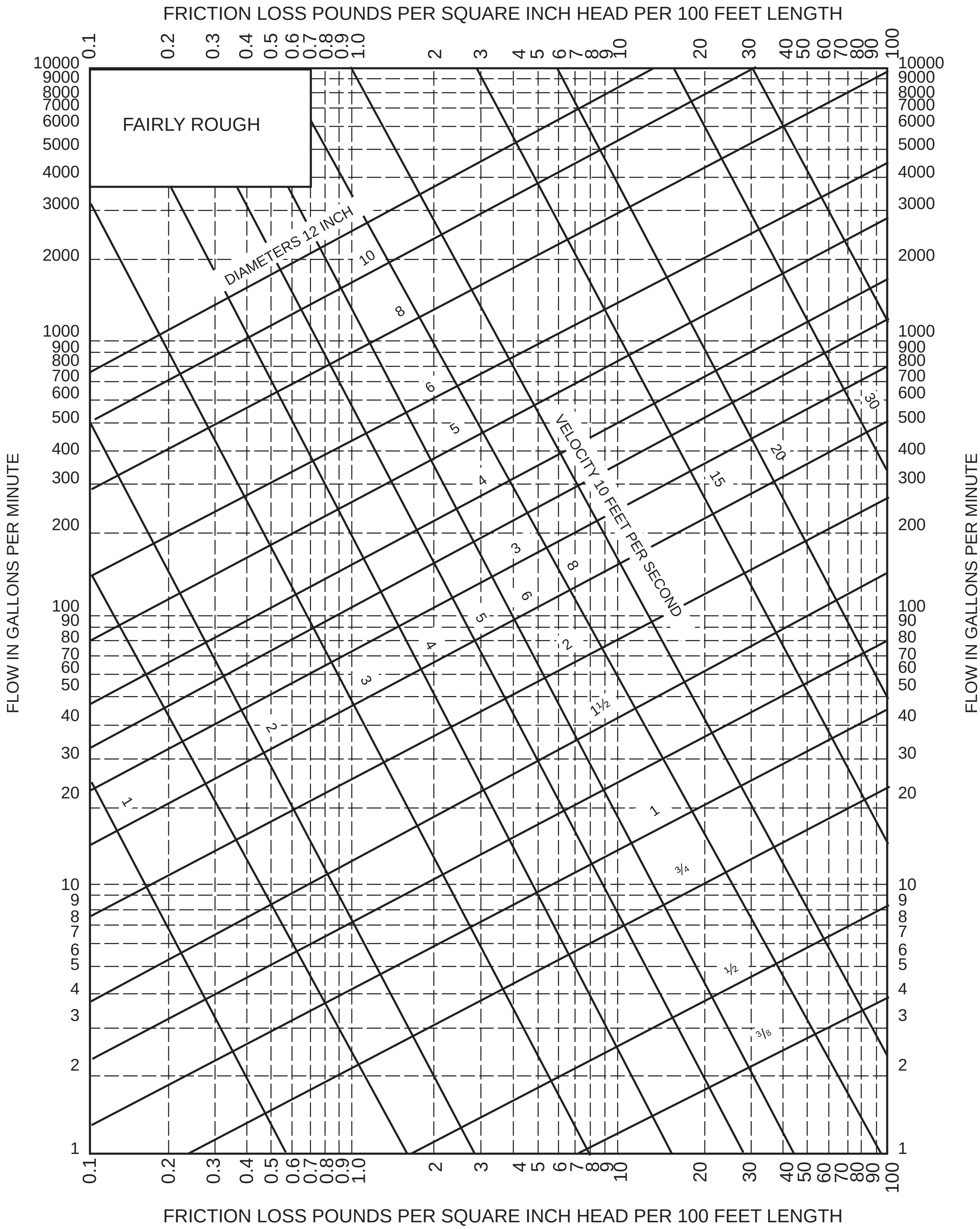
FIGURE AP103.3(5)
FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY SMOOTH PIPE[a]

TABLE AP103.3(6)
PRESSURE LOSS IN FITTINGS AND VALVES EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE[a] (feet)

NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches)	FITTINGS				Coupling	VALVES			
	Standard Ell		90-degree Tee			Ball	Gate	Butterfly	Check
	90 Degree	45 Degree	Side Branch	Straight Run					
$^{3}/_{8}$	0.5	—	1.5	—	—	—	—	—	1.5
$^{1}/_{2}$	1	0.5	2	—	—	—	—	—	2
$^{5}/_{8}$	1.5	0.5	2	—	—	—	—	—	2.5
$^{3}/_{4}$	2	0.5	3	—	—	—	—	—	3
1	2.5	1	4.5	—	—	0.5	—	—	4.5
$1^{1}/_{4}$	3	1	5.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	—	—	5.5
$1^{1}/_{2}$	4	1.5	7	0.5	0.5	0.5	—	—	6.5
2	5.5	2	9	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	7.5	9
$2^{1}/_{2}$	7	2.5	12	0.5	0.5	—	1	10	11.5
3	9	3.5	15	1	1	—	1.5	15.5	14.5
$3^{1}/_{2}$	9	3.5	14	1	1	—	2	—	12.5
4	12.5	5	21	1	1	—	2	16	18.5
5	16	6	27	1.5	1.5	—	3	11.5	23.5
6	19	7	34	2	2	—	3.5	13.5	26.5
8	29	11	50	3	3	—	5	12.5	39

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

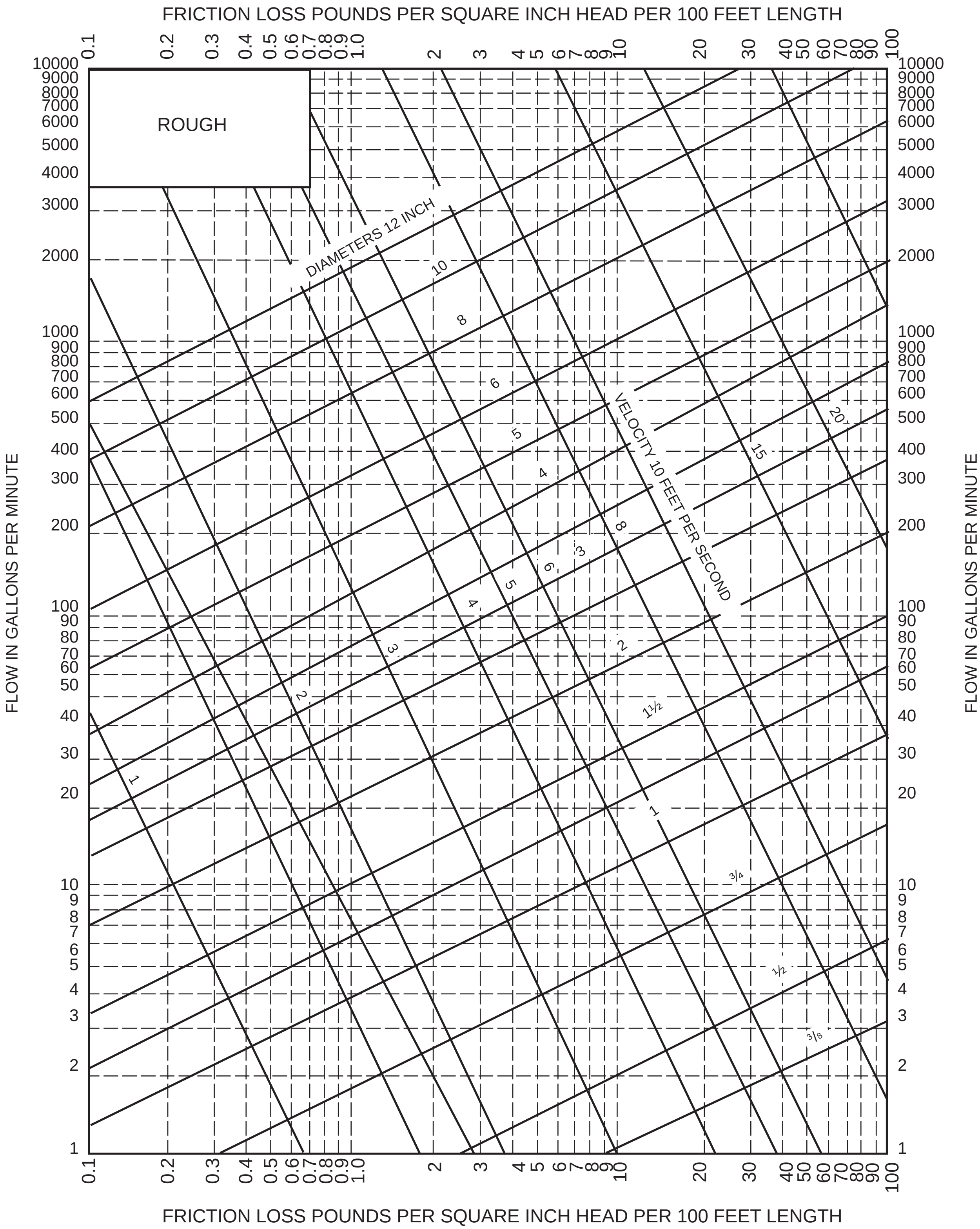
a. Allowances are for streamlined soldered fittings and recessed threaded fittings. For threaded fittings, double the allowances shown in the table. The equivalent lengths presented in the table are based on a C factor of 150 in the Hazen-Williams friction loss formula. The lengths shown are rounded to the nearest half-foot.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This figure applies to fairly rough pipe and to actual diameters, which, in general, will be less than the actual diameters of the new pipe of the same kind.

FIGURE AP103.3(6)
FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY ROUGH PIPE[a]



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This figure applies to very rough pipe and existing pipe, and to their actual diameters.

FIGURE AP103.3(7)
FRICTION LOSS IN ROUGH PIPE[a]

AP103.3.1 Sample problem. What size Type L copper water pipe, service and distribution will be required to serve a two-story factory building having on each floor, back-to-back, two toilet rooms each equipped with hot and cold water? The highest fixture is 21 feet above the street main, which is tapped with a 2-inch corporation cock at which point the minimum pressure is 55 psi. In the building basement, a 2-inch meter with a pressure drop of not more than 11 psi and 3-inch reduced pressure principle backflow preventer with a pressure drop of not more than 9 psi are to be installed. The system is shown in Figure AP103.3(1). To be determined are the pipe sizes for the service main, and the cold and hot water distribution pipes.

Problem solution: A tabular arrangement such as shown in Table AP103.3(1) should first be constructed. The steps to be followed are indicated by the tabular arrangement itself as they are in sequence, Columns 1 through 10 and Lines A through L.

Step 1

Columns 1 and 2: Divide the system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. After Point B [see Figure AP103.3(1)], separate consideration will be given to the hot and cold water piping. Enter the sections to be considered in the service and cold water piping in Column 1 of the tabular arrangement. Column 1 of Table AP103.3(1) provides a line-by-line, recommended tabular arrangement for use in solving pipe sizing.

The objective in designing the water supply system is to ensure an adequate water supply and pressure to all fixtures and equipment. Column 2 provides the psi (kPa) to be considered separately from the minimum pressure available at the main. Losses to take into consideration are the following: the differences in elevations between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet; meter pressure losses; the tap in main loss; special fixture devices, such as water softeners and backflow prevention devices; and the pressure required at the most remote fixture outlet.

The difference in elevation can result in an increase or decrease in available pressure at the main. Where the water supply outlet is located above the source, this results in a loss in the available pressure and is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water supply source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

Column 3: Using Table AP103.3(3), determine the gpm (L/m) of flow to be expected in each section of the system. These flows range from 28.6 to 108 gpm. Load values for fixtures must be determined as w.s.f.u. and then converted to a gpm rating to determine peak demand. Where calculating peak demands, the w.s.f.u. are added and then converted to the gpm rating. For continuous flow fixtures, such as hose bibbs and lawn sprinkler systems, add the gpm demand to the intermittent demand of fixtures. For example, a total of 120 w.s.f.u. is converted to a demand of 48 gpm. Two hose bibbs × 5 gpm demand = 10 gpm. Total gpm rating = 48.0 gpm + 10 gpm = 58.0 gpm demand.

Step 2

Line A: Enter the minimum pressure available at the main source of supply in Column 2. This is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). The local water authorities generally keep records of pressures at different times of the day and year. The available pressure can be checked from nearby buildings or from fire department hydrant checks.

Line B: Determine from Table P2903.1 the highest pressure required for the fixtures on the system, which is 15 psi (103.4 kPa), to operate a flushometer valve. The most remote fixture outlet is necessary to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings, and represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the available pressure to operate properly as indicated by Table P2903.1.

Line C: Determine the pressure loss for the meter size given or assumed. The total water flow from the main through the service as determined in Step 1 will serve to aid in the meter selected. There are three common types of water meters; the pressure losses are determined by the American Water Works Association Standards for displacement type, compound type and turbine type. The maximum pressure loss of such devices takes into consideration the meter size, safe operating capacity [gpm (L/m)] and maximum rates for continuous operations [gpm (L/m)]. Typically, equipment imparts greater pressure losses than piping.

Line D: Select from Table AP103.3(4) and enter the pressure loss for the tap size given or assumed. The loss of pressure through taps and tees in psi (kPa) is based on the total gpm (L/m) flow rate and size of the tap.

Line E: Determine the difference in elevation between the main and source of supply and the highest fixture on the system. Multiply this figure, expressed in feet (mm), by 0.43 psi. Enter the resulting psi (kPa) loss on Line E. The difference in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet has a significant impact on the sizing of the water supply system. The difference in elevation usually results in a loss in the available pressure because the water supply outlet is generally located above the water supply source. The loss is caused by the pressure required to lift the water to the outlet. The pressure loss is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

Lines F, G and H: The pressure losses through filters, backflow prevention devices or other special fixtures must be obtained from the manufacturer or estimated and entered on these lines. Equipment, such as backflow prevention devices, check valves, water softeners, instantaneous, or tankless water heaters, filters and strainers, can impart a much greater pressure loss than the piping. The pressure losses can range from 8 to 30 psi.

Step 3

Line I: The sum of the pressure requirements and losses that affect the overall system (Lines B through H) is entered on this line. Summarizing the steps, all of the system losses are subtracted from the minimum water pressure. The remainder is the pressure available for friction, defined as the energy available to push the water through the pipes to each fixture. This force can be used as an average pressure loss, as long as the pressure available for friction is not exceeded. Saving a certain amount for available water supply pressures as an area incurs growth, or because of the aging of the pipe or equipment added to the system is recommended.

Step 4

Line J: Subtract Line I from Line A. This gives the pressure that remains available from overcoming friction losses in the system. This figure is a guide to the pipe size that is chosen for each section, incorporating the total friction losses to the most remote outlet (measured length is called *developed length*).

Exception: Where the main is above the highest fixture, the resulting psi (kPa) must be considered a pressure gain (static head gain) and omitted from the sums of Lines B through H and added to Line J.

The maximum friction head loss that can be tolerated in the system during peak demand is the difference between the static pressure at the highest and most remote outlet at no-flow conditions and the minimum flow pressure required at that outlet. If the losses are within the required limits, every run of pipe will be within the required friction head loss. Static pressure loss is at the most remote outlet in feet × 0.433 = loss in psi caused by elevation differences.

Step 5

Column 4: Enter the length of each section from the main to the most remote outlet (at Point E). Divide the water supply system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups.

Step 6

Column 5: Where selecting a trial pipe size, the length from the water service or meter to the most remote fixture outlet must be measured to determine the developed length. However, in systems having a flushometer valve or temperature-controlled shower at the topmost floors, the developed length would be from the water meter to the most remote flushometer valve on the system. A rule of thumb is that size will become progressively smaller as the system extends farther from the main source of supply. A trial pipe size can be arrived at by the following formula:

Line J: (Pressure available to overcome pipe friction) × 100/equivalent length of run total developed length to most remote fixture × percentage factor of 1.5 (Note: a percentage factor is used only as an estimate for friction losses imposed for fittings for initial trial pipe size) = psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).

For trial pipe size, see Figure AP103.3(3) (Type L copper) based on 2.77 psi and 108 gpm = $2^1/_2$ inches. To determine the equivalent length of run to the most remote outlet, the developed length is determined and added to the friction losses for fittings and valves. The developed lengths of the designated pipe sections are shown in Table AP103.3.1(1).

The equivalent length of the friction loss in fittings and valves must be added to the developed length (most remote outlet). Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction loss should be approximated. A general rule that has been used is to add 50 percent of the developed length to allow for fittings and valves. For example, the equivalent length of run equals the developed length of run (225 feet × 1.5 = 338 feet). The total equivalent length of run for determining a trial pipe size is 338 feet.

Example: 9.36 (pressure available to overcome pipe friction) × 100/338 (equivalent length of run = 225 × 1.5) = 2.77 psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).

TABLE AP103.3.1(1)
SUMMATION OF DEVELOPED PIPING LENGTHS

SEGMENT	LENGTH[a] (feet)
A-B	54
B-C	8
C-D	13
D-E	150

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Total developed length = 225 feet.

Step 7

Column 6: Select from Table AP103.3(6) the equivalent lengths for the trial pipe size of fittings and valves on each pipe section. Enter the sum for each section in Column 6. (The number of fittings to be used in this example must be an estimate). The equivalent length of piping is the developed length plus the equivalent lengths of pipe corresponding to the friction head losses for fittings and valves. Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction head losses must be approximated. An estimate for this example is found in Table AP103.3.1(2).

Step 8

Column 7: Add the figures from Columns 4 and 6, and enter in Column 7. Express the sum in hundreds of feet.

Step 9

Column 8: Select from Figure AP103.3(3) the friction loss per 100 feet of pipe for the gpm flow in a section (Column 3) and trial pipe size (Column 5). Maximum friction head loss per 100 feet is determined on the basis of the total pressure available for friction head loss and the longest equivalent length of run. The selection is based on the gpm demand, uniform friction head loss and maximum design velocity. Where the size indicated by the hydraulic table indicates a velocity in excess of the selected velocity, a size must be selected that produces the required velocity.

Step 10

Column 9: Multiply the figures in Columns 7 and 8 for each section and enter in Column 9.

Total friction loss is determined by multiplying the friction loss per 100 feet for each pipe section in the total developed length by the pressure loss in fittings expressed as equivalent length in feet (mm). Note: Section C-F should be considered in the total pipe friction losses only if greater loss occurs in Section C-F than in pipe Section D-E. Section C-F is not considered in the total developed length. Total friction loss in equivalent length is determined in Table AP103.3.1(3).

Step 11

Line K: Enter the sum of the values in Column 9. The value is the total friction loss in equivalent length for each designated pipe section.

Step 12

Line L: Subtract Line J from Line K and enter in Column 10.

The result should always be a positive or plus figure. If it is not, repeat the operation using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 until a balance or near balance is obtained. If the difference between Lines J and K is a high positive number, it is an indication that the pipe sizes are too large and should be reduced, thus saving materials. In such a case, the operations using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 should be repeated.

The total friction losses are determined and subtracted from the pressure available to overcome pipe friction for the trial pipe size. This number is critical because it provides a guide to whether the pipe size selected is too large and the process should be repeated to obtain an economically designed system.

Answer: The final figures entered in Column 5 become the design pipe size for the respective sections. Repeating this operation a second time using the same sketch but considering the demand for hot water, it is possible to size the hot water distribution piping. This has been worked up as a part of the overall problem in the tabular arrangement used for sizing the service and water distribution piping. Note that consideration must be given to the pressure losses from the street main to the water heater (Section A-B) in determining the hot water pipe sizes.

SECTION AP201 SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

AP201.1 Size of water-service mains, branch mains and risers. The minimum size water service pipe shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers shall be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including the *equivalent length* of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be

TABLE AP103.3.1(2)
FITTING PRESSURE LOSSES EXPRESSED IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS (formerly Table AP.1)

COLD WATER PIPE SECTION	FITTINGS/VALVES	PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE (feet)	HOT WATER PIPE SECTION	FITTINGS/VALVES	PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT OF TUBE (feet)
A-B	3 – $2^1/_2$″ Gate valves	3	A-B	3 – $2^1/_2$″ Gate valves	3
	1 – $2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	12	—	1 – $2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	12
B-C	1 – $2^1/_2$″ Straight run tee	0.5	B-C	1 – 2″ Straight run tee	7
	—	—	—	1 – 2″ 90-degree ell	0.5
C-F	1 – $2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	12	C-F	1 – $1^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	7
C-D	1 – $2^1/_2$″ 90-degree ell	7	C-D	1 – $^1/_2$″ 90-degree ell	4
D-E	1 – $2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	12	D-E	1 – $1^1/_2$″ Side branch tee	7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

TABLE AP103.3.1(3)
TOTAL FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT PIPING LENGTH (formerly Table AP.2)

PIPE SECTIONS	FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT LENGTH (feet)	
	Cold Water	Hot Water
A-B	0.69 × 3.2 = 2.21	0.69 × 3.2 = 2.21
B-C	0.085 × 3.1 = 0.26	0.16 × 1.4 = 0.22
C-D	0.20 × 1.9 = 0.38	0.17 × 3.2 = 0.54
D-E	1.62 × 1.9 = 3.08	1.57 × 3.2 = 5.02
Total pipe friction losses (Line K)	5.93	7.99

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

determined according to the procedure outlined in this section or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and *approved* by the *building official*:

1. Supply load in the building water distribution system shall be determined by the total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of w.s.f.u., as shown in Table AP103.3(2). For fixtures not *listed*, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.
2. Obtain the minimum daily static service pressure [psi (kPa)] available (as determined by the local water authority) at the water meter or other source of supply at the installation location. Adjust this minimum daily static pressure [psi (kPa)] for the following conditions:
   - 2.1. Determine the difference in elevation between the source of supply and the highest water supply outlet. Where the highest water supply outlet is located above the source of supply, deduct 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the source of supply, add 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation.
   - 2.2. Where a water pressure-reducing valve is installed in the water distribution system, the minimum daily static water pressure available is 80 percent of the minimum daily static water pressure at the source of supply or the set pressure downstream of the water pressure-reducing valve, whichever is smaller.
   - 2.3. Deduct all pressure losses caused by special equipment, such as a backflow preventer, water filter and water softener. Pressure loss data for each piece of equipment shall be obtained through the manufacturer of the device.
   - 2.4. Deduct the pressure in excess of 8 psi (55 kPa) resulting from the installation of the special plumbing fixture, such as temperature-controlled shower and flushometer tank water closet. Using the resulting minimum available pressure, find the corresponding pressure range in Table AP201.1.
3. The maximum *developed length* for water piping is the actual length of pipe between the source of supply and the most remote fixture, including either hot (through the water heater) or cold water branches multiplied by a factor of 1.2 to compensate for pressure loss through fittings. Select the appropriate column in Table AP201.1 equal to or greater than the calculated maximum *developed length*.
4. To determine the size of the water service pipe, meter and main distribution pipe to the building using the appropriate table, follow down the selected "maximum *developed length*" column to a fixture unit equal to or greater than the total installation demand calculated by using the "combined" w.s.f.u. column of Table AP201.1. Read the water service pipe and meter sizes in the first left-hand column and the main distribution pipe to the building in the second left-hand column on the same row.
5. To determine the size of each water distribution pipe, start at the most remote outlet on each branch (either hot or cold branch) and, working back toward the main distribution pipe to the building, add up the w.s.f.u. demand passing through each segment of the distribution system using the related hot or cold column of Table AP201.1. Knowing demand, the size of each segment shall be read from the second left-hand column of the same table and the maximum *developed length* column selected in Steps 1 and 2, under the same or next smaller size meter row. The size of any branch or main need never be larger than the size of the main distribution pipe to the building established in Step 4.

TABLE AP201.1
MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)

METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)	DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)	MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)									
Pressure Range 30 to 39 psi		40	60	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
$^3/_4$	$^1/_2$[a]	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0	0
$^3/_4$	$^3/_4$	9.5	7.5	6	5.5	4	3.5	3	2.5	2	1.5
$^3/_4$	1	32	25	20	16.5	11	9	7.8	6.5	5.5	4.5
1	1	32	32	27	21	13.5	10	8	7	5.5	5
$^3/_4$	$1^1/_4$	32	32	32	32	30	24	20	17	13	10.5
1	$1^1/_4$	80	80	70	61	45	34	27	22	16	12
$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_4$	80	80	80	75	54	40	31	25	17.5	13
1	$1^1/_2$	87	87	87	87	84	73	64	56	45	36
$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	151	151	151	151	117	92	79	69	54	43
2	$1^1/_2$	151	151	151	151	128	99	83	72	56	45
1	2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	86
$1^1/_2$	2	275	275	275	275	258	223	196	174	144	122
2	2	365	365	365	365	318	266	229	201	160	134
2	$2^1/_2$	533	533	533	533	533	495	448	409	353	311

METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)	DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)	MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)									
Pressure Range 40 to 49 psi		40	60	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
$^3/_4$	$^1/_2$[a]	3	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5
$^3/_4$	$^3/_4$	9.5	9.5	8.5	7	5.5	4.5	3.5	3	2.5	2
$^3/_4$	1	32	32	32	26	18	13.5	10.5	9	7.5	6
1	1	32	32	32	32	21	15	11.5	9.5	7.5	6.5
$^3/_4$	$1^1/_4$	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	27	21	16.5
1	$1^1/_4$	80	80	80	80	65	52	42	35	26	20
$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_4$	80	80	80	80	75	59	48	39	28	21
1	$1^1/_2$	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	78	65	55
$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	151	151	151	151	151	130	109	93	75	63
2	$1^1/_2$	151	151	151	151	151	139	115	98	77	64
1	2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87
$1^1/_2$	2	275	275	275	275	275	275	264	238	198	169
2	2	365	365	365	365	365	349	304	270	220	185
2	$2^1/_2$	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	528	456	403

(continued)

TABLE AP201.1—continued
MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)

METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)	DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)	MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)									
Pressure Range 50 to 60 psi		40	60	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
3/4	1/2[a]	3	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	1	1	0.5	0.5
3/4	3/4	9.5	9.5	9.5	8.5	6.5	5	4.5	4	3	2.5
3/4	1	32	32	32	32	25	18.5	14.5	12	9.5	8
1	1	32	32	32	32	30	22	16.5	13	10	8
3/4	1 1/4	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	29	24
1	1 1/4	80	80	80	80	80	68	57	48	35	28
1 1/2	1 1/4	80	80	80	80	80	75	63	53	39	29
1	1 1/2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	82	70
1 1/2	1 1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	139	120	94	79
2	1 1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	146	126	97	81
1	2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87
1 1/2	2	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	247	213
2	2	365	365	365	365	365	365	365	329	272	232
2	2 1/2	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	486

METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)	DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)	MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)									
Pressure Range Over 60		40	60	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
3/4	1/2[a]	3	3	3	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1	1	0.5
3/4	3/4	9.5	9.5	9.5	9.5	7.5	6	5	4.5	3.5	3
3/4	1	32	32	32	32	32	24	19.5	15.5	11.5	9.5
1	1	32	32	32	32	32	28	28	17	12	9.5
3/4	1 1/4	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	30
1	1 1/4	80	80	80	80	80	80	69	60	46	36
1 1/2	1 1/4	80	80	80	80	80	80	76	65	50	38
1	1 1/2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	84
1 1/2	1 1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	151	144	114	94
2	1 1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	151	151	118	97
1	2	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87	87
1 1/2	2	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	275	252
2	2	365	368	368	368	368	368	368	368	318	273
2	2 1/2	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	533	533

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
a. Minimum size for building supply is a 3/4-inch pipe.

APPENDIX AQ
TINY HOUSES

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of the code.

SECTION AQ101 GENERAL

AQ101.1 Scope. This appendix shall be applicable to *tiny houses* used as single *dwelling units*. *Tiny houses* shall comply with this code except as otherwise stated in this appendix.

SECTION AQ102 DEFINITIONS

AQ102.1 General. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

EGRESS ROOF ACCESS WINDOW. A *skylight* or roof window designed and installed to satisfy the emergency escape and rescue opening requirements of Section R310.2.

LANDING PLATFORM. A landing provided as the top step of a stairway accessing a *loft*.

LOFT. A floor level located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the main floor, open to the main floor on one or more sides with a ceiling height of less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) and used as a living or sleeping space.

TINY HOUSE. A *dwelling* that is 400 square feet (37 m^2) or less in floor area excluding *lofts*.

SECTION AQ103 CEILING HEIGHT

AQ103.1 Minimum ceiling height. *Habitable space* and hallways in *tiny houses* shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm). Bathrooms, toilet rooms and kitchens shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 4 inches (1930 mm). Obstructions including, but not limited to, beams, girders, ducts and lighting, shall not extend below these minimum ceiling heights.

Exception: Ceiling heights in *lofts* are permitted to be less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

SECTION AQ104 LOFTS

AQ104.1 Minimum loft area and dimensions. *Lofts* used as a sleeping or living space shall meet the minimum area and dimension requirements of Sections AQ104.1.1 through AQ104.1.3.

AQ104.1.1 Minimum area. *Lofts* shall have a floor area of not less than 35 square feet (3.25 m^2).

AQ104.1.2 Minimum horizontal dimensions. *Lofts* shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in any horizontal dimension.

AQ104.1.3 Height effect on loft area. Portions of a *loft* with a sloped ceiling measuring less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required area for the loft. See Figure AQ104.1.3.

Exception: Under gable roofs with a minimum slope of 6 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (50-percent slope), portions of a *loft* with a sloped ceiling measuring less than 16 inches (406 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required area for the *loft*.

AQ104.2 Loft access and egress. The access to and primary egress from *lofts* shall be of any type described in Sections AQ104.2.1 through AQ104.2.5. The *loft* access and egress element along its required minimum width shall meet the *loft* where its ceiling height is not less than 3 feet (914 mm).

AQ104.2.1 Stairways. Stairways accessing *lofts* shall comply with this code or with Sections AQ104.2.1.1 through AQ104.2.1.7.

AQ104.2.1.1 Width. Stairways accessing a *loft* shall not be less than 17 inches (432 mm) in clear width at or above the *handrail*. The width below the *handrail* shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

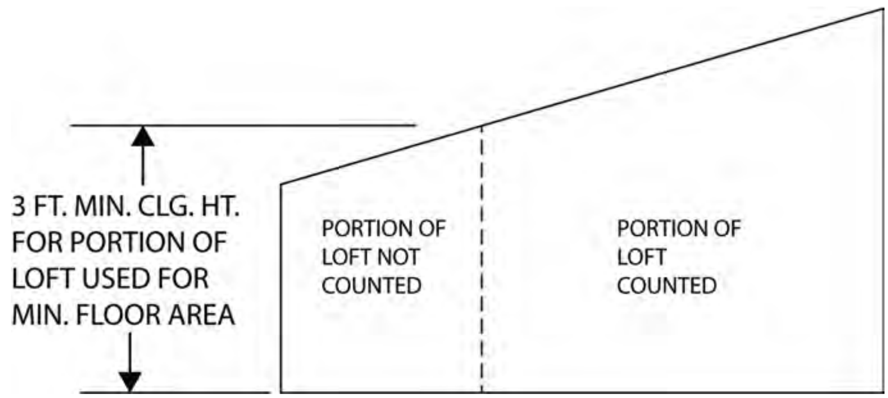
AQ104.2.1.2 Headroom. The headroom above stairways accessing a *loft* shall be not less than 6 feet 2 inches (1880 mm), as measured vertically, from a sloped line connecting the tread, landing or landing platform *nosings* in the center of their width and vertically from the landing platform along the center of its width.

AQ104.2.1.3 Treads and risers. *Risers* for stairs accessing a *loft* shall be not less than 7 inches (178 mm) and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) in height. Tread depth and riser height shall be calculated in accordance with one of the following formulas:

1. The tread depth shall be 20 inches (508 mm) minus four-thirds of the riser height.
2. The riser height shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minus three-fourths of the tread depth.

AQ104.2.1.4 Landings. Intermediate landings and landings at the bottom of stairways shall comply with Section R311.7.6, except that the depth in the direction of travel shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

AQ104.2.1.5 Landing platforms. The top tread and *riser* of stairways accessing *lofts* shall be constructed as a *landing platform* where the *loft* ceiling height is



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE AQ104.1.3
HEIGHT EFFECT ON LOFT AREA

less than 6 feet 2 inches (1880 mm) where the stairway meets the *loft*. The *landing platform* shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in width and in depth measured horizontally from and perpendicular to the *nosing* of the landing platform. The landing platform riser height to the loft floor shall be not less than 16 inches (406 mm) and not greater than 18 inches (457 mm).

AQ104.2.1.6 Handrails. *Handrails* shall comply with Section R311.7.8.

AQ104.2.1.7 Stairway guards. Guards at open sides of stairways, landings and landing platforms shall comply with Section R312.1.

AQ104.2.2 Ladders. Ladders accessing *lofts* shall comply with Sections AQ104.2.1 and AQ104.2.2.2.

AQ104.2.2.1 Size and capacity. Ladders accessing *lofts* shall have a rung width of not less than 12 inches (305 mm), and 10-inch (254 mm) to 14-inch (356 mm) spacing between rungs. Ladders shall be capable of supporting a 300-pound (136 kg) load on any rung. Rung spacing shall be uniform within $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

AQ104.2.2.2 Incline. Ladders shall be installed at 70 to 80 degrees from horizontal.

AQ104.2.3 Alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices accessing *lofts* shall comply with Sections R311.7.11.1 and R311.7.11.2. The clear width at and below the *handrails* shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

AQ104.2.4 Ship's ladders. Ship's ladders accessing *lofts* shall comply with Sections R311.7.12.1 and R311.7.12.2. The clear width at and below *handrails* shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

AQ104.2.5 Loft guards. *Loft* guards shall be located along the open sides of *lofts*. *Loft* guards shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height or one-half of the clear height to the ceiling, whichever is less. *Loft* guards shall comply with Section R312.1.3 and Table R301.5 for their components.

SECTION AQ105
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS

AQ105.1 General. *Tiny houses* shall meet the requirements of Section R310 for emergency escape and rescue openings.

Exception: *Egress roof access windows* in *lofts* used as sleeping rooms shall be deemed to meet the requirements of Section R310 where installed such that the bottom of the opening is not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the *loft* floor, provided the egress roof access window complies with the minimum opening area requirements of Section R310.2.1.

SECTION AQ106
ENERGY CONSERVATION

AQ106.1 Air leakage testing. The air leakage rate for *tiny houses* shall not exceed 0.30 cubic feet per minute at 50 Pascals of pressure per square foot of the *dwelling unit* enclosure area. The air leakage testing shall be in accordance with the testing methods required in Section N1102.4.1.2. The *dwelling unit* enclosure area shall be the sum of the areas of ceilings, floors and walls that separate the conditioned space of a *dwelling unit* from the exterior, its adjacent unconditioned spaces and adjacent *dwelling units*.

AQ106.1.1 Whole-house mechanical ventilation. Where the air leakage rate is in accordance with Section AQ106.1, the *tiny house* shall be provided with whole-house mechanical ventilation in accordance with Section M1505.4.

AQ106.2 Alternative compliance. *Tiny houses* shall be deemed to be in compliance with Chapter 11 of this code and Chapter R4 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. The insulation and fenestration meet the requirements of Table N1102.1.2.

2. The thermal envelope meets the requirements of Section N1102.4.1.1 and Table N1102.4.1.1.
3. Solar, wind or other renewable energy source supplies not less than 90 percent of the energy use for the structure.
4. Solar, wind or other renewable energy source supplies not less than 90 percent of the energy for service water heating.
5. Permanently installed lighting is in accordance with Section N1104.
6. Mechanical ventilation is provided in accordance with Section M1505 and operable fenestration is not used to meet ventilation requirements.

SECTION AQ107 SMOKE AND CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

AQ107.1 Smoke and carbon monoxide detectors. Smoke and carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed as required in Sections R314 and R315 and just below the highest point of any *loft*.

SECTION AQ108 FOUNDATION

AQ108.1 Foundation options. *Tiny houses* are permitted to be constructed without a masonry or concrete foundation in accordance with Sections AQ108.1.1 and AQ108.1.2, except in *coastal high hazard, ocean hazard* and *flood hazard areas.*

AQ108.1.1 Wood Foundation. The building shall be supported on a wood foundation of minimum 4-inch by 4-inch (102 mm by 102 mm) or 6-inch by 6-inch (152 mm by 152 mm) mudsill or runner of approved wood in accordance with Section R317. Structural floor systems that include joists and subfloor material shall also comply with Section R317.1, Item 1.

AQ108.1.2. Anchorage. *Tiny houses* with wood foundations in accordance with Section AQ108.1.1 shall be designed and anchored to resist overturning and sliding.

Exception: *Tiny houses* with no more than 12 inches (304.8 mm) vertical mean roof height shall be anchored to resist overturning and sliding by installing a minimum of one ground anchor at each corner of the building. The total resisting force of the anchors shall be equal to 20 psf (958 Pa) times the plan area of the building.

APPENDIX AR

LIGHT STRAW-CLAY CONSTRUCTION

DELETED

APPENDIX AS

STRAWBALE CONSTRUCTION

DELETED

APPENDIX AT [RE]

SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES DELETED

APPENDIX AU

COB CONSTRUCTION (MONOLITHIC ADOBE)

DELETED

APPENDIX AV

BOARD OF APPEALS

DELETED

APPENDIX AW

3D-PRINTED BUILDING CONSTRUCTION

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.

SECTION AW101 GENERAL

AW101.1 Scope. Buildings, structures and building elements fabricated in whole or in part using 3D-printed construction techniques shall be designed, constructed and inspected in accordance with the provisions contained in this appendix and other applicable requirements in this code.

AW101.2 Definitions. The words and terms in Section AW102 shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

SECTION AW102 DEFINITIONS

3D-PRINTED BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. A process for fabricating buildings, structures and building elements from 3D model data using automated equipment that deposits construction material in a layer-upon-layer fashion.

ADDITIVE MANUFACTURING MATERIALS. Materials used by the 3D printer to produce the building structure or system components of the building.

FABRICATION PROCESS. Preparation of the job site and construction material, the deposition, curing, finishing, insertion of components and other methods used to construct building elements such as walls, partitions, roof assemblies and structural components, and the means used to connect assemblies together.

PRODUCTION EQUIPMENT. The equipment, including the 3D printer, its settings, nozzles and other accessories used in the fabrication process.

SYSTEM COMPONENTS. Devices, equipment and *appliances* that are installed in the building elements as part of the wiring, plumbing, HVAC and other systems. These include, but are not limited to, electrical outlet boxes, conduit, wiring, piping, tubing and HVAC ducts, each of which is covered by a product standard or installation code requirement.

SECTION AW103 BUILDING DESIGN

AW103.1 Design organization. 3D-printed buildings, structures and building elements shall be designed by an organization certified in accordance with UL 3401 by an *approved* agency and approved by the *building official* in accordance with this section.

AW103.2 Design approval. The structural design, *construction documents* and UL 3401 report of findings shall be submitted for review and approval in accordance with Section 104.11.

SECTION AW104 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION

AW104.1 Construction. 3D-printed buildings, structures and building elements shall be constructed in accordance with this section.

AW104.2 Construction method. The building construction method, consisting of the manufacturer's production equipment and fabrication process, shall be in accordance with the UL 3401 report of findings. The unique identifier of the construction method used shall match the identifier in the UL 3401 report of findings.

AW104.3 Additive manufacturing materials. Only the *listed* additive manufacturing materials identified in the UL 3401 report of findings shall be used to fabricate the building structure or system components. Containers of the additive manufacturing materials shall be *labeled*.

AW104.4 Depositing of manufacturing materials. Manufacturing materials shall only be deposited where ambient temperature and environmental conditions at the job site are within limits specified in the UL 3401 report of findings. The maximum number of layers permitted, specified curing time and any surface preparation or finishing shall be performed as specified in the UL 3401 report of findings.

SECTION AW105 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

AW105.1 Initial inspection. An initial inspection of the production equipment, including 3D printer, and the fabrication process shall be performed after the production equipment is located on site and before building fabrication has begun. The inspection shall be conducted by representatives of the approved agency that evaluated the fabrication process for compliance with UL 3401. The inspection shall verify that the fabrication process, including production equipment, 3D-printing parameters and additive manufacturing materials, are in accordance with the UL 3401 report of findings and the proprietary information in the UL 3401 detailed report of findings.

> **Exception:** Where *approved* by the *building official*, inspections of the production equipment, including 3D printer, and the fabrication process used in a single housing tract shall be conducted on the first building to be constructed, and on a selected number of subsequent buildings, where the same equipment, equipment operators and fabrication process are used on all buildings. The number of inspections to be performed shall be determined by the *building official*.

SECTION AW106
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AW106.1 General. See Table AW106.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, the standard title and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

TABLE AW106.1
REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
UL 3401—19	*Outline of Investigation for 3D Printed Building Construction*	AW103.2, AW104.2, AW104.3, AW104.4, AW105.1

APPENDIX AX

ZERO ENERGY RESIDENTIAL BUILDING PROVISIONS DELETED

APPENDIX NCA
SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

This appendix is a North Carolina addition and not part of the 2021 International Residential Code*. There will be no marginal markings added.*

The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.

SECTION NCA101 GENERAL

NCA101.1 General. The provisions of this appendix shall control the design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs installed in or on the *lot* of a one- or two-family dwelling.

NCA101.2 Pools in flood hazard areas. Pools that are located in flood hazard areas established by Table R301.2(1), including above-ground pools, on-ground pools and in-ground pools that involve placement of fill, shall comply with Section NCA101.2.1 or NCA101.2.2.

Exception: Pools located in riverine flood hazard areas that are outside of designated floodways.

NCA101.2.1 Pools located in designated floodways. Where pools are located in designated floodways, documentation shall be submitted to the *building official*, which demonstrates that the construction of the pool will not increase the design flood elevation at any point within the *jurisdiction*.

NCA101.2.2 Pools located where floodways have not been designated. Where pools are located where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed pool will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the *jurisdiction*.

SECTION NCA102 DEFINITIONS

NCA102.1 General. For the purposes of these requirements, the terms used shall be defined as follows and as set forth in Chapter 2.

ABOVE-GROUND/ON-GROUND POOL. See „*Swimming pool*.‰

BARRIER. A permanent fence, wall, building wall or combination thereof that completely surrounds the swimming pool and obstructs access to the swimming pool.

HOT TUB. See „*Swimming pool*.‰

IN-GROUND POOL. See „*Swimming pool*.‰

RESIDENTIAL. That which is situated on the premises of a detached one- or two-family dwelling or a one-family *townhouse* not more than three stories in height.

SPA, NONPORTABLE. See „*Swimming pool*.‰

SPA, PORTABLE. A nonpermanent structure intended for recreational bathing, in which all controls, water-heating and water-circulating *equipment* are an integral part of the product.

SWIMMING POOL. Any structure intended for swimming or recreational bathing that contains water over 24 inches (610 mm) deep. This includes in-ground, above-ground and on-ground swimming pools, hot tubs and spas.

SWIMMING POOL, INDOOR. A swimming pool which is totally contained within a structure and surrounded on all four sides by the walls of the enclosing structure.

SWIMMING POOL, OUTDOOR. Any swimming pool which is not an indoor pool.

SECTION NCA103 SWIMMING POOLS

NCA103.1 In-ground pools. In-ground pools shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/APSP/ICC 5 as listed in Section NCA107.

NCA103.2 Above-ground and on-ground pools. Above-ground and on-ground pools shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/APSP/ICC 4 as listed in Section NCA107.

NCA103.3 Pools in flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas established by Table R301.2(1), pools in coastal high hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ASCE 24.

SECTION NCA104 SPAS AND HOT TUBS

NCA104.1 Permanently installed spas and hot tubs. Permanently installed spas and hot tubs shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/APSP/ICC 3 as listed in Section NCA107.

NCA104.2 Portable spas and hot tubs. Portable spas and hot tubs shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/APSP/ICC 6 as listed in Section NCA107.

SECTION NCA105 BARRIER REQUIREMENTS

NCA105.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design of barriers for residential swimming pools, spas and hot tubs. These design controls are intended to provide protection against potential drownings and near drownings by restricting access to swimming pools, spas and hot tubs.

NCA105.2 Outdoor swimming pools and spas. An outdoor swimming pool, including an in-ground, above-ground or on-ground pool, hot tub or spa shall be surrounded by a barrier that complies with Sections NCA105.2.1 through NCA105.7.

NCA105.2.1 Barrier height and clearances. Barrier heights and clearances shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The top of the barrier shall be not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) above grade where measured on the side of the barrier that faces away from the pool or spa. Such height shall exist around the entire perimeter of the barrier and for a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) measured horizontally from the outside of the required barrier.
2. The vertical clearance between grade and the bottom of the barrier shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm) for grade surfaces that are not solid, such as grass or gravel, where measured on the side of the barrier that faces away from the pool or spa.
3. The vertical clearance between a surface below the barrier to a solid surface, such as concrete, and the bottom of the required barrier shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm) where measured on the side of the required barrier that faces away from the pool or spa.
4. Where the top of the pool or spa structure is above grade, the barrier shall be installed on grade or shall be mounted on top of the pool or spa structure. Where the barrier is mounted on the top of the pool or spa, the vertical clearance between the top of the pool or spa and the bottom of the barrier shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

NCA105.2.2 Openings. Openings in the barrier shall not allow passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere.

NCA105.2.3 Solid barrier surfaces. Solid barriers that do not have openings shall not contain indentations or protrusions that form handholds and footholds, except for normal construction tolerances and tooled masonry joints.

NCA105.2.4 Mesh fence as a barrier. Deleted.

NCA105.2.5 Closely spaced horizontal members. Where the barrier is composed of horizontal and vertical members and the distance between the tops of the horizontal members is less than 45 inches (1143 mm), the horizontal members shall be located on the pool or spa side of the fence. Spacing between vertical members shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm) in width. Where there are decorative cutouts within vertical members, spacing within the cutouts shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm) in width.

NCA105.2.6 Widely spaced horizontal members. Where the barrier is composed of horizontal and vertical members and the distance between the tops of the horizontal members is 45 inches (1143 mm) or more, spacing between vertical members shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm). Where there are decorative cutouts within vertical members, the interior width of the cutouts shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm).

NCA105.2.7 Chain link dimensions. The maximum opening formed by a chain link fence shall be not more than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm). Where the fence is provided with slats fastened at the top and bottom that reduce the openings, such openings shall be not greater than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm).

NCA105.2.8 Diagonal members. Where the barrier is composed of diagonal members, the maximum opening formed by the diagonal members shall be not greater than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm). The angle of diagonal members shall be not greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from vertical.

NCA105.2.9 Clear zone. Where equipment, including pool equipment such as pumps, filters and heaters, is on the same lot as a pool or spa and such equipment is located outside of the barrier protecting the pool or spa, such equipment shall be located not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from the outside of the barrier.

NCA105.3 Doors and gates. Doors and gates in barriers shall comply with the requirements of Sections NCA105.3.1 through NCA 105.3.3 and shall be equipped to accommodate a locking device. Pedestrian access doors and gates shall open outward away from the pool or spa, shall be self-closing and shall have a self-latching device.

NCA105.3.1 Utility or service doors and gates. Doors and gates not intended for pedestrian use, such as utility or service doors and gates, shall remain locked when not in use.

NCA105.3.2 Double or multiple doors and gates. Double doors and gates or multiple doors and gates shall have not fewer than one leaf secured in place and the adjacent leaf shall be secured with a selflatching device.

NCA105.3.3 Latches release. For doors and gates in barrier, the door and gate latch release mechanisms shall be in accordance with the following**:**

1. Where door and gate latch release mechanisms are accessed from the outside of the barrier and are not of the selflocking type, such mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface not less 54 inches (1372 mm).
2. Where door and gate latch release mechanisms are of the selflocking type such as where the lock is operated by means of a key, an electronic opener or the entry of a combination into an integral combination lock, the lock operation control and the latch release mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface not greater than 54 inches (1372 mm).
3. Where the only latch release mechanism of a self-latching device for a gate is located on the pool and spa side of the barrier, the release mechanism shall be located at a point that is at least 3 inches (76 mm) below the top of the gate.

NCA105.3.4 Barriers adjacent to latch release mechanisms. Where a latch release mechanism is located on the inside of a barrier, openings in the door, gate and barrier within 18 inches (457 mm) of the latch shall not be greater than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in any dimension**.**

NCA105.4 Structure wall as a barrier. Where a wall of a dwelling or structure serves as part of the barrier and where doors, gates or windows provide direct access to the pool or spa through that wall, one of the following shall be required:

1. Operable windows having a sill height of less than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the indoor finished floor, doors and gates shall have an alarm that produces an audible warning when the window, door or their screens are opened. The alarm shall be listed and labeled as a water hazard entrance alarm in accordance with UL 2017.
2. The operable parts of the alarm deactivation switches shall be located at not less than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the finished floor.
3. A safety cover that is listed and labeled in accordance with ASTM F1346 is installed for the pools and spas.
4. An approved means of protection, such as selfclosing doors with selflatching devices, is provided. Such means of protection shall provide a degree of protection that is not less than the protection afforded by Item 1 or 2.

NCA105.5 Onground residential pool structure as a barrier. An onground residential pool wall structure or a barrier mounted on top of an onground residential pool wall structure shall serve as a barrier where all of the following conditions are present:

1. Where only the pool wall serves as the barrier, the bottom of the wall is on grade, the top of the wall is not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) above grade for the entire perimeter of the pool, the wall complies with the requirements of Section NCA105.2 and the pool manufacturer allows the wall to serve as a barrier.
2. Where a barrier is mounted on top of the pool wall, the top of the barrier is not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) above grade for the entire perimeter of the pool, and the wall and the barrier on top of the wall comply with the requirements of Section NCA105.2.
3. Ladders or steps used as means of access to the pool are capable of being secured, locked or removed to prevent access except where the ladder or steps are surrounded by a barrier that meets the requirements of Section NCA 105.
4. Openings created by the securing, locking or removal of ladders and steps do not allow the passage of a 4-inch (102 mm) diameter sphere.
5. Barriers that are mounted on top of onground residential pool walls are installed in accordance with the pool manufacturer's instructions.

NA105.6 Natural barriers. In the case where the pool or spa area abuts the edge of a lake or other natural body of water, public access is not permitted or allowed along the shoreline, and required barriers extend to and beyond the water's edge not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a barrier is not required between the natural body of water shoreline and the pool or spa.

NCA105.7 Natural topography. Natural topography that prevents direct access to the pool or spa area shall include but not be limited to mountains and natural rock formations. A natural barrier approved by the governing body shall be acceptable provided that the degree of protection is not less than the protection afforded by the requirements of Sections NCA105.2 through NCA105.5.

NCA105.8 Indoor swimming pool. Walls surrounding an indoor swimming pool shall comply with Section NCA105.2, Item 9.

NCA105.9 Prohibited locations. Barriers shall be located to prohibit permanent structures, equipment or similar objects from being used to climb them.

NCA105.10 Barrier exceptions. Spas or hot tubs with a safety cover that complies with ASTM F1346, as listed in Section NCA107, shall be exempt from the provisions of this appendix.

SECTION NCA106
ENTRAPMENT PROTECTION FOR SWIMMING POOL AND SPA SUCTION OUTLETS

NCA106.1 General. Suction outlets shall be designed and installed in accordance with APSP 7(ANSI/PHTA/ICC 7).

SECTION NCA107
REFERENCE STANDARDS

TABLE NCA107
REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ANSI/APSP/ ICC 3—2014	**American National Standard for Permanently Installed Residential Spas and Swim Spas**	NCA104.1
ANSI/APSP/ ICC 4—2012	**American National Standard for Aboveground/Onground Residential Swimming Pools—Includes Addenda A Approved April 4, 2013**	NCA103.2
ANSI/APSP/ ICC 5—2011	**American National Standard for Residential Inground Swimming Pools**	NCA103.1
ANSI/APSP/ ICC 6—2013	**American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spa**	NCA104.2
ANSI/PHTA/ ICC 7—2020	**American National Standard for Suction Entrapment Avoidance in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Catch Basins**	NCA106.1
ASCE 24—14	**Flood Resistant Design & Construction**	NCA103.3
F1346—1991(2018)	**Standard Performance Specification for Safety Covers and Labeling Requirements for All Covers for Swimming Pools, Spas and Hot Tubs**	NCA105.1, NCA105.4
ISPSC—21	**International Swimming Pool and Spa Code®**	
UL 2017—2008	**General-purpose Signaling Devices and Systems—with revisions through January 2018**	NCA105.4

APPENDIX NCB

DISCONTINUOUS FOOTING DETAILS FOR GARAGE OR PORCH WALLS

This appendix is a North Carolina addition to the 2021 International Residential Code*. There will be no marginal markings added.*

(The provisions contained in this appendix are adopted as part of this code.)